



# **WebAssembly Specification**

***Release 3.0 (Draft 2025-02-27)***

**WebAssembly Community Group**

**Andreas Rossberg (editor)**

**Feb 27, 2025**



---

## Contents

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Introduction . . . . .	1
1.2	Overview . . . . .	3
<b>2</b>	<b>Structure</b>	<b>5</b>
2.1	Conventions . . . . .	5
2.2	Values . . . . .	7
2.3	Types . . . . .	9
2.4	Instructions . . . . .	14
2.5	Modules . . . . .	23
<b>3</b>	<b>Validation</b>	<b>29</b>
3.1	Conventions . . . . .	29
3.2	Types . . . . .	34
3.3	Matching . . . . .	41
3.4	Instructions . . . . .	49
3.5	Modules . . . . .	74
<b>4</b>	<b>Execution</b>	<b>83</b>
4.1	Conventions . . . . .	83
4.2	Runtime Structure . . . . .	85
4.3	Numerics . . . . .	92
4.4	Types . . . . .	120
4.5	Values . . . . .	121
4.6	Instructions . . . . .	126
4.7	Modules . . . . .	186
<b>5</b>	<b>Binary Format</b>	<b>201</b>
5.1	Conventions . . . . .	201
5.2	Values . . . . .	202
5.3	Types . . . . .	204
5.4	Instructions . . . . .	207
5.5	Modules . . . . .	222
<b>6</b>	<b>Text Format</b>	<b>229</b>
6.1	Conventions . . . . .	229
6.2	Lexical Format . . . . .	231
6.3	Values . . . . .	233
6.4	Types . . . . .	235
6.5	Instructions . . . . .	238
6.6	Modules . . . . .	252

<b>7</b>	<b>Appendix</b>	<b>261</b>
7.1	Embedding . . . . .	261
7.2	Profiles . . . . .	269
7.3	Implementation Limitations . . . . .	271
7.4	Type Soundness . . . . .	274
7.5	Type System Properties . . . . .	287
7.6	Validation Algorithm . . . . .	290
7.7	Custom Sections and Annotations . . . . .	298
7.8	Change History . . . . .	302
7.9	Index of Types . . . . .	312
7.10	Index of Instructions . . . . .	313
7.11	Index of Semantic Rules . . . . .	324
	<b>Index</b>	<b>327</b>

### 1.1 Introduction

WebAssembly (abbreviated Wasm<sup>2</sup>) is a *safe, portable, low-level code format* designed for efficient execution and compact representation. Its main goal is to enable high performance applications on the Web, but it does not make any Web-specific assumptions or provide Web-specific features, so it can be employed in other environments as well.

WebAssembly is an open standard developed by a [W3C Community Group](#)<sup>1</sup>.

This document describes version 3.0 (Draft 2025-02-27) of the [core](#) WebAssembly standard. It is intended that it will be superseded by new incremental releases with additional features in the future.

#### 1.1.1 Design Goals

The design goals of WebAssembly are the following:

- Fast, safe, and portable *semantics*:
  - **Fast**: executes with near native code performance, taking advantage of capabilities common to all contemporary hardware.
  - **Safe**: code is validated and executes in a memory-safe<sup>3</sup>, sandboxed environment preventing data corruption or security breaches.
  - **Well-defined**: fully and precisely defines valid programs and their behavior in a way that is easy to reason about informally and formally.
  - **Hardware-independent**: can be compiled on all modern architectures, desktop or mobile devices and embedded systems alike.
  - **Language-independent**: does not privilege any particular language, programming model, or object model.
  - **Platform-independent**: can be embedded in browsers, run as a stand-alone VM, or integrated in other environments.
  - **Open**: programs can interoperate with their environment in a simple and universal manner.

---

<sup>2</sup> A contraction of “WebAssembly”, not an acronym, hence not using all-caps.

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.w3.org/community/webassembly/>

<sup>3</sup> No program can break WebAssembly’s memory model. Of course, it cannot guarantee that an unsafe language compiling to WebAssembly does not corrupt its own memory layout, e.g. inside WebAssembly’s linear memory.

- Efficient and portable *representation*:
  - **Compact**: has a binary format that is fast to transmit by being smaller than typical text or native code formats.
  - **Modular**: programs can be split up in smaller parts that can be transmitted, cached, and consumed separately.
  - **Efficient**: can be decoded, validated, and compiled in a fast single pass, equally with either just-in-time (JIT) or ahead-of-time (AOT) compilation.
  - **Streamable**: allows decoding, validation, and compilation to begin as soon as possible, before all data has been seen.
  - **Parallelizable**: allows decoding, validation, and compilation to be split into many independent parallel tasks.
  - **Portable**: makes no architectural assumptions that are not broadly supported across modern hardware.

WebAssembly code is also intended to be easy to inspect and debug, especially in environments like web browsers, but such features are beyond the scope of this specification.

### 1.1.2 Scope

At its core, WebAssembly is a *virtual instruction set architecture (virtual ISA)*. As such, it has many use cases and can be embedded in many different environments. To encompass their variety and enable maximum reuse, the WebAssembly specification is split and layered into several documents.

This document is concerned with the core ISA layer of WebAssembly. It defines the instruction set, binary encoding, validation, and execution semantics, as well as a textual representation. It does not, however, define how WebAssembly programs can interact with a specific environment they execute in, nor how they are invoked from such an environment.

Instead, this specification is complemented by additional documents defining interfaces to specific embedding environments such as the Web. These will each define a WebAssembly *application programming interface (API)* suitable for a given environment.

### 1.1.3 Security Considerations

WebAssembly provides no ambient access to the computing environment in which code is executed. Any interaction with the environment, such as I/O, access to resources, or operating system calls, can only be performed by invoking [functions](#) provided by the [embedder](#) and imported into a WebAssembly [module](#). An embedder can establish security policies suitable for a respective environment by controlling or limiting which functional capabilities it makes available for import. Such considerations are an embedder's responsibility and the subject of [API definitions](#) for a specific environment.

Because WebAssembly is designed to be translated into machine code running directly on the host's hardware, it is potentially vulnerable to side channel attacks on the hardware level. In environments where this is a concern, an embedder may have to put suitable mitigations into place to isolate WebAssembly computations.

### 1.1.4 Dependencies

WebAssembly depends on two existing standards:

- [IEEE 754](#)<sup>4</sup>, for the representation of [floating-point data](#) and the semantics of respective [numeric operations](#).
- [Unicode](#)<sup>5</sup>, for the representation of import/export [names](#) and the [text format](#).

However, to make this specification self-contained, relevant aspects of the aforementioned standards are defined and formalized as part of this specification, such as the [binary representation](#) and [rounding](#) of floating-point values, and the [value range](#) and [UTF-8 encoding](#) of Unicode characters.

---

<sup>4</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

<sup>5</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/versions/latest/>

**Note**

The aforementioned standards are the authoritative source of all respective definitions. Formalizations given in this specification are intended to match these definitions. Any discrepancy in the syntax or semantics described is to be considered an error.

## 1.2 Overview

### 1.2.1 Concepts

WebAssembly encodes a low-level, assembly-like programming language. This language is structured around the following concepts.

**Values**

WebAssembly provides only four basic *number types*. These are integers and IEEE 754<sup>6</sup> numbers, each in 32 and 64 bit width. 32-bit integers also serve as Booleans and as memory addresses. The usual operations on these types are available, including the full matrix of conversions between them. There is no distinction between signed and unsigned integer types. Instead, integers are interpreted by respective operations as either unsigned or signed in two's complement representation.

In addition to these basic number types, there is a single 128 bit wide vector type representing different types of packed data. The supported representations are four 32-bit, or two 64-bit IEEE 754<sup>7</sup> numbers, or different widths of packed integer values, specifically two 64-bit integers, four 32-bit integers, eight 16-bit integers, or sixteen 8-bit integers.

Finally, values can consist of opaque *references* that represent pointers towards different sorts of entities. Unlike with other types, their size or representation is not observable.

**Instructions**

The computational model of WebAssembly is based on a *stack machine*. Code consists of sequences of *instructions* that are executed in order. Instructions manipulate values on an implicit *operand stack*<sup>8</sup> and fall into two main categories. *Simple* instructions perform basic operations on data. They pop arguments from the operand stack and push results back to it. *Control* instructions alter control flow. Control flow is *structured*, meaning it is expressed with well-nested constructs such as blocks, loops, and conditionals. Branches can only target such constructs.

**Traps**

Under some conditions, certain instructions may produce a *trap*, which immediately aborts execution. Traps cannot be handled by WebAssembly code, but are reported to the outside environment, where they typically can be caught.

**Functions**

Code is organized into separate *functions*. Each function takes a sequence of values as parameters and returns a sequence of values as results. Functions can call each other, including recursively, resulting in an implicit call stack that cannot be accessed directly. Functions may also declare mutable *local variables* that are usable as virtual registers.

**Tables**

A *table* is an array of opaque values of a particular *reference type*. It allows programs to select such values indirectly through a dynamic index operand. Thereby, for example, a program can call functions indirectly through a dynamic index into a table. This allows emulating function pointers by way of table indices.

**Linear Memory**

A *linear memory* is a contiguous, mutable array of raw bytes. Such a memory is created with an initial size but can be grown dynamically. A program can load and store values from/to a linear memory at any byte address (including unaligned). Integer loads and stores can specify a *storage size* which is smaller than the

<sup>6</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

<sup>7</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

<sup>8</sup> In practice, implementations need not maintain an actual operand stack. Instead, the stack can be viewed as a set of anonymous registers that are implicitly referenced by instructions. The *type system* ensures that the stack height, and thus any referenced register, is always known statically.

size of the respective value type. A trap occurs if an access is not within the bounds of the current memory size.

### Modules

A WebAssembly binary takes the form of a *module* that contains definitions for functions, tables, and linear memories, as well as mutable or immutable *global variables*. Definitions can also be *imported*, specifying a module/name pair and a suitable type. Each definition can optionally be *exported* under one or more names. In addition to definitions, modules can define initialization data for their memories or tables that takes the form of *segments* copied to given offsets. They can also define a *start function* that is automatically executed.

### Embedder

A WebAssembly implementation will typically be *embedded* into a *host* environment. This environment defines how loading of modules is initiated, how imports are provided (including host-side definitions), and how exports can be accessed. However, the details of any particular embedding are beyond the scope of this specification, and will instead be provided by complementary, environment-specific API definitions.

## 1.2.2 Semantic Phases

Conceptually, the semantics of WebAssembly is divided into three phases. For each part of the language, the specification specifies each of them.

### Decoding

WebAssembly modules are distributed in a *binary format*. *Decoding* processes that format and converts it into an internal representation of a module. In this specification, this representation is modelled by *abstract syntax*, but a real implementation could compile directly to machine code instead.

### Validation

A decoded module has to be *valid*. Validation checks a number of well-formedness conditions to guarantee that the module is meaningful and safe. In particular, it performs *type checking* of functions and the instruction sequences in their bodies, ensuring for example that the operand stack is used consistently.

### Execution

Finally, a valid module can be *executed*. Execution can be further divided into two phases:

**Instantiation.** A module *instance* is the dynamic representation of a module, complete with its own state and execution stack. Instantiation executes the module body itself, given definitions for all its imports. It initializes globals, memories and tables and invokes the module's start function if defined. It returns the instances of the module's exports.

**Invocation.** Once instantiated, further WebAssembly computations can be initiated by *invoking* an exported function on a module instance. Given the required arguments, that executes the respective function and returns its results.

Instantiation and invocation are operations within the embedding environment.



## 2.1 Conventions

WebAssembly is a programming language that has multiple concrete representations (its [binary format](#) and the [text format](#)). Both map to a common structure. For conciseness, this structure is described in the form of an *abstract syntax*. All parts of this specification are defined in terms of this abstract syntax.

### 2.1.1 Grammar Notation

The following conventions are adopted in defining grammar rules for abstract syntax.

- Terminal symbols (atoms) are written in sans-serif font or in symbolic form: `i32`, `nop`, `→`, `[, ]`.
- Nonterminal symbols are written in italic font: *valtype*, *instr*.
- $A^n$  is a sequence of  $n \geq 0$  iterations of  $A$ .
- $A^*$  is a possibly empty sequence of iterations of  $A$ . (This is a shorthand for  $A^n$  used where  $n$  is not relevant.)
- $A^+$  is a non-empty sequence of iterations of  $A$ . (This is a shorthand for  $A^n$  where  $n \geq 1$ .)
- $A^?$  is an optional occurrence of  $A$ . (This is a shorthand for  $A^n$  where  $n \leq 1$ .)
- Productions are written  $sym ::= A_1 \mid \dots \mid A_n$ .
- Large productions may be split into multiple definitions, indicated by ending the first one with explicit ellipses,  $sym ::= A_1 \mid \dots$ , and starting continuations with ellipses,  $sym ::= \dots \mid A_2$ .
- Some productions are augmented with side conditions, “if *condition*”, that provide a shorthand for a combinatorial expansion of the production into many separate cases.
- If the same meta variable or non-terminal symbol appears multiple times in a production, then all those occurrences must have the same instantiation. (This is a shorthand for a side condition requiring multiple different variables to be equal.)

### 2.1.2 Auxiliary Notation

When dealing with syntactic constructs the following notation is also used:

- $\epsilon$  denotes the empty sequence.
- $|s|$  denotes the length of a sequence  $s$ .
- $s[i]$  denotes the  $i$ -th element of a sequence  $s$ , starting from 0.

- $s[i : n]$  denotes the sub-sequence  $s[i] \dots s[i + n - 1]$  of a sequence  $s$ .
- $s[[i] = A]$  denotes the same sequence as  $s$ , except that the  $i$ -th element is replaced with  $A$ .
- $s[[i : n] = A^n]$  denotes the same sequence as  $s$ , except that the sub-sequence  $s[i : n]$  is replaced with  $A^n$ .
- $s_1 \oplus s_2$  denotes the sequence  $s_1$  concatenated with  $s_2$ ; this is equivalent to  $s_1 s_2$ , but used for clarity.
- $\bigoplus s^*$  denotes the flattened sequence, formed by concatenating all sequences  $s_i$  in  $s^*$ .
- $A \in s$  denotes that  $A$  is a member of the sequence  $s$ , that is,  $s$  is of the form  $s_1 A s_2$  for some sequences  $s_1, s_2$ .

Moreover, the following conventions are employed:

- The notation  $x^n$ , where  $x$  is a non-terminal symbol, is treated as a meta variable ranging over respective sequences of  $x$  (similarly for  $x^*$ ,  $x^+$ ,  $x^?$ ).
- When given a sequence  $x^n$ , then the occurrences of  $x$  in an iterated sequence  $(\dots x \dots)^n$  are assumed to denote the individual elements of  $x^n$ , respectively (similarly for  $x^*$ ,  $x^+$ ,  $x^?$ ). This implicitly expresses a form of mapping syntactic constructions over a sequence.
- $e^{i < n}$  denotes the same sequence as  $e^n$ , but implicitly also defines  $i^n$  to be the sequence of values 0 to  $(n - 1)$ .

#### Note

For example, if  $x^n$  is the sequence  $a b c$ , then  $(f(x) + 1)^n$  denotes the sequence  $(f(a) + 1) (f(b) + 1) (f(c) + 1)$ . The form  $e^{i < n}$  additionally gives access to an index variable inside the iteration. For example,  $(f(x) + i)^{i < n}$  denotes the sequence  $(f(a) + 0) (f(b) + 1) (f(c) + 2)$ .

Productions of the following form are interpreted as *records* that map a fixed set of fields  $\text{field}_i$  to “values”  $A_i$ , respectively:

$$r ::= \{ \text{field}_1 A_1, \text{field}_2 A_2, \dots \}$$

The following notation is adopted for manipulating such records:

- Where the type of a record is clear from context, empty fields with value  $\epsilon$  are often omitted.
- $r.\text{field}$  denotes the contents of the field component of  $r$ .
- $r[\text{field} = A]$  denotes the same record as  $r$ , except that the value of the field component is replaced with  $A$ .
- $r[\text{field} = \bigoplus A^*]$  denotes the same record as  $r$ , except that  $A^*$  is appended to the sequence value of the field component, that is, it is short for  $r[\text{field} = r.\text{field} \oplus A^*]$ .
- $r_1 \oplus r_2$  denotes the composition of two identically shaped records by concatenating each field of sequences point-wise:

$$\{ \text{field}_1 A_1^*, \text{field}_2 A_2^*, \dots \} \oplus \{ \text{field}_1 B_1^*, \text{field}_2 B_2^*, \dots \} = \{ \text{field}_1 (A_1^* \oplus B_1^*), \text{field}_2 (A_2^* \oplus B_2^*), \dots \}$$

- $\bigoplus r^*$  denotes the composition of a sequence of records, respectively; if the sequence is empty, then all fields of the resulting record are empty.

The update notation for sequences and records generalizes recursively to nested components accessed by “paths”  $pth ::= ([i] \mid .\text{field})^+$ :

- $s[[i] pth = A]$  is short for  $s[[i] = s[[i][pth = A]]]$ ,
- $r[\text{field} pth = A]$  is short for  $r[\text{field} = r.\text{field}[pth = A]]$ .

### 2.1.3 Lists

*Lists* are bounded sequences of the form  $A^n$  (or  $A^*$ ), where the  $A$  can either be values or complex constructions. A list can have at most  $2^{32} - 1$  elements.

$$\text{list}(X) ::= X^* \quad \text{if } |X^*| < 2^{32}$$

## 2.2 Values

WebAssembly programs operate on primitive numeric *values*. Moreover, in the definition of programs, immutable sequences of values occur to represent more complex data, such as text strings or other vectors.

### 2.2.1 Bytes

The simplest form of value are raw uninterpreted *bytes*. In the abstract syntax they are represented as hexadecimal literals.

$$\text{byte} ::= 0x00 \mid \dots \mid 0xFF$$

#### Conventions

- The meta variable  $b$  ranges over bytes.
- Bytes are sometimes interpreted as natural numbers  $n < 256$ .

### 2.2.2 Integers

Different classes of *integers* with different value ranges are distinguished by their *bit width*  $N$  and by whether they are *unsigned* or *signed*.

$$\begin{aligned} uN &::= 0 \mid \dots \mid 2^N - 1 \\ sN &::= -2^{N-1} \mid \dots \mid -1 \mid 0 \mid +1 \mid \dots \mid +2^{N-1} - 1 \\ iN &::= uN \end{aligned}$$

The class  $i$  defines *uninterpreted* integers, whose signedness interpretation can vary depending on context. In the abstract syntax, they are represented as unsigned values. However, some operations [convert](#) them to signed based on a two's complement interpretation.

#### Note

The main integer types occurring in this specification are [u8](#), [u32](#), [u64](#), and [u128](#). However, other sizes occur as auxiliary constructions, e.g., in the definition of [floating-point](#) numbers.

#### Conventions

- The meta variables  $m, n, i, j$  range over integers.
- Numbers may be denoted by simple arithmetics, as in the grammar above. In order to distinguish arithmetics like  $2^N$  from sequences like  $(1)^N$ , the latter is distinguished with parentheses.

### 2.2.3 Floating-Point

*Floating-point* data represents 32 or 64 bit values that correspond to the respective binary formats of the [IEEE 754](#)<sup>9</sup> standard (Section 3.3).

Every value has a *sign* and a *magnitude*. Magnitudes can either be expressed as *normal* numbers of the form  $m_0 \cdot m_1 m_2 \dots m_m \cdot 2^e$ , where  $e$  is the exponent and  $m$  is the *significand* whose most significant bit  $m_0$  is 1, or as a *subnormal* number where the exponent is fixed to the smallest possible value and  $m_0$  is 0; among the subnormals

<sup>9</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

are positive and negative zero values. Since the significands are binary values, normals are represented in the form  $(1 + m \cdot 2^{-M}) \cdot 2^e$  in the abstract syntax, where  $M$  is the bit width of  $m$ ; similarly for subnormals.

Possible magnitudes also include the special values  $\infty$  (infinity) and  $\text{nan}$  (*NaN*, not a number). NaN values have a *payload* that describes the mantissa bits in the underlying [binary representation](#). No distinction is made between signalling and quiet NaNs.

$$\begin{aligned} fN &::= +f\text{magN} \mid -f\text{magN} \\ f\text{magN} &::= \begin{array}{ll} (1 + m \cdot 2^{-M}) \cdot 2^e & \text{if } m < 2^M \wedge 2 - 2^{E-1} \leq e \leq 2^{E-1} - 1 \\ (0 + m \cdot 2^{-M}) \cdot 2^e & \text{if } m < 2^M \wedge 2 - 2^{E-1} = e \\ \infty & \\ \text{nan}(m) & \text{if } 1 \leq m < 2^M \end{array} \end{aligned}$$

where  $M = \text{signif}(N)$  and  $E = \text{expon}(N)$  with

$$\begin{aligned} \text{signif}(32) &= 23 \\ \text{signif}(64) &= 52 \\ \text{expon}(32) &= 8 \\ \text{expon}(64) &= 11 \end{aligned}$$

A *canonical NaN* is a floating-point value  $\pm \text{nan}(\text{canon}_N)$  where  $\text{canon}_N$  is a payload whose most significant bit is 1 while all others are 0:

$$\text{canon}_N = 2^{\text{signif}(N)-1}$$

An *arithmetic NaN* is a floating-point value  $\pm \text{nan}(m)$  with  $m \geq \text{canon}_N$ , such that the most significant bit is 1 while all others are arbitrary.

### Note

In the abstract syntax, subnormals are distinguished by the leading 0 of the significand. The exponent of subnormals has the same value as the smallest possible exponent of a normal number. Only in the [binary representation](#) the exponent of a subnormal is encoded differently than the exponent of any normal number.

The notion of canonical NaN defined here is unrelated to the notion of canonical NaN that the [IEEE 754](#)<sup>10</sup> standard (Section 3.5.2) defines for decimal interchange formats.

## Conventions

- The meta variable  $z$  ranges over floating-point values where clear from context.
- Where clear from context, shorthands like  $+1$  denote floating point values like  $+(1 + 1 \cdot 2^{-M}) \cdot 2^0$ .

### 2.2.4 Vectors

*Numeric vectors* are 128-bit values that are processed by vector instructions (also known as *SIMD* instructions, single instruction multiple data). They are represented in the abstract syntax using [u128](#). The interpretation of lane types ([integer](#) or [floating-point](#) numbers) and lane sizes are determined by the specific instruction operating on them.

### 2.2.5 Names

*Names* are sequences of *characters*, which are *scalar values* as defined by [Unicode](#)<sup>11</sup> (Section 2.4).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{name} &::= \text{char}^* && \text{if } |\text{utf8}(\text{char}^*)| < 2^{32} \\ \text{char} &::= \text{U+00} \mid \dots \mid \text{U+D7FF} \mid \text{U+E000} \mid \dots \mid \text{U+10FFFF} \end{aligned}$$

Due to the limitations of the [binary format](#), the length of a name is bounded by the length of its [UTF-8](#) encoding.

<sup>10</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

<sup>11</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/versions/latest/>

## Convention

- Characters (Unicode scalar values) are sometimes used interchangeably with natural numbers  $n < 1114112$ .

## 2.3 Types

Various entities in WebAssembly are classified by types. Types are checked during [validation](#), [instantiation](#), and possibly [execution](#).

### 2.3.1 Number Types

*Number types* classify numeric values.

$$\text{numtype} ::= \text{i32} \mid \text{i64} \mid \text{f32} \mid \text{f64}$$

The types `i32` and `i64` classify 32 and 64 bit integers, respectively. Integers are not inherently signed or unsigned, their interpretation is determined by individual operations.

The types `f32` and `f64` classify 32 and 64 bit floating-point data, respectively. They correspond to the respective binary floating-point representations, also known as *single* and *double* precision, as defined by the [IEEE 754](#)<sup>12</sup> standard (Section 3.3).

Number types are *transparent*, meaning that their bit patterns can be observed. Values of number type can be stored in [memories](#).

## Conventions

- The notation  $|t|$  denotes the *bit width* of a number type  $t$ . That is,  $|\text{i32}| = |\text{f32}| = 32$  and  $|\text{i64}| = |\text{f64}| = 64$ .

### 2.3.2 Vector Types

*Vector types* classify vectors of [numeric](#) values processed by vector instructions (also known as *SIMD* instructions, single instruction multiple data).

$$\text{vectype} ::= \text{v128}$$

The type `v128` corresponds to a 128 bit vector of packed integer or floating-point data. The packed data can be interpreted as signed or unsigned integers, single or double precision floating-point values, or a single 128 bit type. The interpretation is determined by individual operations.

Vector types, like [number types](#) are *transparent*, meaning that their bit patterns can be observed. Values of vector type can be stored in [memories](#).

## Conventions

- The notation  $|t|$  for [bit width](#) extends to vector types as well, that is,  $|\text{v128}| = 128$ .

### 2.3.3 Heap Types

*Heap types* classify objects in the runtime [store](#). There are three disjoint hierarchies of heap types:

- *function types* classify [functions](#),
- *aggregate types* classify dynamically allocated *managed* data, such as *structures*, *arrays*, or *unboxed scalars*,
- *external types* classify *external* references possibly owned by the [embedder](#).

The values from the latter two hierarchies are interconvertible by ways of the [extern.convert\\_any](#) and [any.convert\\_extern](#) instructions. That is, both type hierarchies are inhabited by an isomorphic set of values, but

<sup>12</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

may have different, incompatible representations in practice.

```

absheaptypes ::= any | eq | i31 | struct | array | none
               | func | nofunc
               | exn | noexn
               | extern | noextern
               | ...
heaptypes    ::= absheaptypes | typeuse
typeuse     ::= typeid | ...

```

A heap type is either *abstract* or *concrete*. A concrete heap type consists of a *type use*, which is a *type index*. It classifies an object of the respective *type* defined in a module. Abstract types are denoted by individual keywords.

The type *func* denotes the common supertype of all *function types*, regardless of their concrete definition. Dually, the type *nofunc* denotes the common subtype of all *function types*, regardless of their concrete definition. This type has no values.

The type *exn* denotes the common supertype of all *exception references*. This type has no concrete subtypes. Dually, the type *noexn* denotes the common subtype of all forms of exception references. This type has no values.

The type *extern* denotes the common supertype of all external references received through the *embedder*. This type has no concrete subtypes. Dually, the type *noextern* denotes the common subtype of all forms of external references. This type has no values.

The type *any* denotes the common supertype of all aggregate types, as well as possibly abstract values produced by *internalizing* an external reference of type *extern*. Dually, the type *none* denotes the common subtype of all forms of aggregate types. This type has no values.

The type *eq* is a subtype of *any* that includes all types for which references can be compared, i.e., aggregate values and *i31*.

The types *struct* and *array* denote the common supertypes of all *structure* and *array* aggregates, respectively.

The type *i31* denotes *unboxed scalars*, that is, integers injected into references. Their observable value range is limited to 31 bits.

### Note

Values of type *i31* are not actually allocated in the store, but represented in a way that allows them to be mixed with actual references into the store without ambiguity. Engines need to perform some form of *pointer tagging* to achieve this, which is why one bit is reserved. Since this type is to be reliably unboxed on all hardware platforms supported by WebAssembly, it cannot be wider than 32 bits minus the tag bit.

Although the types *none*, *nofunc*, *noexn*, and *noextern* are not inhabited by any values, they can be used to form the types of all null *references* in their respective hierarchy. For example, *(ref null nofunc)* is the generic type of a null reference compatible with all function reference types.

The syntax of abstract heap types and type uses is *extended* with additional forms for the purpose of specifying *validation* and *execution*.

## 2.3.4 Reference Types

*Reference types* classify *values* that are first-class references to objects in the runtime *store*.

```

reftype ::= ref null? heaptypes

```

A reference type is characterised by the *heap type* it points to.

In addition, a reference type of the form *ref null ht* is *nullable*, meaning that it can either be a proper reference to *ht* or *null*. Other references are *non-null*.

Reference types are *opaque*, meaning that neither their size nor their bit pattern can be observed. Values of reference type can be stored in *tables* but not in *memories*.

## Conventions

- The reference type `anyref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null any)`.
- The reference type `eqref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null eq)`.
- The reference type `i31ref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null i31)`.
- The reference type `structref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null struct)`.
- The reference type `arrayref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null array)`.
- The reference type `funcref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null func)`.
- The reference type `exnref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null exn)`.
- The reference type `externref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null extern)`.
- The reference type `nullref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null none)`.
- The reference type `nullfuncref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null nofunc)`.
- The reference type `nullexnref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null noexn)`.
- The reference type `nullexternref` is an abbreviation for `(ref null noextern)`.

### 2.3.5 Value Types

*Value types* classify the individual values that WebAssembly code can compute with and the values that a variable accepts. They are either *number types*, *vector types*, or *reference types*.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{consttype} &::= \text{numtype} \mid \text{vectype} \\ \text{valtype} &::= \text{numtype} \mid \text{vectype} \mid \text{reftype} \mid \dots \end{aligned}$$

The syntax of value types is *extended* with additional forms for the purpose of specifying *validation*.

## Conventions

- The meta variable  $t$  ranges over value types or subclasses thereof where clear from context.

### 2.3.6 Result Types

*Result types* classify the result of *executing instructions* or *functions*, which is a sequence of values, written with brackets.

$$\text{resulttype} ::= \text{list}(\text{valtype})$$

### 2.3.7 Function Types

*Function types* classify the signature of *functions*, mapping a list of parameters to a list of results. They are also used to classify the inputs and outputs of *instructions*.

$$\text{functype} ::= \text{resulttype} \rightarrow \text{resulttype}$$

### 2.3.8 Aggregate Types

*Aggregate types* describe compound objects consisting of multiple values. These are either *structures* or *arrays*, which both consist of a list of possibly mutable, possibly packed *fields*. Structures are heterogeneous, but require static indexing, while arrays need to be homogeneous, but allow dynamic indexing.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{structtype} &::= \text{list}(\text{fieldtype}) \\ \text{arraytype} &::= \text{fieldtype} \\ \text{fieldtype} &::= \text{mut}^? \text{storagetype} \\ \text{storagetype} &::= \text{valtype} \mid \text{packtype} \\ \text{packtype} &::= \text{i8} \mid \text{i16} \end{aligned}$$

## Conventions

- The notation  $|t|$  for **bit width** extends to packed types as well, that is,  $|i8| = 8$  and  $|i16| = 16$ .
- The auxiliary function `unpack` maps a storage type to the **value type** obtained when accessing a field:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{unpack}(\text{valtype}) &= \text{valtype} \\ \text{unpack}(\text{packtype}) &= i32\end{aligned}$$

## 2.3.9 Composite Types

*Composite types* are all types composed from simpler types, including **function types** and **aggregate types**.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{comptype} &::= \text{struct } \text{structtype} \\ &\quad | \text{array } \text{arraytype} \\ &\quad | \text{func } \text{functype}\end{aligned}$$

### 2.3.10 Recursive Types

*Recursive types* denote a group of mutually recursive **composite types**, each of which can optionally declare a list of **type indices** of supertypes that it **matches**. Each type can also be declared *final*, preventing further subtyping.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{rectype} &::= \text{rec list}(\text{subtype}) \\ \text{subtype} &::= \text{sub final? } \text{typeuse}^* \text{ comptype} \\ \text{typeuse} &::= \text{typeid}x \mid \dots\end{aligned}$$

In a **module**, each member of a recursive type is assigned a separate **type index**.

The syntax of *type uses* representing these type indices is later **extended** with additional forms for the purpose of specifying **validation** and **execution**.

### 2.3.11 Address Type

*Address types* are a subset of **number types** that classify the values that can be used as offsets into **memories** and **tables**.

$$\text{addrtype} ::= i32 \mid i64$$

## Conventions

The *minimum* of two address types is defined as the address type whose **bit width** is the minimum of the two.

$$\begin{aligned}\min(at_1, at_2) &= at_1 \quad \text{if } |at_1| \leq |at_2| \\ \min(at_1, at_2) &= at_2 \quad \text{otherwise}\end{aligned}$$

### 2.3.12 Limits

*Limits* classify the size range of resizable storage associated with **memory types** and **table types**.

$$\text{limits} ::= [u64 \dots u64]$$

### 2.3.13 Memory Types

*Memory types* classify linear **memories** and their size range.

$$\text{memtype} ::= \text{addrtype } \text{limits } \text{page}$$

The limits constrain the minimum and optionally the maximum size of a memory. The limits are given in units of **page size**.



### 2.3.14 Table Types

*Table types* classify [tables](#) over elements of [reference type](#) within a size range.

$$tabletype ::= addrtype \text{ limits } reftype$$

Like memories, tables are constrained by limits for their minimum and optionally maximum size. The limits are given in numbers of entries.

### 2.3.15 Global Types

*Global types* classify [global](#) variables, which hold a value and can either be mutable or immutable.

$$globaltype ::= mut^? valtype$$

### 2.3.16 Element Types

*Element types* classify [element segments](#) by the [reference type](#) of its elements.

$$elemtype ::= reftype$$

### 2.3.17 Data Types

*Data types* classify [data segments](#). Since the contents of a data segment requires no further classification, they merely consist of a universal marker `ok` indicating well-formedness.

$$datatype ::= ok$$

### 2.3.18 External Types

*External types* classify [imports](#) and [external addresses](#) with their respective types.

$$externtype ::= func \text{ typeuse } | global \text{ globaltype } | table \text{ tabletype } | mem \text{ memtype } | tag \text{ typeuse }$$

For functions and tags, the type index has to refer to the definition of a [function type](#). In the case of a tag, the parameters of the function type define the list of values associated with the exception thrown with this tag. The result type is empty for exception tags.

#### Note

Future versions of WebAssembly may have additional uses for tags, and may allow non-empty result types in the function types of tags.

## Conventions

The following auxiliary notation is defined for sequences of external types. It filters out entries of a specific kind in an order-preserving fashion:

<code>funcs(<math>\epsilon</math>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code><math>\epsilon</math></code>	
<code>funcs((<code>func</code> <i>dt</i>) <i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code>dt funcs(<i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	
<code>funcs(<i>externtype</i> <i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code>funcs(<i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	otherwise
<code>tables(<math>\epsilon</math>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code><math>\epsilon</math></code>	
<code>tables((<code>table</code> <i>tt</i>) <i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code>tt tables(<i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	
<code>tables(<i>externtype</i> <i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code>tables(<i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	otherwise
<code>mems(<math>\epsilon</math>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code><math>\epsilon</math></code>	
<code>mems((<code>mem</code> <i>mt</i>) <i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code>mt mems(<i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	
<code>mems(<i>externtype</i> <i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code>mems(<i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	otherwise
<code>globals(<math>\epsilon</math>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code><math>\epsilon</math></code>	
<code>globals((<code>global</code> <i>gt</i>) <i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code>gt globals(<i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	
<code>globals(<i>externtype</i> <i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code>globals(<i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	otherwise
<code>tags(<math>\epsilon</math>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code><math>\epsilon</math></code>	
<code>tags((<code>tag</code> <i>jt</i>) <i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code>jt tags(<i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	
<code>tags(<i>externtype</i> <i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	<code>=</code>	<code>tags(<i>xt</i><sup>*</sup>)</code>	otherwise

## 2.4 Instructions

WebAssembly code consists of sequences of *instructions*. Its computational model is based on a *stack machine* in that instructions manipulate values on an implicit *operand stack*, consuming (popping) argument values and producing or returning (pushing) result values.

In addition to dynamic operands from the stack, some instructions also have static *immediate* arguments, typically *indices* or type annotations, which are part of the instruction itself.

Some instructions are *structured* in that they contain nested sequences of instructions.

The following sections group instructions into a number of different categories.

The syntax of instruction is further *extended* with additional forms for the purpose of specifying *execution*.

### 2.4.1 Parametric Instructions

Instructions in this group can operate on operands of any *value type*.

```

instr ::= nop
        | unreachable
        | drop
        | select (valtype*)?
        | ...

```

The `nop` instruction does nothing.

The `unreachable` instruction causes an unconditional *trap*.

The `drop` instruction simply throws away a single operand.

The `select` instruction selects one of its first two operands based on whether its third operand is zero or not. It may include a *value type* determining the type of these operands. If the type immediate is absent, the operands must be of *numeric type*.

#### Note

In future versions of WebAssembly, the type annotation on `select` may allow for more than a single value being selected at the same time.

## 2.4.2 Numeric Instructions

Numeric instructions provide basic operations over numeric *values* of specific *type*. These operations closely match respective operations available in hardware.

<i>sz</i>	::=	8   16   32   64	
<i>sx</i>	::=	u   s	
<i>num<sub>iN</sub></i>	::=	<i>iN</i>	
<i>num<sub>fN</sub></i>	::=	<i>fN</i>	
<i>instr</i>	::=	...	
		<i>numtype</i> .const <i>num<sub>numtype</sub></i>	
		<i>numtype</i> .unop <sub><i>numtype</i></sub>	
		<i>numtype</i> .binop <sub><i>numtype</i></sub>	
		<i>numtype</i> .testop <sub><i>numtype</i></sub>	
		<i>numtype</i> .relop <sub><i>numtype</i></sub>	
		<i>numtype</i> <sub>1</sub> .cvtop <sub><i>numtype</i><sub>2</sub>, <i>numtype</i><sub>1</sub> - <i>numtype</i><sub>2</sub></sub>	
		...	
<i>unop<sub>iN</sub></i>	::=	clz   ctz   popcnt   extends <sub><i>sz</i></sub> <sub><i>s</i></sub>	if <i>sz</i> < <i>N</i>
<i>unop<sub>fN</sub></i>	::=	abs   neg   sqrt   ceil   floor   trunc   nearest	
<i>binop<sub>iN</sub></i>	::=	add   sub   mul   div <sub><i>sx</i></sub>   rem <sub><i>sx</i></sub>	
		and   or   xor   shl   shr <sub><i>sx</i></sub>   rotl   rotr	
<i>binop<sub>fN</sub></i>	::=	add   sub   mul   div   min   max   copysign	
<i>testop<sub>iN</sub></i>	::=	eqz	
<i>relop<sub>iN</sub></i>	::=	eq   ne   lt <sub><i>sx</i></sub>   gt <sub><i>sx</i></sub>   le <sub><i>sx</i></sub>   ge <sub><i>sx</i></sub>	
<i>relop<sub>fN</sub></i>	::=	eq   ne   lt   gt   le   ge	
<i>cvtop<sub>iN<sub>1</sub>,iN<sub>2</sub></sub></i>	::=	extend <sub><i>sx</i></sub>	if <i>N</i> <sub>1</sub> < <i>N</i> <sub>2</sub>
		wrap	if <i>N</i> <sub>1</sub> > <i>N</i> <sub>2</sub>
<i>cvtop<sub>iN<sub>1</sub>,fN<sub>2</sub></sub></i>	::=	convert <sub><i>sx</i></sub>	
		reinterpret	if <i>N</i> <sub>1</sub> = <i>N</i> <sub>2</sub>
<i>cvtop<sub>fN<sub>1</sub>,iN<sub>2</sub></sub></i>	::=	trunc <sub><i>sx</i></sub>	
		trunc_sat <sub><i>sx</i></sub>	
		reinterpret	if <i>N</i> <sub>1</sub> = <i>N</i> <sub>2</sub>
<i>cvtop<sub>fN<sub>1</sub>,fN<sub>2</sub></sub></i>	::=	promote	if <i>N</i> <sub>1</sub> < <i>N</i> <sub>2</sub>
		demote	if <i>N</i> <sub>1</sub> > <i>N</i> <sub>2</sub>

Numeric instructions are divided by *number type*. For each type, several subcategories can be distinguished:

- *Constants*: return a static constant.
- *Unary Operations*: consume one operand and produce one result of the respective type.
- *Binary Operations*: consume two operands and produce one result of the respective type.
- *Tests*: consume one operand of the respective type and produce a Boolean integer result.
- *Comparisons*: consume two operands of the respective type and produce a Boolean integer result.
- *Conversions*: consume a value of one type and produce a result of another (the source type of the conversion is the one after the “\_”).

Some integer instructions come in two flavors, where a signedness annotation *sx* distinguishes whether the operands are to be interpreted as *unsigned* or *signed* integers. For the other integer instructions, the use of two’s complement for the signed interpretation means that they behave the same regardless of signedness.

<i>lanetype</i>	::=	<i>numtype</i>   <i>packtype</i>	
<i>dim</i>	::=	1   2   4   8   16	
<i>shape</i>	::=	<i>lanetype</i> × <i>dim</i>	if $ lanetype  \cdot dim = 128$
<i>ishape</i>	::=	<i>shape</i>	if $lanetype(shape) = in$
<i>bshape</i>	::=	<i>shape</i>	if $lanetype(shape) = is$
<i>half</i> <sub>iN<sub>1</sub> × M<sub>1</sub>, iN<sub>2</sub> × M<sub>2</sub></sub>	::=	low   high	if $2 \cdot N_1 = N_2$
<i>half</i> <sub>iN<sub>1</sub> × M<sub>1</sub>, fN<sub>2</sub> × M<sub>2</sub></sub>	::=	low	if $2 \cdot N_1 = N_2 = 64$
<i>zero</i> <sub>fN<sub>1</sub> × M<sub>1</sub>, iN<sub>2</sub> × M<sub>2</sub></sub>	::=	zero	if $2 \cdot N_2 = N_1 = 64$
<i>laneidx</i>	::=	<i>us</i>	
<i>instr</i>	::=	...	
		<i>vectype</i> .const <i>vec</i> <sub><i>vectype</i></sub>	
		<i>vectype</i> .vvunop	
		<i>vectype</i> .vbinop	
		<i>vectype</i> .vternop	
		<i>vectype</i> .vtestop	
		<i>shape</i> .vunop <sub><i>shape</i></sub>	
		<i>shape</i> .vbinop <sub><i>shape</i></sub>	
		<i>shape</i> .vternop <sub><i>shape</i></sub>	
		<i>shape</i> .vtestop <sub><i>shape</i></sub>	
		<i>shape</i> .vrel <sub><i>shape</i></sub>	
		<i>ishape</i> .vshift <sub><i>ishape</i></sub>	
		<i>ishape</i> .bitmask	
		<i>bshape</i> .vswizzlop <sub><i>bshape</i></sub>	
		<i>bshape</i> .shuffle <i>laneidx</i> *	if $ laneidx^*  = \dim(bshape)$
		<i>ishape</i> <sub>1</sub> .vertunop <sub><i>ishape</i><sub>2</sub>, <i>ishape</i><sub>1</sub>—<i>ishape</i><sub>2</sub></sub>	
		<i>ishape</i> <sub>1</sub> .vertbinop <sub><i>ishape</i><sub>2</sub>, <i>ishape</i><sub>1</sub>—<i>ishape</i><sub>2</sub></sub>	
		<i>ishape</i> <sub>1</sub> .vertternop <sub><i>ishape</i><sub>2</sub>, <i>ishape</i><sub>1</sub>—<i>ishape</i><sub>2</sub></sub>	
		<i>ishape</i> <sub>1</sub> .narrow_ <i>ishape</i> <sub>2</sub> _sx	if $ lanetype(ishape_2)  = 2$
		<i>shape</i> <sub>1</sub> .vcvt <sub><i>shape</i><sub>2</sub>, <i>shape</i><sub>1</sub>—zero<sup>?</sup><sub><i>shape</i><sub>2</sub>, <i>shape</i><sub>1</sub>—<i>shape</i><sub>2</sub>—half<sup>?</sup><sub><i>shape</i><sub>2</sub>, <i>shape</i><sub>1</sub></sub></sub></sub>	
		<i>shape</i> .splat	
		<i>shape</i> .extract_lane_ <i>sx</i> <sup>?</sup> <i>laneidx</i>	if $sx^? = \epsilon \Leftrightarrow lanetype(shape)$
		<i>shape</i> .replace_lane <i>laneidx</i>	
		...	

Instructions prefixed with `v128` do not involve a specific interpretation, and treat the `v128` as either an `i128` value or a vector of 128 individual bits.

For example, the shape `i32x4` interprets the operand as four `i32` values, packed into an `i128`. The bit width of the lane type  $t$  times  $N$  always is 128.

$vvunop$	::=	not	
$vbinop$	::=	and   andnot   or   xor	
$vvternop$	::=	bitselect	
$vtestop$	::=	any_true	
$vunop_{iN \times M}$	::=	abs   neg	
		popcnt	if $N = 8$
$vunop_{fN \times M}$	::=	abs   neg   sqrt   ceil   floor   trunc   nearest	
$vbinop_{iN \times M}$	::=	add	
		sub	
		add_sat_ $sx$	if $N \leq 16$
		sub_sat_ $sx$	if $N \leq 16$
		mul	if $N \geq 16$
		avgr_u	if $N \leq 16$
		q15mulr_sat_s	if $N = 16$
		relaxed_q15mulr_s	if $N = 16$
		min_ $sx$	if $N \leq 32$
		max_ $sx$	if $N \leq 32$
$vbinop_{fN \times M}$	::=	add   sub   mul   div   min   max   pmin   pmax	
		relaxed_min   relaxed_max	
$vternop_{iN \times M}$	::=	relaxed_laneselect	
$vternop_{fN \times M}$	::=	relaxed_madd   relaxed_nmadd	
$vtestop_{iN \times M}$	::=	all_true	
$vrelop_{iN \times M}$	::=	eq   ne	
		lt_ $sx$	if $N \neq 64 \vee sx = s$
		gt_ $sx$	if $N \neq 64 \vee sx = s$
		le_ $sx$	if $N \neq 64 \vee sx = s$
		ge_ $sx$	if $N \neq 64 \vee sx = s$
$vrelop_{fN \times M}$	::=	eq   ne   lt   gt   le   ge	
$vswizzlop_{i8 \times M}$	::=	swizzle   relaxed_swizzle	
$vshifto_{iN \times M}$	::=	shl   shr_ $sx$	
$vertexunop_{iN_1 \times M_1, iN_2 \times M_2}$	::=	extadd_pairwise_ $sx$	if $16 \leq 2 \cdot N_1 = N_2 \leq 32$
$vertexbinop_{iN_1 \times M_1, iN_2 \times M_2}$	::=	extmul_ $sx\_half_{iN_1 \times M_1, iN_2 \times M_2}$	if $2 \cdot N_1 = N_2 \geq 16$
		dot_s	if $2 \cdot N_1 = N_2 = 32$
		relaxed_dot_s	if $2 \cdot N_1 = N_2 = 16$
$vertexternop_{iN_1 \times M_1, iN_2 \times M_2}$	::=	relaxed_dot_add_s	if $4 \cdot N_1 = N_2 = 32$
$vcvtop_{iN_1 \times M_1, iN_2 \times M_2}$	::=	extend_ $sx$	if $N_2 = 2 \cdot N_1$
$vcvtop_{iN_1 \times M_1, fN_2 \times M_2}$	::=	convert_ $sx$	if $N_2 \geq N_1 = 32$
$vcvtop_{fN_1 \times M_1, iN_2 \times M_2}$	::=	trunc_sat_ $sx$	if $N_1 \geq N_2 = 32$
		relaxed_trunc_ $sx$	if $N_1 \geq N_2 = 32$
$vcvtop_{fN_1 \times M_1, fN_2 \times M_2}$	::=	demote	if $N_1 > N_2$
		promote	if $N_1 < N_2$

Vector instructions can be grouped into several subcategories:

- *Constants*: return a static constant.
- *Unary Operations*: consume one v128 operand and produce one v128 result.
- *Binary Operations*: consume two v128 operands and produce one v128 result.
- *Ternary Operations*: consume three v128 operands and produce one v128 result.
- *Tests*: consume one v128 operand and produce a Boolean integer result.
- *Shifts*: consume a v128 operand and an i32 operand, producing one v128 result.

- *Splats*: consume a value of numeric type and produce a v128 result of a specified shape.
- *Extract lanes*: consume a v128 operand and return the numeric value in a given lane.
- *Replace lanes*: consume a v128 operand and a numeric value for a given lane, and produce a v128 result.

Some vector instructions have a signedness annotation *sx* which distinguishes whether the elements in the operands are to be interpreted as *unsigned* or *signed* integers. For the other vector instructions, the use of two's complement for the signed interpretation means that they behave the same regardless of signedness.

## Conventions

- The function `lanetype(shape)` extracts the lane type of a shape.
- The function `dim(shape)` extracts the dimension of a shape.

## 2.4.4 Reference Instructions

Instructions in this group are concerned with accessing *references*.

```

instr ::= ...
        | ref.func funcidx
        | ref.null heapttype
        | ref.is_null
        | ref.as_non_null
        | ref.eq
        | ref.test reftype
        | ref.cast reftype
        | ...

```

The `ref.null` and `ref.func` instructions produce a *null* value or a reference to a given function, respectively.

The instruction `ref.is_null` checks for null, while `ref.as_non_null` converts a *nullable* to a non-null one, and *traps* if it encounters null.

The `ref.eq` compares two references.

The instructions `ref.test` and `ref.cast` test the *dynamic type* of a reference operand. The former merely returns the result of the test, while the latter performs a downcast and *traps* if the operand's type does not match.

### Note

The `br_on_null` and `br_on_non_null` instructions provide versions of `ref.as_null` that branch depending on the success or failure of a null test instead of trapping. Similarly, the `br_on_cast` and `br_on_cast_fail` instructions provide versions of `ref.cast` that branch depending on the success of the downcast instead of trapping.

An additional instruction operating on function references is the *control instruction* `call_ref`.

## 2.4.5 Aggregate Instructions

Instructions in this group are concerned with creating and accessing [references](#) to [aggregate](#) types.

```

instr ::= ...
        | struct.new typeidx
        | struct.new_default typeidx
        | struct.get_sx? typeidx u32
        | struct.set typeidx u32
        | array.new typeidx
        | array.new_default typeidx
        | array.new_fixed typeidx u32
        | array.new_data typeidx dataidx
        | array.new_elem typeidx elemidx
        | array.get_sx? typeidx
        | array.set typeidx
        | array.len
        | array.fill typeidx
        | array.copy typeidx typeidx
        | array.init_data typeidx dataidx
        | array.init_elem typeidx elemidx
        | ref.i31
        | i31.get_sx
        | extern.convert_any
        | any.convert_extern
        | ...

```

The instructions `struct.new` and `struct.new_default` allocate a new [structure](#), initializing them either with operands or with default values. The remaining instructions on structs access individual fields, allowing for different sign extension modes in the case of [packed](#) storage types.

Similarly, [arrays](#) can be allocated either with an explicit initialization operand or a default value. Furthermore, `array.new_fixed` allocates an array with statically fixed size, and `array.new_data` and `array.new_elem` allocate an array and initialize it from a [data](#) or [element](#) segment, respectively. The instructions `array.get`, `array.get sx`, and `array.set` access individual slots, again allowing for different sign extension modes in the case of a [packed](#) storage type; `array.len` produces the length of an array; `array.fill` fills a specified slice of an array with a given value and `array.copy`, `array.init_data`, and `array.init_elem` copy elements to a specified slice of an array from a given array, data segment, or element segment, respectively.

The instructions `ref.i31` and `i31.get sx` convert between type `i32` and an unboxed [scalar](#).

The instructions `any.convert_extern` and `extern.convert_any` allow lossless conversion between references represented as type `(ref null extern)` and as `(ref null any)`.

## 2.4.6 Variable Instructions

Variable instructions are concerned with access to [local](#) or [global](#) variables.

```

instr ::= ...
        | local.get localidx
        | local.set localidx
        | local.tee localidx
        | global.get globalidx
        | global.set globalidx
        | ...

```

These instructions get or set the values of respective variables. The `local.tee` instruction is like `local.set` but also returns its argument.

## 2.4.7 Table Instructions

Instructions in this group are concerned with tables `table`.

```

instr ::= ...
        | table.get tableidx
        | table.set tableidx
        | table.size tableidx
        | table.grow tableidx
        | table.fill tableidx
        | table.copy tableidx tableidx
        | table.init tableidx elemidx
        | elem.drop elemidx
        | ...

```

The `table.get` and `table.set` instructions load or store an element in a table, respectively.

The `table.size` instruction returns the current size of a table. The `table.grow` instruction grows table by a given delta and returns the previous size, or  $-1$  if enough space cannot be allocated. It also takes an initialization value for the newly allocated entries.

The `table.fill` instruction sets all entries in a range to a given value. The `table.copy` instruction copies elements from a source table region to a possibly overlapping destination region; the first index denotes the destination. The `table.init` instruction copies elements from a [passive element segment](#) into a table.

The `elem.drop` instruction prevents further use of a passive element segment. This instruction is intended to be used as an optimization hint. After an element segment is dropped its elements can no longer be retrieved, so the memory used by this segment may be freed.

### Note

An additional instruction that accesses a table is the [control instruction](#) `call_indirect`.

## 2.4.8 Memory Instructions

Instructions in this group are concerned with linear [memory](#).

```

memarg ::= {align u32, offset u32}
loadopiN ::= sz_sx                                if sz < N
storeopiN ::= sz                                    if sz < N
vloadopvectype ::= sz × M_sx                      if sz · M = |vectype|/2
                  | sz_splat
                  | sz_zero                            if sz ≥ 32
instr ::= ...
        | numtype.load?loadopnumtype memidx memarg
        | numtype.store?storeopnumtype memidx memarg
        | vectype.load?vloadopvectype memidx memarg
        | vectype.load?sz_lane memidx memarg laneidx
        | vectype.store memidx memarg
        | vectype.store?sz_lane memidx memarg laneidx
        | memory.size memidx
        | memory.grow memidx
        | memory.fill memidx
        | memory.copy memidx memidx
        | memory.init memidx dataidx
        | data.drop dataidx
        | ...

```



Memory is accessed with load and store instructions for the different *number types* and *vector types* *<syntax-vectype>*. They all take a *memory index* and a *memory argument* *memarg* that contains an address *offset* and the expected *alignment* (expressed as the exponent of a power of 2).

Integer loads and stores can optionally specify a *storage size* *sz* that is smaller than the *bit width* of the respective value type. In the case of loads, a sign extension mode *sx* is then required to select appropriate behavior.

Vector loads can specify a shape that is half the *bit width* of v128. Each lane is half its usual size, and the sign extension mode *sx* then specifies how the smaller lane is extended to the larger lane. Alternatively, vector loads can perform a *splat*, such that only a single lane of the specified storage size is loaded, and the result is duplicated to all lanes.

The static address offset is added to the dynamic address operand, yielding a 33-bit or 65-bit *effective address* that is the zero-based index at which the memory is accessed. All values are read and written in *little endian*<sup>13</sup> byte order. A *trap* results if any of the accessed memory bytes lies outside the address range implied by the memory's current size.

The *memory.size* instruction returns the current size of a memory. The *memory.grow* instruction grows a memory by a given delta and returns the previous size, or  $-1$  if enough memory cannot be allocated. Both instructions operate in units of *page size*.

The *memory.fill* instruction sets all values in a region of a memory to a given byte. The *memory.copy* instruction copies data from a source memory region to a possibly overlapping destination region in another or the same memory; the first index denotes the destination. The *memory.init* instruction copies data from a *passive data segment* into a memory.

The *data.drop* instruction prevents further use of a passive data segment. This instruction is intended to be used as an optimization hint. After a data segment is dropped its data can no longer be retrieved, so the memory used by this segment may be freed.

<sup>13</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Endianness#Little-endian>

## 2.4.9 Control Instructions

Instructions in this group affect the flow of control.

```

blocktype ::= valtype?
            | funcidx

instr ::= ...
        | block blocktype instr*
        | loop blocktype instr*
        | if blocktype instr* else instr*
        | br labelidx
        | br_if labelidx
        | br_table labelidx* labelidx
        | br_on_null labelidx
        | br_on_non_null labelidx
        | br_on_cast labelidx reftype reftype
        | br_on_cast_fail labelidx reftype reftype
        | call funcidx
        | call_ref typeuse
        | call_indirect tableidx typeuse
        | return
        | return_call funcidx
        | return_call_ref typeuse
        | return_call_indirect tableidx typeuse
        | throw tagidx
        | throw_ref
        | try_table blocktype list(catch) instr*
        | ...

catch ::= catch tagidx labelidx
        | catch_ref tagidx labelidx
        | catch_all labelidx
        | catch_all_ref labelidx

```

The *block*, *loop*, *if* and *try\_table* instructions are *structured* instructions. They bracket nested sequences of instructions, called *blocks*, terminated with, or separated by, *end* or *else* pseudo-instructions. As the grammar prescribes, they must be well-nested.

A structured instruction can consume *input* and produce *output* on the operand stack according to its annotated *block type*. It is given either as a *type index* that refers to a suitable *function type* reinterpreted as an *instruction type*, or as an optional *value type* inline, which is a shorthand for the instruction  $\text{type} \in \rightarrow \text{valtype}?$ .

Each structured control instruction introduces an implicit *label*. Labels are targets for branch instructions that reference them with *label indices*. Unlike with other *index spaces*, indexing of labels is relative by nesting depth, that is, label 0 refers to the innermost structured control instruction enclosing the referring branch instruction, while increasing indices refer to those farther out. Consequently, labels can only be referenced from *within* the associated structured control instruction. This also implies that branches can only be directed outwards, “breaking” from the block of the control construct they target. The exact effect depends on that control construct. In case of *block* or *if* it is a *forward jump*, resuming execution after the matching *end*. In case of *loop* it is a *backward jump* to the beginning of the loop.

### Note

This enforces *structured control flow*. Intuitively, a branch targeting a block or *if* behaves like a *break* statement in most C-like languages, while a branch targeting a loop behaves like a *continue* statement.

Branch instructions come in several flavors: *br* performs an unconditional branch, *br\_if* performs a conditional branch, and *br\_table* performs an indirect branch through an operand indexing into the label list that is an immediate to the instruction, or to a default target if the operand is out of bounds. The *br\_on\_null* and *br\_on\_non\_null* instructions check whether a reference operand is *null* and branch if that is the case or not the case, respectively.

Similarly, `br_on_cast` and `br_on_cast_fail` attempt a downcast on a reference operand and branch if that succeeds, or fails, respectively.

The `return` instruction is a shortcut for an unconditional branch to the outermost block, which implicitly is the body of the current function. Taking a branch *unwinds* the operand stack up to the height where the targeted structured control instruction was entered. However, branches may additionally consume operands themselves, which they push back on the operand stack after unwinding. Forward branches require operands according to the output of the targeted block's type, i.e., represent the values produced by the terminated block. Backward branches require operands according to the input of the targeted block's type, i.e., represent the values consumed by the restarted block.

The `call` instruction invokes another [function](#), consuming the necessary arguments from the stack and returning the result values of the call. The `call_ref` instruction invokes a function indirectly through a [function reference](#) operand. The `call_indirect` instruction calls a function indirectly through an operand indexing into a [table](#) that is denoted by a [table index](#) and must contain [function references](#). Since it may contain functions of heterogeneous type, the callee is dynamically checked against the [function type](#) indexed by the instruction's second immediate, and the call is aborted with a [trap](#) if it does not match.

The `return_call`, `return_call_ref`, and `return_call_indirect` instructions are *tail-call* variants of the previous ones. That is, they first return from the current function before actually performing the respective call. It is guaranteed that no sequence of nested calls using only these instructions can cause resource exhaustion due to hitting an [implementation's limit](#) on the number of active calls.

The instructions `throw`, `throw_ref`, and `try_table` are concerned with *exceptions*. The `throw` and `throw_ref` instructions raise and reraise an exception, respectively, and transfers control to the innermost enclosing exception handler that has a matching catch clause. The `try_table` instruction installs an exception *handler* that handles exceptions as specified by its catch clauses.

## 2.4.10 Expressions

[Function](#) bodies, initialization values for [globals](#), elements and offsets of [element](#) segments, and offsets of [data](#) segments are given as expressions, which are sequences of [instructions](#).

$$expr ::= instr^*$$

In some places, validation [restricts](#) expressions to be *constant*, which limits the set of allowable instructions.

## 2.5 Modules

WebAssembly programs are organized into *modules*, which are the unit of deployment, loading, and compilation. A module collects definitions for [types](#), [functions](#), [tables](#), [memories](#), [tags](#), and [globals](#). In addition, it can declare [imports](#) and [exports](#) and provide initialization in the form of [data](#) and [element](#) segments, or a [start function](#).

$$module ::= module\ type^* import^* func^* global^* table^* mem^* tag^* elem^* data^* start^? export^*$$

Each of the lists — and thus the entire module — may be empty.

## 2.5.1 Indices

Definitions are referenced with zero-based *indices*. Each class of definition has its own *index space*, as distinguished by the following classes.

$$\begin{aligned} \textit{typeid} &::= \textit{idx} \\ \textit{funcid} &::= \textit{idx} \\ \textit{globalid} &::= \textit{idx} \\ \textit{tableid} &::= \textit{idx} \\ \textit{memid} &::= \textit{idx} \\ \textit{tagid} &::= \textit{idx} \\ \textit{elemid} &::= \textit{idx} \\ \textit{dataid} &::= \textit{idx} \\ \textit{labelid} &::= \textit{idx} \\ \textit{localid} &::= \textit{idx} \\ \textit{fieldid} &::= \textit{idx} \end{aligned}$$

The index space for **functions**, **tables**, **memories**, **globals**, and **tags** includes respective **imports** declared in the same module. The indices of these imports precede the indices of other definitions in the same index space.

Element indices reference **element segments** and data indices reference **data segments**.

The index space for **locals** is only accessible inside a **function** and includes the parameters of that function, which precede the local variables.

Label indices reference **structured control instructions** inside an instruction sequence.

Each **aggregate type** provides an index space for its **fields**.

### Conventions

- The meta variable  $l$  ranges over label indices.
- The meta variables  $x, y$  range over indices in any of the other index spaces.
- For every index space  $abcid$ , the notation  $abcid(A)$  denotes the set of indices from that index space occurring free in  $A$ . Sometimes this set is reinterpreted as the **list** of its elements.

#### Note

For example, if  $\textit{instr}^*$  is `(data.drop 1) (memory.init 2 3)`, then  $\textit{dataid}_{\textit{instrs}}(\textit{instr}^*) = 1\ 3$ , or equivalently, the set  $\{1, 3\}$ .

## 2.5.2 Types

The *type* section of a module defines a list of **recursive types**, each consisting of a list of **sub types** referenced by individual **type indices**. All **function** or **aggregate** types used in a module must be defined in this section.

$$\textit{type} ::= \textit{type rectype}$$

## 2.5.3 Functions

The *func* section of a module defines a list of **functions** with the following structure:

$$\begin{aligned} \textit{func} &::= \textit{func typeid local}^* \textit{expr} \\ \textit{local} &::= \textit{local valtype} \end{aligned}$$

The **type index** of a function declares its signature by reference to a **function type** defined in the module. The parameters of the function are referenced through 0-based **local indices** in the function's body; they are mutable.

The locals declare a list of mutable local variables and their types. These variables are referenced through [local indices](#) in the function’s body. The index of the first local is the smallest index not referencing a parameter.

A function’s [expression](#) is an [instruction](#) sequence that represents the body of the function. Upon termination it must produce a stack matching the function type’s [result type](#).

Functions are referenced through [function indices](#), starting with the smallest index not referencing a function [import](#).

## 2.5.4 Tables

The *table* section of a module defines a list of *tables* described by their [table type](#):

$$table ::= table\ tabletype\ expr$$

A table is an array of opaque values of a particular [reference type](#) that is specified by the [table type](#). Each table slot is initialized with a value given by a [constant](#) initializer [expression](#). Tables can further be initialized through [element segments](#).

The minimum size in the [limits](#) of the table type specifies the initial size of that table, while its maximum restricts the size to which it can grow later.

Tables are referenced through [table indices](#), starting with the smallest index not referencing a table [import](#). Most constructs implicitly reference table index 0.

## 2.5.5 Memories

The *mem* section of a module defines a list of *linear memories* (or *memories* for short) as described by their [memory type](#):

$$mem ::= memory\ memtype$$

A memory is a list of raw uninterpreted bytes. The minimum size in the [limits](#) of its [memory type](#) specifies the initial size of that memory, while its maximum, if present, restricts the size to which it can grow later. Both are in units of [page size](#).

Memories can be initialized through [data segments](#).

Memories are referenced through [memory indices](#), starting with the smallest index not referencing a memory [import](#). Most constructs implicitly reference memory index 0.

## 2.5.6 Globals

The *global* section of a module defines a list of *global variables* (or *globals* for short):

$$global ::= global\ globaltype\ expr$$

Each global stores a single value of the type specified in the [global type](#). It also specifies whether a global is immutable or mutable. Moreover, each global is initialized with a value given by a [constant](#) initializer [expression](#).

Globals are referenced through [global indices](#), starting with the smallest index not referencing a global [import](#).

## 2.5.7 Tags

The *tag* section of a module defines a list of *tags*:

$$tag ::= tag\ typeidx$$

The [type index](#) of a tag must refer to a [function type](#) that declares its [tag type](#).

Tags are referenced through [tag indices](#), starting with the smallest index not referencing a tag [import](#).

## 2.5.8 Element Segments

The *elem* section of a module defines a list of *element segments*, which can be used to initialize a subrange of a table from a static list of elements.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{elem} &::= \text{elem reftype expr* elemmode} \\ \text{elemmode} &::= \text{active tableidx expr} \mid \text{passive} \mid \text{declare} \end{aligned}$$

Each element segment defines a [reference type](#) and a corresponding list of [constant](#) element [expressions](#).

Element segments have a mode that identifies them as either *active*, *passive*, or *declarative*. A passive element segment's elements can be copied to a table using the `table.init` instruction. An active element segment copies its elements into a table during [instantiation](#), as specified by a [table index](#) and a [constant expression](#) defining an offset into that table. A declarative element segment is not available at runtime but merely serves to forward-declare references that are formed in code with instructions like `ref.func`. The offset is given by another [constant expression](#).

Element segments are referenced through [element indices](#).

## 2.5.9 Data Segments

The *data* section of a module defines a list of *data segments*, which can be used to initialize a range of memory from a static list of bytes.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{data} &::= \text{data byte* datamode} \\ \text{datamode} &::= \text{active memidx expr} \mid \text{passive} \end{aligned}$$

Similar to element segments, data segments have a mode that identifies them as either *active* or *passive*. A passive data segment's contents can be copied into a memory using the `memory.init` instruction. An active data segment copies its contents into a memory during [instantiation](#), as specified by a [memory index](#) and a [constant expression](#) defining an offset into that memory.

Data segments are referenced through [data indices](#).

## 2.5.10 Start Function

The *start* section of a module declares the [function index](#) of a *start function* that is automatically invoked when the module is [instantiated](#), after [tables](#) and [memories](#) have been initialized.

$$\text{start} ::= \text{start funcidx}$$

### Note

The start function is intended for initializing the state of a module. The module and its exports are not accessible externally before this initialization has completed.

## 2.5.11 Exports

The *export* section of a module defines a set of *exports* that become accessible to the host environment once the module has been [instantiated](#).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{export} &::= \text{export name externidx} \\ \text{externidx} &::= \text{func funcidx} \mid \text{global globalidx} \mid \text{table tableidx} \mid \text{memory memidx} \mid \text{tag tagidx} \end{aligned}$$

Each export is labeled by a unique [name](#). Exportable definitions are [functions](#), [tables](#), [memories](#), [globals](#), and [tags](#), which are referenced through a respective index.

## Conventions

The following auxiliary notation is defined for sequences of exports, filtering out indices of a specific kind in an order-preserving fashion:

$\text{funcs}(\epsilon)$	$=$	$\epsilon$	
$\text{funcs}((\text{func } x) xx^*)$	$=$	$x \text{ funcs}(xx^*)$	
$\text{funcs}(\text{externidx } xx^*)$	$=$	$\text{funcs}(xx^*)$	otherwise
$\text{tables}(\epsilon)$	$=$	$\epsilon$	
$\text{tables}((\text{table } x) xx^*)$	$=$	$x \text{ tables}(xx^*)$	
$\text{tables}(\text{externidx } xx^*)$	$=$	$\text{tables}(xx^*)$	otherwise
$\text{mems}(\epsilon)$	$=$	$\epsilon$	
$\text{mems}((\text{memory } x) xx^*)$	$=$	$x \text{ mems}(xx^*)$	
$\text{mems}(\text{externidx } xx^*)$	$=$	$\text{mems}(xx^*)$	otherwise
$\text{globals}(\epsilon)$	$=$	$\epsilon$	
$\text{globals}((\text{global } x) xx^*)$	$=$	$x \text{ globals}(xx^*)$	
$\text{globals}(\text{externidx } xx^*)$	$=$	$\text{globals}(xx^*)$	otherwise
$\text{tags}(\epsilon)$	$=$	$\epsilon$	
$\text{tags}((\text{tag } x) xx^*)$	$=$	$x \text{ tags}(xx^*)$	
$\text{tags}(\text{externidx } xx^*)$	$=$	$\text{tags}(xx^*)$	otherwise

### 2.5.12 Imports

The *import* section of a module defines a set of *imports* that are required for *instantiation*.

$$\text{import} ::= \text{import name name externtype}$$

Each import is labeled by a two-level *name* space, consisting of a *module name* and an *item name* for an entity within that module. Importable definitions are *functions*, *tables*, *memories*, *globals*, and *tags*. Each import is specified by a respective *external type* that a definition provided during instantiation is required to match.

Every import defines an index in the respective *index space*. In each index space, the indices of imports go before the first index of any definition contained in the module itself.

#### Note

Unlike export names, import names are not necessarily unique. It is possible to import the same module/item name pair multiple times; such imports may even have different type descriptions, including different kinds of entities. A module with such imports can still be instantiated depending on the specifics of how an *embedder* allows resolving and supplying imports. However, embedders are not required to support such overloading, and a WebAssembly module itself cannot implement an overloaded name.





### 3.1 Conventions

Validation checks that a WebAssembly module is well-formed. Only valid modules can be *instantiated*.

Validity is defined by a *type system* over the *abstract syntax* of a *module* and its contents. For each piece of abstract syntax, there is a typing rule that specifies the constraints that apply to it. All rules are given in two *equivalent* forms:

1. In *prose*, describing the meaning in intuitive form.
2. In *formal notation*, describing the rule in mathematical form.<sup>14</sup>

#### Note

The prose and formal rules are equivalent, so that understanding of the formal notation is *not* required to read this specification. The formalism offers a more concise description in notation that is used widely in programming languages semantics and is readily amenable to mathematical proof.

In both cases, the rules are formulated in a *declarative* manner. That is, they only formulate the constraints, they do not define an algorithm. The skeleton of a sound and complete algorithm for type-checking instruction sequences according to this specification is provided in the *appendix*.

#### 3.1.1 Types

To define the semantics, the definition of some sorts of types is extended to include additional forms. By virtue of not being representable in either the *binary format* or the *text format*, these forms cannot be used in a program; they only occur during *validation* or *execution*.

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{valtype} & ::= & \dots \mid \text{bot} \\ \text{absheaptypes} & ::= & \dots \mid \text{bot} \\ \text{typeuse} & ::= & \dots \mid \text{deftype} \mid \text{rec } \mathbb{N} \end{array}$$

The unique *value type* *bot* is a *bottom type* that *matches* all value types. Similarly, *bot* is also used as a bottom type of all *heap types*.

<sup>14</sup> The semantics is derived from the following article: Andreas Haas, Andreas Rossberg, Derek Schuff, Ben Titzer, Dan Gohman, Luke Wagner, Alon Zakai, JF Bastien, Michael Holman. *Bringing the Web up to Speed with WebAssembly*<sup>15</sup>. Proceedings of the 38th ACM SIGPLAN Conference on Programming Language Design and Implementation (PLDI 2017). ACM 2017.

<sup>15</sup> <https://dl.acm.org/citation.cfm?doid=3062341.3062363>

**Note**

No validation rule uses bottom types explicitly, but various rules can pick any value or heap type, including bottom. This ensures the existence of [principal types](#), and thus a [validation algorithm](#) without back tracking.

A [type use](#) can consist directly of a [defined type](#). This occurs as the result of [substituting](#) a [type index](#) with its definition.

A type use may also be a *recursive type index*. Such an index refers to the  $i$ -th component of a surrounding [recursive type](#). It occurs as the result of [rolling up](#) the definition of a [recursive type](#).

Both extensions affect occurrences of type uses in concrete [heap types](#), in [sub types](#) and in [instructions](#).

A type of any form is *closed* when it does not contain a heap type that is a [type index](#) or a recursive type index without a surrounding [recursive type](#), i.e., all [type indices](#) have been [substituted](#) with their [defined type](#) and all free recursive type indices have been [unrolled](#).

**Note**

It is an invariant of the semantics that sub types occur only in one of two forms: either as “syntactic” types as in a source module, where all supertypes are type indices, or as “semantic” types, where all supertypes are resolved to either defined types or recursive type indices.

Recursive type indices are internal to a recursive type. They are distinguished from regular type indices and represented such that two closed types are syntactically equal if and only if they have the same recursive structure.

**Convention**

- The *difference*  $rt_1 \setminus rt_2$  between two [reference types](#) is defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{ref null}_1^? ht_1) \setminus (\text{ref null } ht_2) &= (\text{ref } ht_1) \\ (\text{ref null}_1^? ht_1) \setminus (\text{ref } ht_2) &= (\text{ref null}_1^? ht_1) \end{aligned}$$

**Note**

This definition computes an approximation of the reference type that is inhabited by all values from  $rt_1$  except those from  $rt_2$ . Since the type system does not have general union types, the definition only affects the presence of null and cannot express the absence of other values.

**3.1.2 Defined Types**

*Defined types* denote the individual types defined in a [module](#). Each such type is represented as a projection from the [recursive type](#) group it originates from, indexed by its position in that group.

$$\text{deftype} ::= \text{rectype}.n$$

Defined types do not occur in the [binary](#) or [text](#) format, but are formed by [rolling up](#) the [recursive types](#) defined in a module.

**Note**

It is an invariant of the semantics that all [recursive types](#) occurring in defined types are [rolled up](#).

## Conventions

- $t[x^* := dt^*]$  denotes the parallel *substitution* of *type indices*  $x^*$  with corresponding *defined types*  $dt^*$  in type  $t$ , provided  $|x^*| = |dt^*|$ .
- $t[(\text{rec } i)^* := dt^*]$  denotes the parallel substitution of *recursive type indices*  $(\text{rec } i)^*$  with *defined types*  $dt^*$  in type  $t$ , provided  $|(\text{rec } i)^*| = |dt^*|$ .
- $t[:= dt^*]$  is shorthand for the substitution  $t[x^* := dt^*]$ , where  $x^* = 0 \dots (|dt^*| - 1)$ .

### 3.1.3 Rolling and Unrolling

In order to allow comparing *recursive types* for *equivalence*, their representation is changed such that all *type indices* internal to the same recursive type are replaced by *recursive type indices*.

#### Note

This representation is independent of the type index space, so that it is meaningful across module boundaries. Moreover, this representation ensures that types with equivalent recursive structure are also syntactically equal, hence allowing a simple equality check on (closed) types. It gives rise to an *iso-recursive* interpretation of types.

The representation change is performed by two auxiliary operations on the syntax of *recursive types*:

- *Rolling up* a recursive type *substitutes* its internal *type indices* with corresponding *recursive type indices*.
- *Unrolling* a recursive type *substitutes* its *recursive type indices* with the corresponding *defined types*.

These operations are extended to *defined types* and defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{roll}_x(\text{rectype}) &= \text{rec } (\text{subtype}[(x + i)^{i < n} := (\text{rec } i)^{i < n}])^n && \text{if } \text{rectype} = \text{rec subtype}^n \\
 \text{unroll}(\text{rectype}) &= \text{rec } (\text{subtype}[(\text{rec } i)^{i < n} := (\text{rectype}.i)^{i < n}])^n && \text{if } \text{rectype} = \text{rec subtype}^n \\
 \text{roll}_x^*(\text{rectype}) &= ((\text{rec subtype}^n).i)^{i < n} && \text{if } \text{roll}_x(\text{rectype}) = \text{rec subtype}^n \\
 \text{unroll}(\text{rectype}.i) &= \text{subtype}^*[i] && \text{if } \text{unroll}(\text{rectype}) = \text{rec subtype}^*
 \end{aligned}$$

In addition, the following auxiliary relation denotes the *expansion* of a *defined type* or *type use*:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{deftype} &\approx \text{comptype} && \text{if } \text{expand}(\text{deftype}) = \text{comptype} \\
 \text{deftype} &\approx_C \text{comptype} && \text{if } \text{deftype} \approx \text{comptype} \\
 \text{typeid}_x &\approx_C \text{comptype} && \text{if } C.\text{types}[\text{typeid}_x] \approx \text{comptype}
 \end{aligned}$$

### 3.1.4 Tag Types

*Tag types* classify the signature of *tags* with a *defined type* that denotes a *function type*.

$$\text{tagtype} ::= \text{deftype}$$

### 3.1.5 Instruction Types

*Instruction types* classify the behaviour of *instructions* or instruction sequences, by describing how they manipulate the *operand stack* and the initialization status of *locals*:

$$\text{instrtype} ::= \text{resulttype} \rightarrow_{\text{localid}_x^*} \text{resulttype}$$

An instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^*$  describes the required input stack with argument values of types  $t_1^*$  that an instruction pops off and the provided output stack with result values of types  $t_2^*$  that it pushes back. Moreover, it enumerates the *indices*  $x^*$  of locals that have been set by the instruction or sequence.

**Note**

Instruction types are only used for [validation](#), they do not occur in programs.

### 3.1.6 Local Types

*Local types* classify [locals](#), by describing their [value type](#) as well as their *initialization status*:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{localtype} &::= \text{init valtype} \\ \text{init} &::= \text{set} \mid \text{unset} \end{aligned}$$
**Note**

Local types are only used for [validation](#), they do not occur in programs.

### 3.1.7 Contexts

Validity of an individual definition is specified relative to a *context*, which collects relevant information about the surrounding [module](#) and the definitions in scope:

- *Types*: the list of [types](#) defined in the current module.
- *Recursive Types*: the list of [sub types](#) in the current group of recursive types.
- *Functions*: the list of [functions](#) declared in the current module, represented by a [defined type](#) that [expands](#) to their [function type](#).
- *Tables*: the list of [tables](#) declared in the current module, represented by their [table type](#).
- *Memories*: the list of [memories](#) declared in the current module, represented by their [memory type](#).
- *Globals*: the list of [globals](#) declared in the current module, represented by their [global type](#).
- *Tags*: the list of tags declared in the current module, represented by their [tag type](#).
- *Element Segments*: the list of [element segments](#) declared in the current module, represented by the elements' [reference type](#).
- *Data Segments*: the list of [data segments](#) declared in the current module, each represented by an [ok](#) entry.
- *Locals*: the list of [locals](#) declared in the current [function](#) (including parameters), represented by their [local type](#).
- *Labels*: the stack of [labels](#) accessible from the current position, represented by their [result type](#).
- *Return*: the return type of the current [function](#), represented as an optional [result type](#) that is absent when no return is allowed, as in free-standing expressions.
- *References*: the list of [function indices](#) that occur in the module outside functions and can hence be used to form references inside them.

In other words, a context contains a sequence of suitable [types](#) for each [index space](#), describing each defined entry in that space. Locals, labels and return type are only used for validating [instructions](#) in [function bodies](#), and are left empty elsewhere. The label stack is the only part of the context that changes as validation of an instruction sequence proceeds.

More concretely, contexts are defined as **records**  $C$  with abstract syntax:

$$\text{context} ::= \{ \begin{array}{l} \text{types } \text{deftype}^* \\ \text{recs } \text{subtype}^* \\ \text{funcs } \text{deftype}^* \\ \text{globals } \text{globaltype}^* \\ \text{tables } \text{tabletype}^* \\ \text{mems } \text{memtype}^* \\ \text{tags } \text{tagtype}^* \\ \text{elems } \text{elemtype}^* \\ \text{datas } \text{datatype}^* \\ \text{locals } \text{localtype}^* \\ \text{labels } \text{resulttype}^* \\ \text{return } \text{resulttype}^? \\ \text{refs } \text{funcidx}^* \end{array} \}$$

### Convention

A type of any shape can be *closed* to bring it into **closed** form relative to a **context** it is **valid** in, by **substituting** each **type index**  $x$  occurring in it with its own corresponding **defined type**  $C.\text{types}[x]$ , after first closing the types in  $C.\text{types}$  themselves.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{clos}_C(t) &= t[ := dt^* ] && \text{if } dt^* = \text{clos}^*(C.\text{types}) \\ \text{clos}^*(\epsilon) &= \epsilon \\ \text{clos}^*(dt^* dt_n) &= dt'^* dt_n[ := dt'^* ] && \text{if } dt'^* = \text{clos}^*(dt^*) \end{aligned}$$

### 3.1.8 Prose Notation

Validation is specified by stylised rules for each relevant part of the **abstract syntax**. The rules not only state constraints defining when a phrase is valid, they also classify it with a type. The following conventions are adopted in stating these rules.

- A phrase  $A$  is said to be “valid with type  $T$ ” if and only if all constraints expressed by the respective rules are met. The form of  $T$  depends on the syntactic class of  $A$ .

#### Note

For example, if  $A$  is a **function**, then  $T$  is a **function type**; for an  $A$  that is a **global**,  $T$  is a **global type**; and so on.

- The rules implicitly assume a given **context**  $C$ .
- In some places, this context is locally extended to a context  $C'$  with additional entries. The formulation “Under context  $C'$ , ... *statement* ...” is adopted to express that the following statement must apply under the assumptions embodied in the extended context.

### 3.1.9 Formal Notation

#### Note

This section gives a brief explanation of the notation for specifying typing rules formally. For the interested reader, a more thorough introduction can be found in respective text books.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>16</sup> For example: Benjamin Pierce. *Types and Programming Languages*<sup>17</sup>. The MIT Press 2002

<sup>17</sup> <https://www.cis.upenn.edu/~bcpierce/tapl/>

The proposition that a phrase  $A$  has a respective type  $T$  is written  $A : T$ . In general, however, typing is dependent on a context  $C$ . To express this explicitly, the complete form is a *judgement*  $C \vdash A : T$ , which says that  $A : T$  holds under the assumptions encoded in  $C$ .

The formal typing rules use a standard approach for specifying type systems, rendering them into *deduction rules*. Every rule has the following general form:

$$\frac{\text{premise}_1 \quad \text{premise}_2 \quad \dots \quad \text{premise}_n}{\text{conclusion}}$$

Such a rule is read as a big implication: if all premises hold, then the conclusion holds. Some rules have no premises; they are *axioms* whose conclusion holds unconditionally. The conclusion always is a judgment  $C \vdash A : T$ , and there usually is one respective rule for each relevant construct  $A$  of the abstract syntax.

### Note

For example, the typing rule for the `i32.add` instruction can be given as an axiom:

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{i32.add} : \text{i32 } \text{i32} \rightarrow \text{i32}}$$

The instruction is always valid with type  $\text{i32 } \text{i32} \rightarrow \text{i32}$  (saying that it consumes two `i32` values and produces one), independent of any side conditions.

An instruction like `global.get` can be typed as follows:

$$\frac{C.\text{globals}[x] = \text{mut}^? t}{C \vdash \text{global.get } x : \epsilon \rightarrow t}$$

Here, the premise enforces that the immediate `global index`  $x$  exists in the context. The instruction produces a value of its respective type  $t$  (and does not consume any values). If  $C.\text{globals}[x]$  does not exist then the premise does not hold, and the instruction is ill-typed.

Finally, a `structured` instruction requires a recursive rule, where the premise is itself a typing judgement:

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{blocktype} : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* \quad \{\text{labels } (t_2^*)\} \oplus C \vdash \text{instr}^* : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*}{C \vdash \text{block } \text{blocktype } \text{instr}^* : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

A block instruction is only valid when the instruction sequence in its body is. Moreover, the result type must match the block's annotation `blocktype`. If so, then the block instruction has the same type as the body. Inside the body an additional label of the corresponding result type is available, which is expressed by extending the context  $C$  with the additional label information for the premise.

## 3.2 Types

Simple `types`, such as `number types` are universally valid. However, restrictions apply to most other types, such as `reference types`, `function types`, as well as the `limits` of `table types` and `memory types`, which must be checked during validation.

Moreover, `block types` are converted to `instruction types` for ease of processing.

### 3.2.1 Number Types

The `number type` `numtype` is always valid.

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{numtype} : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.2.2 Vector Types

The vector type *vectype* is always valid.

$$\overline{C \vdash vectype : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.2.3 Heap Types

The heap type *absheaptypes* is always valid.

$$\overline{C \vdash absheaptypes : \text{ok}}$$

The type use *typeid* is valid if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[typeid]$  exists.
- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[typeid]$  is of the form  $dt$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[typeid] = dt}{C \vdash typeid : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.2.4 Reference Types

The reference type ( $\text{ref null}^? \text{heaptypes}$ ) is valid if:

- The heap type *heaptypes* is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash heaptypes : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{ref null}^? \text{heaptypes} : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.2.5 Value Types

The value type *valtypes* is valid if:

- Either:
  - The value type *valtypes* is of the form *numtypes*.
  - The number type *numtypes* is valid.
- Or:
  - The value type *valtypes* is of the form *vectypes*.
  - The vector type *vectypes* is valid.
- Or:
  - The value type *valtypes* is of the form *reftypes*.
  - The reference type *reftypes* is valid.
- Or:
  - The value type *valtypes* is of the form *bot*.

### 3.2.6 Block Types

Block types may be expressed in one of two forms, both of which are converted to *instruction types* by the following rules.

The block type *typeid* is valid as the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[typeid]$  exists.

- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[typeidx]$  is the composite type  $(\text{func } t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[typeidx] \approx \text{func } (t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)}{C \vdash typeidx : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

The block type  $valtype^?$  is valid as the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow valtype^?$  if:

- If  $valtype$  is defined, then:
  - The value type  $valtype$  is valid.

$$\frac{(C \vdash valtype : \text{ok})^?}{C \vdash valtype^? : \epsilon \rightarrow valtype^?}$$

### 3.2.7 Result Types

The result type  $t^*$  is valid if:

- For all  $t$  in  $t^*$ :
  - The value type  $t$  is valid.

$$\frac{(C \vdash t : \text{ok})^*}{C \vdash t^* : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.2.8 Instruction Types

The instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^*$  is valid if:

- The result type  $t_1^*$  is valid.
- The result type  $t_2^*$  is valid.
- The length of  $lt^*$  is equal to the length of  $x^*$ .
- For all  $x$  in  $x^*$ :
  - The local type  $C.\text{locals}[x]$  exists.
- For all  $lt$  in  $lt^*$ , and corresponding  $x$  in  $x^*$ :
  - The local type  $C.\text{locals}[x]$  is of the form  $lt$ .

#### Todo

below is the official specification

$t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^*$

- The result type  $t_1^*$  must be valid.
- The result type  $t_2^*$  must be valid.
- Each local index  $x_i$  in  $x^*$  must be defined in the context.
- Then the instruction type is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash t_1^* : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash t_2^* : \text{ok} \quad (C.\text{locals}[x] = lt)^*}{C \vdash t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^* : \text{ok}}$$



### 3.2.9 Function Types

The function type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  is valid if:

- The result type  $t_1^*$  is valid.
- The result type  $t_2^*$  is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash t_1^* : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash t_2^* : \text{ok}}{C \vdash t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.2.10 Composite Types

The composite type (`func functype`) is valid if:

- The function type *functype* is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{functype} : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{func functype} : \text{ok}}$$

The composite type (`struct fieldtype*`) is valid if:

- For all *fieldtype* in *fieldtype*\*:
  - The field type *fieldtype* is valid.

$$\frac{(C \vdash \text{fieldtype} : \text{ok})^*}{C \vdash \text{struct fieldtype}^* : \text{ok}}$$

The composite type (`array fieldtype`) is valid if:

- The field type *fieldtype* is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{fieldtype} : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{array fieldtype} : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.2.11 Field Types

The field type (`mut? storagetype`) is valid if:

- The storage type *storagetype* is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{storagetype} : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{mut}^? \text{ storagetype} : \text{ok}}$$

The packed type *packtype* is always valid.

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{packtype} : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.2.12 Recursive Types

Recursive types are validated with respect to the first type index defined by the recursive group.

*rec subtype*\*

The recursive type (*rec subtype*'\*) is valid for the (*ok*(*x*)) (*ok*(*x*)) if:

- Either:
  - The sub type sequence *subtype*'\* is empty.
- Or:
  - The sub type sequence *subtype*'\* is of the form *subtype*<sub>1</sub> *subtype*\*.
  - The sub type *subtype*<sub>1</sub> is valid with the (*ok*(*x*)) (*ok*(*x*)).

- The recursive type ( $\text{rec } subtype^*$ ) is valid for the  $(\text{ok}(x + 1))$   $(\text{ok}(x + 1))$ .

### Todo

below is the official specification

- Either the sequence  $subtype^*$  is empty.
- Or:
  - The first sub type of the sequence  $subtype^*$  must be valid for the type index  $x$ .
  - The remaining sequence  $subtype^*$  must be valid for the type index  $x + 1$ .
- Then the recursive type is valid for the type index  $x$ .

$$\frac{}{C \vdash \text{rec } \epsilon : \text{ok}((x))} \quad \frac{C \vdash subtype_1 : \text{ok}((x)) \quad C \vdash \text{rec } subtype^* : \text{ok}((x + 1))}{C \vdash \text{rec } (subtype_1 subtype^*) : \text{ok}((x))}$$

sub final?  $y^* \text{ comptype}$

The sub type ( $\text{sub final? } x^* \text{ comptype}$ ) is valid with the  $(\text{ok}(x_0))$   $(\text{ok}(x_0))$  if:

- The length of  $x^*$  is less than or equal to 1.
- For all  $x$  in  $x^*$ :
  - The index  $x$  is less than  $x_0$ .
- The length of  $comptype'^*$  is equal to the length of  $x^*$ .
- The length of  $comptype'^*$  is equal to the length of  $x'^{**}$ .
- For all  $x$  in  $x^*$ :
  - The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- For all  $comptype'$  in  $comptype'^*$ , and corresponding  $x$  in  $x^*$ , and corresponding  $x'^*$  in  $x'^{**}$ :
  - The sub type  $\text{unroll}(C.\text{types}[x])$  is of the form  $(\text{sub } x'^* \text{ comptype}')$ .
- The composite type  $comptype$  is valid.
- For all  $comptype'$  in  $comptype'^*$ :
  - The composite type  $comptype$  matches the composite type  $comptype'$ .

### Todo

below is the official specification

- The composite type  $comptype$  must be valid.
- The sequence  $y^*$  may be no longer than 1.
- For every type index  $y_i$  in  $y^*$ :
  - The type index  $y_i$  must be smaller than  $x$ .
  - The type index  $y_i$  must exist in the context  $C$ .
  - Let  $subtype_i$  be the unrolling of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[y_i]$ .
  - The sub type  $subtype_i$  must not contain final.
  - Let  $comptype'_i$  be the composite type in  $subtype_i$ .
  - The composite type  $comptype$  must match  $comptype'_i$ .
- Then the sub type is valid for the type index  $x$ .

$$\frac{|x^*| \leq 1 \quad (x < x_0)^* \quad (\text{unroll}(C.\text{types}[x]) = \text{sub } x'^* \text{ comptime}')^* \quad C \vdash \text{comptime} : \text{ok} \quad (C \vdash \text{comptime} \leq \text{comptime}')^*}{C \vdash \text{sub final}^? x^* \text{ comptime} : \text{ok}((x_0))}$$

**Note**

The side condition on the index ensures that a declared supertype is a previously defined types, preventing cyclic subtype hierarchies.

Future versions of WebAssembly may allow more than one supertype.

**3.2.13 Defined Types**

The defined type  $(\text{rectype}.i)$  is valid if:

- The recursive type  $\text{rectype}$  is valid for the  $(\text{ok}(x))$   $(\text{ok}(x))$ .
- The recursive type  $\text{rectype}$  is of the form  $(\text{rec subtype}^n)$ .
- The  $i$  is less than  $n$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{rectype} : \text{ok}((x)) \quad \text{rectype} = \text{rec subtype}^n \quad i < n}{C \vdash \text{rectype}.i : \text{ok}}$$

**3.2.14 Limits**

Limits must have meaningful bounds that are within a given range.

The limits range  $[n .. m]$  is valid within the  $k$  if:

- The  $n$  is less than or equal to  $m$ .
- The  $m$  is less than or equal to  $k$ .

$$\frac{n \leq m \leq k}{C \vdash [n .. m] : k}$$

**3.2.15 Table Types**

The table type  $(\text{addrtype limits reftype})$  is valid if:

- The limits range  $\text{limits}$  is valid within the  $2^{32} - 1$ .
- The reference type  $\text{reftype}$  is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{limits} : 2^{32} - 1 \quad C \vdash \text{reftype} : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{addrtype limits reftype} : \text{ok}}$$

**3.2.16 Memory Types**

The memory type  $(\text{addrtype limits page})$  is valid if:

- The limits range  $\text{limits}$  is valid within the  $2^{16}$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{limits} : 2^{16}}{C \vdash \text{addrtype limits page} : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.2.17 Tag Types

The tag type *deftype* is valid if:

- The defined type *deftype* is valid.
- The expansion of the defined type *deftype* is the composite type (func *functype*).

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{deftype} : \text{ok} \quad \text{deftype} \approx \text{func } \text{functype}}{C \vdash \text{deftype} : \text{ok}}$$

#### Note

Tag types do not occur in source programs, so this rule is not needed for validation. It is, however, used in the definition of the [embedding interface](#).

### 3.2.18 Global Types

The global type (mut<sup>?</sup> *t*) is valid if:

- The value type *t* is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash t : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{mut}^? t : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.2.19 External Types

The external type (func *typeuse*) is valid if:

- The type use *typeuse* is valid.
- The expansion of the context *C* is the composite type (func *functype*).

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{typeuse} : \text{ok} \quad \text{typeuse} \approx_C \text{func } \text{functype}}{C \vdash \text{func } \text{typeuse} : \text{ok}}$$

The external type (table *tabletype*) is valid if:

- The table type *tabletype* is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{tabletype} : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{table } \text{tabletype} : \text{ok}}$$

The external type (mem *memtype*) is valid if:

- The memory type *memtype* is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{memtype} : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{mem } \text{memtype} : \text{ok}}$$

The external type (tag *typeuse*) is valid if:

- The type use *typeuse* is valid.
- The expansion of the context *C* is the composite type (func *functype*).

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{typeuse} : \text{ok} \quad \text{typeuse} \approx_C \text{func } \text{functype}}{C \vdash \text{tag } \text{typeuse} : \text{ok}}$$

The external type (global *globaltype*) is valid if:

- The global type *globaltype* is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{globaltype} : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{global } \text{globaltype} : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.3 Matching

On most types, a notion of *subtyping* is defined that is applicable in *validation* rules, during *module instantiation* when checking the types of imports, or during *execution*, when performing casts.

#### 3.3.1 Number Types

The number type *numtype* matches only itself.

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{numtype} \leq \text{numtype}}$$

#### 3.3.2 Vector Types

The vector type *vectype* matches only itself.

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{vectype} \leq \text{vectype}}$$

#### 3.3.3 Heap Types

The heap type *heaptypes''* matches the heap type *heaptypes'''* if:

- Either:
  - The heap type *heaptypes''* is of the form *heaptypes*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes'''* is of the form *heaptypes*.
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes''* is of the form *heaptypes*<sub>1</sub>.
  - The heap type *heaptypes'''* is of the form *heaptypes*<sub>2</sub>.
  - The heap type *heaptypes'* is valid.
  - The heap type *heaptypes*<sub>1</sub> matches the heap type *heaptypes'*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes'* matches the heap type *heaptypes*<sub>2</sub>.
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes''* is of the form *eq*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes'''* is of the form *any*.
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes''* is of the form *i31*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes'''* is of the form *eq*.
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes''* is of the form *struct*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes'''* is of the form *eq*.
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes''* is of the form *array*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes'''* is of the form *eq*.
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes''* is of the form *deftype*.

- The heap type *heaptypes*'' is of the form *struct*.
- The expansion of the defined type *deftype* is the composite type (*struct fieldtype*\*).
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes*'' is of the form *deftype*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes*''' is of the form *array*.
  - The expansion of the defined type *deftype* is the composite type (*array fieldtype*).
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes*'' is of the form *deftype*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes*''' is of the form *func*.
  - The expansion of the defined type *deftype* is the composite type (*func functype*).
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes*'' is of the form *deftype*<sub>1</sub>.
  - The heap type *heaptypes*''' is of the form *deftype*<sub>2</sub>.
  - The defined type *deftype*<sub>1</sub> matches the defined type *deftype*<sub>2</sub>.
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes*'' is of the form *typeid**x*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes*''' is of the form *heaptypes*.
  - The defined type *C.types*[*typeid**x*] exists.
  - The defined type *C.types*[*typeid**x*] matches the heap type *heaptypes*.
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes*'' is of the form *heaptypes*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes*''' is of the form *typeid**x*.
  - The defined type *C.types*[*typeid**x*] exists.
  - The heap type *heaptypes* matches the defined type *C.types*[*typeid**x*].
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes*'' is of the form (*rec i*).
  - The heap type *heaptypes*''' is of the form *typeuse*\*[*j*].
  - The length of *typeuse*\* is greater than *j*.
  - The sub type *C.recs*[*i*] exists.
  - The sub type *C.recs*[*i*] is of the form (*sub final*? *typeuse*\* *ct*).
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes*'' is of the form *none*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes*''' is of the form *heaptypes*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes* matches the heap type any.
- Or:
  - The heap type *heaptypes*'' is of the form *nofunc*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes*''' is of the form *heaptypes*.
  - The heap type *heaptypes* matches the heap type *func*.
- Or:

- The heap type  $heapttype''$  is of the form `noextern`.
- The heap type  $heapttype'''$  is of the form  $heapttype$ .
- The heap type  $heapttype$  matches the heap type `extern`.
- Or:
  - The heap type  $heapttype''$  is of the form `bot`.
  - The heap type  $heapttype'''$  is of the form  $heapttype$ .

### Todo

below is the official specification

A heap type  $heapttype_1$  matches a heap type  $heapttype_2$  if and only if:

- Either both  $heapttype_1$  and  $heapttype_2$  are the same.
- Or there exists a valid heap type  $heapttype'$ , such that  $heapttype_1$  matches  $heapttype'$  and  $heapttype'$  matches  $heapttype_2$ .
- Or  $heapttype_1$  is `eq` and  $heapttype_2$  is `any`.
- Or  $heapttype_1$  is one of `i31`, `struct`, or `array` and  $heapttype_2$  is `eq`.
- Or  $heapttype_1$  is a defined type which expands to a structure type and  $heapttype_2$  is `struct`.
- Or  $heapttype_1$  is a defined type which expands to an array type and  $heapttype_2$  is `array`.
- Or  $heapttype_1$  is a defined type which expands to a function type and  $heapttype_2$  is `func`.
- Or  $heapttype_1$  is a defined type  $deftype_1$  and  $heapttype_2$  is a defined type  $deftype_2$ , and  $deftype_1$  matches  $deftype_2$ .
- Or  $heapttype_1$  is a type index  $x_1$ , and the defined type  $C.types[x_1]$  matches  $heapttype_2$ .
- Or  $heapttype_2$  is a type index  $x_2$ , and  $heapttype_1$  matches the defined type  $C.types[x_2]$ .
- Or  $heapttype_1$  is `none` and  $heapttype_2$  matches `any`.
- Or  $heapttype_1$  is `nofunc` and  $heapttype_2$  matches `func`.
- Or  $heapttype_1$  is `noextern` and  $heapttype_2$  matches `extern`.
- Or  $heapttype_1$  is `bot`.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \frac{}{C \vdash heapttype \leq heapttype} \quad \frac{C \vdash heapttype' : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash heapttype_1 \leq heapttype' \quad C \vdash heapttype' \leq heapttype_2}{C \vdash heapttype_1 \leq heapttype_2} \\
 \\
 \frac{}{C \vdash \text{eq} \leq \text{any}} \quad \frac{}{C \vdash \text{i31} \leq \text{eq}} \quad \frac{}{C \vdash \text{struct} \leq \text{eq}} \quad \frac{}{C \vdash \text{array} \leq \text{eq}} \\
 \frac{deftype \approx \text{struct } fieldtype^*}{C \vdash deftype \leq \text{struct}} \quad \frac{deftype \approx \text{array } fieldtype}{C \vdash deftype \leq \text{array}} \quad \frac{deftype \approx \text{func } functype}{C \vdash deftype \leq \text{func}} \\
 \frac{C \vdash C.types[typeidx] \leq heapttype}{C \vdash typeidx \leq heapttype} \quad \frac{C \vdash heapttype \leq C.types[typeidx]}{C \vdash heapttype \leq typeidx} \\
 \frac{C.recs[i] = \text{sub final? } typeuse^* ct}{C \vdash \text{rec } i \leq typeuse^*[j]} \\
 \frac{C \vdash heapttype \leq \text{any}}{C \vdash \text{none} \leq heapttype} \quad \frac{C \vdash heapttype \leq \text{func}}{C \vdash \text{nofunc} \leq heapttype} \quad \frac{C \vdash heapttype \leq \text{extern}}{C \vdash \text{noextern} \leq heapttype} \\
 \frac{}{C \vdash \text{bot} \leq heapttype}
 \end{array}$$

### 3.3.4 Reference Types

The reference type  $(\text{ref null}^? ht_1)$  matches the reference type  $(\text{ref null}^{?' ht_2})$  if:

- The heap type  $ht_1$  matches the heap type  $ht_2$ .
- Either:
  - The  $\text{null}^? \text{null}^?$  is absent.
  - The  $\text{null}^{?' \text{null}^{?'}$  is absent.
- Or:
  - The  $\text{null}^? \text{null}^?$  is of the form  $\text{null}^?$ .
  - The  $\text{null}^{?' \text{null}^{?'}$  is of the form  $\text{null}$ .

#### Todo

below is the official specification

A reference type  $\text{ref null}_1^? \text{heaptype}_1$  matches a reference type  $\text{ref null}_2^? \text{heaptype}_2$  if and only if:

- The heap type  $\text{heaptype}_1$  matches  $\text{heaptype}_2$ .
- $\text{null}_1$  is absent or  $\text{null}_2$  is present.

$$\frac{C \vdash ht_1 \leq ht_2}{C \vdash \text{ref } ht_1 \leq \text{ref } ht_2} \quad \frac{C \vdash ht_1 \leq ht_2}{C \vdash \text{ref null}^? ht_1 \leq \text{ref null } ht_2}$$

### 3.3.5 Value Types

The value type  $\text{valtype}'$  matches the value type  $\text{valtype}''$  if:

- Either:
  - The value type  $\text{valtype}'$  is of the form  $\text{numtype}_1$ .
  - The value type  $\text{valtype}''$  is of the form  $\text{numtype}_2$ .
  - The number type  $\text{numtype}_1$  matches the number type  $\text{numtype}_2$ .
- Or:
  - The value type  $\text{valtype}'$  is of the form  $\text{vectype}_1$ .
  - The value type  $\text{valtype}''$  is of the form  $\text{vectype}_2$ .
  - The vector type  $\text{vectype}_1$  matches the vector type  $\text{vectype}_2$ .
- Or:
  - The value type  $\text{valtype}'$  is of the form  $\text{reftype}_1$ .
  - The value type  $\text{valtype}''$  is of the form  $\text{reftype}_2$ .
  - The reference type  $\text{reftype}_1$  matches the reference type  $\text{reftype}_2$ .
- Or:
  - The value type  $\text{valtype}'$  is of the form  $\text{bot}$ .
  - The value type  $\text{valtype}''$  is of the form  $\text{valtype}$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{bot} \leq \text{valtype}}$$



### 3.3.6 Result Types

Subtyping is lifted to **result types** in a pointwise manner.

The **result type**  $t_1^*$  matches the **result type**  $t_2^*$  if:

- The length of  $t_1^*$  is equal to the length of  $t_2^*$ .
- For all  $t_1$  in  $t_1^*$ , and corresponding  $t_2$  in  $t_2^*$ :
  - The **value type**  $t_1$  matches the **value type**  $t_2$ .

$$\frac{(C \vdash t_1 \leq t_2)^*}{C \vdash t_1^* \leq t_2^*}$$

### 3.3.7 Instruction Types

Subtyping is further lifted to **instruction types**.

The **instruction type**  $t_{11}^* \rightarrow_{x_1^*} t_{12}^*$  matches the **instruction type**  $t_{21}^* \rightarrow_{x_2^*} t_{22}^*$  if:

- The **result type**  $t_{21}^*$  matches the **result type**  $t_{11}^*$ .
- The **result type**  $t_{12}^*$  matches the **result type**  $t_{22}^*$ .
- The local index sequence  $x^*$  is of the form  $x_2^* \setminus x_1^*$ .
- The length of  $t^*$  is equal to the length of  $x^*$ .
- For all  $x$  in  $x^*$ :
  - The **local type**  $C.\text{locals}[x]$  exists.

- For all  $t$  in  $t^*$ , and corresponding  $x$  in  $x^*$ :
  - The **local type**  $C.\text{locals}[x]$  is of the form  $(\text{set } t)$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash t_{21}^* \leq t_{11}^* \quad C \vdash t_{12}^* \leq t_{22}^* \quad x^* = x_2^* \setminus x_1^* \quad (C.\text{locals}[x] = \text{set } t)^*}{C \vdash t_{11}^* \rightarrow_{x_1^*} t_{12}^* \leq t_{21}^* \rightarrow_{x_2^*} t_{22}^*}$$

#### Note

Instruction types are contravariant in their input and covariant in their output. Moreover, the supertype may ignore variables from the init set  $x_1^*$ . It may also *add* variables to the init set, provided these are already set in the context, i.e., are vacuously initialized.

### 3.3.8 Function Types

The **function type**  $t_{11}^* \rightarrow t_{12}^*$  matches the **function type**  $t_{21}^* \rightarrow t_{22}^*$  if:

- The **result type**  $t_{21}^*$  matches the **result type**  $t_{11}^*$ .
- The **result type**  $t_{12}^*$  matches the **result type**  $t_{22}^*$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash t_{21}^* \leq t_{11}^* \quad C \vdash t_{12}^* \leq t_{22}^*}{C \vdash t_{11}^* \rightarrow t_{12}^* \leq t_{21}^* \rightarrow t_{22}^*}$$

### 3.3.9 Composite Types

The **composite type** *comptype* matches the **composite type** *comptype'* if:

- Either:
  - The **composite type** *comptype* is of the form  $(\text{struct } yt_1^* \ yt_1')$ .
  - The **composite type** *comptype'* is of the form  $(\text{struct } yt_2^*)$ .

- The length of  $yt_1^*$  is equal to the length of  $yt_2^*$ .
- For all  $yt_1$  in  $yt_1^*$ , and corresponding  $yt_2$  in  $yt_2^*$ :
  - \* The field type  $yt_1$  matches the field type  $yt_2$ .
- Or:
  - The composite type  $comptype$  is of the form  $(array\ yt_1)$ .
  - The composite type  $comptype'$  is of the form  $(array\ yt_2)$ .
  - The field type  $yt_1$  matches the field type  $yt_2$ .
- Or:
  - The composite type  $comptype$  is of the form  $(func\ ft_1)$ .
  - The composite type  $comptype'$  is of the form  $(func\ ft_2)$ .
  - The function type  $ft_1$  matches the function type  $ft_2$ .

$$\frac{(C \vdash yt_1 \leq yt_2)^*}{C \vdash struct(yt_1^* yt_1') \leq struct\ yt_2^*} \quad \frac{C \vdash yt_1 \leq yt_2}{C \vdash array\ yt_1 \leq array\ yt_2} \quad \frac{C \vdash ft_1 \leq ft_2}{C \vdash func\ ft_1 \leq func\ ft_2}$$

### 3.3.10 Field Types

The field type  $(mut^? \ zt_1)$  matches the field type  $(mut^{?' } \ zt_2)$  if:

- The storage type  $zt_1$  matches the storage type  $zt_2$ .
- Either:
  - The  $mut^? \ mut^?$  is absent.
  - The  $mut^{?' } \ mut^{?' }$  is absent.
- Or:
  - The  $mut^? \ mut^?$  is of the form  $mut$ .
  - The  $mut^{?' } \ mut^{?' }$  is of the form  $mut$ .
  - The storage type  $zt_2$  matches the storage type  $zt_1$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash zt_1 \leq zt_2}{C \vdash zt_1 \leq zt_2} \quad \frac{C \vdash zt_1 \leq zt_2 \quad C \vdash zt_2 \leq zt_1}{C \vdash mut\ zt_1 \leq mut\ zt_2}$$

The storage type  $storagetype$  matches the storage type  $storagetype'$  if:

- Either:
  - The storage type  $storagetype$  is of the form  $valtype_1$ .
  - The storage type  $storagetype'$  is of the form  $valtype_2$ .
  - The value type  $valtype_1$  matches the value type  $valtype_2$ .
- Or:
  - The storage type  $storagetype$  is of the form  $packtype_1$ .
  - The storage type  $storagetype'$  is of the form  $packtype_2$ .
  - The packed type  $packtype_1$  matches the packed type  $packtype_2$ .

The packed type  $packtype$  matches only itself.

$$\overline{C \vdash packtype \leq packtype}$$

### 3.3.11 Defined Types

The defined type  $deftype_1$  matches the defined type  $deftype_2$  if:

- Either:
  - The defined type  $\text{clos}_C(deftype_1)$  is of the form  $\text{clos}_C(deftype_2)$ .
- Or:
  - The sub type  $\text{unroll}(deftype_1)$  is of the form  $(\text{sub final}^? \text{typeuse}^* ct)$ .
  - The length of  $\text{typeuse}^*$  is greater than  $i$ .
  - The type use  $\text{typeuse}^*[i]$  matches the heap type  $deftype_2$ .

$$\frac{\text{clos}_C(deftype_1) = \text{clos}_C(deftype_2)}{C \vdash deftype_1 \leq deftype_2}$$

$$\frac{\text{unroll}(deftype_1) = \text{sub final}^? \text{typeuse}^* ct \quad C \vdash \text{typeuse}^*[i] \leq deftype_2}{C \vdash deftype_1 \leq deftype_2}$$

#### Note

Note that there is no explicit definition of type *equivalence*, since it coincides with syntactic equality, as used in the premise of the former rule above.

### 3.3.12 Limits

The limits range  $[n_1 .. m_1]$  matches the limits range  $[n_2 .. m_2]$  if:

- The  $n_1$  is greater than or equal to  $n_2$ .
- The  $m_1$  is less than or equal to  $m_2$ .

$$\frac{n_1 \geq n_2 \quad m_1 \leq m_2}{C \vdash [n_1 .. m_1] \leq [n_2 .. m_2]}$$

### 3.3.13 Table Types

The table type  $(\text{addrtype limits}_1 \text{ reftype}_1)$  matches the table type  $(\text{addrtype limits}_2 \text{ reftype}_2)$  if:

- The limits range  $\text{limits}_1$  matches the limits range  $\text{limits}_2$ .
- The reference type  $\text{reftype}_1$  matches the reference type  $\text{reftype}_2$ .
- The reference type  $\text{reftype}_2$  matches the reference type  $\text{reftype}_1$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{limits}_1 \leq \text{limits}_2 \quad C \vdash \text{reftype}_1 \leq \text{reftype}_2 \quad C \vdash \text{reftype}_2 \leq \text{reftype}_1}{C \vdash \text{addrtype limits}_1 \text{ reftype}_1 \leq \text{addrtype limits}_2 \text{ reftype}_2}$$

### 3.3.14 Memory Types

The memory type  $(\text{addrtype limits}_1 \text{ page})$  matches the memory type  $(\text{addrtype limits}_2 \text{ page})$  if:

- The limits range  $\text{limits}_1$  matches the limits range  $\text{limits}_2$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{limits}_1 \leq \text{limits}_2}{C \vdash \text{addrtype limits}_1 \text{ page} \leq \text{addrtype limits}_2 \text{ page}}$$

### 3.3.15 Global Types

The global type  $(\text{mut}^? \text{valtype}_1)$  matches the global type  $(\text{mut}^{?' } \text{valtype}_2)$  if:

- The value type  $\text{valtype}_1$  matches the value type  $\text{valtype}_2$ .
- Either:
  - The  $\text{mut}^? \text{mut}^?$  is absent.
  - The  $\text{mut}^{?' } \text{mut}^{?' }$  is absent.
- Or:
  - The  $\text{mut}^? \text{mut}^?$  is of the form  $\text{mut}$ .
  - The  $\text{mut}^{?' } \text{mut}^{?' }$  is of the form  $\text{mut}$ .
  - The value type  $\text{valtype}_2$  matches the value type  $\text{valtype}_1$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{valtype}_1 \leq \text{valtype}_2}{C \vdash \text{valtype}_1 \leq \text{valtype}_2} \quad \frac{C \vdash \text{valtype}_1 \leq \text{valtype}_2 \quad C \vdash \text{valtype}_2 \leq \text{valtype}_1}{C \vdash \text{mut } \text{valtype}_1 \leq \text{mut } \text{valtype}_2}$$

### 3.3.16 Tag Types

The tag type  $\text{deftype}_1$  matches the tag type  $\text{deftype}_2$  if:

- The defined type  $\text{deftype}_1$  matches the defined type  $\text{deftype}_2$ .
- The defined type  $\text{deftype}_2$  matches the defined type  $\text{deftype}_1$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{deftype}_1 \leq \text{deftype}_2 \quad C \vdash \text{deftype}_2 \leq \text{deftype}_1}{C \vdash \text{deftype}_1 \leq \text{deftype}_2}$$

#### Note

Although the conclusion of this rule looks identical to its premise, they in fact describe different relations: the premise invokes subtyping on defined types, while the conclusion defines it on tag types that happen to be expressed as defined types.

### 3.3.17 External Types

The external type  $(\text{func } \text{deftype}_1)$  matches the external type  $(\text{func } \text{deftype}_2)$  if:

- The defined type  $\text{deftype}_1$  matches the defined type  $\text{deftype}_2$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{deftype}_1 \leq \text{deftype}_2}{C \vdash \text{func } \text{deftype}_1 \leq \text{func } \text{deftype}_2}$$

The external type  $(\text{table } \text{tabletype}_1)$  matches the external type  $(\text{table } \text{tabletype}_2)$  if:

- The table type  $\text{tabletype}_1$  matches the table type  $\text{tabletype}_2$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{tabletype}_1 \leq \text{tabletype}_2}{C \vdash \text{table } \text{tabletype}_1 \leq \text{table } \text{tabletype}_2}$$

The external type  $(\text{mem } \text{memtype}_1)$  matches the external type  $(\text{mem } \text{memtype}_2)$  if:

- The memory type  $\text{memtype}_1$  matches the memory type  $\text{memtype}_2$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{memtype}_1 \leq \text{memtype}_2}{C \vdash \text{mem } \text{memtype}_1 \leq \text{mem } \text{memtype}_2}$$

The external type  $(\text{global } \text{globaltype}_1)$  matches the external type  $(\text{global } \text{globaltype}_2)$  if:

- The global type  $\text{globaltype}_1$  matches the global type  $\text{globaltype}_2$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{globaltype}_1 \leq \text{globaltype}_2}{C \vdash \text{global } \text{globaltype}_1 \leq \text{global } \text{globaltype}_2}$$

The external type  $(\text{tag } \text{tagtype}_1)$  matches the external type  $(\text{tag } \text{tagtype}_2)$  if:

- The tag type  $\text{tagtype}_1$  matches the tag type  $\text{tagtype}_2$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{tagtype}_1 \leq \text{tagtype}_2}{C \vdash \text{tag } \text{tagtype}_1 \leq \text{tag } \text{tagtype}_2}$$

### 3.4 Instructions

Instructions are classified by **instruction types** that describe how they manipulate the **operand stack** and initialize **locals**: A type  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^*$  describes the required input stack with argument values of types  $t_1^*$  that an instruction pops off and the provided output stack with result values of types  $t_2^*$  that it pushes back. Moreover, it enumerates the **indices**  $x^*$  of locals that have been set by the instruction. In most cases, this is empty.

#### Note

For example, the instruction `i32.add` has type  $\text{i32 } \text{i32} \rightarrow \text{i32}$ , consuming two `i32` values and producing one. The instruction `(local.set x)` has type  $t \rightarrow_x \epsilon$ , provided  $t$  is the type declared for the local  $x$ .

Typing extends to **instruction sequences**  $\text{instr}^*$ . Such a sequence has an instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^*$  if the accumulative effect of executing the instructions is consuming values of types  $t_1^*$  off the operand stack, pushing new values of types  $t_2^*$ , and setting all locals  $x^*$ .

For some instructions, the typing rules do not fully constrain the type, and therefore allow for multiple types. Such instructions are called *polymorphic*. Two degrees of polymorphism can be distinguished:

- *value-polymorphic*: the **value type**  $t$  of one or several individual operands is unconstrained. That is the case for all **parametric instructions** like `drop` and `select`.
- *stack-polymorphic*: the entire (or most of the) **instruction type**  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  of the instruction is unconstrained. That is the case for all **control instructions** that perform an *unconditional control transfer*, such as `unreachable`, `br`, or `return`.

In both cases, the unconstrained types or type sequences can be chosen arbitrarily, as long as they meet the constraints imposed for the surrounding parts of the program.

#### Note

For example, the `select` instruction is valid with type  $t \text{ } t \text{ } \text{i32} \rightarrow t$ , for any possible **number type**  $t$ . Consequently, both instruction sequences

`(i32.const 1) (i32.const 2) (i32.const 3) (select)`

and

`(f64.const +64) (f64.const +64) (f64.const +64) (select)`

are valid, with  $t$  in the typing of `select` being instantiated to `i32` or `f64`, respectively.

The `unreachable` instruction is stack-polymorphic, and hence valid with type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  for any possible sequences of value types  $t_1^*$  and  $t_2^*$ . Consequently,

`(unreachable) (i32.add)`

is valid by assuming type  $\epsilon \rightarrow \text{i32}$  for the `unreachable` instruction. In contrast,

`(unreachable) (i64.const 0) (i32.add)`

is invalid, because there is no possible type to pick for the `unreachable` instruction that would make the sequence well-typed.

The [Appendix](#) describes a type checking [algorithm](#) that efficiently implements validation of instruction sequences as prescribed by the rules given here.

### 3.4.1 Parametric Instructions

`nop`

The instruction `nop` is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow \epsilon$ .

$$\frac{}{C \vdash \text{nop} : \epsilon \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`unreachable`

The instruction `unreachable` is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{unreachable} : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

#### Note

The `unreachable` instruction is [stack-polymorphic](#).

`drop`

The instruction `drop` is valid with the instruction type  $t \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The value type  $t$  is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash t : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{drop} : t \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

#### Note

Both `drop` and `select` without annotation are [value-polymorphic](#) instructions.

`select`  $(t^*)^?$

The instruction `(select valtype?)` is valid with the instruction type  $t \text{ i32} \rightarrow t$  if:

- The value type  $t$  is valid.
- Either:
  - The value type sequence *valtype*<sup>?</sup> is of the form  $t$ .
- Or:
  - The value type sequence *valtype*<sup>?</sup> is absent.
  - The value type  $t$  matches the value type  $t'$ .
  - The value type  $t'$  is of the form *numtype* or  $t'$  is of the form *vectype*.

$$\frac{C \vdash t : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{select } t : t \text{ i32} \rightarrow t} \quad \frac{C \vdash t : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash t \leq t' \quad t' = \text{numtype} \vee t' = \text{vectype}}{C \vdash \text{select} : t \text{ i32} \rightarrow t}$$

#### Note

In future versions of WebAssembly, `select` may allow more than one value per choice.

### 3.4.2 Numeric Instructions

*t.const c*

The instruction (*nt.const c<sub>nt</sub>*) is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow nt$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash nt.const\ c_{nt} : \epsilon \rightarrow nt}$$

*t.unop*

The instruction (*nt.unop<sub>nt</sub>*) is valid with the instruction type  $nt \rightarrow nt$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash nt.unop_{nt} : nt \rightarrow nt}$$

*t.binop*

The instruction (*nt.binop<sub>nt</sub>*) is valid with the instruction type  $nt\ nt \rightarrow nt$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash nt.binop_{nt} : nt\ nt \rightarrow nt}$$

*t.testop*

The instruction (*nt.testop<sub>nt</sub>*) is valid with the instruction type  $nt \rightarrow i32$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash nt.testop_{nt} : nt \rightarrow i32}$$

*t.relop*

The instruction (*nt.relop<sub>nt</sub>*) is valid with the instruction type  $nt\ nt \rightarrow i32$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash nt.relop_{nt} : nt\ nt \rightarrow i32}$$

*t<sub>1</sub>.cvtop\_t2\_sx?*

The instruction (*nt<sub>1</sub>.cvtop\_nt<sub>2</sub>*) is valid with the instruction type  $nt_2 \rightarrow nt_1$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash nt_1.cvtop\_nt_2 : nt_2 \rightarrow nt_1}$$

### 3.4.3 Reference Instructions

*ref.null ht*

The instruction (*ref.null ht*) is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow (\text{ref null } ht)$  if:

- The heap type *ht* is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash ht : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{ref.null } ht : \epsilon \rightarrow (\text{ref null } ht)}$$

*ref.func x*

The instruction (*ref.func x*) is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow (\text{ref } dt)$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{funcs}[x]$  exists.
- The defined type  $C.\text{funcs}[x]$  is of the form *dt*.
- *x* is contained in  $C.\text{refs}$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{funcs}[x] = dt \quad x \in C.\text{refs}}{C \vdash \text{ref.func } x : \epsilon \rightarrow (\text{ref } dt)}$$

`ref.is_null`

The instruction `ref.is_null` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null } ht) \rightarrow i32$  if:

- The heap type  $ht$  is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash ht : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{ref.is\_null} : (\text{ref null } ht) \rightarrow i32}$$

`ref.as_non_null`

The instruction `ref.as_non_null` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null } ht) \rightarrow (\text{ref } ht)$  if:

- The heap type  $ht$  is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash ht : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{ref.as\_non\_null} : (\text{ref null } ht) \rightarrow (\text{ref } ht)}$$

`ref.eq`

The instruction `ref.eq` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null eq}) (\text{ref null eq}) \rightarrow i32$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{ref.eq} : (\text{ref null eq}) (\text{ref null eq}) \rightarrow i32}$$

`ref.test rt`

The instruction `(ref.test  $rt$ )` is valid with the instruction type  $rt' \rightarrow i32$  if:

- The reference type  $rt$  is valid.
- The reference type  $rt'$  is valid.
- The reference type  $rt$  matches the reference type  $rt'$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash rt : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash rt' : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash rt \leq rt'}{C \vdash \text{ref.test } rt : rt' \rightarrow i32}$$

**Note**

The liberty to pick a supertype  $rt'$  allows typing the instruction with the least precise super type of  $rt$  as input, that is, the top type in the corresponding heap subtyping hierarchy.

`ref.cast rt`

The instruction `(ref.cast  $rt$ )` is valid with the instruction type  $rt' \rightarrow rt$  if:

- The reference type  $rt$  is valid.
- The reference type  $rt'$  is valid.
- The reference type  $rt$  matches the reference type  $rt'$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash rt : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash rt' : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash rt \leq rt'}{C \vdash \text{ref.cast } rt : rt' \rightarrow rt}$$

**Note**

The liberty to pick a supertype  $rt'$  allows typing the instruction with the least precise super type of  $rt$  as input, that is, the top type in the corresponding heap subtyping hierarchy.



### 3.4.4 Aggregate Reference Instructions

`struct.new x`

The instruction `(struct.new x)` is valid with the instruction type  $t^* \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{struct } (\text{mut}^? \text{zt})^*)$ .
- Let  $t^*$  be the value type sequence  $\text{unpack}(\text{zt})^*$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{struct } (\text{mut}^? \text{zt})^*}{C \vdash \text{struct.new } x : \text{unpack}(\text{zt})^* \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)}$$

`struct.new_default x`

The instruction `(struct.new_default x)` is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{struct } (\text{mut}^? \text{zt})^*)$ .
- For all  $zt$  in  $zt^*$ :
  - A default value for the value type  $\text{unpack}(\text{zt})$  is defined.

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{struct } (\text{mut}^? \text{zt})^* \quad (\text{default}_{\text{unpack}(\text{zt})} \neq \epsilon)^*}{C \vdash \text{struct.new\_default } x : \epsilon \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)}$$

`struct.get_{sx}^? x y`

The instruction `(struct.get_{sx}^? x i)` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null } x) \rightarrow t$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{struct } yt^*)$ .
- The length of  $yt^*$  is greater than  $i$ .
- The field type  $yt^*[i]$  is of the form  $(\text{mut}^? \text{zt})$ .
- The signedness  $sx^?$  is absent if and only if the storage type  $zt$  is of the form  $\text{unpack}(\text{zt})$ .
- Let  $t$  be the value type  $\text{unpack}(\text{zt})$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{struct } yt^* \quad yt^*[i] = \text{mut}^? \text{zt} \quad sx^? = \epsilon \Leftrightarrow \text{zt} = \text{unpack}(\text{zt})}{C \vdash \text{struct.get\_sx}^? x i : (\text{ref null } x) \rightarrow \text{unpack}(\text{zt})}$$

`struct.set x y`

The instruction `(struct.set x i)` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null } x) t \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{struct } yt^*)$ .
- The length of  $yt^*$  is greater than  $i$ .
- The field type  $yt^*[i]$  is of the form  $(\text{mut } \text{zt})$ .
- Let  $t$  be the value type  $\text{unpack}(\text{zt})$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{struct } yt^* \quad yt^*[i] = \text{mut } \text{zt}}{C \vdash \text{struct.set } x i : (\text{ref null } x) \text{unpack}(\text{zt}) \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`array.new x`

The instruction `(array.new x)` is valid with the instruction type  $t \text{ i32} \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } zt))$ .
- Let  $t$  be the value type  $\text{unpack}(zt)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } zt)}{C \vdash \text{array.new } x : \text{unpack}(zt) \text{ i32} \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)}$$

`array.new_default x`

The instruction `(array.new_default x)` is valid with the instruction type  $\text{i32} \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } zt))$ .
- A default value for the value type  $\text{unpack}(zt)$  is defined.

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } zt) \quad \text{default}_{\text{unpack}(zt)} \neq \epsilon}{C \vdash \text{array.new\_default } x : \text{i32} \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)}$$

`array.new_fixed x n`

The instruction `(array.new_fixed x n)` is valid with the instruction type  $t^n \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } zt))$ .
- Let  $t$  be the value type  $\text{unpack}(zt)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } zt)}{C \vdash \text{array.new\_fixed } x \text{ } n : \text{unpack}(zt)^n \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)}$$

`array.new_elem x y`

The instruction `(array.new_elem x y)` is valid with the instruction type  $\text{i32 } \text{i32} \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } rt))$ .
- The element type  $C.\text{elems}[y]$  exists.
- The reference type  $C.\text{elems}[y]$  matches the reference type  $rt$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } rt) \quad C \vdash C.\text{elems}[y] \leq rt}{C \vdash \text{array.new\_elem } x \text{ } y : \text{i32 } \text{i32} \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)}$$

`array.new_data x y`

The instruction `(array.new_data x y)` is valid with the instruction type  $\text{i32 } \text{i32} \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } zt))$ .
- The value type  $\text{unpack}(zt)$  is of the form *numtype* or  $\text{unpack}(zt)$  is of the form *vectype*.
- The data type  $C.\text{datas}[y]$  exists.
- The data type  $C.\text{datas}[y]$  is of the form *ok*.

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } zt) \quad \text{unpack}(zt) = \text{numtype} \vee \text{unpack}(zt) = \text{vectype} \quad C.\text{datas}[y] = \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{array.new\_data } x \text{ } y : \text{i32 } \text{i32} \rightarrow (\text{ref } x)}$$

`array.getsx? x`

The instruction `(array.getsx? x)` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null } x) \text{ i32} \rightarrow t$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut}^? zt))$ .
- The signedness  $sx^?$  is absent if and only if the storage type  $zt$  is of the form  $\text{unpack}(zt)$ .
- Let  $t$  be the value type  $\text{unpack}(zt)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut}^? zt) \quad sx^? = \epsilon \Leftrightarrow zt = \text{unpack}(zt)}{C \vdash \text{array.get}_{sx^?} x : (\text{ref null } x) \text{ i32} \rightarrow \text{unpack}(zt)}$$

`array.set x`

The instruction `(array.set x)` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null } x) \text{ i32 } t \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut } zt))$ .
- Let  $t$  be the value type  $\text{unpack}(zt)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut } zt)}{C \vdash \text{array.set } x : (\text{ref null } x) \text{ i32 } \text{unpack}(zt) \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`array.len`

The instruction `array.len` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null array}) \rightarrow \text{i32}$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{array.len} : (\text{ref null array}) \rightarrow \text{i32}}$$

`array.fill x`

The instruction `(array.fill x)` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null } x) \text{ i32 } t \text{ i32} \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut } zt))$ .
- Let  $t$  be the value type  $\text{unpack}(zt)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut } zt)}{C \vdash \text{array.fill } x : (\text{ref null } x) \text{ i32 } \text{unpack}(zt) \text{ i32} \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`array.copy x y`

The instruction `(array.copy x1 x2)` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null } x_1) \text{ i32 } (\text{ref null } x_2) \text{ i32 i32} \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x_1]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x_1]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut } zt_1))$ .
- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x_2]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x_2]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut}^? zt_2))$ .
- The storage type  $zt_2$  matches the storage type  $zt_1$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x_1] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut } zt_1) \quad C.\text{types}[x_2] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut}^? zt_2) \quad C \vdash zt_2 \leq zt_1}{C \vdash \text{array.copy } x_1 x_2 : (\text{ref null } x_1) \text{ i32 } (\text{ref null } x_2) \text{ i32 i32} \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`array.init_elem x y`

The instruction `(array.init_elem x y)` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null } x) \text{ i32 i32 i32} \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut } zt))$ .
- The element type  $C.\text{elems}[y]$  exists.
- The element type  $C.\text{elems}[y]$  matches the storage type  $zt$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut } zt) \quad C \vdash C.\text{elems}[y] \leq zt}{C \vdash \text{array.init\_elem } x \ y : (\text{ref null } x) \text{ i32 i32 i32} \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`array.init_data x y`

The instruction `(array.init_data x y)` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null } x) \text{ i32 i32 i32} \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{array } (\text{mut } zt))$ .
- The value type  $\text{unpack}(zt)$  is of the form *numtype* or  $\text{unpack}(zt)$  is of the form *vectype*.
- The data type  $C.\text{datas}[y]$  exists.
- The data type  $C.\text{datas}[y]$  is of the form *ok*.

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut } zt) \quad \text{unpack}(zt) = \text{numtype} \vee \text{unpack}(zt) = \text{vectype} \quad C.\text{datas}[y] = \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{array.init\_data } x \ y : (\text{ref null } x) \text{ i32 i32 i32} \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

### 3.4.5 Scalar Reference Instructions

`ref.i31`

The instruction `ref.i31` is valid with the instruction type  $\text{i32} \rightarrow (\text{ref i31})$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{ref.i31} : \text{i32} \rightarrow (\text{ref i31})}$$

`i31.get_sx`

The instruction `(i31.get_sx)` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null i31}) \rightarrow \text{i32}$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{i31.get\_sx} : (\text{ref null i31}) \rightarrow \text{i32}}$$

### 3.4.6 External Reference Instructions

`any.convert_extern`

The instruction `any.convert_extern` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null}_1^? \text{ extern}) \rightarrow (\text{ref null}_2^? \text{ any})$  if:

- The  $\text{null}_1^? \text{ null}_1^?$  is of the form  $\text{null}_2^?$ .

$$\frac{\text{null}_1^? = \text{null}_2^?}{C \vdash \text{any.convert\_extern} : (\text{ref null}_1^? \text{ extern}) \rightarrow (\text{ref null}_2^? \text{ any})}$$

`extern.convert_any`

The instruction `extern.convert_any` is valid with the instruction type  $(\text{ref null}_1^? \text{ any}) \rightarrow (\text{ref null}_2^? \text{ extern})$  if:

- The  $\text{null}_1^? \text{ null}_1^?$  is of the form  $\text{null}_2^?$ .

$$\frac{\text{null}_1^? = \text{null}_2^?}{C \vdash \text{extern.convert\_any} : (\text{ref null}_1^? \text{ any}) \rightarrow (\text{ref null}_2^? \text{ extern})}$$

### 3.4.7 Vector Instructions

Vector instructions can have a prefix to describe the *shape* of the operand. Packed numeric types, *i8* and *i16*, are not *value types*. An auxiliary function maps such packed type shapes to value types:

$$\text{unpack}(i \times N) = \text{unpack}(i)$$

*v128.const c*

The instruction (*v128.const c*) is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash v128.\text{const } c : \epsilon \rightarrow v128}$$

*v128.vvunop*

The instruction (*v128.vvunop*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128 \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash v128.vvunop : v128 \rightarrow v128}$$

*v128.vvbinop*

The instruction (*v128.vvbinop*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128 \ v128 \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash v128.vvbinop : v128 \ v128 \rightarrow v128}$$

*v128.vvternop*

The instruction (*v128.vvternop*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128 \ v128 \ v128 \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash v128.vvternop : v128 \ v128 \ v128 \rightarrow v128}$$

*v128.vvtestop*

The instruction (*v128.vvtestop*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128 \rightarrow i32$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash v128.vvtestop : v128 \rightarrow i32}$$

*shape.vunop*

The instruction (*sh.vunop*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128 \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh.vunop : v128 \rightarrow v128}$$

*shape.vbinop*

The instruction (*sh.vbinop*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128 \ v128 \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh.vbinop : v128 \ v128 \rightarrow v128}$$

*shape.vternop*

The instruction (*sh.vternop*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128 \ v128 \ v128 \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh.vternop : v128 \ v128 \ v128 \rightarrow v128}$$

*shape.vtestop*

The instruction (*sh.vtestop*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128 \rightarrow i32$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh.vtestop : v128 \rightarrow i32}$$

*shape.vrelop*

The instruction (*sh.vrelop*) is valid with the instruction type  $v_{128} \ v_{128} \rightarrow v_{128}$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh.vrelop : v_{128} \ v_{128} \rightarrow v_{128}}$$

*ishape.vshiftop*

The instruction (*sh.vshiftop*) is valid with the instruction type  $v_{128} \ i_{32} \rightarrow v_{128}$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh.vshiftop : v_{128} \ i_{32} \rightarrow v_{128}}$$

*ishape.bitmask*

The instruction (*sh.bitmask*) is valid with the instruction type  $v_{128} \rightarrow i_{32}$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh.bitmask : v_{128} \rightarrow i_{32}}$$

*i8x16.vswizzlop*

The instruction (*sh.vswizzlop*) is valid with the instruction type  $v_{128} \ v_{128} \rightarrow v_{128}$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh.vswizzlop : v_{128} \ v_{128} \rightarrow v_{128}}$$

*i8x16.shuffle laneidx*<sup>16</sup>

The instruction (*sh.shuffle i\**) is valid with the instruction type  $v_{128} \ v_{128} \rightarrow v_{128}$  if:

- For all  $i$  in  $i^*$ :
  - The lane index  $i$  is less than  $2 \cdot \dim(sh)$ .

$$\frac{(i < 2 \cdot \dim(sh))^*}{\overline{C \vdash sh.shuffle \ i^* : v_{128} \ v_{128} \rightarrow v_{128}}}$$

*shape.splat*

The instruction (*sh.splat*) is valid with the instruction type  $t \rightarrow v_{128}$  if:

- Let  $t$  be the number type  $\text{unpack}(sh)$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh.splat : \text{unpack}(sh) \rightarrow v_{128}}$$

*shape.extract\_lane\_sx?* *laneidx*

The instruction (*sh.extract\_lane\_sx?*  $i$ ) is valid with the instruction type  $v_{128} \rightarrow t$  if:

- The lane index  $i$  is less than  $\dim(sh)$ .
- Let  $t$  be the number type  $\text{unpack}(sh)$ .

$$\frac{i < \dim(sh)}{\overline{C \vdash sh.extract\_lane\_sx? \ i : v_{128} \rightarrow \text{unpack}(sh)}}$$

*shape.replace\_lane laneidx*

The instruction (*sh.replace\_lane i*) is valid with the instruction type  $v_{128} \ t \rightarrow v_{128}$  if:

- The lane index  $i$  is less than  $\dim(sh)$ .
- Let  $t$  be the number type  $\text{unpack}(sh)$ .

$$\frac{i < \dim(sh)}{\overline{C \vdash sh.replace\_lane \ i : v_{128} \ \text{unpack}(sh) \rightarrow v_{128}}}$$

*ishape<sub>1</sub>.vextunop\_ishape<sub>2</sub>*

The instruction (*sh<sub>1</sub>.vextunop\_sh<sub>2</sub>*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128 \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh_1.vextunop\_sh_2 : v128 \rightarrow v128}$$

*ishape<sub>1</sub>.vextbinop\_ishape<sub>2</sub>*

The instruction (*sh<sub>1</sub>.vextbinop\_sh<sub>2</sub>*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128\ v128 \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh_1.vextbinop\_sh_2 : v128\ v128 \rightarrow v128}$$

*ishape<sub>1</sub>.vextternop\_ishape<sub>2</sub>*

The instruction (*sh<sub>1</sub>.vextternop\_sh<sub>2</sub>*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128\ v128\ v128 \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh_1.vextternop\_sh_2 : v128\ v128\ v128 \rightarrow v128}$$

*ishape<sub>1</sub>.narrow\_ishape<sub>2</sub>\_sx*

The instruction (*sh<sub>1</sub>.narrow\_sh<sub>2</sub>\_sx*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128\ v128 \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh_1.narrow\_sh_2\_sx : v128\ v128 \rightarrow v128}$$

*shape.vcvttop\_half?\_shape\_sx?\_zero?*

The instruction (*sh<sub>1</sub>.vcvttop\_zero?\_sh<sub>2</sub>\_half?*) is valid with the instruction type  $v128 \rightarrow v128$ .

$$\overline{C \vdash sh_1.vcvttop\_zero?\_sh_2\_half? : v128 \rightarrow v128}$$

### 3.4.8 Variable Instructions

*local.get x*

The instruction (*local.get x*) is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow t$  if:

- The local type  $C.\text{locals}[x]$  exists.
- The local type  $C.\text{locals}[x]$  is of the form (*set t*).

$$\frac{C.\text{locals}[x] = \text{set } t}{C \vdash \text{local.get } x : \epsilon \rightarrow t}$$

*local.set x*

The instruction (*local.set x*) is valid with the instruction type  $t \rightarrow_x \epsilon$  if:

- The local type  $C.\text{locals}[x]$  exists.
- The local type  $C.\text{locals}[x]$  is of the form (*init t*).

$$\frac{C.\text{locals}[x] = \text{init } t}{C \vdash \text{local.set } x : t \rightarrow_x \epsilon}$$

*local.tee x*

The instruction (*local.tee x*) is valid with the instruction type  $t \rightarrow_x t$  if:

- The local type  $C.\text{locals}[x]$  exists.
- The local type  $C.\text{locals}[x]$  is of the form (*init t*).

$$\frac{C.\text{locals}[x] = \text{init } t}{C \vdash \text{local.tee } x : t \rightarrow_x t}$$

`global.get x`

The instruction `(global.get x)` is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow t$  if:

- The global type  $C.\text{globals}[x]$  exists.
- The global type  $C.\text{globals}[x]$  is of the form  $(\text{mut}^? t)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{globals}[x] = \text{mut}^? t}{C \vdash \text{global.get } x : \epsilon \rightarrow t}$$

`global.set x`

The instruction `(global.set x)` is valid with the instruction type  $t \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The global type  $C.\text{globals}[x]$  exists.
- The global type  $C.\text{globals}[x]$  is of the form  $(\text{mut } t)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{globals}[x] = \text{mut } t}{C \vdash \text{global.set } x : t \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

### 3.4.9 Table Instructions

`table.get x`

The instruction `(table.get x)` is valid with the instruction type  $at \rightarrow rt$  if:

- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  exists.
- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  is of the form  $(at \text{ lim } rt)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{tables}[x] = at \text{ lim } rt}{C \vdash \text{table.get } x : at \rightarrow rt}$$

`table.set x`

The instruction `(table.set x)` is valid with the instruction type  $at \text{ } rt \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  exists.
- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  is of the form  $(at \text{ lim } rt)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{tables}[x] = at \text{ lim } rt}{C \vdash \text{table.set } x : at \text{ } rt \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`table.size x`

The instruction `(table.size x)` is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow at$  if:

- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  exists.
- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  is of the form  $(at \text{ lim } rt)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{tables}[x] = at \text{ lim } rt}{C \vdash \text{table.size } x : \epsilon \rightarrow at}$$

`table.grow x`

The instruction `(table.grow x)` is valid with the instruction type  $rt \text{ } at \rightarrow i32$  if:

- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  exists.
- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  is of the form  $(at \text{ lim } rt)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{tables}[x] = at \text{ lim } rt}{C \vdash \text{table.grow } x : rt \text{ } at \rightarrow i32}$$



`table.fill x`

The instruction (`table.fill x`) is valid with the instruction type  $at\ rt\ at \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The table type  $C.tables[x]$  exists.
- The table type  $C.tables[x]$  is of the form  $(at\ lim\ rt)$ .

$$\frac{C.tables[x] = at\ lim\ rt}{C \vdash \text{table.fill } x : at\ rt\ at \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`table.copy x y`

The instruction (`table.copy x1 x2`) is valid with the instruction type  $at_1\ at_2\ t \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The table type  $C.tables[x_1]$  exists.
- The table type  $C.tables[x_1]$  is of the form  $(at_1\ lim_1\ rt_1)$ .
- The table type  $C.tables[x_2]$  exists.
- The table type  $C.tables[x_2]$  is of the form  $(at_2\ lim_2\ rt_2)$ .
- The reference type  $rt_2$  matches the reference type  $rt_1$ .
- Let  $t$  be the address type  $\min(at_1, at_2)$ .

$$\frac{C.tables[x_1] = at_1\ lim_1\ rt_1 \quad C.tables[x_2] = at_2\ lim_2\ rt_2 \quad C \vdash rt_2 \leq rt_1}{C \vdash \text{table.copy } x_1\ x_2 : at_1\ at_2\ \min(at_1, at_2) \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`table.init x y`

The instruction (`table.init x y`) is valid with the instruction type  $at\ i32\ i32 \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The table type  $C.tables[x]$  exists.
- The table type  $C.tables[x]$  is of the form  $(at\ lim\ rt_1)$ .
- The element type  $C.elems[y]$  exists.
- The reference type  $C.elems[y]$  is of the form  $rt_2$ .
- The reference type  $rt_2$  matches the reference type  $rt_1$ .

$$\frac{C.tables[x] = at\ lim\ rt_1 \quad C.elems[y] = rt_2 \quad C \vdash rt_2 \leq rt_1}{C \vdash \text{table.init } x\ y : at\ i32\ i32 \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`elem.drop x`

The instruction (`elem.drop x`) is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The element type  $C.elems[x]$  exists.
- The reference type  $C.elems[x]$  is of the form  $rt$ .

$$\frac{C.elems[x] = rt}{C \vdash \text{elem.drop } x : \epsilon \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

### 3.4.10 Memory Instructions

`t.load x memarg`

The instruction (`nt.load x memarg`) is valid with the instruction type  $at \rightarrow nt$  if:

- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  is of the form  $(at\ lim\ page)$ .
- The  $2^{memarg.align} 2^{memarg.align}$  is less than or equal to  $|nt|/8$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = \text{at } \text{lim page} \quad 2^{\text{memarg.align}} \leq |nt|/8}{C \vdash \text{nt.load } x \text{ memarg} : \text{at} \rightarrow \text{nt}}$$

*t.loadN<sub>sx</sub> x memarg*

The instruction (*in.loadM<sub>sx</sub> x memarg*) is valid with the instruction type  $\text{at} \rightarrow \text{in}$  if:

- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  is of the form (*at lim page*).
- The  $2^{\text{memarg.align}}$  is less than or equal to  $M/8$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = \text{at } \text{lim page} \quad 2^{\text{memarg.align}} \leq M/8}{C \vdash \text{in.loadM}_{sx} x \text{ memarg} : \text{at} \rightarrow \text{in}}$$

*t.store x memarg*

The instruction (*nt.store x memarg*) is valid with the instruction type  $\text{at } \text{nt} \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  is of the form (*at lim page*).
- The  $2^{\text{memarg.align}}$  is less than or equal to  $|nt|/8$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = \text{at } \text{lim page} \quad 2^{\text{memarg.align}} \leq |nt|/8}{C \vdash \text{nt.store } x \text{ memarg} : \text{at } \text{nt} \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

*t.storeN x memarg*

The instruction (*in.storeM x memarg*) is valid with the instruction type  $\text{at } \text{in} \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  is of the form (*at lim page*).
- The  $2^{\text{memarg.align}}$  is less than or equal to  $M/8$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = \text{at } \text{lim page} \quad 2^{\text{memarg.align}} \leq M/8}{C \vdash \text{in.storeM } x \text{ memarg} : \text{at } \text{in} \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

*v128.load x memarg*

The instruction (*v128.load x memarg*) is valid with the instruction type  $\text{at} \rightarrow \text{v128}$  if:

- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  is of the form (*at lim page*).
- The  $2^{\text{memarg.align}}$  is less than or equal to  $|v128|/8$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = \text{at } \text{lim page} \quad 2^{\text{memarg.align}} \leq |v128|/8}{C \vdash \text{v128.load } x \text{ memarg} : \text{at} \rightarrow \text{v128}}$$

*v128.loadN<sub>xM</sub> sx x memarg*

The instruction (*v128.loadM<sub>xN</sub> sx x memarg*) is valid with the instruction type  $\text{at} \rightarrow \text{v128}$  if:

- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  is of the form (*at lim page*).
- The  $2^{\text{memarg.align}}$  is less than or equal to  $M/8 \cdot N$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = \text{at } \text{lim page} \quad 2^{\text{memarg.align}} \leq M/8 \cdot N}{C \vdash \text{v128.loadM}_{xN}_{sx} x \text{ memarg} : \text{at} \rightarrow \text{v128}}$$

`v128.loadN_splat x memarg`

The instruction (`v128.loadN_splat x memarg`) is valid with the instruction type  $at \rightarrow v128$  if:

- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  is of the form  $(at \text{ lim page})$ .
- The  $2^{\text{memarg.align}} 2^{\text{memarg.align}}$  is less than or equal to  $N/8$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = at \text{ lim page} \quad 2^{\text{memarg.align}} \leq N/8}{C \vdash v128.\text{loadN\_splat } x \text{ memarg} : at \rightarrow v128}$$

`v128.loadN_zero x memarg`

The instruction (`v128.loadN_zero x memarg`) is valid with the instruction type  $at \rightarrow v128$  if:

- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  is of the form  $(at \text{ lim page})$ .
- The  $2^{\text{memarg.align}} 2^{\text{memarg.align}}$  is less than or equal to  $N/8$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = at \text{ lim page} \quad 2^{\text{memarg.align}} \leq N/8}{C \vdash v128.\text{loadN\_zero } x \text{ memarg} : at \rightarrow v128}$$

`v128.loadN_lane x memarg laneidx`

The instruction (`v128.loadN_lane x memarg i`) is valid with the instruction type  $at \text{ v128} \rightarrow v128$  if:

- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  is of the form  $(at \text{ lim page})$ .
- The  $2^{\text{memarg.align}} 2^{\text{memarg.align}}$  is less than or equal to  $N/8$ .
- The  $i$  is less than  $128/N$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = at \text{ lim page} \quad 2^{\text{memarg.align}} \leq N/8 \quad i < 128/N}{C \vdash v128.\text{loadN\_lane } x \text{ memarg } i : at \text{ v128} \rightarrow v128}$$

`v128.store x memarg`

The instruction (`v128.store x memarg`) is valid with the instruction type  $at \text{ v128} \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  is of the form  $(at \text{ lim page})$ .
- The  $2^{\text{memarg.align}} 2^{\text{memarg.align}}$  is less than or equal to  $|v128|/8$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = at \text{ lim page} \quad 2^{\text{memarg.align}} \leq |v128|/8}{C \vdash v128.\text{store } x \text{ memarg} : at \text{ v128} \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`v128.storeN_lane x memarg laneidx`

The instruction (`v128.storeN_lane x memarg i`) is valid with the instruction type  $at \text{ v128} \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.\text{mems}[x]$  is of the form  $(at \text{ lim page})$ .
- The  $2^{\text{memarg.align}} 2^{\text{memarg.align}}$  is less than or equal to  $N/8$ .
- The  $i$  is less than  $128/N$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = at \text{ lim page} \quad 2^{\text{memarg.align}} \leq N/8 \quad i < 128/N}{C \vdash v128.\text{storeN\_lane } x \text{ memarg } i : at \text{ v128} \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`memory.size  $x$`

The instruction (`memory.size  $x$` ) is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow at$  if:

- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  is of the form  $(at \ lim \ page)$ .

$$\frac{C.mems[x] = at \ lim \ page}{C \vdash \text{memory.size } x : \epsilon \rightarrow at}$$

`memory.grow  $x$`

The instruction (`memory.grow  $x$` ) is valid with the instruction type  $at \rightarrow at$  if:

- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  is of the form  $(at \ lim \ page)$ .

$$\frac{C.mems[x] = at \ lim \ page}{C \vdash \text{memory.grow } x : at \rightarrow at}$$

`memory.fill  $x$`

The instruction (`memory.fill  $x$` ) is valid with the instruction type  $at \ i32 \ at \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  is of the form  $(at \ lim \ page)$ .

$$\frac{C.mems[x] = at \ lim \ page}{C \vdash \text{memory.fill } x : at \ i32 \ at \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`memory.copy  $x \ y$`

The instruction (`memory.copy  $x_1 \ x_2$` ) is valid with the instruction type  $at_1 \ at_2 \ t \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The memory type  $C.mems[x_1]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.mems[x_1]$  is of the form  $(at_1 \ lim_1 \ page)$ .
- The memory type  $C.mems[x_2]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.mems[x_2]$  is of the form  $(at_2 \ lim_2 \ page)$ .
- Let  $t$  be the address type  $\min(at_1, at_2)$ .

$$\frac{C.mems[x_1] = at_1 \ lim_1 \ page \quad C.mems[x_2] = at_2 \ lim_2 \ page}{C \vdash \text{memory.copy } x_1 \ x_2 : at_1 \ at_2 \ \min(at_1, at_2) \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`memory.init  $x \ y$`

The instruction (`memory.init  $x \ y$` ) is valid with the instruction type  $at \ i32 \ i32 \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  is of the form  $(at \ lim \ page)$ .
- The data type  $C.datas[y]$  exists.
- The data type  $C.datas[y]$  is of the form `ok`.

$$\frac{C.mems[x] = at \ lim \ page \quad C.datas[y] = \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{memory.init } x \ y : at \ i32 \ i32 \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

`data.drop x`

The instruction (`data.drop x`) is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow \epsilon$  if:

- The data type  $C.\text{datas}[x]$  exists.
- The data type  $C.\text{datas}[x]$  is of the form `ok`.

$$\frac{C.\text{datas}[x] = \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{data.drop } x : \epsilon \rightarrow \epsilon}$$

### 3.4.11 Control Instructions

`block blocktype instr* end`

The instruction (`block bt instr*`) is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The block type  $bt$  is valid as the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$ .
- Let  $C'$  be the same context as  $C$ , but with the result type sequence  $t_2^*$  prepended to the field `labels`.
- Under the context  $C'$ , the instruction sequence  $\text{instr}^*$  is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^*$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash bt : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* \quad \{\text{labels}(t_2^*)\} \oplus C \vdash \text{instr}^* : t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^*}{C \vdash \text{block } bt \text{ instr}^* : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

#### Note

The notation  $\{\text{labels}(t^*)\} \oplus C$  inserts the new label type at index 0, shifting all others. The same applies to all other block instructions.

`loop blocktype instr* end`

The instruction (`loop bt instr*`) is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The block type  $bt$  is valid as the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$ .
- Let  $C'$  be the same context as  $C$ , but with the result type sequence  $t_1^*$  prepended to the field `labels`.
- Under the context  $C'$ , the instruction sequence  $\text{instr}^*$  is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^*$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash bt : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* \quad \{\text{labels}(t_1^*)\} \oplus C \vdash \text{instr}^* : t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^*}{C \vdash \text{loop } bt \text{ instr}^* : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

`if blocktype instr1* else instr2* end`

The instruction (`if bt instr1* else instr2*`) is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \text{ i32 } \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The block type  $bt$  is valid as the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$ .
- Let  $C'$  be the same context as  $C$ , but with the result type sequence  $t_2^*$  prepended to the field `labels`.
- Under the context  $C'$ , the instruction sequence  $\text{instr}_1^*$  is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x_1^*} t_2^*$ .
- Under the context  $C'$ , the instruction sequence  $\text{instr}_2^*$  is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x_2^*} t_2^*$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash bt : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* \quad \{\text{labels}(t_2^*)\} \oplus C \vdash \text{instr}_1^* : t_1^* \rightarrow_{x_1^*} t_2^* \quad \{\text{labels}(t_2^*)\} \oplus C \vdash \text{instr}_2^* : t_1^* \rightarrow_{x_2^*} t_2^*}{C \vdash \text{if } bt \text{ instr}_1^* \text{ else instr}_2^* : t_1^* \text{ i32 } \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

`try_table blocktype catch* instr* end`

The instruction (`try_table bt catch* instr*`) is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The block type  $bt$  is valid as the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$ .
- Let  $C'$  be the same context as  $C$ , but with the result type sequence  $t_2^*$  prepended to the field `labels`.
- Under the context  $C'$ , the instruction sequence `instr*` is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^*$ .
- For all `catch` in `catch*`:
  - The catch clause `catch` is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash bt : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* \quad \{\text{labels } (t_2^*)\} \oplus C \vdash \text{instr}^* : t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^* \quad (C \vdash \text{catch} : \text{ok})^*}{C \vdash \text{try\_table } bt \text{ catch}^* \text{ instr}^* : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

`catch x l`

The catch clause (`catch x l`) is valid if:

- The tag type  $C.\text{tags}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{tags}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{func } t^* \rightarrow \epsilon)$ .
- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  exists.
- The result type  $t^*$  matches the result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{tags}[x] \approx \text{func } (t^* \rightarrow \epsilon) \quad C \vdash t^* \leq C.\text{labels}[l]}{C \vdash \text{catch } x \text{ } l : \text{ok}}$$

`catch_ref x l`

The catch clause (`catch_ref x l`) is valid if:

- The tag type  $C.\text{tags}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{tags}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{func } t^* \rightarrow \epsilon)$ .
- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  exists.
- The result type  $t^*$  (`ref exn`) matches the result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{tags}[x] \approx \text{func } (t^* \rightarrow \epsilon) \quad C \vdash t^* (\text{ref exn}) \leq C.\text{labels}[l]}{C \vdash \text{catch\_ref } x \text{ } l : \text{ok}}$$

`catch_all l`

The catch clause (`catch_all l`) is valid if:

- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  exists.
- The result type  $\epsilon$  matches the result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash \epsilon \leq C.\text{labels}[l]}{C \vdash \text{catch\_all } l : \text{ok}}$$

`catch_all_ref l`

The catch clause (`catch_all_ref l`) is valid if:

- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  exists.
- The result type (`ref exn`) matches the result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash (\text{ref exn}) \leq C.\text{labels}[l]}{C \vdash \text{catch\_all\_ref } l : \text{ok}}$$

`br l`

The instruction `(br l)` is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* t^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  exists.
- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  is of the form  $t^*$ .
- The instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  is valid.

$$\frac{C.\text{labels}[l] = t^* \quad C \vdash t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{br } l : t_1^* t^* \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

#### Note

The label index space in the context  $C$  contains the most recent label first, so that  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  performs a relative lookup as expected. This applies to other branch instructions as well.

The `br` instruction is **stack-polymorphic**.

`br_if l`

The instruction `(br_if l)` is valid with the instruction type  $t^* i_{32} \rightarrow t^*$  if:

- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  exists.
- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  is of the form  $t^*$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{labels}[l] = t^*}{C \vdash \text{br\_if } l : t^* i_{32} \rightarrow t^*}$$

`br_table l* lN`

The instruction `(br_table l* l')` is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* t^* i_{32} \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- For all  $l$  in  $l^*$ :
  - The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  exists.
- For all  $l$  in  $l^*$ :
  - The result type  $t^*$  matches the result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$ .
- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l']$  exists.
- The result type  $t^*$  matches the result type  $C.\text{labels}[l']$ .
- The instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  is valid.

$$\frac{(C \vdash t^* \leq C.\text{labels}[l])^* \quad C \vdash t^* \leq C.\text{labels}[l'] \quad C \vdash t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{br\_table } l^* l' : t_1^* t^* i_{32} \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

#### Note

The `br_table` instruction is **stack-polymorphic**.

Furthermore, the result type  $t^*$  is also chosen non-deterministically in this rule. Although it may seem necessary to compute  $t^*$  as the greatest lower bound of all label types in practice, a simple **sequential algorithm** does not require this.

`br_on_null l`

The instruction `(br_on_null l)` is valid with the instruction type  $t^* (\text{ref null } ht) \rightarrow t^* (\text{ref } ht)$  if:

- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  exists.
- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  is of the form  $t^*$ .
- The heap type  $ht$  is valid.

$$\frac{C.\text{labels}[l] = t^* \quad C \vdash ht : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{br\_on\_null } l : t^* (\text{ref null } ht) \rightarrow t^* (\text{ref } ht)}$$

`br_on_non_null l`

The instruction `(br_on_non_null l)` is valid with the instruction type  $t^* (\text{ref null } ht) \rightarrow t^*$  if:

- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  exists.
- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  is of the form  $t^* (\text{ref } ht)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{labels}[l] = t^* (\text{ref } ht)}{C \vdash \text{br\_on\_non\_null } l : t^* (\text{ref null } ht) \rightarrow t^*}$$

`br_on_cast l rt1 rt2`

The instruction `(br_on_cast l rt1 rt2)` is valid with the instruction type  $t^* rt_1 \rightarrow t^* t'$  if:

- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  exists.
- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  is of the form  $t^* rt$ .
- The reference type  $rt_1$  is valid.
- The reference type  $rt_2$  is valid.
- The reference type  $rt_2$  matches the reference type  $rt_1$ .
- The reference type  $rt_2$  matches the reference type  $rt$ .
- Let  $t'$  be the reference type  $rt_1 \setminus rt_2$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{labels}[l] = t^* rt \quad C \vdash rt_1 : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash rt_2 : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash rt_2 \leq rt_1 \quad C \vdash rt_2 \leq rt}{C \vdash \text{br\_on\_cast } l \ rt_1 \ rt_2 : t^* rt_1 \rightarrow t^* (rt_1 \setminus rt_2)}$$

`br_on_cast_fail l rt1 rt2`

The instruction `(br_on_cast_fail l rt1 rt2)` is valid with the instruction type  $t^* rt_1 \rightarrow t^* rt_2$  if:

- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  exists.
- The result type  $C.\text{labels}[l]$  is of the form  $t^* rt$ .
- The reference type  $rt_1$  is valid.
- The reference type  $rt_2$  is valid.
- The reference type  $rt_2$  matches the reference type  $rt_1$ .
- The reference type  $rt_1 \setminus rt_2$  matches the reference type  $rt$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{labels}[l] = t^* rt \quad C \vdash rt_1 : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash rt_2 : \text{ok} \quad C \vdash rt_2 \leq rt_1 \quad C \vdash rt_1 \setminus rt_2 \leq rt}{C \vdash \text{br\_on\_cast\_fail } l \ rt_1 \ rt_2 : t^* rt_1 \rightarrow t^* rt_2}$$



`call x`

The instruction `(call x)` is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{funcs}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{funcs}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{func } t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{funcs}[x] \approx \text{func } (t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)}{C \vdash \text{call } x : t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

`call_ref x`

The instruction `(call_ref x)` is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* (\text{ref null } x) \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{func } t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{func } (t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)}{C \vdash \text{call\_ref } x : t_1^* (\text{ref null } x) \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

`call_indirect x y`

The instruction `(call_indirect x y)` is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \text{ at } \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  exists.
- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  is of the form  $(\text{at } \text{lim } \text{rt})$ .
- The reference type  $\text{rt}$  matches the reference type  $(\text{ref null func})$ .
- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[y]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[y]$  is the composite type  $(\text{func } t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{tables}[x] = \text{at } \text{lim } \text{rt} \quad C \vdash \text{rt} \leq (\text{ref null func}) \quad C.\text{types}[y] \approx \text{func } (t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)}{C \vdash \text{call\_indirect } x \ y : t_1^* \text{ at } \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

`return`

The instruction `return` is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* t^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The result type  $C.\text{return}$  is of the form  $t^*$ .
- The instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  is valid.

$$\frac{C.\text{return} = (t^*) \quad C \vdash t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{return} : t_1^* t^* \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

#### Note

The return instruction is **stack-polymorphic**.

$C.\text{return}$  is absent (set to  $\epsilon$ ) when validating an **expression** that is not a function body. This differs from it being set to the empty result type  $[\epsilon]$ , which is the case for functions not returning anything.

`return_call x`

The instruction `(return_call x)` is valid with the instruction type  $t_3^* t_1^* \rightarrow t_4^*$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{funcs}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{funcs}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{func } t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)$ .
- The result type  $C.\text{return}$  is of the form  $t_2^*$ .
- The result type  $t_2^*$  matches the result type  $t_2^*$ .

- The instruction type  $t_3^* \rightarrow t_4^*$  is valid.

$$\frac{C.\text{funcs}[x] \approx \text{func } (t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*) \quad C.\text{return} = (t_2'^*) \quad C \vdash t_2^* \leq t_2'^* \quad C \vdash t_3^* \rightarrow t_4^* : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{return\_call } x : t_3^* t_1^* \rightarrow t_4^*}$$

#### Note

The `return_call` instruction is [stack-polymorphic](#).

`return_call_ref x`

The instruction (`return_call_ref x`) is valid with the instruction type  $t_3^* t_1^* (\text{ref null } x) \rightarrow t_4^*$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{func } t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)$ .
- The result type  $C.\text{return}$  is of the form  $t_2'^*$ .
- The result type  $t_2^*$  matches the result type  $t_2'^*$ .
- The instruction type  $t_3^* \rightarrow t_4^*$  is valid.

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{func } (t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*) \quad C.\text{return} = (t_2'^*) \quad C \vdash t_2^* \leq t_2'^* \quad C \vdash t_3^* \rightarrow t_4^* : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{return\_call\_ref } x : t_3^* t_1^* (\text{ref null } x) \rightarrow t_4^*}$$

#### Note

The `return_call_ref` instruction is [stack-polymorphic](#).

`return_call_indirect x y`

The instruction (`return_call_indirect x y`) is valid with the instruction type  $t_3^* t_1^* \text{at} \rightarrow t_4^*$  if:

- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  exists.
- The table type  $C.\text{tables}[x]$  is of the form  $(\text{at } \text{lim } \text{rt})$ .
- The reference type  $\text{rt}$  matches the reference type  $(\text{ref null func})$ .
- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[y]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[y]$  is the composite type  $(\text{func } t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)$ .
- The result type  $C.\text{return}$  is of the form  $t_2'^*$ .
- The result type  $t_2^*$  matches the result type  $t_2'^*$ .
- The instruction type  $t_3^* \rightarrow t_4^*$  is valid.

$$\frac{C.\text{tables}[x] = \text{at } \text{lim } \text{rt} \quad C \vdash \text{rt} \leq (\text{ref null func}) \quad C.\text{types}[y] \approx \text{func } (t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*) \quad C.\text{return} = (t_2'^*) \quad C \vdash t_2^* \leq t_2'^* \quad C \vdash t_3^* \rightarrow t_4^* : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{return\_call\_indirect } x \ y : t_3^* t_1^* \text{at} \rightarrow t_4^*}$$

#### Note

The `return_call_indirect` instruction is [stack-polymorphic](#).

throw  $x$

The instruction (throw  $x$ ) is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* t^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The tag type  $C.\text{tags}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{tags}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{func } t^* \rightarrow \epsilon)$ .
- The instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  is valid.

$$\frac{C.\text{tags}[x] \approx \text{func } (t^* \rightarrow \epsilon) \quad C \vdash t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{throw } x : t_1^* t^* \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

#### Note

The throw instruction is stack-polymorphic.

throw\_ref

The instruction throw\_ref is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* (\text{ref null exn}) \rightarrow t_2^*$  if:

- The instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^* : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{throw\_ref} : t_1^* (\text{ref null exn}) \rightarrow t_2^*}$$

#### Note

The throw\_ref instruction is stack-polymorphic.

### 3.4.12 Instruction Sequences

Typing of instruction sequences is defined recursively.

#### Empty Instruction Sequence: $\epsilon$

The instruction sequence  $\text{instr}'^*$  is valid with the instruction type  $it''$  if:

- Either:
  - The instruction sequence  $\text{instr}'^*$  is empty.
  - The instruction type  $it''$  is of the form  $\epsilon \rightarrow \epsilon$ .
- Or:
  - The instruction sequence  $\text{instr}'^*$  is of the form  $\text{instr}_1 \text{ instr}_2^*$ .
  - The instruction type  $it''$  is of the form  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x_1^* x_2^*} t_3^*$ .
  - The instruction  $\text{instr}_1$  is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x_1^*} t_2^*$ .
  - The length of  $\text{init}^*$  is equal to the length of  $t^*$ .
  - The length of  $\text{init}^*$  is equal to the length of  $x_1^*$ .
  - For all  $x_1$  in  $x_1^*$ :
    - \* The local type  $C.\text{locals}[x_1]$  exists.
  - For all  $\text{init}$  in  $\text{init}^*$ , and corresponding  $t$  in  $t^*$ , and corresponding  $x_1$  in  $x_1^*$ :
    - \* The local type  $C.\text{locals}[x_1]$  is of the form  $(\text{init } t)$ .
  - Under the context  $C[\text{local}[x_1^*] = (\text{set } t)^*]$ , the instruction sequence  $\text{instr}_2^*$  is valid with the instruction type  $t_2^* \rightarrow_{x_2^*} t_3^*$ .

- Or:
  - The instruction sequence  $instr'^*$  is of the form  $instr^*$ .
  - The instruction type  $it''$  is of the form  $it'$ .
  - The instruction sequence  $instr^*$  is valid with the instruction type  $it$ .
  - The instruction type  $it$  matches the instruction type  $it'$ .
  - The instruction type  $it'$  is valid.
- Or:
  - The instruction sequence  $instr'^*$  is of the form  $instr^*$ .
  - The instruction type  $it''$  is of the form  $t^* t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t^* t_2^*$ .
  - The instruction sequence  $instr^*$  is valid with the instruction type  $t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^*$ .
  - The result type  $t^*$  is valid.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \overline{C \vdash \epsilon : \epsilon \rightarrow \epsilon} \\
 \hline
 C \vdash instr_1 : t_1^* \rightarrow_{x_1^*} t_2^* \quad (C.local[x_1] = init\ t)^* \quad C[.local[x_1] = (set\ t)^*] \vdash instr_2^* : t_2^* \rightarrow_{x_2^*} t_3^* \\
 \hline
 C \vdash instr_1\ instr_2^* : t_1^* \rightarrow_{x_1^* x_2^*} t_3^* \\
 \hline
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 C \vdash instr^* : it & C \vdash it \leq it' & C \vdash it' : ok \\
 \hline
 C \vdash instr^* : it'
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 C \vdash instr^* : t_1^* \rightarrow_{x^*} t_2^* & C \vdash t^* : ok \\
 \hline
 C \vdash instr^* : (t^* t_1^*) \rightarrow_{x^*} (t^* t_2^*)
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

#### Note

In combination with the previous rule, subsumption allows to compose instructions whose types would not directly fit otherwise. For example, consider the instruction sequence

(i32.const 1) (i32.const 2) (i32.add)

To type this sequence, its subsequence (i32.const 2) (i32.add) needs to be valid with an intermediate type. But the direct type of (i32.const 2) is  $\epsilon \rightarrow i32$ , not matching the two inputs expected by *i32.add*. The subsumption rule allows to weaken the type of (const i32 2) to the supertype  $i32 \rightarrow i32\ i32$ , such that it can be composed with *i32.add* and yields the intermediate type  $i32 \rightarrow i32\ i32$  for the subsequence. That can in turn be composed with the first constant.

Furthermore, subsumption allows to drop init variables  $x^*$  from the instruction type in a context where they are not needed, for example, at the end of the body of a *block*.

### 3.4.13 Expressions

Expressions *expr* are classified by result types  $t^*$ .

The expression  $instr^*$  is valid with the result type  $t^*$  if:

- The instruction sequence  $instr^*$  is valid with the instruction type  $\epsilon \rightarrow t^*$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash instr^* : \epsilon \rightarrow_\epsilon t^*}{C \vdash instr^* : t^*}$$

#### Constant Expressions

In a *constant* expression, all instructions must be constant.

$instr^*$  is constant if:

- For all *instr* in  $instr^*$ :
  - *instr* is constant.

*val* is constant if:

- Either:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $(nt.const\ c_{nt})$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $(vt.const\ c_{vt})$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $(ref.null\ ht)$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $ref.i31$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $(ref.func\ x)$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $(struct.new\ x)$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $(struct.new\_default\ x)$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $(array.new\ x)$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $(array.new\_default\ x)$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $(array.new\_fixed\ x\ n)$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $any.convert\_extern$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $extern.convert\_any$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $(global.get\ x)$ .
  - The global type  $C.globals[x]$  exists.
  - The global type  $C.globals[x]$  is of the form  $(\epsilon\ t)$ .
- Or:
  - The value *val* is of the form  $(iN.binop)$ .
  - $iN$  is contained in  $[i32; i64]$ .
  - $binop$  is contained in  $[add; sub; mul]$ .

$$\frac{(C \vdash instr\ const)^*}{C \vdash instr^*\ const}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\frac{}{C \vdash (nt.const\ c_{nt})\ const} \quad \frac{}{C \vdash (vt.const\ c_{vt})\ const} \quad \frac{iN \in \{i32\ i64\} \quad binop \in \{add\ sub\ mul\}}{C \vdash (iN.binop)\ const} \\
\frac{}{C \vdash (ref.null\ ht)\ const} \quad \frac{}{C \vdash (ref.i31)\ const} \quad \frac{}{C \vdash (ref.func\ x)\ const} \\
\frac{}{C \vdash (struct.new\ x)\ const} \quad \frac{}{C \vdash (struct.new\_default\ x)\ const} \\
\frac{}{C \vdash (array.new\ x)\ const} \quad \frac{}{C \vdash (array.new\_default\ x)\ const} \quad \frac{}{C \vdash (array.new\_fixed\ x\ n)\ const} \\
\frac{}{C \vdash (any.convert\_extern)\ const} \quad \frac{}{C \vdash (extern.convert\_any)\ const} \\
\frac{C.globals[x] = t}{C \vdash (global.get\ x)\ const}
\end{array}$$

**Note**

Currently, constant expressions occurring in `globals` are further constrained in that contained `global.get` instructions are only allowed to refer to *imported* or *previously defined* globals. Constant expressions occurring in `tables` may only have `global.get` instructions that refer to *imported* globals. This is enforced in the [validation rule for modules](#) by constraining the context  $C$  accordingly.

The definition of constant expression may be extended in future versions of WebAssembly.

## 3.5 Modules

**Modules** are valid when all the components they contain are valid. To verify this, most definitions are themselves classified with a suitable type.

### 3.5.1 Types

The sequence of **types** defined in a module is validated incrementally, yielding a sequence of **defined types** representing them individually.

The **type definition** (`type rectype`) is **valid** with the defined type sequence  $dt^*$  if:

- The length of  $C.types$  is equal to  $x$ .
- The defined type sequence  $dt^*$  is of the form  $roll_x^*(rectype)$ .
- Let  $C'$  be the same context as  $C$ , but with the defined type sequence  $dt^*$  appended to the field **types**.
- Under the context  $C'$ , the **recursive type** `rectype` is **valid** for the  $(ok(x))\ (ok(x))$ .

$$\frac{x = |C.types| \quad dt^* = roll_x^*(rectype) \quad C \oplus \{types\ dt^*\} \vdash rectype : ok((x))}{C \vdash type\ rectype : dt^*}$$

The type definition sequence  $type'^*$  is **valid** with the defined type sequence  $deftype^*$  if:

- Either:
  - The type definition sequence  $type'^*$  is empty.
  - The defined type sequence  $deftype^*$  is empty.
- Or:
  - The type definition sequence  $type'^*$  is of the form  $type_1\ type^*$ .
  - The defined type sequence  $deftype^*$  is of the form  $dt_1^*\ dt^*$ .
  - The **type definition**  $type_1$  is **valid** with the defined type sequence  $dt_1^*$ .
  - Let  $C'$  be the same context as  $C$ , but with the defined type sequence  $dt_1^*$  appended to the field **types**.
  - Under the context  $C'$ , the type definition sequence  $type^*$  is **valid** with the defined type sequence  $dt^*$ .

$$\frac{}{C \vdash \epsilon : \epsilon} \quad \frac{C \vdash \text{type}_1 : dt_1^* \quad C \oplus \{\text{types } dt_1^*\} \vdash \text{type}^* : dt^*}{C \vdash \text{type}_1 \text{ type}^* : dt_1^* dt^*}$$

### 3.5.2 Functions

Functions *func* are classified by defined types that expand to function types of the form  $\text{func } (t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)$ .

The function  $(\text{func } x \text{ local}^* \text{ expr})$  is valid with the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  if:

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  is the composite type  $(\text{func } t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*)$ .
- The length of  $lt^*$  is equal to the length of  $\text{local}^*$ .
- For all  $lt$  in  $lt^*$ , and corresponding  $\text{local}$  in  $\text{local}^*$ :
  - The local  $\text{local}$  is valid with the local type  $lt$ .
- Under the context  $C[\text{.locals} = \oplus (\text{set } t_1)^* lt^*][\text{.labels} = \oplus t_2^*][\text{.return} = \oplus t_2^*]$ , the expression  $\text{expr}$  is valid with the result type  $t_2^*$ .

#### Todo

below is the official specification

- The defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$  must be a function type.
- Let  $\text{func } [t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$  be the expansion of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[x]$ .
- For each local declared by a value type  $t$  in  $t^*$ :
  - The local for type  $t$  must be valid with local type  $\text{localtype}_i$ .
- Let  $\text{localtype}^*$  be the concatenation of all  $\text{localtype}_i$ .
- Let  $C'$  be the same context as  $C$ , but with:
  - **locals** set to the sequence of value types  $(\text{set } t_1)^* \text{localtype}^*$ , concatenating parameters and locals,
  - **labels** set to the singular sequence containing only result type  $[t_2^*]$ .
  - **return** set to the result type  $[t_2^*]$ .
- Under the context  $C'$ , the expression  $\text{expr}$  must be valid with type  $[t_2^*]$ .
- Then the function definition is valid with type  $C.\text{types}[x]$ .

$$\frac{C.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{func } (t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*) \quad (C \vdash \text{local} : lt)^* \quad C \oplus \{\text{locals } (\text{set } t_1)^* lt^*, \text{ labels } (t_2^*), \text{ return } (t_2^*)\} \vdash \text{expr} : t_2^*}{C \vdash \text{func } x \text{ local}^* \text{ expr} : C.\text{types}[x]}$$

### 3.5.3 Locals

Locals *local* are classified with local types.

The local  $(\text{local } t)$  is valid with the local type  $(\text{init } t)$  if:

- Either:
  - The initialization status *init* is of the form *set*.
  - A default value for the value type  $t$  is defined.
- Or:
  - The initialization status *init* is of the form *unset*.
  - A default value for the value type  $t$  is not defined.

$$\frac{\text{default}_t \neq \epsilon}{C \vdash \text{local } t : \text{set } t} \quad \frac{\text{default}_t = \epsilon}{C \vdash \text{local } t : \text{unset } t}$$

**Note**

For cases where both rules are applicable, the former yields the more permissable type.

**3.5.4 Tables**

Tables *table* are classified by *table types*.

The *table* (*table tabletype expr*) is valid with the *table type* *tabletype* if:

- The *table type* *tabletype* is valid.
- The *table type* *tabletype* is of the form  $(\text{at } \text{lim } rt)$ .
- The *expression* *expr* is valid with the *value type* *rt*.
- *expr* is constant.

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{tabletype} : \text{ok} \quad \text{tabletype} = \text{at } \text{lim } rt \quad C \vdash \text{expr} : rt \text{ const}}{C \vdash \text{table } \text{tabletype } \text{expr} : \text{tabletype}}$$

**3.5.5 Memories**

Memories *mem* are classified by *memory types*.

The *memory* (*memory memtype*) is valid with the *memory type* *memtype* if:

- The *memory type* *memtype* is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{memtype} : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{memory } \text{memtype} : \text{memtype}}$$

**3.5.6 Globals**

Globals *global* are classified by *global types*.

The *global* (*global globaltype expr*) is valid with the *global type* *globaltype* if:

- The *global type* *gt* is valid.
- The *global type* *globaltype* is of the form  $(\text{mut}^? t)$ .
- The *expression* *expr* is valid with the *value type* *t*.
- *expr* is constant.

$$\frac{C \vdash gt : \text{ok} \quad \text{globaltype} = \text{mut}^? t \quad C \vdash \text{expr} : t \text{ const}}{C \vdash \text{global } \text{globaltype } \text{expr} : \text{globaltype}}$$

Sequences of globals are handled incrementally, such that each definition has access to previous definitions.

The *global sequence* *global*<sup>\*</sup> is valid with the *global type sequence* *globaltype*<sup>\*</sup> if:

- Either:
  - The *global sequence* *global*<sup>\*</sup> is empty.
  - The *global type sequence* *globaltype*<sup>\*</sup> is empty.
- Or:
  - The *global sequence* *global*<sup>\*</sup> is of the form *global*<sub>1</sub> *global*<sup>\*</sup>.
  - The *global type sequence* *globaltype*<sup>\*</sup> is of the form *gt*<sub>1</sub> *gt*<sup>\*</sup>.



- The global  $global_1$  is valid with the global type  $gt_1$ .
- Let  $C'$  be the same context as  $C$ , but with the global type sequence  $gt_1$  appended to the field `globals`.
- Under the context  $C'$ , the global sequence  $global^*$  is valid with the global type sequence  $gt^*$ .

$$\frac{}{C \vdash \epsilon : \epsilon} \quad \frac{C \vdash global_1 : gt_1 \quad C \oplus \{globals\ gt_1\} \vdash global^* : gt^*}{C \vdash global_1\ global^* : gt_1\ gt^*}$$

### 3.5.7 Tags

Tags  $tag$  are classified by their tag types, which are defined types expanding to function types.

The tag ( $tag\ x$ ) is valid with the tag type  $C.types[x]$  if:

- The defined type  $C.types[x]$  exists.
- The expansion of the defined type  $C.types[x]$  is the composite type (`func functype`).

$$\frac{C.types[x] \approx \text{func functype}}{C \vdash tag\ x : C.types[x]}$$

### 3.5.8 Element Segments

Element segments  $elem$  are classified by their element type.

The table segment (`elem elemtype expr* elemmode`) is valid with the element type  $elemtype$  if:

- The reference type  $elemtype$  is valid.
- For all  $expr$  in  $expr^*$ :
  - The expression  $expr$  is valid with the value type  $elemtype$ .
  - $expr$  is constant.
- The element mode  $elemmode$  is valid with the element type  $elemtype$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash elemtype : \text{ok} \quad (C \vdash expr : elemtype\ \text{const})^* \quad C \vdash elemmode : elemtype}{C \vdash \text{elem } elemtype\ expr^*\ elemmode : elemtype}$$

The element mode  $elemmode$  is valid with the element type  $rt$  if:

- Either:
  - The element mode  $elemmode$  is of the form (`active x expr`).
  - The table type  $C.tables[x]$  exists.
  - The table type  $C.tables[x]$  is of the form (`at lim rt'`).
  - The reference type  $rt$  matches the reference type  $rt'$ .
  - The expression  $expr$  is valid with the value type `i32`.
  - $expr$  is constant.
- Or:
  - The element mode  $elemmode$  is of the form `passive`.
- Or:
  - The element mode  $elemmode$  is of the form `declare`.

$$\frac{C.tables[x] = \text{at lim } rt' \quad C \vdash rt \leq rt' \quad C \vdash expr : \text{i32 const}}{C \vdash \text{active } x\ expr : rt}$$

$$\frac{}{C \vdash \text{passive} : rt}$$

$$\frac{}{C \vdash \text{declare} : rt}$$

### 3.5.9 Data Segments

Data segments *data* are classified by the singleton *data type*, which merely expresses well-formedness.

The memory segment (*data b\* datamode*) is valid with the *data type ok* if:

- The data mode *datamode* is valid with the *data type ok*.

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{datamode} : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{data } b^* \text{ datamode} : \text{ok}}$$

The data mode *datamode* is valid with the *data type ok* if:

- Either:
  - The data mode *datamode* is of the form (active *x expr*).
  - The memory type *C.mems[x]* exists.
  - The memory type *C.mems[x]* is of the form *mt*.
  - The expression *expr* is valid with the value type *i32*.
  - *expr* is constant.

- Or:

- The data mode *datamode* is of the form *passive*.

$$\frac{C.\text{mems}[x] = mt \quad C \vdash \text{expr} : i32 \text{ const}}{C \vdash \text{active } x \text{ expr} : \text{ok}} \quad \frac{}{C \vdash \text{passive} : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.5.10 Start Function

The start function (*start x*) is valid if:

- The defined type *C.funcs[x]* exists.
- The expansion of the defined type *C.funcs[x]* is the composite type (*func  $\epsilon \rightarrow \epsilon$* ).

$$\frac{C.\text{funcs}[x] \approx \text{func } (\epsilon \rightarrow \epsilon)}{C \vdash \text{start } x : \text{ok}}$$

### 3.5.11 Exports

Exports *export* are classified by their *external type*.

The export (*export name externidx*) is valid with the name *name* and the external type *xt* if:

- The external index *externidx* is valid with the external type *xt*.

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{externidx} : xt}{C \vdash \text{export name externidx} : \text{name } xt}$$

*func x*

The external index (*func x*) is valid with the external type (*func dt*) if:

- The defined type *C.funcs[x]* exists.
- The defined type *C.funcs[x]* is of the form *dt*.

$$\frac{C.\text{funcs}[x] = dt}{C \vdash \text{func } x : \text{func } dt}$$

table  $x$

The external index (table  $x$ ) is valid with the external type (table  $tt$ ) if:

- The table type  $C.tables[x]$  exists.
- The table type  $C.tables[x]$  is of the form  $tt$ .

$$\frac{C.tables[x] = tt}{C \vdash \text{table } x : \text{table } tt}$$

mem  $x$

The external index (memory  $x$ ) is valid with the external type (mem  $mt$ ) if:

- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  exists.
- The memory type  $C.mems[x]$  is of the form  $mt$ .

$$\frac{C.mems[x] = mt}{C \vdash \text{memory } x : \text{mem } mt}$$

global  $x$

The external index (global  $x$ ) is valid with the external type (global  $gt$ ) if:

- The global type  $C.globals[x]$  exists.
- The global type  $C.globals[x]$  is of the form  $gt$ .

$$\frac{C.globals[x] = gt}{C \vdash \text{global } x : \text{global } gt}$$

tag  $x$

The external index (tag  $x$ ) is valid with the external type (tag  $jt$ ) if:

- The tag type  $C.tags[x]$  exists.
- The tag type  $C.tags[x]$  is of the form  $jt$ .

$$\frac{C.tags[x] = jt}{C \vdash \text{tag } x : \text{tag } jt}$$

### 3.5.12 Imports

Imports *import* are classified by external types.

The import (import  $name_1$   $name_2$   $xt$ ) is valid with the external type  $xt$  if:

- The external type  $xt$  is valid.

$$\frac{C \vdash xt : \text{ok}}{C \vdash \text{import } name_1 \ name_2 \ xt : xt}$$

### 3.5.13 Modules

Modules are classified by their mapping from the external types of their imports to those of their exports.

A module is entirely *closed*, that is, its components can only refer to definitions that appear in the module itself. Consequently, no initial context is required. Instead, the context  $C$  for validation of the module's content is constructed from the definitions in the module.

The module (module  $type^*$   $import^*$   $func^*$   $global^*$   $table^*$   $mem^*$   $tag^*$   $elem^*$   $data^*$   $start^?$   $export^*$ ) is valid with the module type  $t$  if:

- Under the context  $\{\text{return } \epsilon\}$ , the type definition sequence  $type^*$  is valid with the defined type sequence  $dt'^*$ .

- The length of  $import^*$  is equal to the length of  $xt_i^*$ .
- For all  $import$  in  $import^*$ , and corresponding  $xt_i$  in  $xt_i^*$ :
  - Under the context  $\{\text{types } dt'^*, \text{ return } \epsilon\}$ , the  $import$   $import$  is **valid** with the **external type**  $xt_i$ .
- Under the context  $C'$ , the global sequence  $global^*$  is **valid** with the global type sequence  $gt^*$ .
- The length of  $table^*$  is equal to the length of  $tt^*$ .
- For all  $table$  in  $table^*$ , and corresponding  $tt$  in  $tt^*$ :
  - Under the context  $C'$ , the  $table$   $table$  is **valid** with the **table type**  $tt$ .
- The length of  $mem^*$  is equal to the length of  $mt^*$ .
- For all  $mem$  in  $mem^*$ , and corresponding  $mt$  in  $mt^*$ :
  - Under the context  $C'$ , the **memory**  $mem$  is **valid** with the **memory type**  $mt$ .
- The length of  $jt^*$  is equal to the length of  $tag^*$ .
- For all  $jt$  in  $jt^*$ , and corresponding  $tag$  in  $tag^*$ :
  - Under the context  $C'$ , the **tag**  $tag$  is **valid** with the **tag type**  $jt$ .
- The length of  $dt^*$  is equal to the length of  $func^*$ .
- For all  $dt$  in  $dt^*$ , and corresponding  $func$  in  $func^*$ :
  - The **function**  $func$  is **valid** with the **defined type**  $dt$ .
- The length of  $elem^*$  is equal to the length of  $rt^*$ .
- For all  $elem$  in  $elem^*$ , and corresponding  $rt$  in  $rt^*$ :
  - The **table segment**  $elem$  is **valid** with the **element type**  $rt$ .
- The length of  $data^*$  is equal to the length of  $ok^*$ .
- For all  $data$  in  $data^*$ , and corresponding  $ok$  in  $ok^*$ :
  - The **memory segment**  $data$  is **valid**.
- If  $start$  is defined, then:
  - The **start function**  $start$  is **valid**.
- The length of  $export^*$  is equal to the length of  $nm^*$ .
- The length of  $export^*$  is equal to the length of  $xt_e^*$ .
- For all  $export$  in  $export^*$ , and corresponding  $nm$  in  $nm^*$ , and corresponding  $xt_e$  in  $xt_e^*$ :
  - The **export**  $export$  is **valid** with the **name**  $nm$  and the **external type**  $xt_e$ .
- The  $nm^*$  disjoint  $nm^*$  disjoint is of the form **true**.
- The **context**  $C$  is of the form  $C'[\text{globals} = \oplus gt^*][\text{tables} = \oplus tt_i^* tt^*][\text{mems} = \oplus mt_i^* mt^*][\text{tags} = \oplus jt_i^* jt^*][\text{elems} = \oplus rt^*][\text{datas} = \oplus ok^*]$ .
- The **context**  $C'$  is of the form  $\{\text{types } dt'^*, \text{ funcs } dt_i^* dt^*, \text{ globals } gt_i^*, \text{ return } \epsilon, \text{ refs } x^*\}$ .
- The function index sequence  $x^*$  is of the form  $\text{funcidx}(global^* table^* mem^* elem^* data^*)$ .
- The defined type sequence  $dt_i^*$  is of the form  $\text{funcs}(xt_i^*)$ .
- The global type sequence  $gt_i^*$  is of the form  $\text{globals}(xt_i^*)$ .
- The table type sequence  $tt_i^*$  is of the form  $\text{tables}(xt_i^*)$ .
- The memory type sequence  $mt_i^*$  is of the form  $\text{mems}(xt_i^*)$ .
- The tag type sequence  $jt_i^*$  is of the form  $\text{tags}(xt_i^*)$ .
- Let  $t$  be the **module type**  $\text{clos}_C(xt_i^* \rightarrow xt_e^*)$ .

**Todo**

below is the official specification

- Let *module* be the module to validate.
- The *types* *module.types* must be *valid* yielding a context  $C_0$ .
- Let  $C$  be a context where:
  - $C.types$  is  $C_0.types$ ,
  - $C.funcs$  is *funcs*( $it^*$ ) concatenated with  $dt^*$ , with the import's *external types*  $it^*$  and the internal *defined types*  $dt^*$  as determined below,
  - $C.tables$  is *tables*( $it^*$ ) concatenated with  $tt^*$ , with the import's *external types*  $it^*$  and the internal *table types*  $tt^*$  as determined below,
  - $C.mems$  is *mems*( $it^*$ ) concatenated with  $mt^*$ , with the import's *external types*  $it^*$  and the internal *memory types*  $mt^*$  as determined below,
  - $C.globals$  is *globals*( $it^*$ ) concatenated with  $gt^*$ , with the import's *external types*  $it^*$  and the internal *global types*  $gt^*$  as determined below,
  - $C.tags$  is *tags*( $it^*$ ) concatenated with  $ht^*$ , with the import's *external types*  $it^*$  and the internal *tag types*  $ht^*$  as determined below,
  - $C.elems$  is  $rt^*$  as determined below,
  - $C.datas$  is  $ok^*$  as determined below,
  - $C.locals$  is empty,
  - $C.labels$  is empty,
  - $C.return$  is empty.
  - $C.refs$  is the set *funcidx*(*module* with *funcs* =  $\epsilon$  with *start* =  $\epsilon$ ), i.e., the set of *function indices* occurring in the module, except in its *functions* or *start function*.
- Let  $C'$  be the context where:
  - $C'.globals$  is the sequence *globals*( $it^*$ ),
  - $C'.types$  is the same as  $C.types$ ,
  - $C'.funcs$  is the same as  $C.funcs$ ,
  - $C'.tables$  is the same as  $C.tables$ ,
  - $C'.mems$  is the same as  $C.mems$ ,
  - $C'.refs$  is the same as  $C.refs$ ,
  - all other fields are empty.
- Under the context  $C'$ :
  - The sequence *module.globals* of *globals* must be *valid* with a sequence  $gt^*$  of *global types*.
  - For each  $table_i$  in *module.tables*, the definition  $table_i$  must be *valid* with a *table type*  $tt_i$ .
  - For each  $mem_i$  in *module.mems*, the definition  $mem_i$  must be *valid* with a *memory type*  $mt_i$ .
- Under the context  $C$ :
  - For each  $func_i$  in *module.funcs*, the definition  $func_i$  must be *valid* with a *defined type*  $dt_i$ .
  - For each  $tag_i$  in *module.tags*, the definition  $tag_i$  must be *valid* with a *tag type*  $ht_i$ .
  - For each  $elem_i$  in *module.elems*, the segment  $elem_i$  must be *valid* with *reference type*  $rt_i$ .
  - For each  $data_i$  in *module.datas*, the segment  $data_i$  must be *valid* with *data type*  $ok_i$ .

- If *module.start* is non-empty, then *module.start* must be valid.
- For each *import<sub>i</sub>* in *module.imports*, the segment *import<sub>i</sub>* must be valid with an external type *it<sub>i</sub>*.
- For each *export<sub>i</sub>* in *module.exports*, the segment *export<sub>i</sub>* must be valid with external type *et<sub>i</sub>*.
- Let *dt\** be the concatenation of the internal function types *dt<sub>i</sub>*, in index order.
- Let *tt\** be the concatenation of the internal table types *tt<sub>i</sub>*, in index order.
- Let *mt\** be the concatenation of the internal memory types *mt<sub>i</sub>*, in index order.
- Let *gt\** be the concatenation of the internal global types *gt<sub>i</sub>*, in index order.
- Let *ht\** be the concatenation of the internal tag types *ht<sub>i</sub>*, in index order.
- Let *rt\** be the concatenation of the reference types *rt<sub>i</sub>*, in index order.
- Let *ok\** be the concatenation of the data types *ok<sub>i</sub>*, in index order.
- Let *it\** be the concatenation of external types *it<sub>i</sub>* of the imports, in index order.
- Let *et\** be the concatenation of external types *et<sub>i</sub>* of the exports, in index order.
- All export names *export<sub>i</sub>.name* must be different.
- Then the module is valid with external types *it\* → et\**.

$$\begin{array}{c}
\{\} \vdash \text{type}^* : dt'^* \quad (\{\text{types } dt'^*\} \vdash \text{import} : xt_i)^* \\
C' \vdash \text{global}^* : gt^* \quad (C' \vdash \text{table} : tt)^* \quad (C' \vdash \text{mem} : mt)^* \quad (C' \vdash \text{tag} : jt)^* \quad (C \vdash \text{func} : dt)^* \\
(C \vdash \text{elem} : rt)^* \quad (C \vdash \text{data} : ok)^* \quad (C \vdash \text{start} : ok)^? \quad (C \vdash \text{export} : nm \text{ } xt_e)^* \quad nm^* \text{ disjoint} \\
C = C' \oplus \{\text{globals } gt^*, \text{ tables } tt_i^* \text{ } tt^*, \text{ mems } mt_i^* \text{ } mt^*, \text{ tags } jt_i^* \text{ } jt^*, \text{ elems } rt^*, \text{ datas } ok^*\} \\
C' = \{\text{types } dt'^*, \text{ funcs } dt_i^* \text{ } dt^*, \text{ globals } gt_i^*, \text{ refs } x^*\} \quad x^* = \text{funcidx}(\text{global}^* \text{ table}^* \text{ mem}^* \text{ elem}^* \text{ data}^*) \\
dt_i^* = \text{funcs}(xt_i^*) \quad gt_i^* = \text{globals}(xt_i^*) \quad tt_i^* = \text{tables}(xt_i^*) \quad mt_i^* = \text{mems}(xt_i^*) \quad jt_i^* = \text{tags}(xt_i^*) \\
\hline
\vdash \text{module type}^* \text{ import}^* \text{ func}^* \text{ global}^* \text{ table}^* \text{ mem}^* \text{ tag}^* \text{ elem}^* \text{ data}^* \text{ start}^? \text{ export}^* : \text{clos}_C(xt_i^* \rightarrow xt_e^*)
\end{array}$$

**Todo**

Check refs; check export names

**Note**

All functions in a module are mutually recursive. Consequently, the definition of the context *C* in this rule is recursive: it depends on the outcome of validation of the function, table, memory, and global definitions contained in the module, which itself depends on *C*. However, this recursion is just a specification device. All types needed to construct *C* can easily be determined from a simple pre-pass over the module that does not perform any actual validation.

Globals, however, are not recursive but evaluated sequentially, such that each constant expressions only has access to imported or previously defined globals.

## 4.1 Conventions

WebAssembly code is *executed* when *instantiating* a module or *invoking* an *exported* function on the resulting module *instance*.

Execution behavior is defined in terms of an *abstract machine* that models the *program state*. It includes a *stack*, which records operand values and control constructs, and an abstract *store* containing global state.

For each instruction, there is a rule that specifies the effect of its execution on the program state. Furthermore, there are rules describing the instantiation of a module. As with *validation*, all rules are given in two *equivalent* forms:

1. In *prose*, describing the execution in intuitive form.
2. In *formal notation*, describing the rule in mathematical form.<sup>18</sup>

### Note

As with validation, the prose and formal rules are equivalent, so that understanding of the formal notation is *not* required to read this specification. The formalism offers a more concise description in notation that is used widely in programming languages semantics and is readily amenable to mathematical proof.

### 4.1.1 Prose Notation

Execution is specified by stylised, step-wise rules for each *instruction* of the *abstract syntax*. The following conventions are adopted in stating these rules.

- The execution rules implicitly assume a given *store* *S*.
- The execution rules also assume the presence of an implicit *stack* that is modified by *pushing* or *popping* *values*, *labels*, and *frames*.
- Certain rules require the stack to contain at least one frame. The most recent frame is referred to as the *current* frame.

---

<sup>18</sup> The semantics is derived from the following article: Andreas Haas, Andreas Rossberg, Derek Schuff, Ben Titzer, Dan Gohman, Luke Wagner, Alon Zakai, JF Bastien, Michael Holman. *Bringing the Web up to Speed with WebAssembly*<sup>19</sup>. Proceedings of the 38th ACM SIGPLAN Conference on Programming Language Design and Implementation (PLDI 2017). ACM 2017.

<sup>19</sup> <https://dl.acm.org/citation.cfm?doid=3062341.3062363>

- Both the store and the current frame are mutated by *replacing* some of their components. Such replacement is assumed to apply globally.
- The execution of an instruction may *trap*, in which case the entire computation is aborted and no further modifications to the store are performed by it. (Other computations can still be initiated afterwards.)
- The execution of an instruction may also end in a *jump* to a designated target, which defines the next instruction to execute.
- Execution can *enter* and *exit* [instruction sequences](#) that form [blocks](#).
- [Instruction sequences](#) are implicitly executed in order, unless a trap, jump, or exception occurs.
- In various places the rules contain *assertions* expressing crucial invariants about the program state.

## 4.1.2 Formal Notation

### Note

This section gives a brief explanation of the notation for specifying execution formally. For the interested reader, a more thorough introduction can be found in respective text books.<sup>20</sup>

The formal execution rules use a standard approach for specifying operational semantics, rendering them into *reduction rules*. Every rule has the following general form:

$$configuration \hookrightarrow configuration$$

A *configuration* is a syntactic description of a program state. Each rule specifies one *step* of execution. As long as there is at most one reduction rule applicable to a given configuration, reduction – and thereby execution – is *deterministic*. WebAssembly has only very few exceptions to this, which are noted explicitly in this specification.

For WebAssembly, a configuration typically is a tuple  $(s; f; instr^*)$  consisting of the current [store](#)  $s$ , the [call frame](#)  $f$  of the current function, and the sequence of [instructions](#) that is to be executed. (A more precise definition is given [later](#).)

To avoid unnecessary clutter, the store  $s$  and the frame  $f$  are often combined into a *state*  $z$ , which is a pair  $(s; f)$ . Moreover,  $z$  is omitted from reduction rules that do not touch them.

There is no separate representation of the [stack](#). Instead, it is conveniently represented as part of the configuration's instruction sequence. In particular, [values](#) are defined to coincide with `const` and `ref` instructions, and a sequence of such instructions can be interpreted as an operand “stack” that grows to the right.

### Note

For example, the [reduction rule](#) for the `i32.add` instruction can be given as follows:

$$(i32.const\ n_1)\ (i32.const\ n_2)\ (i32.add) \hookrightarrow (i32.const\ (n_1 + n_2) \bmod 2^{32})$$

Per this rule, two `const` instructions and the `add` instruction itself are removed from the instruction stream and replaced with one new `const` instruction. This can be interpreted as popping two values off the stack and pushing the result.

When no result is produced, an instruction reduces to the empty sequence:

$$nop \hookrightarrow \epsilon$$

[Labels](#) and [frames](#) are similarly [defined](#) to be part of an instruction sequence.

<sup>20</sup> For example: Benjamin Pierce. [Types and Programming Languages](#)<sup>21</sup>. The MIT Press 2002

<sup>21</sup> <https://www.cis.upenn.edu/~bcpierce/tapl/>



The order of reduction is determined by the details of the reduction rules. Usually, the left-most instruction that is not a constant will be the subject of the next reduction *step*.

Reduction *terminates* when no more reduction rules are applicable. [Soundness](#) of the WebAssembly type system guarantees that this is only the case when the original instruction sequence has either been reduced to a sequence of [value](#) instructions, which can be interpreted as the [values](#) of the resulting operand stack, or if an [exception](#) or [trap](#) occurred.

#### Note

For example, the following instruction sequence,

$$(f64.const\ q_1)\ (f64.const\ q_2)\ (f64.neg)\ (f64.const\ q_3)\ (f64.add)\ (f64.mul)$$

terminates after three steps:

$$\begin{aligned} \hookrightarrow & (f64.const\ q_1)\ (f64.const\ q_4)\ (f64.const\ q_3)\ (f64.add)\ (f64.mul) \\ \hookrightarrow & (f64.const\ q_1)\ (f64.const\ q_5)\ (f64.mul) \\ \hookrightarrow & (f64.const\ q_6) \end{aligned}$$

where  $q_4 = -q_2$  and  $q_5 = -q_2 + q_3$  and  $q_6 = q_1 \cdot (-q_2 + q_3)$ .

## 4.2 Runtime Structure

[Store](#), [stack](#), and other *runtime structure* forming the WebAssembly abstract machine, such as [values](#) or [module instances](#), are made precise in terms of additional auxiliary syntax.

### 4.2.1 Values

WebAssembly computations manipulate *values* of either the four basic [number types](#), i.e., [integers](#) and [floating-point data](#) of 32 or 64 bit width each, or [vectors](#) of 128 bit width, or of [reference type](#).

In most places of the semantics, values of different types can occur. In order to avoid ambiguities, values are therefore represented with an abstract syntax that makes their type explicit. It is convenient to reuse the same notation as for the [const instructions](#) and [ref.null](#) producing them.

References other than null are represented with additional [administrative instructions](#). They either are *scalar references*, containing a 31-bit [integer](#), *structure references*, pointing to a specific [structure address](#), *array references*, pointing to a specific [array address](#), *function references*, pointing to a specific [function address](#), *exception references*, pointing to a specific [exception address](#), or *host references* pointing to an uninterpreted form of [host address](#) defined by the [embedder](#). Any of the aforementioned references can furthermore be wrapped up as an *external reference*.

$$\begin{aligned} val &::= num \mid vec \mid ref \\ num &::= numtype.const\ num_{numtype} \\ vec &::= vectype.const\ vec_{vectype} \\ ref &::= addrref \\ &\quad \mid ref.null\ heapttype \\ addrref &::= ref.i31\ u31 \\ &\quad \mid ref.struct\ structaddr \\ &\quad \mid ref.array\ arrayaddr \\ &\quad \mid ref.func\ funcaddr \\ &\quad \mid ref.exn\ exnaddr \\ &\quad \mid ref.host\ hostaddr \\ &\quad \mid ref.extern\ addrref \end{aligned}$$

**Note**

Future versions of WebAssembly may add additional forms of values.

Value types can have an associated *default value*; it is the respective value 0 for **number types**, 0 for **vector types**, and null for nullable **reference types**. For other references, no default value is defined,  $\text{default}_t$  hence is an optional value *val*<sup>?</sup>.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{default}_{iN} &= (iN.\text{const } 0) \\ \text{default}_{fN} &= (fN.\text{const } +0) \\ \text{default}_{vN} &= (vN.\text{const } 0) \\ \text{default}_{\text{ref null } ht} &= (\text{ref.null } ht) \\ \text{default}_{\text{ref } ht} &= \epsilon \end{aligned}$$
**Convention**

- The meta variable  $r$  ranges over reference values where clear from context.

**4.2.2 Results**

A *result* is the outcome of a computation. It is either a sequence of **values**, a thrown **exception**, or a **trap**.

$$\text{result} ::= \text{val}^* \mid (\text{ref.exn } \text{exnaddr}) \text{ throw\_ref} \mid \text{trap}$$
**4.2.3 Store**

The *store* represents all global state that can be manipulated by WebAssembly programs. It consists of the runtime representation of all *instances* of **functions**, **tables**, **memories**, **globals**, **tags**, **element segments**, **data segments**, and **structures**, **arrays** or **exceptions** that have been **allocated** during the life time of the abstract machine.

It is an invariant of the semantics that no element or data instance is **addressed** from anywhere else but the owning module instances.

Syntactically, the store is defined as a **record** listing the existing instances of each category:

$$\text{store} ::= \{ \text{funcs } \text{funcinst}^* \\ \text{globals } \text{globalinst}^* \\ \text{tables } \text{tableinst}^* \\ \text{mems } \text{meminst}^* \\ \text{tags } \text{taginst}^* \\ \text{elems } \text{eleminst}^* \\ \text{datas } \text{datainst}^* \\ \text{structs } \text{structinst}^* \\ \text{arrays } \text{arrayinst}^* \\ \text{exns } \text{exninst}^* \}$$
**Note**

In practice, implementations may apply techniques like garbage collection or reference counting to remove objects from the store that are no longer referenced. However, such techniques are not semantically observable, and hence outside the scope of this specification.

**Convention**

- The meta variable  $s$  ranges over stores where clear from context.

## 4.2.4 Addresses

Function instances, table instances, memory instances, global instances, tag instances, element instances, data instances and structure, array or exception instances in the store are referenced with abstract *addresses*. These are simply indices into the respective store component. In addition, an *embedder* may supply an uninterpreted set of *host addresses*.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{addr} &::= 0 \mid 1 \mid 2 \mid \dots \\
 \text{funcaddr} &::= \text{addr} \\
 \text{tableaddr} &::= \text{addr} \\
 \text{memaddr} &::= \text{addr} \\
 \text{globaladdr} &::= \text{addr} \\
 \text{tagaddr} &::= \text{addr} \\
 \text{elemaddr} &::= \text{addr} \\
 \text{dataaddr} &::= \text{addr} \\
 \text{structaddr} &::= \text{addr} \\
 \text{arrayaddr} &::= \text{addr} \\
 \text{hostaddr} &::= \text{addr}
 \end{aligned}$$

An *embedder* may assign identity to *exported* store objects corresponding to their addresses, even where this identity is not observable from within WebAssembly code itself (such as for *function instances* or immutable *globals*).

### Note

Addresses are *dynamic*, globally unique references to runtime objects, in contrast to *indices*, which are *static*, module-local references to their original definitions. A *memory address* *memaddr* denotes the abstract address of a *memory instance* in the store, not an offset *inside* a memory instance.

There is no specific limit on the number of allocations of store objects, hence logical addresses can be arbitrarily large natural numbers.

### Conventions

- The notation  $\text{addr}(A)$  denotes the set of addresses from address space *addr* occurring free in *A*. We sometimes reinterpret this set as the *list* of its elements, without assuming any particular order.

## 4.2.5 External Addresses

An *external address* is the runtime *address* of an entity that can be imported or exported. It is an *address* denoting either a *function instance*, *global instance*, *table instance*, *memory instance*, or *tag instance* in the shared *store*.

$$\text{externaddr} ::= \text{func } \text{funcaddr} \mid \text{global } \text{globaladdr} \mid \text{table } \text{tableaddr} \mid \text{mem } \text{memaddr} \mid \text{tag } \text{tagaddr}$$

## 4.2.6 Module Instances

A *module instance* is the runtime representation of a *module*. It is created by *instantiating* a module, and collects runtime representations of all entities that are imported, defined, or exported by the module.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{moduleinst} &::= \{ \text{types } \text{deftype}^* \\
 &\quad \text{funcs } \text{funcaddr}^* \\
 &\quad \text{globals } \text{globaladdr}^* \\
 &\quad \text{tables } \text{tableaddr}^* \\
 &\quad \text{mems } \text{memaddr}^* \\
 &\quad \text{tags } \text{tagaddr}^* \\
 &\quad \text{elems } \text{elemaddr}^* \\
 &\quad \text{datas } \text{dataaddr}^* \\
 &\quad \text{exports } \text{exportinst}^* \}
 \end{aligned}$$

Each component references runtime instances corresponding to respective declarations from the original module – whether imported or defined – in the order of their static [indices](#). [Function instances](#), [table instances](#), [memory instances](#), [global instances](#), and [tag instances](#) are denoted by their respective [addresses](#) in the [store](#).

It is an invariant of the semantics that all [export instances](#) in a given module instance have different [names](#).

#### Note

All record fields except exports are to be considered *private* components of a module instance. They are not accessible to other modules, only to function instances originating from the same module.

## 4.2.7 Function Instances

A *function instance* is the runtime representation of a [function](#). It effectively is a *closure* of the original function over the runtime [module instance](#) of its originating [module](#). The module instance is used to resolve references to other definitions during execution of the function.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{funcinst} &::= \{\text{type } \text{deftype}, \text{module } \text{moduleinst}, \text{code } \text{code}\} \\ \text{code} &::= \text{func} \mid \text{hostfunc} \end{aligned}$$

A *host function* is a function expressed outside WebAssembly but passed to a [module](#) as an [import](#). The definition and behavior of host functions are outside the scope of this specification. For the purpose of this specification, it is assumed that when [invoked](#), a host function behaves non-deterministically, but within certain [constraints](#) that ensure the integrity of the runtime.

#### Note

Function instances are immutable, and their identity is not observable by WebAssembly code. However, an [embedder](#) might provide implicit or explicit means for distinguishing their [addresses](#).

## 4.2.8 Table Instances

A *table instance* is the runtime representation of a [table](#). It records its [type](#) and holds a sequence of [reference values](#).

$$\text{tableinst} ::= \{\text{type } \text{tabletype}, \text{elem } \text{ref}^*\}$$

Table elements can be mutated through [table instructions](#), the execution of an active [element segment](#), or by external means provided by the [embedder](#).

It is an invariant of the semantics that all table elements have a type [matching](#) the element type of *tabletype*. It also is an invariant that the length of the element sequence never exceeds the maximum size of *tabletype*.

## 4.2.9 Memory Instances

A *memory instance* is the runtime representation of a linear [memory](#). It records its [type](#) and holds a sequence of bytes.

$$\text{meminst} ::= \{\text{type } \text{memtype}, \text{bytes } \text{byte}^*\}$$

The length of the sequence always is a multiple of the WebAssembly *page size*, which is defined to be the constant 65536 – abbreviated 64 Ki.

A memory's bytes can be mutated through [memory instructions](#), the execution of an active [data segment](#), or by external means provided by the [embedder](#).

It is an invariant of the semantics that the length of the byte sequence, divided by page size, never exceeds the maximum size of *memtype*.

### 4.2.10 Global Instances

A *global instance* is the runtime representation of a [global variable](#). It records its [type](#) and holds an individual [value](#).

$$globalinst ::= \{type\ globaltype, value\ val\}$$

The value of mutable globals can be mutated through [variable instructions](#) or by external means provided by the [embedder](#).

It is an invariant of the semantics that the value has a type [matching](#) the [value type](#) of *globaltype*.

### 4.2.11 Tag Instances

A *tag instance* is the runtime representation of a [tag definition](#). It records the [defined type](#) of the tag.

$$taginst ::= \{type\ tagtype\}$$

### 4.2.12 Element Instances

An *element instance* is the runtime representation of an [element segment](#). It holds a list of references and its [type](#).

$$eleminst ::= \{type\ elemtype, elem\ ref^*\}$$

It is an invariant of the semantics that all elements of a segment have a type [matching](#) *elemtype*.

### 4.2.13 Data Instances

An *data instance* is the runtime representation of a [data segment](#). It holds a list of [bytes](#).

$$datainst ::= \{bytes\ byte^*\}$$

### 4.2.14 Export Instances

An *export instance* is the runtime representation of an [export](#). It defines the export's [name](#) and the associated [external address](#).

$$exportinst ::= \{name\ name, addr\ externaddr\}$$

### Conventions

The following auxiliary functions are assumed on sequences of external addresses. They extract addresses of a specific kind in an order-preserving fashion:

- `funcs(xa*)` extracts all [function addresses](#) from *xa*<sup>\*</sup>,
- `tables(xa*)` extracts all [table addresses](#) from *xa*<sup>\*</sup>,
- `mems(xa*)` extracts all [memory addresses](#) from *xa*<sup>\*</sup>,
- `globals(xa*)` extracts all [global addresses](#) from *xa*<sup>\*</sup>,
- `tags(xa*)` extracts all [tag addresses](#) from *xa*<sup>\*</sup>.

### 4.2.15 Aggregate Instances

A *structure instance* is the runtime representation of a heap object allocated from a [structure type](#). Likewise, an *array instance* is the runtime representation of a heap object allocated from an [array type](#). Both record their respective [defined type](#) and hold a list of the values of their *fields*.

$$\begin{aligned} structinst &::= \{type\ deftype, fields\ fieldval^*\} \\ arrayinst &::= \{type\ deftype, fields\ fieldval^*\} \\ fieldval &::= val \mid packval \\ packval &::= packtype.pack\ iN \end{aligned}$$

## Conventions

- Conversion of a regular **value** to a **field value** is defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{pack}_{\text{valtype}}(\text{val}) &= \text{val} \\ \text{pack}_{\text{packtype}}(\text{i32.const } i) &= \text{packtype.pack wrap}_{32,|\text{packtype}|}(i) \end{aligned}$$

- The inverse conversion of a **field value** to a regular **value** is defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{unpack}_{\text{valtype}}^{\epsilon}(\text{val}) &= \text{val} \\ \text{unpack}_{\text{packtype}}^{sx}(\text{packtype.pack } i) &= \text{i32.const extend}_{|\text{packtype}|,32}^{sx}(i) \end{aligned}$$

### 4.2.16 Exception Instances

An *exception instance* is the runtime representation of an **exception** produced by a throw instruction. It holds the **address** of the respective **tag** and the argument **values**.

$$\text{exninst} ::= \{\text{tag } \text{tagaddr}, \text{fields } \text{val}^*\}$$

### 4.2.17 Stack

Besides the **store**, most **instructions** interact with an implicit *stack*. The stack contains the two kinds of entries:

- *Values*: the *operands* of instructions.
- *Control Frames*: currently active control flow structures.

The latter can in turn be one of the following:

- *Labels*: active **structured control instructions** that can be targeted by branches.
- *(Call) Frames*: the *activation records* of active **function** calls.
- *Handlers*: active exception handlers.

#### Note

Where clear from context, *call frame* is abbreviated to just *frame*.

All these entries can occur on the stack in any order during the execution of a program. Stack entries are described by abstract syntax as follows.

#### Note

It is possible to model the WebAssembly semantics using separate stacks for operands, control constructs, and calls. However, because the stacks are interdependent, additional book keeping about associated stack heights would be required. For the purpose of this specification, an interleaved representation is simpler.

## Values

Values are represented by **themselves**.

## Labels

Labels carry an argument arity  $n$  and their associated branch *target*, which is expressed syntactically as an **instruction** sequence:

$$\text{label} ::= \text{label}_n \{\text{instr}^*\}$$

Intuitively, *instr*<sup>\*</sup> is the *continuation* to execute when the branch is taken, in place of the original control construct.

#### Note

For example, a loop label has the form

$$\text{label}_n\{(\text{loop } bt \dots)\}$$

When performing a branch to this label, this executes the loop, effectively restarting it from the beginning. Conversely, a simple block label has the form

$$\text{label}_n\{\epsilon\}$$

When branching, the empty continuation ends the targeted block, such that execution can proceed with consecutive instructions.

### Call Frames

Call frames carry the return arity  $n$  of the respective function, hold the values of its *locals* (including arguments) in the order corresponding to their static *local indices*, and a reference to the function's own *module instance*:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{callframe} &::= \text{frame}_n\{\text{frame}\} \\ \text{frame} &::= \{\text{locals } (val^?)^*, \text{module } \text{moduleinst}\} \end{aligned}$$

Locals may be uninitialized, in which case they are empty. Locals are mutated by respective *variable instructions*.

### Exception Handlers

Exception handlers are installed by *try\_table* instructions and record the corresponding list of *catch clauses*:

$$\text{handler} ::= \text{handler}_n\{\text{catch}^*\}$$

The handlers on the stack are searched when an exception is *thrown*.

### Conventions

- The meta variable  $L$  ranges over labels where clear from context.
- The meta variable  $f$  ranges over frame states where clear from context.
- The meta variable  $H$  ranges over exception handlers where clear from context.
- The following auxiliary definition takes a *block type* and looks up the *instruction type* that it denotes in the current frame:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{instrtype}_z(x) &= ft && \text{if } z.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{func } ft \\ \text{instrtype}_z(t^?) &= \epsilon \rightarrow t^? \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.2.18 Administrative Instructions

#### Note

This section is only relevant for the *formal notation*.

In order to express the reduction of [traps](#), [calls](#), [exception handling](#), and [control instructions](#), the syntax of instructions is extended to include the following *administrative instructions*:

$$\begin{array}{lcl} \text{instr} & ::= & \dots \\ & | & \text{addrref} \\ & | & \text{label}_n\{\text{instr}^*\} \text{instr}^* \\ & | & \text{frame}_n\{\text{frame}\} \text{instr}^* \\ & | & \text{handler}_n\{\text{catch}^*\} \text{instr}^* \\ & | & \text{trap} \end{array}$$

An [address reference](#) represents an allocated [reference](#) value of respective form “on the stack”.

The label, frame, and handler instructions model [labels](#), [frames](#), and active [exception handlers](#), respectively, “on the stack”. Moreover, the administrative syntax maintains the nesting structure of the original [structured control instruction](#) or [function body](#) and their [instruction sequences](#).

The trap instruction represents the occurrence of a trap. Traps are bubbled up through nested instruction sequences, ultimately reducing the entire program to a single trap instruction, signalling abrupt termination.

#### Note

For example, the [reduction rule](#) for block is:

$$(\text{block } bt \text{ instr}^*) \hookrightarrow (\text{label}_n\{\epsilon\} \text{instr}^*)$$

if the [block type](#)  $bt$  denotes a [function type](#)  $t_1^m \rightarrow t_2^n$ , such that  $n$  is the block’s result arity. This rule replaces the block with a label instruction, which can be interpreted as “pushing” the label on the stack. When its end is reached, i.e., the inner instruction sequence has been reduced to the empty sequence – or rather, a sequence of  $n$  [values](#) representing the results – then the label instruction is eliminated courtesy of its own [reduction rule](#):

$$(\text{label}_n\{\text{instr}^*\} \text{val}^*) \hookrightarrow \text{val}^*$$

This can be interpreted as removing the label from the stack and only leaving the locally accumulated operand values. Validation guarantees that  $n$  matches the number  $|\text{val}^*|$  of resulting values at this point.

## Configurations

A *configuration* describes the current computation. It consists of the computations’s *state* and the sequence of [instructions](#) left to execute. The state in turn consists of a global [store](#) and a current [frame](#) referring to the [module instance](#) in which the computation runs, i.e., where the current function originates from.

$$\begin{array}{lcl} \text{config} & ::= & \text{state}; \text{instr}^* \\ \text{state} & ::= & \text{store}; \text{frame} \end{array}$$

#### Note

The current version of WebAssembly is single-threaded, but configurations with multiple threads may be supported in the future.

## 4.3 Numerics

Numeric primitives are defined in a generic manner, by operators indexed over a bit width  $N$ .

Some operators are *non-deterministic*, because they can return one of several possible results (such as different [NaN](#) values). Technically, each operator thus returns a *set* of allowed values. For convenience, deterministic results are expressed as plain values, which are assumed to be identified with a respective singleton set.



Some operators are *partial*, because they are not defined on certain inputs. Technically, an empty set of results is returned for these inputs.

In formal notation, each operator is defined by equational clauses that apply in decreasing order of precedence. That is, the first clause that is applicable to the given arguments defines the result. In some cases, similar clauses are combined into one by using the notation  $\pm$  or  $\mp$ . When several of these placeholders occur in a single clause, then they must be resolved consistently: either the upper sign is chosen for all of them or the lower sign.

#### Note

For example, the `fcopysign` operator is defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{fcopysign}_N(\pm p_1, \pm p_2) &= \pm p_1 \\ \text{fcopysign}_N(\pm p_1, \mp p_2) &= \mp p_1\end{aligned}$$

This definition is to be read as a shorthand for the following expansion of each clause into two separate ones:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{fcopysign}_N(+p_1, +p_2) &= +p_1 \\ \text{fcopysign}_N(-p_1, -p_2) &= -p_1 \\ \text{fcopysign}_N(+p_1, -p_2) &= -p_1 \\ \text{fcopysign}_N(-p_1, +p_2) &= +p_1\end{aligned}$$

Numeric operators are lifted to input sequences by applying the operator element-wise, returning a sequence of results. When there are multiple inputs, they must be of equal length.

$$op(c_1^n, \dots, c_k^n) = op(c_1^n[0], \dots, c_k^n[0]) \dots op(c_1^n[n-1], \dots, c_k^n[n-1])$$

#### Note

For example, the unary operator `fabs`, when given a sequence of floating-point values, return a sequence of floating-point results:

$$\text{fabs}_N(z^n) = \text{fabs}_N(z[0]) \dots \text{fabs}_N(z[n])$$

The binary operator `iadd`, when given two sequences of integers of the same length,  $n$ , return a sequence of integer results:

$$\text{iadd}_N(i_1^n, i_2^n) = \text{iadd}_N(i_1[0], i_2[0]) \dots \text{iadd}_N(i_1[n], i_2[n])$$

Conventions:

- The meta variable  $d$  is used to range over single bits.
- The meta variable  $p$  is used to range over (signless) **magnitudes** of floating-point values, including `nan` and  $\infty$ .
- The meta variable  $q$  is used to range over (signless) *rational magnitudes*, excluding `nan` or  $\infty$ .
- The notation  $f^{-1}$  denotes the inverse of a bijective function  $f$ .
- Truncation of rational values is written `trunc`( $\pm q$ ), with the usual mathematical definition:

$$\text{trunc}(\pm q) = \pm i \quad (\text{if } i \in \mathbb{N} \wedge +q - 1 < i \leq +q)$$

- Saturation of integers is written `sat_uN`( $i$ ) and `sat_sN`( $i$ ). The arguments to these two functions range over arbitrary signed integers.

- Unsigned saturation,  $\text{sat\_u}_N(i)$  clamps  $i$  to between 0 and  $2^N - 1$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\text{sat\_u}_N(i) &= 0 && (\text{if } i < 0) \\ \text{sat\_u}_N(i) &= 2^N - 1 && (\text{if } i > 2^N - 1) \\ \text{sat\_u}_N(i) &= i && (\text{otherwise})\end{aligned}$$

- Signed saturation,  $\text{sat\_s}_N(i)$  clamps  $i$  to between  $-2^{N-1}$  and  $2^{N-1} - 1$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\text{sat\_s}_N(i) &= -2^{N-1} && (\text{if } i < -2^{N-1}) \\ \text{sat\_s}_N(i) &= 2^{N-1} - 1 && (\text{if } i > 2^{N-1} - 1) \\ \text{sat\_s}_N(i) &= i && (\text{otherwise})\end{aligned}$$

### 4.3.1 Representations

Numbers and numeric vectors have an underlying binary representation as a sequence of bits:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{bits}_{iN}(i) &= \text{ibits}_N(i) \\ \text{bits}_{fN}(z) &= \text{fbits}_N(z) \\ \text{bits}_{vN}(i) &= \text{ibits}_N(i)\end{aligned}$$

The first case of these applies to representations of both integer **value types** and **packed types**.

Each of these functions is a bijection, hence they are invertible.

#### Integers

**Integers** are represented as base two unsigned numbers:

$$\text{ibits}_N(i) = d_{N-1} \dots d_0 \quad (i = 2^{N-1} \cdot d_{N-1} + \dots + 2^0 \cdot d_0)$$

Boolean operators like  $\wedge$ ,  $\vee$ , or  $\underline{\vee}$  are lifted to bit sequences of equal length by applying them pointwise.

#### Floating-Point

**Floating-point values** are represented in the respective binary format defined by [IEEE 754<sup>22</sup>](https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229) (Section 3.4):

$$\begin{aligned}\text{fbits}_N(\pm(1 + m \cdot 2^{-M}) \cdot 2^e) &= \text{fsign}(\pm) \text{ibits}_E(e + \text{fbias}_N) \text{ibits}_M(m) \\ \text{fbits}_N(\pm(0 + m \cdot 2^{-M}) \cdot 2^e) &= \text{fsign}(\pm) (0)^E \text{ibits}_M(m) \\ \text{fbits}_N(\pm\infty) &= \text{fsign}(\pm) (1)^E (0)^M \\ \text{fbits}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \text{fsign}(\pm) (1)^E \text{ibits}_M(n) \\ \text{fbias}_N &= 2^{E-1} - 1 \\ \text{fsign}(+) &= 0 \\ \text{fsign}(-) &= 1\end{aligned}$$

where  $M = \text{signif}(N)$  and  $E = \text{expon}(N)$ .

#### Vectors

Numeric vectors of type **vN** have the same underlying representation as an **iN**. They can also be interpreted as a sequence of numeric values packed into a **vN** with a particular *shape*  $txM$ , provided that  $N = |t| \cdot M$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\text{lanes}_{txM}(c) &= c_0 \dots c_{M-1} \\ (\text{where } w &= |t|/8 \\ \wedge b^* &= \text{bytes}_{iN}(c) \\ \wedge c_i &= \text{bytes}_t^{-1}(b^*[i \cdot w : w]))\end{aligned}$$

This function is a bijection on **iN**, hence it is invertible.

<sup>22</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

**Todo**

pack/unpacknum

**Storage**

When a number is stored into **memory**, it is converted into a sequence of **bytes** in **little endian**<sup>23</sup> byte order:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{bytes}_t(i) &= \text{littleendian}(\text{bits}_t(i)) \\ \text{littleendian}(\epsilon) &= \epsilon \\ \text{littleendian}(d^8 \ d'^*) &= \text{littleendian}(d'^*) \text{ibits}_8^{-1}(d^8) \end{aligned}$$

Again these functions are invertible bijections.

**4.3.2 Integer Operations****Sign Interpretation**

Integer operators are defined on  $i_N$  values. Operators that use a signed interpretation convert the value using the following definition, which takes the two's complement when the value lies in the upper half of the value range (i.e., its most significant bit is 1):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{signed}_N(i) &= i & (0 \leq i < 2^{N-1}) \\ \text{signed}_N(i) &= i - 2^N & (2^{N-1} \leq i < 2^N) \end{aligned}$$

This function is bijective, and hence invertible.

**Boolean Interpretation**

The integer result of predicates – i.e., **tests** and **relational** operators – is defined with the help of the following auxiliary function producing the value 1 or 0 depending on a condition.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{bool}(C) &= 1 & (\text{if } C) \\ \text{bool}(C) &= 0 & (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{iadd}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return the result of adding  $i_1$  and  $i_2$  modulo  $2^N$ .

$$\text{iadd}_N(i_1, i_2) = (i_1 + i_2) \bmod 2^N$$

$\text{isub}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return the result of subtracting  $i_2$  from  $i_1$  modulo  $2^N$ .

$$\text{isub}_N(i_1, i_2) = (i_1 - i_2 + 2^N) \bmod 2^N$$

$\text{imul}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return the result of multiplying  $i_1$  and  $i_2$  modulo  $2^N$ .

$$\text{imul}_N(i_1, i_2) = (i_1 \cdot i_2) \bmod 2^N$$

<sup>23</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Endianness#Little-endian>

$\text{idiv\_u}_N(i_1, i_2)$ 

- If  $i_2$  is 0, then the result is undefined.
- Else, return the result of dividing  $i_1$  by  $i_2$ , truncated toward zero.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{idiv\_u}_N(i_1, 0) &= \{\} \\ \text{idiv\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) &= \text{trunc}(i_1/i_2)\end{aligned}$$

#### Note

This operator is **partial**.

 $\text{idiv\_s}_N(i_1, i_2)$ 

- Let  $j_1$  be the **signed interpretation** of  $i_1$ .
- Let  $j_2$  be the **signed interpretation** of  $i_2$ .
- If  $j_2$  is 0, then the result is undefined.
- Else if  $j_1$  divided by  $j_2$  is  $2^{N-1}$ , then the result is undefined.
- Else, return the result of dividing  $j_1$  by  $j_2$ , truncated toward zero.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{idiv\_s}_N(i_1, 0) &= \{\} \\ \text{idiv\_s}_N(i_1, i_2) &= \{\} \quad (\text{if } \text{signed}_N(i_1)/\text{signed}_N(i_2) = 2^{N-1}) \\ \text{idiv\_s}_N(i_1, i_2) &= \text{signed}_N^{-1}(\text{trunc}(\text{signed}_N(i_1)/\text{signed}_N(i_2)))\end{aligned}$$

#### Note

This operator is **partial**. Besides division by 0, the result of  $(-2^{N-1})/(-1) = +2^{N-1}$  is not representable as an  $N$ -bit signed integer.

 $\text{irem\_u}_N(i_1, i_2)$ 

- If  $i_2$  is 0, then the result is undefined.
- Else, return the remainder of dividing  $i_1$  by  $i_2$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\text{irem\_u}_N(i_1, 0) &= \{\} \\ \text{irem\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) &= i_1 - i_2 \cdot \text{trunc}(i_1/i_2)\end{aligned}$$

#### Note

This operator is **partial**.

As long as both operators are defined, it holds that  $i_1 = i_2 \cdot \text{idiv\_u}(i_1, i_2) + \text{irem\_u}(i_1, i_2)$ .

 $\text{irem\_s}_N(i_1, i_2)$ 

- Let  $j_1$  be the **signed interpretation** of  $i_1$ .
- Let  $j_2$  be the **signed interpretation** of  $i_2$ .
- If  $i_2$  is 0, then the result is undefined.
- Else, return the remainder of dividing  $j_1$  by  $j_2$ , with the sign of the dividend  $j_1$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{irem\_s}_N(i_1, 0) &= \{\} \\ \text{irem\_s}_N(i_1, i_2) &= \text{signed}_N^{-1}(j_1 - j_2 \cdot \text{trunc}(j_1/j_2)) \\ &\quad (\text{where } j_1 = \text{signed}_N(i_1) \wedge j_2 = \text{signed}_N(i_2)) \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

This operator is [partial](#).

As long as both operators are defined, it holds that  $i_1 = i_2 \cdot \text{idiv\_s}(i_1, i_2) + \text{irem\_s}(i_1, i_2)$ .

$\text{inot}_N(i)$

- Return the bitwise negation of  $i$ .

$$\text{inot}_N(i) = \text{ibits}_N^{-1}(\text{ibits}_N(i) \vee \text{ibits}_N(2^N - 1))$$

$\text{irev}_N(i)$

- Return the bitwise reversal of  $i$ .

$$\text{irev}_N(i) = \text{ibits}_N^{-1}((d^N[N - i])^{i \leq N}) \quad (\text{if } d^N = \text{ibits}_N(i))$$

$\text{iand}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return the bitwise conjunction of  $i_1$  and  $i_2$ .

$$\text{iand}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{ibits}_N^{-1}(\text{ibits}_N(i_1) \wedge \text{ibits}_N(i_2))$$

$\text{iandnot}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return the bitwise conjunction of  $i_1$  and the bitwise negation of  $i_2$ .

$$\text{iandnot}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{iand}_N(i_1, \text{inot}_N(i_2))$$

$\text{ior}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return the bitwise disjunction of  $i_1$  and  $i_2$ .

$$\text{ior}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{ibits}_N^{-1}(\text{ibits}_N(i_1) \vee \text{ibits}_N(i_2))$$

$\text{ixor}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return the bitwise exclusive disjunction of  $i_1$  and  $i_2$ .

$$\text{ixor}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{ibits}_N^{-1}(\text{ibits}_N(i_1) \vee \text{ibits}_N(i_2))$$

$\text{ishl}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $k$  be  $i_2$  modulo  $N$ .
- Return the result of shifting  $i_1$  left by  $k$  bits, modulo  $2^N$ .

$$\text{ishl}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{ibits}_N^{-1}(d_2^{N-k} 0^k) \quad (\text{if } \text{ibits}_N(i_1) = d_1^k d_2^{N-k} \wedge k = i_2 \bmod N)$$

$\text{ishr\_u}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $k$  be  $i_2$  modulo  $N$ .
- Return the result of shifting  $i_1$  right by  $k$  bits, extended with 0 bits.

$$\text{ishr\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{ibits}_N^{-1}(0^k d_1^{N-k}) \quad (\text{if } \text{ibits}_N(i_1) = d_1^{N-k} d_2^k \wedge k = i_2 \bmod N)$$

$\text{ishr}_{\text{S}_N}(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $k$  be  $i_2$  modulo  $N$ .
- Return the result of shifting  $i_1$  right by  $k$  bits, extended with the most significant bit of the original value.

$$\text{ishr}_{\text{S}_N}(i_1, i_2) = \text{ibits}_N^{-1}(d_0^{k+1} d_1^{N-k-1}) \quad (\text{if } \text{ibits}_N(i_1) = d_0 d_1^{N-k-1} d_2^k \wedge k = i_2 \bmod N)$$

$\text{irotl}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $k$  be  $i_2$  modulo  $N$ .
- Return the result of rotating  $i_1$  left by  $k$  bits.

$$\text{irotl}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{ibits}_N^{-1}(d_2^{N-k} d_1^k) \quad (\text{if } \text{ibits}_N(i_1) = d_1^k d_2^{N-k} \wedge k = i_2 \bmod N)$$

$\text{irot}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $k$  be  $i_2$  modulo  $N$ .
- Return the result of rotating  $i_1$  right by  $k$  bits.

$$\text{irot}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{ibits}_N^{-1}(d_2^k d_1^{N-k}) \quad (\text{if } \text{ibits}_N(i_1) = d_1^{N-k} d_2^k \wedge k = i_2 \bmod N)$$

$\text{iclz}_N(i)$

- Return the count of leading zero bits in  $i$ ; all bits are considered leading zeros if  $i$  is 0.

$$\text{iclz}_N(i) = k \quad (\text{if } \text{ibits}_N(i) = 0^k (1 d^*)^?)$$

$\text{ictz}_N(i)$

- Return the count of trailing zero bits in  $i$ ; all bits are considered trailing zeros if  $i$  is 0.

$$\text{ictz}_N(i) = k \quad (\text{if } \text{ibits}_N(i) = (d^* 1)^? 0^k)$$

$\text{ipopcnt}_N(i)$

- Return the count of non-zero bits in  $i$ .

$$\text{ipopcnt}_N(i) = k \quad (\text{if } \text{ibits}_N(i) = (0^* 1)^k 0^*)$$

$\text{ieqz}_N(i)$

- Return 1 if  $i$  is zero, 0 otherwise.

$$\text{ieqz}_N(i) = \text{bool}(i = 0)$$

$\text{inez}_N(i)$

- Return 0 if  $i$  is zero, 1 otherwise.

$$\text{inez}_N(i) = \text{bool}(i \neq 0)$$

$\text{ieq}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return 1 if  $i_1$  equals  $i_2$ , 0 otherwise.

$$\text{ieq}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{bool}(i_1 = i_2)$$

$\text{ine}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return 1 if  $i_1$  does not equal  $i_2$ , 0 otherwise.

$$\text{ine}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{bool}(i_1 \neq i_2)$$

$\text{ilt\_u}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return 1 if  $i_1$  is less than  $i_2$ , 0 otherwise.

$$\text{ilt\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{bool}(i_1 < i_2)$$

$\text{ilt\_s}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $j_1$  be the [signed interpretation](#) of  $i_1$ .
- Let  $j_2$  be the [signed interpretation](#) of  $i_2$ .
- Return 1 if  $j_1$  is less than  $j_2$ , 0 otherwise.

$$\text{ilt\_s}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{bool}(\text{signed}_N(i_1) < \text{signed}_N(i_2))$$

$\text{igt\_u}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return 1 if  $i_1$  is greater than  $i_2$ , 0 otherwise.

$$\text{igt\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{bool}(i_1 > i_2)$$

$\text{igt\_s}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $j_1$  be the [signed interpretation](#) of  $i_1$ .
- Let  $j_2$  be the [signed interpretation](#) of  $i_2$ .
- Return 1 if  $j_1$  is greater than  $j_2$ , 0 otherwise.

$$\text{igt\_s}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{bool}(\text{signed}_N(i_1) > \text{signed}_N(i_2))$$

$\text{ile\_u}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return 1 if  $i_1$  is less than or equal to  $i_2$ , 0 otherwise.

$$\text{ile\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{bool}(i_1 \leq i_2)$$

$\text{ile\_s}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $j_1$  be the [signed interpretation](#) of  $i_1$ .
- Let  $j_2$  be the [signed interpretation](#) of  $i_2$ .
- Return 1 if  $j_1$  is less than or equal to  $j_2$ , 0 otherwise.

$$\text{ile\_s}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{bool}(\text{signed}_N(i_1) \leq \text{signed}_N(i_2))$$

$\text{ige\_u}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return 1 if  $i_1$  is greater than or equal to  $i_2$ , 0 otherwise.

$$\text{ige\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{bool}(i_1 \geq i_2)$$

$\text{ige\_s}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $j_1$  be the signed interpretation of  $i_1$ .
- Let  $j_2$  be the signed interpretation of  $i_2$ .
- Return 1 if  $j_1$  is greater than or equal to  $j_2$ , 0 otherwise.

$$\text{ige\_s}_N(i_1, i_2) = \text{bool}(\text{signed}_N(i_1) \geq \text{signed}_N(i_2))$$

$\text{iextend}_M\text{\_s}_N(i)$

- Let  $j$  be the result of computing  $\text{wrap}_{N,M}(i)$ .
- Return  $\text{extend}^s_{M,N}(j)$ .

$$\text{iextend}_M\text{\_s}_N(i) = \text{extend}^s_{M,N}(\text{wrap}_{N,M}(i))$$

$\text{ibitselect}_N(i_1, i_2, i_3)$

- Let  $j_1$  be the bitwise conjunction of  $i_1$  and  $i_3$ .
- Let  $j'_3$  be the bitwise negation of  $i_3$ .
- Let  $j_2$  be the bitwise conjunction of  $i_2$  and  $j'_3$ .
- Return the bitwise disjunction of  $j_1$  and  $j_2$ .

$$\text{ibitselect}_N(i_1, i_2, i_3) = \text{ior}_N(\text{iand}_N(i_1, i_3), \text{iand}_N(i_2, \text{inot}_N(i_3)))$$

$\text{iabs}_N(i)$

- Let  $j$  be the signed interpretation of  $i$ .
- If  $j$  is greater than or equal to 0, then return  $i$ .
- Else return the negation of  $j$ , modulo  $2^N$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{iabs}_N(i) &= i && (\text{if } \text{signed}_N(i) \geq 0) \\ \text{iabs}_N(i) &= -\text{signed}_N(i) \bmod 2^N && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{ineg}_N(i)$

- Return the result of negating  $i$ , modulo  $2^N$ .

$$\text{ineg}_N(i) = (2^N - i) \bmod 2^N$$

$\text{imin\_u}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return  $i_1$  if  $\text{ilt\_u}_N(i_1, i_2)$  is 1, return  $i_2$  otherwise.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{imin\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) &= i_1 && (\text{if } \text{ilt\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) = 1) \\ \text{imin\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) &= i_2 && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{imin\_s}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return  $i_1$  if  $\text{ilt\_s}_N(i_1, i_2)$  is 1, return  $i_2$  otherwise.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{imin\_s}_N(i_1, i_2) &= i_1 && (\text{if } \text{ilt\_s}_N(i_1, i_2) = 1) \\ \text{imin\_s}_N(i_1, i_2) &= i_2 && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{imax\_u}_N(i_1, i_2)$

- Return  $i_1$  if  $\text{igt\_u}_N(i_1, i_2)$  is 1, return  $i_2$  otherwise.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{imax\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) &= i_1 && (\text{if } \text{igt\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) = 1) \\ \text{imax\_u}_N(i_1, i_2) &= i_2 && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$



$\text{imax}_{\text{SN}}(i_1, i_2)$

- Return  $i_1$  if  $\text{igt}_{\text{SN}}(i_1, i_2)$  is 1, return  $i_2$  otherwise.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{imax}_{\text{SN}}(i_1, i_2) &= i_1 && (\text{if } \text{igt}_{\text{SN}}(i_1, i_2) = 1) \\ \text{imax}_{\text{SN}}(i_1, i_2) &= i_2 && (\text{otherwise})\end{aligned}$$

$\text{iadd}_{\text{sat}}_{\text{uN}}(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $i$  be the result of adding  $i_1$  and  $i_2$ .
- Return  $\text{sat}_{\text{uN}}(i)$ .

$$\text{iadd}_{\text{sat}}_{\text{uN}}(i_1, i_2) = \text{sat}_{\text{uN}}(i_1 + i_2)$$

$\text{iadd}_{\text{sat}}_{\text{SN}}(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $j_1$  be the signed interpretation of  $i_1$
- Let  $j_2$  be the signed interpretation of  $i_2$
- Let  $j$  be the result of adding  $j_1$  and  $j_2$ .
- Return the value whose signed interpretation is  $\text{sat}_{\text{SN}}(j)$ .

$$\text{iadd}_{\text{sat}}_{\text{SN}}(i_1, i_2) = \text{signed}_N^{-1}(\text{sat}_{\text{SN}}(\text{signed}_N(i_1) + \text{signed}_N(i_2)))$$

$\text{isub}_{\text{sat}}_{\text{uN}}(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $i$  be the result of subtracting  $i_2$  from  $i_1$ .
- Return  $\text{sat}_{\text{uN}}(i)$ .

$$\text{isub}_{\text{sat}}_{\text{uN}}(i_1, i_2) = \text{sat}_{\text{uN}}(i_1 - i_2)$$

$\text{isub}_{\text{sat}}_{\text{SN}}(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $j_1$  be the signed interpretation of  $i_1$
- Let  $j_2$  be the signed interpretation of  $i_2$
- Let  $j$  be the result of subtracting  $j_2$  from  $j_1$ .
- Return the value whose signed interpretation is  $\text{sat}_{\text{SN}}(j)$ .

$$\text{isub}_{\text{sat}}_{\text{SN}}(i_1, i_2) = \text{signed}_N^{-1}(\text{sat}_{\text{SN}}(\text{signed}_N(i_1) - \text{signed}_N(i_2)))$$

$\text{iavgr}_{\text{uN}}(i_1, i_2)$

- Let  $j$  be the result of adding  $i_1$ ,  $i_2$ , and 1.
- Return the result of dividing  $j$  by 2, truncated toward zero.

$$\text{iavgr}_{\text{uN}}(i_1, i_2) = \text{trunc}((i_1 + i_2 + 1)/2)$$

$\text{iq15mulrsat}_{\text{SN}}(i_1, i_2)$

- Return the whose signed interpretation is the result of  $\text{sat}_{\text{SN}}(\text{ishr}_{\text{SN}}(i_1 \cdot i_2 + 2^{14}, 15))$ .

$$\text{iq15mulrsat}_{\text{SN}}(i_1, i_2) = \text{signed}_N^{-1}(\text{sat}_{\text{SN}}(\text{ishr}_{\text{SN}}(i_1 \cdot i_2 + 2^{14}, 15)))$$

### 4.3.3 Floating-Point Operations

Floating-point arithmetic follows the [IEEE 754<sup>24</sup>](#) standard, with the following qualifications:

- All operators use round-to-nearest ties-to-even, except where otherwise specified. Non-default directed rounding attributes are not supported.
- Following the recommendation that operators propagate NaN payloads from their operands is permitted but not required.
- All operators use “non-stop” mode, and floating-point exceptions are not otherwise observable. In particular, neither alternate floating-point exception handling attributes nor operators on status flags are supported. There is no observable difference between quiet and signalling NaNs.

#### Note

Some of these limitations may be lifted in future versions of WebAssembly.

### Rounding

Rounding always is round-to-nearest ties-to-even, in correspondence with [IEEE 754<sup>25</sup>](#) (Section 4.3.1).

An *exact* floating-point number is a rational number that is exactly representable as a floating-point number of given bit width  $N$ .

A *limit* number for a given floating-point bit width  $N$  is a positive or negative number whose magnitude is the smallest power of 2 that is not exactly representable as a floating-point number of width  $N$  (that magnitude is  $2^{128}$  for  $N = 32$  and  $2^{1024}$  for  $N = 64$ ).

A *candidate* number is either an exact floating-point number or a positive or negative limit number for the given bit width  $N$ .

A *candidate pair* is a pair  $z_1, z_2$  of candidate numbers, such that no candidate number exists that lies between the two.

A real number  $r$  is converted to a floating-point value of bit width  $N$  as follows:

- If  $r$  is 0, then return  $+0$ .
- Else if  $r$  is an exact floating-point number, then return  $r$ .
- Else if  $r$  greater than or equal to the positive limit, then return  $+\infty$ .
- Else if  $r$  is less than or equal to the negative limit, then return  $-\infty$ .
- Else if  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are a candidate pair such that  $z_1 < r < z_2$ , then:
  - If  $|r - z_1| < |r - z_2|$ , then let  $z$  be  $z_1$ .
  - Else if  $|r - z_1| > |r - z_2|$ , then let  $z$  be  $z_2$ .
  - Else if  $|r - z_1| = |r - z_2|$  and the [significand](#) of  $z_1$  is even, then let  $z$  be  $z_1$ .
  - Else, let  $z$  be  $z_2$ .
- If  $z$  is 0, then:
  - If  $r < 0$ , then return  $-0$ .
  - Else, return  $+0$ .
- Else if  $z$  is a limit number, then:
  - If  $r < 0$ , then return  $-\infty$ .
  - Else, return  $+\infty$ .

<sup>24</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

<sup>25</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

- Else, return  $z$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{float}_N(0) &= +0 \\
\text{float}_N(r) &= r && (\text{if } r \in \text{exact}_N) \\
\text{float}_N(r) &= +\infty && (\text{if } r \geq +\text{limit}_N) \\
\text{float}_N(r) &= -\infty && (\text{if } r \leq -\text{limit}_N) \\
\text{float}_N(r) &= \text{closest}_N(r, z_1, z_2) && (\text{if } z_1 < r < z_2 \wedge (z_1, z_2) \in \text{candidatepair}_N) \\
\text{closest}_N(r, z_1, z_2) &= \text{rectify}_N(r, z_1) && (\text{if } |r - z_1| < |r - z_2|) \\
\text{closest}_N(r, z_1, z_2) &= \text{rectify}_N(r, z_2) && (\text{if } |r - z_1| > |r - z_2|) \\
\text{closest}_N(r, z_1, z_2) &= \text{rectify}_N(r, z_1) && (\text{if } |r - z_1| = |r - z_2| \wedge \text{even}_N(z_1)) \\
\text{closest}_N(r, z_1, z_2) &= \text{rectify}_N(r, z_2) && (\text{if } |r - z_1| = |r - z_2| \wedge \text{even}_N(z_2)) \\
\text{rectify}_N(r, \pm\text{limit}_N) &= \pm\infty \\
\text{rectify}_N(r, 0) &= +0 && (r \geq 0) \\
\text{rectify}_N(r, 0) &= -0 && (r < 0) \\
\text{rectify}_N(r, z) &= z
\end{aligned}$$

where:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{exact}_N &= f_{N \cap \mathbb{Q}} \\
\text{limit}_N &= 2^{2^{\text{expon}(N)} - 1} \\
\text{candidate}_N &= \text{exact}_N \cup \{+\text{limit}_N, -\text{limit}_N\} \\
\text{candidatepair}_N &= \{(z_1, z_2) \in \text{candidate}_N^2 \mid z_1 < z_2 \wedge \forall z \in \text{candidate}_N, z \leq z_1 \vee z \geq z_2\} \\
\text{even}_N((d + m \cdot 2^{-M}) \cdot 2^e) &\Leftrightarrow m \bmod 2 = 0 \\
\text{even}_N(\pm\text{limit}_N) &\Leftrightarrow \text{true}
\end{aligned}$$

## NaN Propagation

When the result of a floating-point operator other than `fneg`, `fabs`, or `fcopysign` is a NaN, then its sign is non-deterministic and the `payload` is computed as follows:

- If the payload of all NaN inputs to the operator is `canonical` (including the case that there are no NaN inputs), then the payload of the output is canonical as well.
- Otherwise the payload is picked non-deterministically among all `arithmetic NaNs`; that is, its most significant bit is 1 and all others are unspecified.
- In the `deterministic profile`, however, a positive canonical NaNs is reliably produced in the latter case.

The non-deterministic result is expressed by the following auxiliary function producing a set of allowed outputs from a set of inputs:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{nans}_N\{z^*\} &= \{+\text{nan}(\text{canon}_N)\} \\
\text{[!DET]} \quad \text{nans}_N\{z^*\} &= \{+\text{nan}(n), -\text{nan}(n) \mid n = \text{canon}_N\} && (\text{if } \{z^*\} \subseteq \{+\text{nan}(\text{canon}_N), -\text{nan}(\text{canon}_N)\}) \\
\text{[!DET]} \quad \text{nans}_N\{z^*\} &= \{+\text{nan}(n), -\text{nan}(n) \mid n \geq \text{canon}_N\} && (\text{if } \{z^*\} \not\subseteq \{+\text{nan}(\text{canon}_N), -\text{nan}(\text{canon}_N)\})
\end{aligned}$$

`faddN( $z_1, z_2$ )`

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return an element of `nansN{ $z_1, z_2$ }`.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are infinities of opposite signs, then return an element of `nansN{}`.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are infinities of equal sign, then return that infinity.
- Else if either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is an infinity, then return that infinity.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of opposite sign, then return positive zero.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of equal sign, then return that zero.
- Else if either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a zero, then return the other operand.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are values with the same magnitude but opposite signs, then return positive zero.
- Else return the result of adding  $z_1$  and  $z_2$ , `rounded` to the nearest representable value.

$\text{fadd}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2\}$
$\text{fadd}_N(z_1, \pm\text{nan}(n))$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n), z_1\}$
$\text{fadd}_N(\pm\infty, \mp\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fadd}_N(\pm\infty, \pm\infty)$	$= \pm\infty$
$\text{fadd}_N(z_1, \pm\infty)$	$= \pm\infty$
$\text{fadd}_N(\pm\infty, z_2)$	$= \pm\infty$
$\text{fadd}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0)$	$= +0$
$\text{fadd}_N(\pm 0, \pm 0)$	$= \pm 0$
$\text{fadd}_N(z_1, \pm 0)$	$= z_1$
$\text{fadd}_N(\pm 0, z_2)$	$= z_2$
$\text{fadd}_N(\pm q, \mp q)$	$= +0$
$\text{fadd}_N(z_1, z_2)$	$= \text{float}_N(z_1 + z_2)$

$\text{fsub}_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{z_1, z_2\}$ .
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are infinities of equal sign, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$ .
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are infinities of opposite sign, then return  $z_1$ .
- Else if  $z_1$  is an infinity, then return that infinity.
- Else if  $z_2$  is an infinity, then return that infinity negated.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of equal sign, then return positive zero.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of opposite sign, then return  $z_1$ .
- Else if  $z_2$  is a zero, then return  $z_1$ .
- Else if  $z_1$  is a zero, then return  $z_2$  negated.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are the same value, then return positive zero.
- Else return the result of subtracting  $z_2$  from  $z_1$ , rounded to the nearest representable value.

$\text{fsub}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2\}$
$\text{fsub}_N(z_1, \pm\text{nan}(n))$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n), z_1\}$
$\text{fsub}_N(\pm\infty, \pm\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fsub}_N(\pm\infty, \mp\infty)$	$= \pm\infty$
$\text{fsub}_N(z_1, \pm\infty)$	$= \mp\infty$
$\text{fsub}_N(\pm\infty, z_2)$	$= \pm\infty$
$\text{fsub}_N(\pm 0, \pm 0)$	$= +0$
$\text{fsub}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0)$	$= \pm 0$
$\text{fsub}_N(z_1, \pm 0)$	$= z_1$
$\text{fsub}_N(\pm 0, \pm q_2)$	$= \mp q_2$
$\text{fsub}_N(\pm q, \pm q)$	$= +0$
$\text{fsub}_N(z_1, z_2)$	$= \text{float}_N(z_1 - z_2)$

#### Note

Up to the non-determinism regarding NaNs, it always holds that  $\text{fsub}_N(z_1, z_2) = \text{fadd}_N(z_1, \text{fneg}_N(z_2))$ .

$\text{fmul}_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{z_1, z_2\}$ .
- Else if one of  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  is a zero and the other an infinity, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$ .
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are infinities of equal sign, then return positive infinity.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are infinities of opposite sign, then return negative infinity.
- Else if either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is an infinity and the other a value with equal sign, then return positive infinity.

- Else if either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is an infinity and the other a value with opposite sign, then return negative infinity.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of equal sign, then return positive zero.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of opposite sign, then return negative zero.
- Else return the result of multiplying  $z_1$  and  $z_2$ , **rounded** to the nearest representable value.

$\text{fmul}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2\}$
$\text{fmul}_N(z_1, \pm\text{nan}(n))$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n), z_1\}$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm\infty, \pm 0)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm\infty, \mp 0)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm 0, \pm\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm 0, \mp\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm\infty, \pm\infty)$	$= +\infty$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm\infty, \mp\infty)$	$= -\infty$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm q_1, \pm\infty)$	$= +\infty$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm q_1, \mp\infty)$	$= -\infty$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm\infty, \pm q_2)$	$= +\infty$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm\infty, \mp q_2)$	$= -\infty$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm 0, \pm 0)$	$= +0$
$\text{fmul}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0)$	$= -0$
$\text{fmul}_N(z_1, z_2)$	$= \text{float}_N(z_1 \cdot z_2)$

$\text{fdiv}_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{z_1, z_2\}$ .
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are infinities, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$ .
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{z_1, z_2\}$ .
- Else if  $z_1$  is an infinity and  $z_2$  a value with equal sign, then return positive infinity.
- Else if  $z_1$  is an infinity and  $z_2$  a value with opposite sign, then return negative infinity.
- Else if  $z_2$  is an infinity and  $z_1$  a value with equal sign, then return positive zero.
- Else if  $z_2$  is an infinity and  $z_1$  a value with opposite sign, then return negative zero.
- Else if  $z_1$  is a zero and  $z_2$  a value with equal sign, then return positive zero.
- Else if  $z_1$  is a zero and  $z_2$  a value with opposite sign, then return negative zero.
- Else if  $z_2$  is a zero and  $z_1$  a value with equal sign, then return positive infinity.
- Else if  $z_2$  is a zero and  $z_1$  a value with opposite sign, then return negative infinity.
- Else return the result of dividing  $z_1$  by  $z_2$ , **rounded** to the nearest representable value.

$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2\}$
$\text{fdiv}_N(z_1, \pm\text{nan}(n))$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n), z_1\}$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm\infty, \pm\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm\infty, \mp\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm 0, \pm 0)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm\infty, \pm q_2)$	$= +\infty$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm\infty, \mp q_2)$	$= -\infty$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm q_1, \pm\infty)$	$= +0$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm q_1, \mp\infty)$	$= -0$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm 0, \pm q_2)$	$= +0$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm 0, \mp q_2)$	$= -0$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm q_1, \pm 0)$	$= +\infty$
$\text{fdiv}_N(\pm q_1, \mp 0)$	$= -\infty$
$\text{fdiv}_N(z_1, z_2)$	$= \text{float}_N(z_1/z_2)$

$\text{fma}_N(z_1, z_2, z_3)$

The function `fma` is the same as *fusedMultiplyAdd* defined by IEEE 754<sup>26</sup> (Section 5.4.1). It computes  $(z_1 \cdot z_2) + z_3$  as if with unbounded range and precision, rounding only once for the final result.

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  or  $z_3$  is a NaN, return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{z_1, z_2, z_3\}$ .
- Else if either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a zero and the other is an infinity, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$ .
- Else if both  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  are infinities of equal sign, and  $z_3$  is a negative infinity, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$ .
- Else if both  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  are infinities of opposite sign, and  $z_3$  is a positive infinity, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$ .
- Else if either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is an infinity and the other is a value of the same sign, and  $z_3$  is a negative infinity, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$ .
- Else if either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is an infinity and the other is a value of the opposite sign, and  $z_3$  is a positive infinity, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$ .
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of the same sign and  $z_3$  is a zero, then return positive zero.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of the opposite sign and  $z_3$  is a positive zero, then return positive zero.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of the opposite sign and  $z_3$  is a negative zero, then return negative zero.
- Else return the result of multiplying  $z_1$  and  $z_2$ , adding  $z_3$  to the intermediate, and the final result ref:rounded <aux-ieee> to the nearest representable value.

$\text{fma}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2, z_3)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2, z_3\}$
$\text{fma}_N(z_1, \pm\text{nan}(n), z_3)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n), z_1, z_3\}$
$\text{fma}_N(z_1, z_2, \pm\text{nan}(n))$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n), z_1, z_2\}$
$\text{fma}_N(\pm\infty, \pm 0, z_3)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fma}_N(\pm\infty, \mp 0, z_3)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fma}_N(\pm\infty, \pm\infty, -\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fma}_N(\pm\infty, \mp\infty, +\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fma}_N(\pm q_1, \pm\infty, -\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fma}_N(\pm q_1, \mp\infty, +\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fma}_N(\pm\infty, \pm q_1, -\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fma}_N(\mp\infty, \pm q_1, +\infty)$	$= \text{nans}_N\{\}$
$\text{fma}_N(\pm 0, \pm 0, \mp 0)$	$= +0$
$\text{fma}_N(\pm 0, \pm 0, \pm 0)$	$= +0$
$\text{fma}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0, +0)$	$= +0$
$\text{fma}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0, -0)$	$= -0$
$\text{fma}_N(z_1, z_2, z_3)$	$= \text{float}_N(z_1 \cdot z_2 + z_3)$

$\text{fmin}_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{z_1, z_2\}$ .
- Else if either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a negative infinity, then return negative infinity.
- Else if either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a positive infinity, then return the other value.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of opposite signs, then return negative zero.
- Else return the smaller value of  $z_1$  and  $z_2$ .

<sup>26</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

$$\begin{aligned}
fmin_N(\pm nan(n), z_2) &= nan_N\{\pm nan(n), z_2\} \\
fmin_N(z_1, \pm nan(n)) &= nan_N\{\pm nan(n), z_1\} \\
fmin_N(+\infty, z_2) &= z_2 \\
fmin_N(-\infty, z_2) &= -\infty \\
fmin_N(z_1, +\infty) &= z_1 \\
fmin_N(z_1, -\infty) &= -\infty \\
fmin_N(\pm 0, \mp 0) &= -0 \\
fmin_N(z_1, z_2) &= z_1 && (\text{if } z_1 \leq z_2) \\
fmin_N(z_1, z_2) &= z_2 && (\text{if } z_2 \leq z_1)
\end{aligned}$$

$fmax_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $nan_N\{z_1, z_2\}$ .
- Else if either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a positive infinity, then return positive infinity.
- Else if either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a negative infinity, then return the other value.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of opposite signs, then return positive zero.
- Else return the larger value of  $z_1$  and  $z_2$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
fmax_N(\pm nan(n), z_2) &= nan_N\{\pm nan(n), z_2\} \\
fmax_N(z_1, \pm nan(n)) &= nan_N\{\pm nan(n), z_1\} \\
fmax_N(+\infty, z_2) &= +\infty \\
fmax_N(-\infty, z_2) &= z_2 \\
fmax_N(z_1, +\infty) &= +\infty \\
fmax_N(z_1, -\infty) &= z_1 \\
fmax_N(\pm 0, \mp 0) &= +0 \\
fmax_N(z_1, z_2) &= z_1 && (\text{if } z_1 \geq z_2) \\
fmax_N(z_1, z_2) &= z_2 && (\text{if } z_2 \geq z_1)
\end{aligned}$$

$fcopysign_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  have the same sign, then return  $z_1$ .
- Else return  $z_1$  with negated sign.

$$\begin{aligned}
fcopysign_N(\pm p_1, \pm p_2) &= \pm p_1 \\
fcopysign_N(\pm p_1, \mp p_2) &= \mp p_1
\end{aligned}$$

$fabs_N(z)$

- If  $z$  is a NaN, then return  $z$  with positive sign.
- Else if  $z$  is an infinity, then return positive infinity.
- Else if  $z$  is a zero, then return positive zero.
- Else if  $z$  is a positive value, then  $z$ .
- Else return  $z$  negated.

$$\begin{aligned}
fabs_N(\pm nan(n)) &= +nan(n) \\
fabs_N(\pm \infty) &= +\infty \\
fabs_N(\pm 0) &= +0 \\
fabs_N(\pm q) &= +q
\end{aligned}$$

$fneg_N(z)$

- If  $z$  is a NaN, then return  $z$  with negated sign.
- Else if  $z$  is an infinity, then return that infinity negated.
- Else if  $z$  is a zero, then return that zero negated.
- Else return  $z$  negated.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{fneg}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \mp\text{nan}(n) \\
\text{fneg}_N(\pm\infty) &= \mp\infty \\
\text{fneg}_N(\pm 0) &= \mp 0 \\
\text{fneg}_N(\pm q) &= \mp q
\end{aligned}$$

$\text{fsqrt}_N(z)$

- If  $z$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{z\}$ .
- Else if  $z$  is negative infinity, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$ .
- Else if  $z$  is positive infinity, then return positive infinity.
- Else if  $z$  is a zero, then return that zero.
- Else if  $z$  has a negative sign, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$ .
- Else return the square root of  $z$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{fsqrt}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n)\} \\
\text{fsqrt}_N(-\infty) &= \text{nans}_N\{\} \\
\text{fsqrt}_N(+\infty) &= +\infty \\
\text{fsqrt}_N(\pm 0) &= \pm 0 \\
\text{fsqrt}_N(-q) &= \text{nans}_N\{\} \\
\text{fsqrt}_N(+q) &= \text{float}_N(\sqrt{q})
\end{aligned}$$

$\text{fceil}_N(z)$

- If  $z$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{z\}$ .
- Else if  $z$  is an infinity, then return  $z$ .
- Else if  $z$  is a zero, then return  $z$ .
- Else if  $z$  is smaller than 0 but greater than  $-1$ , then return negative zero.
- Else return the smallest integral value that is not smaller than  $z$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{fceil}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n)\} \\
\text{fceil}_N(\pm\infty) &= \pm\infty \\
\text{fceil}_N(\pm 0) &= \pm 0 \\
\text{fceil}_N(-q) &= -0 && (\text{if } -1 < -q < 0) \\
\text{fceil}_N(\pm q) &= \text{float}_N(i) && (\text{if } \pm q \leq i < \pm q + 1)
\end{aligned}$$

$\text{ffloor}_N(z)$

- If  $z$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{z\}$ .
- Else if  $z$  is an infinity, then return  $z$ .
- Else if  $z$  is a zero, then return  $z$ .
- Else if  $z$  is greater than 0 but smaller than 1, then return positive zero.
- Else return the largest integral value that is not larger than  $z$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{ffloor}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n)\} \\
\text{ffloor}_N(\pm\infty) &= \pm\infty \\
\text{ffloor}_N(\pm 0) &= \pm 0 \\
\text{ffloor}_N(+q) &= +0 && (\text{if } 0 < +q < 1) \\
\text{ffloor}_N(\pm q) &= \text{float}_N(i) && (\text{if } \pm q - 1 < i \leq \pm q)
\end{aligned}$$



$\text{ftrunc}_N(z)$

- If  $z$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{z\}$ .
- Else if  $z$  is an infinity, then return  $z$ .
- Else if  $z$  is a zero, then return  $z$ .
- Else if  $z$  is greater than 0 but smaller than 1, then return positive zero.
- Else if  $z$  is smaller than 0 but greater than  $-1$ , then return negative zero.
- Else return the integral value with the same sign as  $z$  and the largest magnitude that is not larger than the magnitude of  $z$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{ftrunc}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n)\} \\
 \text{ftrunc}_N(\pm\infty) &= \pm\infty \\
 \text{ftrunc}_N(\pm 0) &= \pm 0 \\
 \text{ftrunc}_N(+q) &= +0 && (\text{if } 0 < +q < 1) \\
 \text{ftrunc}_N(-q) &= -0 && (\text{if } -1 < -q < 0) \\
 \text{ftrunc}_N(\pm q) &= \text{float}_N(\pm i) && (\text{if } +q - 1 < i \leq +q)
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{fnearest}_N(z)$

- If  $z$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{z\}$ .
- Else if  $z$  is an infinity, then return  $z$ .
- Else if  $z$  is a zero, then return  $z$ .
- Else if  $z$  is greater than 0 but smaller than or equal to 0.5, then return positive zero.
- Else if  $z$  is smaller than 0 but greater than or equal to  $-0.5$ , then return negative zero.
- Else return the integral value that is nearest to  $z$ ; if two values are equally near, return the even one.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{fnearest}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(n)\} \\
 \text{fnearest}_N(\pm\infty) &= \pm\infty \\
 \text{fnearest}_N(\pm 0) &= \pm 0 \\
 \text{fnearest}_N(+q) &= +0 && (\text{if } 0 < +q \leq 0.5) \\
 \text{fnearest}_N(-q) &= -0 && (\text{if } -0.5 \leq -q < 0) \\
 \text{fnearest}_N(\pm q) &= \text{float}_N(\pm i) && (\text{if } |i - q| < 0.5) \\
 \text{fnearest}_N(\pm q) &= \text{float}_N(\pm i) && (\text{if } |i - q| = 0.5 \wedge i \text{ even})
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{feq}_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return 0.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes, then return 1.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are the same value, then return 1.
- Else return 0.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{feq}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2) &= 0 \\
 \text{feq}_N(z_1, \pm\text{nan}(n)) &= 0 \\
 \text{feq}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0) &= 1 \\
 \text{feq}_N(z_1, z_2) &= \text{bool}(z_1 = z_2)
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{fneq}_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return 1.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes, then return 0.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are the same value, then return 0.
- Else return 1.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{fne}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2) &= 1 \\
\text{fne}_N(z_1, \pm\text{nan}(n)) &= 1 \\
\text{fne}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0) &= 0 \\
\text{fne}_N(z_1, z_2) &= \text{bool}(z_1 \neq z_2)
\end{aligned}$$

$\text{flt}_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are the same value, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_1$  is positive infinity, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_1$  is negative infinity, then return 1.
- Else if  $z_2$  is positive infinity, then return 1.
- Else if  $z_2$  is negative infinity, then return 0.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_1$  is smaller than  $z_2$ , then return 1.
- Else return 0.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{flt}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2) &= 0 \\
\text{flt}_N(z_1, \pm\text{nan}(n)) &= 0 \\
\text{flt}_N(z, z) &= 0 \\
\text{flt}_N(+\infty, z_2) &= 0 \\
\text{flt}_N(-\infty, z_2) &= 1 \\
\text{flt}_N(z_1, +\infty) &= 1 \\
\text{flt}_N(z_1, -\infty) &= 0 \\
\text{flt}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0) &= 0 \\
\text{flt}_N(z_1, z_2) &= \text{bool}(z_1 < z_2)
\end{aligned}$$

$\text{fgt}_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are the same value, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_1$  is positive infinity, then return 1.
- Else if  $z_1$  is negative infinity, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_2$  is positive infinity, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_2$  is negative infinity, then return 1.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_1$  is larger than  $z_2$ , then return 1.
- Else return 0.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{fgt}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2) &= 0 \\
\text{fgt}_N(z_1, \pm\text{nan}(n)) &= 0 \\
\text{fgt}_N(z, z) &= 0 \\
\text{fgt}_N(+\infty, z_2) &= 1 \\
\text{fgt}_N(-\infty, z_2) &= 0 \\
\text{fgt}_N(z_1, +\infty) &= 0 \\
\text{fgt}_N(z_1, -\infty) &= 1 \\
\text{fgt}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0) &= 0 \\
\text{fgt}_N(z_1, z_2) &= \text{bool}(z_1 > z_2)
\end{aligned}$$

$\text{fle}_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are the same value, then return 1.
- Else if  $z_1$  is positive infinity, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_1$  is negative infinity, then return 1.
- Else if  $z_2$  is positive infinity, then return 1.
- Else if  $z_2$  is negative infinity, then return 0.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes, then return 1.
- Else if  $z_1$  is smaller than or equal to  $z_2$ , then return 1.
- Else return 0.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{fle}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2) &= 0 \\
 \text{fle}_N(z_1, \pm\text{nan}(n)) &= 0 \\
 \text{fle}_N(z, z) &= 1 \\
 \text{fle}_N(+\infty, z_2) &= 0 \\
 \text{fle}_N(-\infty, z_2) &= 1 \\
 \text{fle}_N(z_1, +\infty) &= 1 \\
 \text{fle}_N(z_1, -\infty) &= 0 \\
 \text{fle}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0) &= 1 \\
 \text{fle}_N(z_1, z_2) &= \text{bool}(z_1 \leq z_2)
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{fge}_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If either  $z_1$  or  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are the same value, then return 1.
- Else if  $z_1$  is positive infinity, then return 1.
- Else if  $z_1$  is negative infinity, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_2$  is positive infinity, then return 0.
- Else if  $z_2$  is negative infinity, then return 1.
- Else if both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes, then return 1.
- Else if  $z_1$  is smaller than or equal to  $z_2$ , then return 1.
- Else return 0.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{fge}_N(\pm\text{nan}(n), z_2) &= 0 \\
 \text{fge}_N(z_1, \pm\text{nan}(n)) &= 0 \\
 \text{fge}_N(z, z) &= 1 \\
 \text{fge}_N(+\infty, z_2) &= 1 \\
 \text{fge}_N(-\infty, z_2) &= 0 \\
 \text{fge}_N(z_1, +\infty) &= 0 \\
 \text{fge}_N(z_1, -\infty) &= 1 \\
 \text{fge}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0) &= 1 \\
 \text{fge}_N(z_1, z_2) &= \text{bool}(z_1 \geq z_2)
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{fpmin}_N(z_1, z_2)$

- If  $z_2$  is less than  $z_1$  then return  $z_2$ .
- Else return  $z_1$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{fpmin}_N(z_1, z_2) &= z_2 \quad (\text{if } \text{flt}_N(z_2, z_1) = 1) \\
 \text{fpmin}_N(z_1, z_2) &= z_1 \quad (\text{otherwise})
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{fmax}_N(z_1, z_2)$ 

- If  $z_1$  is less than  $z_2$  then return  $z_2$ .
- Else return  $z_1$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\text{fmax}_N(z_1, z_2) &= z_2 && (\text{if } \text{flt}_N(z_1, z_2) = 1) \\ \text{fmax}_N(z_1, z_2) &= z_1 && (\text{otherwise})\end{aligned}$$

### 4.3.4 Conversions

#### Todo

ext or extend?

 $\text{extend}^u_{M,N}(i)$ 

- Return  $i$ .

$$\text{extend}^u_{M,N}(i) = i$$

#### Note

In the abstract syntax, unsigned extension just reinterprets the same value.

 $\text{extend}^s_{M,N}(i)$ 

- Let  $j$  be the [signed interpretation](#) of  $i$  of size  $M$ .
- Return the two's complement of  $j$  relative to size  $N$ .

$$\text{extend}^s_{M,N}(i) = \text{signed}_N^{-1}(\text{signed}_M(i))$$

 $\text{wrap}_{M,N}(i)$ 

- Return  $i$  modulo  $2^N$ .

$$\text{wrap}_{M,N}(i) = i \bmod 2^N$$

 $\text{trunc}^u_{M,N}(z)$ 

- If  $z$  is a NaN, then the result is undefined.
- Else if  $z$  is an infinity, then the result is undefined.
- Else if  $z$  is a number and  $\text{trunc}(z)$  is a value within range of the target type, then return that value.
- Else the result is undefined.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{trunc}^u_{M,N}(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \{\} \\ \text{trunc}^u_{M,N}(\pm\infty) &= \{\} \\ \text{trunc}^u_{M,N}(\pm q) &= \text{trunc}(\pm q) && (\text{if } -1 < \text{trunc}(\pm q) < 2^N) \\ \text{trunc}^u_{M,N}(\pm q) &= \{\} && (\text{otherwise})\end{aligned}$$

#### Note

This operator is [partial](#). It is not defined for NaNs, infinities, or values for which the result is out of range.

$\text{trunc}_{M,N}^s(z)$

- If  $z$  is a NaN, then the result is undefined.
- Else if  $z$  is an infinity, then the result is undefined.
- If  $z$  is a number and  $\text{trunc}(z)$  is a value within range of the target type, then return that value.
- Else the result is undefined.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{trunc}_{M,N}^s(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \{\} \\ \text{trunc}_{M,N}^s(\pm\infty) &= \{\} \\ \text{trunc}_{M,N}^s(\pm q) &= \text{trunc}(\pm q) && (\text{if } -2^{N-1} - 1 < \text{trunc}(\pm q) < 2^{N-1}) \\ \text{trunc}_{M,N}^s(\pm q) &= \{\} && (\text{otherwise})\end{aligned}$$

#### Note

This operator is **partial**. It is not defined for NaNs, infinities, or values for which the result is out of range.

$\text{trunc\_sat\_u}_{M,N}(z)$

- If  $z$  is a NaN, then return 0.
- Else if  $z$  is negative infinity, then return 0.
- Else if  $z$  is positive infinity, then return  $2^N - 1$ .
- Else, return  $\text{sat\_u}_N(\text{trunc}(z))$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\text{trunc\_sat\_u}_{M,N}(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= 0 \\ \text{trunc\_sat\_u}_{M,N}(-\infty) &= 0 \\ \text{trunc\_sat\_u}_{M,N}(+\infty) &= 2^N - 1 \\ \text{trunc\_sat\_u}_{M,N}(z) &= \text{sat\_u}_N(\text{trunc}(z))\end{aligned}$$

$\text{trunc\_sat\_s}_{M,N}(z)$

- If  $z$  is a NaN, then return 0.
- Else if  $z$  is negative infinity, then return  $-2^{N-1}$ .
- Else if  $z$  is positive infinity, then return  $2^{N-1} - 1$ .
- Else, return the value whose signed interpretation is  $\text{sat\_s}_N(\text{trunc}(z))$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\text{trunc\_sat\_s}_{M,N}(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= 0 \\ \text{trunc\_sat\_s}_{M,N}(-\infty) &= -2^{N-1} \\ \text{trunc\_sat\_s}_{M,N}(+\infty) &= 2^{N-1} - 1 \\ \text{trunc\_sat\_s}_{M,N}(z) &= \text{signed}_N^{-1}(\text{sat\_s}_N(\text{trunc}(z)))\end{aligned}$$

$\text{promote}_{M,N}(z)$

- If  $z$  is a canonical NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$  (i.e., a canonical NaN of size  $N$ ).
- Else if  $z$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(1)\}$  (i.e., any arithmetic NaN of size  $N$ ).
- Else, return  $z$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\text{promote}_{M,N}(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \text{nans}_N\{\} && (\text{if } n = \text{canon}_N) \\ \text{promote}_{M,N}(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(1)\} && (\text{otherwise}) \\ \text{promote}_{M,N}(z) &= z\end{aligned}$$

$\text{demote}_{M,N}(z)$

- If  $z$  is a **canonical NaN**, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\}$  (i.e., a canonical NaN of size  $N$ ).
- Else if  $z$  is a NaN, then return an element of  $\text{nans}_N\{\pm\text{nan}(1)\}$  (i.e., any NaN of size  $N$ ).
- Else if  $z$  is an infinity, then return that infinity.
- Else if  $z$  is a zero, then return that zero.
- Else, return  $\text{float}_N(z)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{demote}_{M,N}(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \text{nans}_N\{\} && (\text{if } n = \text{canon}_N) \\ \text{demote}_{M,N}(\pm\text{nan}(n)) &= \text{nans}_N\{+\text{nan}(1)\} && (\text{otherwise}) \\ \text{demote}_{M,N}(\pm\infty) &= \pm\infty \\ \text{demote}_{M,N}(\pm 0) &= \pm 0 \\ \text{demote}_{M,N}(\pm q) &= \text{float}_N(\pm q) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{convert}^u_{M,N}(i)$

- Return  $\text{float}_N(i)$ .

$$\text{convert}^u_{M,N}(i) = \text{float}_N(i)$$

$\text{convert}^s_{M,N}(i)$

- Let  $j$  be the **signed interpretation** of  $i$ .
- Return  $\text{float}_N(j)$ .

$$\text{convert}^s_{M,N}(i) = \text{float}_N(\text{signed}_M(i))$$

$\text{reinterpret}_{t_1,t_2}(c)$

- Let  $d^*$  be the bit sequence  $\text{bits}_{t_1}(c)$ .
- Return the constant  $c'$  for which  $\text{bits}_{t_2}(c') = d^*$ .

$$\text{reinterpret}_{t_1,t_2}(c) = \text{bits}_{t_2}^{-1}(\text{bits}_{t_1}(c))$$

$\text{narrow}^s_{M,N}(i)$

- Let  $j$  be the **signed interpretation** of  $i$  of size  $M$ .
- Return the value whose signed interpretation is  $\text{sat}_{s_N}(j)$ .

$$\text{narrow}^s_{M,N}(i) = \text{signed}_N^{-1}(\text{sat}_{s_N}(\text{signed}_M(i)))$$

$\text{narrow}^u_{M,N}(i)$

- Let  $j$  be the **signed interpretation** of  $i$  of size  $M$ .
- Return  $\text{sat}_{u_N}(j)$ .

$$\text{narrow}^u_{M,N}(i) = \text{sat}_{u_N}(\text{signed}_M(i))$$

### 4.3.5 Vector Operations

Most vector operations are performed by applying numeric operations lanewise. However, some operators consider multiple lanes at once.

$\text{ivbitmask}_N(i^m)$

1. For each  $i_k$  in  $i^m$ , let  $b_k$  be the result of computing  $\text{ilt\_s}_N(i, 0)$ .
2. Let  $b^m$  be the concatenation of all  $b_k$ .
3. Return the result of computing  $\text{ibits}_{32}^{-1}((0)^{32-m} b^m)$ .

$$\text{ivbitmask}_N(i^m) = \text{ibits}_{32}^{-1}((0)^{32-m} \text{ilt\_s}_N(i, 0)^m)$$

$\text{ivswizzle}(i^n, j^n)$

1. For each  $j_k$  in  $j^n$ , let  $r_k$  be the value  $\text{ivswizzle\_lane}(i^n, j_k)$ .
2. Let  $r^n$  be the concatenation of all  $r_k$ .
3. Return  $r^n$ .

$$\text{ivswizzle}(i^n, j^n) = \text{ivswizzle\_lane}(i^n, j)^n$$

where:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ivswizzle\_lane}(i^n, j) &= i^n[j] \quad (\text{if } j < n) \\ \text{ivswizzle\_lane}(i^n, j) &= 0 \quad (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{ivshuffle}(j^n, i_1^n, i_2^n)$

1. Let  $i^*$  be the concatenation of  $i_1^n$  and  $i_2^n$ .
2. For each  $j_k$  in  $j^n$ , let  $r_k$  be  $i^*[j_k]$ .
3. Let  $r^n$  be the concatenation of all  $r_k$ .
4. Return  $r^n$ .

$$\text{ivshuffle}(j^n, i_1^n, i_2^n) = ((i_1^n i_2^n)[j])^n \quad (\text{if } (j < 2 \cdot n)^n)$$

$\text{ivadd\_pairwise}_N(i^{2m})$

1. Let  $(i_1 i_2)^m$  be  $i^{2m}$ , decomposed into pairwise elements.
2. For each  $i_{1k}$  in  $i_1^m$  and corresponding  $i_{2k}$  in  $i_2^m$ , let  $r_k$  be  $\text{iadd}_N(i_{1k}, i_{2k})$ .
3. Let  $r^m$  be the concatenation of all  $r_k$ .
4. Return  $r^m$ .

$$\text{ivadd\_pairwise}_N(i^{2m}) = (\text{iadd}_N(i_1, i_2))^m \quad (\text{if } i^{2m} = (i_1 i_2)^m)$$

$\text{ivmul}_N(i_1^m, i_2^m)$

1. For each  $i_{1k}$  in  $i_1^m$  and corresponding  $i_{2k}$  in  $i_2^m$ , let  $r_k$  be  $\text{imul}_N(i_{1k}, i_{2k})$ .
2. Let  $r^m$  be the concatenation of all  $r_k$ .
3. Return  $r^m$ .

$$\text{ivmul}_N(i_1^m, i_2^m) = (\text{imul}_N(i_1, i_2))^m$$

$\text{ivdot}_N(i_1^{2m}, i_2^{2m})$

1. For each  $i_{1k}$  in  $i_1^{2m}$  and corresponding  $i_{2k}$  in  $i_2^{2m}$ , let  $j_k$  be  $\text{imul}_N(i_{1k}, i_{2k})$ .
2. Let  $j^{2m}$  be the concatenation of all  $j_k$ .
3. Let  $(j_1 j_2)^m$  be  $j^{2m}$ , decomposed into pairwise elements.
4. For each  $i_{1k}$  in  $i_1^m$  and corresponding  $i_{2k}$  in  $i_2^m$ , let  $r_k$  be  $\text{iadd}_N(i_{1k}, i_{2k})$ .
5. Let  $r^m$  be the concatenation of all  $r_k$ .

6. Return  $r^m$ .

$$\text{ivdot}_N(i_1^{2m}, i_2^{2m}) = (\text{iadd}_N(j_1, j_2))^m \quad (\text{if } (\text{imul}_N(i_1, i_2))^{2m} = (j_1 \ j_2)^m)$$

$\text{ivdotsat}_N(i_1^m, i_2^m)$

1. For each  $i_{1k}$  in  $i_1^{2m}$  and corresponding  $i_{2k}$  in  $i_2^{2m}$ , let  $j_k$  be  $\text{imul}_N(i_{1k}, i_{2k})$ .
2. Let  $j^{2m}$  be the concatenation of all  $j_k$ .
3. Let  $(j_1 \ j_2)^m$  be  $j^{2m}$ , decomposed into pairwise elements.
4. For each  $i_{1k}$  in  $i_1^m$  and corresponding  $i_{2k}$  in  $i_2^m$ , let  $r_k$  be  $\text{iadd\_sat}_N(i_{1k}, i_{2k})$ .
5. Let  $r^m$  be the concatenation of all  $r_k$ .
6. Return  $r^m$ .

$$\text{ivdotsat}_N(i_1^{2m}, i_2^{2m}) = (\text{iadd\_sat}_N(j_1, j_2))^m \quad (\text{if } (\text{imul}_N(i_1, i_2))^{2m} = (j_1 \ j_2)^m)$$

The previous operators are lifted to operators on arguments of vector type by wrapping them in corresponding lane projections and injections and intermediate extension operations:

$\text{vextunop}_{sh_1, sh_2}(c)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{extadd\_pairwise\_sx}_{iN_1 \times M_1, iN_2 \times M_2}(c) &= \text{lanes}_{iN_2 \times M_2}^{-1}(j^*) \quad (\text{if } i^* = \text{lanes}_{iN_1 \times M_1}(c) \\ &\quad \wedge i'^* = \text{extend}_{N_1, N_2}^{sx}(i)^* \\ &\quad \wedge j^* = \text{ivadd\_pairwise}_{N_2}(i'^*)) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{vextbinop}_{sh_1, sh_2}(c_1, c_2)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{vextbinop}_{iN_1 \times M_1, iN_2 \times M_2}(c_1, c_2) &= \text{lanes}_{iN_2 \times M_2}^{-1}(j^*) \quad (\text{if } i_1^* = \text{lanes}_{iN_1 \times M_1}(c_1)[h : k] \\ &\quad \wedge i_2^* = \text{lanes}_{iN_1 \times M_1}(c_2)[h : k] \\ &\quad \wedge i_1'^* = \text{extend}_{N_1, N_2}^{sx}(i_1)^* \\ &\quad \wedge i_2'^* = \text{extend}_{N_1, N_2}^{sx}(i_2)^* \\ &\quad \wedge j^* = f_{N_2}(i_1'^*, i_2'^*)) \end{aligned}$$

where  $f$ ,  $sx_1$ ,  $sx_2$ ,  $h$ , and  $k$  are instantiated as follows, depending on the operator:

$\text{vextbinop}$	$f$	$sx_1$	$sx_2$	$h$	$k$
$\text{extmul\_low\_sx}$	$\text{ivmul}$	$sx$	$sx$	0	$M_2$
$\text{extmul\_high\_sx}$	$\text{ivmul}$	$sx$	$sx$	$M_2$	$M_2$
$\text{dot\_s}$	$\text{ivdot}$	s	s	0	$M_1$
$\text{relaxed\_dot\_s}$	$\text{ivdotsat}$	s	$\text{relaxed}(R_{\text{idot}})[s, u]$	0	$M_1$

### Note

Relaxed operations and the paramater  $R_{\text{idot}}$  are introduced [below](#).

$\text{vextternop}_{sh_1, sh_2}(c_1, c_2, c_3)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{relaxed\_dot\_add\_s}_{iN_1 \times M_1, iN_2 \times M_2}(c_1, c_2, c_3) &= c \quad (\text{if } N = 2 \cdot N_1 \\ &\quad \wedge M = 2 \cdot M_2 \\ &\quad \wedge c' = \text{relaxed\_dot\_s}_{iN_1 \times M_1, iN \times M}(c_1, c_2) \\ &\quad \wedge c'' = \text{extadd\_pairwise\_s}_{iN \times M, iN_2 \times M_2}(c') \\ &\quad \wedge c \in \text{add}_{iN_2 \times M_2}(c'', c_3)) \end{aligned}$$



$\text{narrow\_sx}_{sh_1, sh_2}(c_1, c_2)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{narrow\_sx}_{iN_1 \times M_1, iN_2 \times M_2}(c_1, c_2) &= \text{lanes}_{iN_2 \times M_2}^{-1}(j^*) \quad (\text{if } i_1^* = \text{lanes}_{iN_1 \times M_1}(c_1) \\ &\quad \wedge i_2^* = \text{lanes}_{iN_1 \times M_1}(c_2) \\ &\quad \wedge i_1'^* = \text{narrow}_{N_1, N_2}^{sx}(i_1)^* \\ &\quad \wedge i_2'^* = \text{narrow}_{N_1, N_2}^{sx}(i_2)^* \\ &\quad \wedge j^* = i_1'^* \oplus i_2'^*) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{vcvtop\_half}^?_{sh_1, sh_2}(i)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{vcvtop\_half}^?_{t_1 \times M_1, t_2 \times M_2}(i) &= j \quad (\text{if } \text{condition} \\ &\quad \wedge c^* = \text{lanes}_{t_1 \times M_1}(i)[h : k] \\ &\quad \wedge c'^* = \times(\text{vcvtop}_{|t_1|, |t_2|}(c)^* \oplus (0)^n) \\ &\quad \wedge j \in \text{lanes}_{t_2 \times M_2}^{-1}(c'^*)^*) \end{aligned}$$

where  $h$ ,  $k$ ,  $n$ , and  $\text{condition}$  are instantiated as follows, depending on the operator:

$\text{half}^?$	$\text{zero}^?$	$h$	$k$	$n$	$\text{condition}$
$\epsilon$	$\epsilon$	0	$M_1$	0	$(M_1 = M_2)$
low	$\epsilon$	0	$M_2$	0	$(M_1 = 2 \cdot M_2)$
high	$\epsilon$	$M_2$	$M_2$	0	$(M_1 = 2 \cdot M_2)$
$\epsilon$	zero	0	$M_1$	$M_1$	$(2 \cdot M_1 = M_2)$

while  $\times\{x^*\}^N$  transforms a sequence of  $N$  sets of non-deterministic values into a set of non-deterministic sequences of  $N$  values by computing the set product:

$$\times(S_1 \dots S_N) = \{x_1 \dots x_N \mid x_1 \in S_1 \wedge \dots \wedge x_N \in S_N\}$$

### 4.3.6 Relaxed Operations

The result of *relaxed* operators are *implementation-dependent*, because the set of possible results may depend on properties of the host environment, such as its hardware. Technically, their behaviour is controlled by a set of *global parameters* to the semantics that an implementation can instantiate in different ways. These choices are fixed, that is, parameters are constant during the execution of any given program.

Every such parameter is an index into a sequence of possible sets of results and must be instantiated to a defined index. In the *deterministic profile*, every parameter is prescribed to be 0. This behaviour is expressed by the following auxiliary function, where  $R$  is a global parameter selecting one of the allowed outcomes:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{[!DET]} \quad \text{relaxed}(R)[A_0, \dots, A_n] &= A_R \\ \text{relaxed}(R)[A_0, \dots, A_n] &= A_0 \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

Each parameter can be thought of as inducing a family of operations that is fixed to one particular choice by an implementation. The fixed operation itself can still be non-deterministic or partial.

Implementations are expected to either choose the behaviour that is the most efficient on the underlying hardware, or the behaviour of the deterministic profile.

$\text{frelaxed\_madd}_N(z_1, z_2, z_3)$

The implementation-specific behaviour of this operation is determined by the global parameter  $R_{\text{fmadd}} \in \{0, 1\}$ .

- Return  $\text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmadd}})[\text{fadd}_N(\text{fmul}_N(z_1, z_2), z_3), \text{fma}_N(z_1, z_2, z_3)]$ .

$$\text{frelaxed\_madd}_N(z_1, z_2, z_3) = \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmadd}})[\text{fadd}_N(\text{fmul}_N(z_1, z_2), z_3), \text{fma}_N(z_1, z_2, z_3)]$$

**Note**

Relaxed multiply-add allows for fused or unfused results, which leads to implementation-dependent rounding behaviour. In the [deterministic profile](#), the unfused behaviour is used.

$\text{frelaxed\_nmadd}_N(z_1, z_2, z_3)$

- Return  $\text{frelaxed\_madd}(-z_1, z_2, z_3)$ .

$$\text{frelaxed\_nmadd}_N(z_1, z_2, z_3) = \text{frelaxed\_madd}_N(-z_1, z_2, z_3)$$

**Note**

This operation is implementation-dependent because  $\text{frelaxed\_madd}$  is implementation-dependent.

$\text{frelaxed\_min}_N(z_1, z_2)$

The implementation-specific behaviour of this operation is determined by the global parameter  $R_{\text{fmin}} \in \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ .

- If  $z_1$  is a NaN, then return  $\text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmin}})[\text{fmin}_N(z_1, z_2), \text{nan}(n), z_2, z_2]$ .
- If  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return  $\text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmin}})[\text{fmin}_N(z_1, z_2), z_1, \text{nan}(n), z_1]$ .
- If both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of opposite sign, then return  $\text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmin}})[\text{fmin}_N(z_1, z_2), \text{pm } 0, \text{mp } 0, -0]$ .
- Return  $\text{fmin}_N(z_1, z_2)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{frelaxed\_min}_N(\pm \text{nan}(n), z_2) &= \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmin}})[\text{fmin}_N(\pm \text{nan}(n), z_2), \text{nan}(n), z_2, z_2] \\ \text{frelaxed\_min}_N(z_1, \pm \text{nan}(n)) &= \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmin}})[\text{fmin}_N(z_1, \pm \text{nan}(n)), z_1, \text{nan}(n), z_1] \\ \text{frelaxed\_min}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0) &= \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmin}})[\text{fmin}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0), \pm 0, \mp 0, -0] \\ \text{frelaxed\_min}_N(z_1, z_2) &= \text{fmin}_N(z_1, z_2) \quad (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

**Note**

Relaxed minimum is implementation-dependent for NaNs and for zeroes with different signs. In the [deterministic profile](#), it behaves like regular  $\text{fmin}$ .

$\text{frelaxed\_max}_N(z_1, z_2)$

The implementation-specific behaviour of this operation is determined by the global parameter  $R_{\text{fmax}} \in \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ .

- If  $z_1$  is a NaN, then return  $\text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmax}})[\text{fmax}_N(z_1, z_2), \text{nan}(n), z_2, z_2]$ .
- If  $z_2$  is a NaN, then return  $\text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmax}})[\text{fmax}_N(z_1, z_2), z_1, \text{nan}(n), z_1]$ .
- If both  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  are zeroes of opposite sign, then return  $\text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmax}})[\text{fmax}_N(z_1, z_2), \text{pm } 0, \text{mp } 0, +0]$ .
- Return  $\text{fmax}_N(z_1, z_2)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{frelaxed\_max}_N(\pm \text{nan}(n), z_2) &= \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmax}})[\text{fmax}_N(\pm \text{nan}(n), z_2), \text{nan}(n), z_2, z_2] \\ \text{frelaxed\_max}_N(z_1, \pm \text{nan}(n)) &= \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmax}})[\text{fmax}_N(z_1, \pm \text{nan}(n)), z_1, \text{nan}(n), z_1] \\ \text{frelaxed\_max}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0) &= \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{fmax}})[\text{fmax}_N(\pm 0, \mp 0), \pm 0, \mp 0, +0] \\ \text{frelaxed\_max}_N(z_1, z_2) &= \text{fmax}_N(z_1, z_2) \quad (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

**Note**

Relaxed maximum is implementation-dependent for NaNs and for zeroes with different signs. In the [deterministic profile](#), it behaves like regular  $\text{fmax}$ .

$\text{irelaxed\_q15mulr\_s}_N(i_1, i_2)$

The implementation-specific behaviour of this operation is determined by the global parameter  $R_{\text{iq15mulr}} \in \{0, 1\}$ .

- If both  $i_1$  and  $i_2$  equal  $(\text{signed}_N^{-1}(-2^{N-1}))$ , then return  $\text{relaxed}(R_{\text{iq15mulr}})[2^{N-1} - 1, \text{signed}_N^{-1}(-2^{N-1})]$ .
- Return  $\text{iq15mulrsat\_s}(i_1, i_2)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{irelaxed\_q15mulr\_s}_N(\text{signed}_N^{-1}(-2^{N-1}), \text{signed}_N^{-1}(-2^{N-1})) &= \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{iq15mulr}})[2^{N-1} - 1, \text{signed}_N^{-1}(-2^{N-1})] \\ \text{irelaxed\_q15mulr\_s}_N(i_1, i_2) &= \text{iq15mulrsat\_s}(i_1, i_2) \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

Relaxed Q15 multiplication is implementation-dependent when the result overflows. In the [deterministic profile](#), it behaves like regular `iq15mulrsat_s`.

$\text{relaxed\_trunc}_{M,N}^u(z)$

The implementation-specific behaviour of this operation is determined by the global parameter  $R_{\text{trunc\_u}} \in \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ .

- If  $z$  is normal or subnormal and  $\text{trunc}(z)$  is non-negative and less than  $2^N$ , then return  $\text{trunc}_{M,N}^u(z)$ .
- Else, return  $\text{relaxed}(R_{\text{trunc\_u}})[\text{trunc\_sat\_u}_{M,N}(z), 2^N - 1, 2^N - 2, 2^{(N-1)}]$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{relaxed\_trunc}_{M,N}^u(\pm q) &= \text{trunc}_{M,N}^u(\pm q) && (\text{if } 0 \leq \text{trunc}(\pm q) < 2^N) \\ \text{relaxed\_trunc}_{M,N}^u(z) &= \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{trunc\_u}})[\text{trunc\_sat\_u}_{M,N}(z), 2^N - 1, 2^N - 2, 2^{N-1}] && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

Relaxed unsigned truncation is implementation-dependent for NaNs and out-of-range values. In the [deterministic profile](#), it behaves like regular `trunc_sat_u`.

$\text{relaxed\_trunc}_{M,N}^s(z)$

The implementation-specific behaviour of this operation is determined by the global parameter  $R_{\text{trunc\_s}} \in \{0, 1\}$ .

- If  $z$  is normal or subnormal and  $\text{trunc}(z)$  is greater than or equal to  $-2^{N-1}$  and less than  $2^{N-1}$ , then return  $\text{trunc}_{M,N}^s(z)$ .
- Else, return  $\text{relaxed}(R_{\text{trunc\_s}})[\text{trunc\_sat\_s}_{M,N}(z), 2^N - 1, 2^N - 2, 2^{(N-1)}]$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{relaxed\_trunc}_{M,N}^s(\pm q) &= \text{trunc}_{M,N}^s(\pm q) && (\text{if } -2^{N-1} \leq \text{trunc}(\pm q) < 2^{N-1}) \\ \text{relaxed\_trunc}_{M,N}^s(z) &= \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{trunc\_s}})[\text{trunc\_sat\_s}_{M,N}(z), \text{signed}_N^{-1}(-2^{N-1})] && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

Relaxed signed truncation is implementation-dependent for NaNs and out-of-range values. In the [deterministic profile](#), it behaves like regular `trunc_sat_s`.

$\text{ivrelaxed\_swizzle}(i^n, j^n)$

The implementation-specific behaviour of this operation is determined by the global parameter  $R_{\text{swizzle}} \in \{0, 1\}$ .

- For each  $j_k$  in  $j^n$ , let  $r_k$  be the value  $\text{ivrelaxed\_swizzle\_lane}(i^n, j_k)$ .
- Let  $r^n$  be the concatenation of all  $r_k$ .
- Return  $r^n$ .

$$\text{ivrelaxed\_swizzle}(i^n, j^n) = \text{ivrelaxed\_swizzle\_lane}(i^n, j)^n$$

where:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ivrelaxed\_swizzle\_lane}(i^n, j) &= i[j] && (\text{if } j < 16) \\ \text{ivrelaxed\_swizzle\_lane}(i^n, j) &= 0 && (\text{if } \text{signed}_8(j) < 0) \\ \text{ivrelaxed\_swizzle\_lane}(i^n, j) &= \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{swizzle}})[0, i^n[j \bmod n]] && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

Relaxed swizzle is implementation-dependent if the signed interpretation of any of the 8-bit indices in  $j^n$  is larger than or equal to 16. In the [deterministic profile](#), it behaves like regular `ivswizzle`.

`relaxed_dot( $i_1, i_2$ )`

The implementation-specific behaviour of this operation is determined by the global parameter  $R_{\text{idot}} \in \{0, 1\}$ . It also affects the behaviour of `relaxed_dot_add`.

Its definition is part of the definition of *vertbinop* specified [above](#).

#### Note

Relaxed dot product is implementation-dependent when the second operand is negative in a signed interpretation. In the [deterministic profile](#), it behaves like signed dot product.

`irelaxed_laneselect $_N$ ( $i_1, i_2, i_3$ )`

The implementation-specific behaviour of this operation is determined by the global parameter  $R_{\text{laneselect}} \in \{0, 1\}$ .

- If  $i_3$  is smaller than  $2^{N-1}$ , then let  $i'_3$  be the value 0, otherwise  $2^N - 1$ .
- Let  $i''_3$  be `relaxed( $R_{\text{laneselect}}$ )[ $i_3, i'_3$ ]`.
- Return `ibitselect $_N$ ( $i_1, i_2, i''_3$ )`.

$$\text{irelaxed\_laneselect}_N(i_1, i_2, i_3) = \text{ibitselect}_N(i_1, i_2, \text{relaxed}(R_{\text{laneselect}})[i_3, \text{extend}^s_{1,N}(\text{ishr\_u}_N(i_3, N-1))])$$

#### Note

Relaxed lane selection is non-deterministic when the mask mixes set and cleared bits, since the value of the high bit may or may not be expanded to all bits. In the [deterministic profile](#), it behaves like `ibitselect`.

## 4.4 Types

Execution has to check and compare [types](#) in a few places, such as [executing](#) `call_indirect` or [instantiating modules](#).

It is an invariant of the semantics that all types occurring during execution are [closed](#).

#### Note

Runtime type checks generally involve types from multiple modules or types not defined by a module at all, such that any module-local [type indices](#) occurring inside them would not generally be meaningful.

### 4.4.1 Instantiation

Any form of `type` can be *instantiated* into a `closed` type inside a `module` instance by substituting each `type` index  $x$  occurring in it with the corresponding `defined type` `moduleinst.types[x]`.

$$\text{clos}_{\text{moduleinst}}(t) = t[dt^*] \quad \text{if } dt^* = \text{moduleinst.types}$$

#### Note

This is the runtime equivalent to `type closure`, which is applied at validation time.

## 4.5 Values

### 4.5.1 Value Typing

For the purpose of checking argument `values` against the parameter types of exported `functions`, values are classified by `value types`. The following auxiliary typing rules specify this typing relation relative to a `store`  $S$  in which possibly referenced `addresses` live.

#### Numeric Values

The number value (`nt.const c`) is valid with the number type `nt`.

#### Todo

below is the official specification

- The value is valid with number type  $t$ .

$$\overline{s \vdash \text{nt.const } c : \text{nt}}$$

#### Vector Values

The vector value (`vt.const c`) is valid with the vector type `vt`.

#### Todo

below is the official specification

- The value is valid with vector type  $t$ .

$$\overline{s \vdash \text{vt.const } c : \text{vt}}$$

#### Null References

The reference value (`ref.null ht`) is valid with the reference type (`ref null ht'`) if:

- The heap type  $ht'$  matches the heap type  $ht$ .

#### Todo

below is the official specification

- The heap type must be valid under the empty context.
- Then the value is valid with reference type (`ref null t'`), where the heap type  $t'$  is the least type that matches  $t$ .

$$\frac{\{\} \vdash ht' \leq ht}{s \vdash \text{ref.null } ht : (\text{ref null } ht')}$$

**Note**

A null reference can be typed with any smaller type. In particular, that allows it to be typed with the least type in its respective hierarchy. That ensures that the value is compatible with any nullable type in that hierarchy.

**Scalar References**

The reference value  $(\text{ref.i31 } i)$  is valid with the reference type  $(\text{ref i31})$ .

**Todo**

below is the official specification

- The value is valid with reference type  $(\text{ref i31})$ .

$$s \vdash \text{ref.i31 } i : (\text{ref i31})$$

**Structure References**

The reference value  $(\text{ref.struct } a)$  is valid with the reference type  $(\text{ref } dt)$  if:

- The structure instance  $s.\text{structs}[a]$  exists.
- The defined type  $s.\text{structs}[a].\text{type}$  is of the form  $dt$ .

**Todo**

below is the official specification

- The structure address  $a$  must exist in the store.
- Let  $\text{structinst}$  be the structure instance  $S.\text{structs}[a]$ .
- Let  $\text{deftype}$  be the defined type  $\text{structinst.type}$ .
- The expansion of  $\text{deftype}$  must be a struct type.
- Then the value is valid with reference type  $(\text{ref } \text{deftype})$ .

$$\frac{s.\text{structs}[a].\text{type} = dt}{s \vdash \text{ref.struct } a : (\text{ref } dt)}$$

**Array References**

The reference value  $(\text{ref.array } a)$  is valid with the reference type  $(\text{ref } dt)$  if:

- The array instance  $s.\text{arrays}[a]$  exists.
- The defined type  $s.\text{arrays}[a].\text{type}$  is of the form  $dt$ .

**Todo**

below is the official specification

- The array address  $a$  must exist in the store.
- Let  $\text{arrayinst}$  be the array instance  $S.\text{arrays}[a]$ .
- Let  $\text{deftype}$  be the defined type  $\text{arrayinst.type}$ .

- The *expansion* of *deftype* must be an array type.
- Then the value is valid with *reference type* (*ref arraytype*).

$$\frac{s.\text{arrays}[a].\text{type} = dt}{s \vdash \text{ref.array } a : (\text{ref } dt)}$$

### Exception References

The *reference value* (*ref.exn a*) is valid with the *reference type* (*ref exn*) if:

- The *exception instance* *s.exns[a]* exists.
- The *exception instance* *s.exns[a]* is of the form *exn*.

#### Todo

below is the official specification

- The store entry *S.exns[a]* must exist.
- Then the value is valid with *reference type* *exnref*.

$$\frac{s.\text{exns}[a] = \text{exn}}{s \vdash \text{ref.exn } a : (\text{ref exn})}$$

### Function References

The *reference value* (*ref.func a*) is valid with the *reference type* (*ref dt*) if:

- The *function instance* *s.funcs[a]* exists.
- The *defined type* *s.funcs[a].type* is of the form *dt*.

#### Todo

below is the official specification

- The *function address* *a* must exist in the store.
- Let *funcinst* be the *function instance* *S.funcs[a]*.
- Let *deftype* be the *defined type* *funcinst.type*.
- The *expansion* of *deftype* must be a *function type*.
- Then the value is valid with *reference type* (*ref functype*).

$$\frac{s.\text{funcs}[a].\text{type} = dt}{s \vdash \text{ref.func } a : (\text{ref } dt)}$$

### Host References

The *reference value* (*ref.host a*) is valid with the *reference type* (*ref any*).

#### Todo

below is the official specification

- The value is valid with *reference type* (*ref any*).

$$\overline{s \vdash \text{ref.host } a : (\text{ref any})}$$

**Note**

A bare host reference is considered internalized.

**External References**

The reference value (`ref.extern addrref`) is valid with the reference type (`ref extern`) if:

- Under the context  $s$ , the reference value *addrref* is valid with the reference type (`ref any`).

**Todo**

below is the official specification

- The reference value *ref* must be valid with some reference type (`ref null? t`).
- The heap type  $t$  must match the heap type *any*.
- Then the value is valid with reference type (`ref null? extern`).

$$\frac{s \vdash \text{addrref} : (\text{ref any})}{s \vdash \text{ref.extern addrref} : (\text{ref extern})}$$

**Subsumption**

The reference value *ref* is valid with the reference type  $rt$  if:

- Under the context  $s$ , the reference value *ref* is valid with the reference type  $rt'$ .
- The reference type  $rt'$  matches the reference type  $rt$ .

**Todo**

below is the official specification

- The value must be valid with some value type  $t$ .
- The value type  $t$  matches another valid type  $t'$ .
- Then the value is valid with type  $t'$ .

$$\frac{s \vdash \text{ref} : rt' \quad \{\} \vdash rt' \leq rt}{s \vdash \text{ref} : rt}$$

**4.5.2 External Typing**

For the purpose of checking external address against imports, such values are classified by external types. The following auxiliary typing rules specify this typing relation relative to a store  $S$  in which the referenced instances live.

**Functions**

The external address (`func a`) is valid with the external type (`func funcinst.type`) if:

- The function instance  $s.\text{funcs}[a]$  exists.
- The function instance  $s.\text{funcs}[a]$  is of the form *funcinst*.

**Todo**

below is the official specification



- The store entry  $S.\text{funcs}[a]$  must exist.
- Then  $\text{func } a$  is valid with external type  $\text{func } S.\text{funcs}[a].\text{type}$ .

$$\frac{s.\text{funcs}[a] = \text{funcinst}}{s \vdash \text{func } a : \text{func } \text{funcinst.type}}$$

## Tables

The external address (table  $a$ ) is valid with the external type (table  $\text{tableinst.type}$ ) if:

- The table instance  $s.\text{tables}[a]$  exists.
- The table instance  $s.\text{tables}[a]$  is of the form  $\text{tableinst}$ .

### Todo

below is the official specification

- The store entry  $S.\text{tables}[a]$  must exist.
- Then table  $a$  is valid with external type  $\text{table } S.\text{tables}[a].\text{type}$ .

$$\frac{s.\text{tables}[a] = \text{tableinst}}{s \vdash \text{table } a : \text{table } \text{tableinst.type}}$$

## Memories

The external address (mem  $a$ ) is valid with the external type (mem  $\text{meminst.type}$ ) if:

- The memory instance  $s.\text{mems}[a]$  exists.
- The memory instance  $s.\text{mems}[a]$  is of the form  $\text{meminst}$ .

### Todo

below is the official specification

- The store entry  $S.\text{mems}[a]$  must exist.
- Then mem  $a$  is valid with external type  $\text{mem } S.\text{mems}[a].\text{type}$ .

$$\frac{s.\text{mems}[a] = \text{meminst}}{s \vdash \text{mem } a : \text{mem } \text{meminst.type}}$$

## Globals

The external address (global  $a$ ) is valid with the external type (global  $\text{globalinst.type}$ ) if:

- The global instance  $s.\text{globals}[a]$  exists.
- The global instance  $s.\text{globals}[a]$  is of the form  $\text{globalinst}$ .

### Todo

below is the official specification

- The store entry  $S.\text{globals}[a]$  must exist.
- Then global  $a$  is valid with external type  $\text{global } S.\text{globals}[a].\text{type}$ .

$$\frac{s.\text{globals}[a] = \text{globalinst}}{s \vdash \text{global } a : \text{global } \text{globalinst.type}}$$

## Tags

The external address (tag  $a$ ) is valid with the external type (tag  $\text{taginst.type}$ ) if:

- The tag instance  $s.\text{tags}[a]$  exists.
- The tag instance  $s.\text{tags}[a]$  is of the form  $\text{taginst}$ .

### Todo

below is the official specification

- The store entry  $S.\text{tags}[a]$  must exist.
- Let  $\text{tagtype}$  be the function type  $S.\text{tags}[a].\text{type}$ .
- Then tag  $a$  is valid with external type tag  $\text{tagtype}$ .

$$\frac{s.\text{tags}[a] = \text{taginst}}{s \vdash \text{tag } a : \text{tag } \text{taginst.type}}$$

## Subsumption

The external address  $\text{externaddr}$  is valid with the external type  $xt$  if:

- Under the context  $s$ , the external address  $\text{externaddr}$  is valid with the external type  $xt'$ .
- The external type  $xt'$  matches the external type  $xt$ .

### Todo

below is the official specification

- The external address must be valid with some external type  $et$ .
- The external type  $et$  matches another valid type  $et'$ .
- Then the external address is valid with type  $et'$ .

$$\frac{s \vdash \text{externaddr} : xt' \quad \{\} \vdash xt' \leq xt}{s \vdash \text{externaddr} : xt}$$

## 4.6 Instructions

WebAssembly computation is performed by executing individual instructions.

### 4.6.1 Parametric Instructions

`nop`

1. Do nothing.

$$\text{nop} \hookrightarrow \epsilon$$

`unreachable`

1. Trap.

$$\text{unreachable} \hookrightarrow \text{trap}$$

**drop**

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value *val* from the stack.

**Todo**

- (1) Remove trailing “Do nothing.”

$$val\ drop \hookrightarrow \epsilon$$

**select (*t*<sup>\*</sup>)?**

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [number type i32](#) is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (*i32.const c*) from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value *val*<sub>2</sub> from the stack.
5. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value is on the top of the stack.
6. Pop the value *val*<sub>1</sub> from the stack.
7. If *c* ≠ 0, then:
  - a. Push the value *val*<sub>1</sub> to the stack.
8. Else:
  - a. Push the value *val*<sub>2</sub> to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} val_1\ val_2\ (i32.const\ c)\ (select\ (t^*)^?) &\hookrightarrow val_1 && \text{if } c \neq 0 \\ val_1\ val_2\ (i32.const\ c)\ (select\ (t^*)^?) &\hookrightarrow val_2 && \text{if } c = 0 \end{aligned}$$

**Note**

In future versions of WebAssembly, select may allow more than one value per choice.

**4.6.2 Numeric Instructions**

Numeric instructions are defined in terms of the generic [numeric operators](#). The mapping of numeric instructions to their underlying operators is expressed by the following definition:

$$\begin{aligned} op_{iN}(i_1, \dots, i_k) &= iop_N(i_1, \dots, i_k) \\ op_{fN}(z_1, \dots, z_k) &= fop_N(z_1, \dots, z_k) \end{aligned}$$

And for [conversion operators](#):

$$cvtop_{t_1, t_2}^{sx?}(c) = cvtop_{|t_1|, |t_2|}^{sx?}(c)$$

Where the underlying operators are partial, the corresponding instruction will [trap](#) when the result is not defined. Where the underlying operators are non-deterministic, because they may return one of multiple possible NaN values, so are the corresponding instructions.

**Note**

For example, the result of instruction `i32.add` applied to operands  $i_1, i_2$  invokes `addi32( $i_1, i_2$ )`, which maps to the generic `iadd32( $i_1, i_2$ )` via the above definition. Similarly, `i64.trunc_f32_s` applied to  $z$  invokes `truncf32,i64s( $z$ )`, which maps to the generic `trunc32,64s( $z$ )`.

*t.const c*

1. Push the value `t.const c` to the stack.

**Note**

No formal reduction rule is required for this instruction, since `const` instructions already are [values](#).

*nt.unop*

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [number type](#)  $nt$  is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value `(numtype0.const  $c_1$ )` from the stack.
3. If `unopnt( $c_1$ )` is empty, then:
  - a. Trap.
4. Let  $c$  be an element of `unopnt( $c_1$ )`.
5. Push the value `(nt.const  $c$ )` to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} (nt.const\ c_1)\ (nt.unop) &\hookrightarrow (nt.const\ c) && \text{if } c \in unop_{nt}(c_1) \\ (nt.const\ c_1)\ (nt.unop) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } unop_{nt}(c_1) = \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

*nt.binop*

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [number type](#)  $nt$  is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value `(numtype0.const  $c_2$ )` from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a [number value](#) is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value `(numtype0.const  $c_1$ )` from the stack.
5. If `binopnt( $c_1, c_2$ )` is empty, then:
  - a. Trap.
6. Let  $c$  be an element of `binopnt( $c_1, c_2$ )`.
7. Push the value `(nt.const  $c$ )` to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} (nt.const\ c_1)\ (nt.const\ c_2)\ (nt.binop) &\hookrightarrow (nt.const\ c) && \text{if } c \in binop_{nt}(c_1, c_2) \\ (nt.const\ c_1)\ (nt.const\ c_2)\ (nt.binop) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } binop_{nt}(c_1, c_2) = \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

*nt.testop*

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [number type](#)  $nt$  is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value `(numtype0.const  $c_1$ )` from the stack.
3. Let  $c$  be `testopnt( $c_1$ )`.
4. Push the value `(i32.const  $c$ )` to the stack.

$$(nt.const\ c_1)\ (nt.testop) \hookrightarrow (i32.const\ c) \quad \text{if } c = testop_{nt}(c_1)$$

*nt.relop*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type**  $nt$  is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value  $(numtype_0.const\ c_2)$  from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value  $(numtype_0.const\ c_1)$  from the stack.
5. Let  $c$  be  $relop_{nt}(c_1, c_2)$ .
6. Push the value  $(i32.const\ c)$  to the stack.

$$(nt.const\ c_1)\ (nt.const\ c_2)\ (nt.relop) \hookrightarrow (i32.const\ c) \quad \text{if } c = relop_{nt}(c_1, c_2)$$

*nt<sub>2</sub>.cvtop\_nt<sub>1</sub>*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type**  $nt_1$  is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value  $(numtype_0.const\ c_1)$  from the stack.
3. If  $cvtop_{nt_1, nt_2}(c_1)$  is empty, then:
  - a. Trap.
4. Let  $c$  be an element of  $cvtop_{nt_1, nt_2}(c_1)$ .
5. Push the value  $(nt_2.const\ c)$  to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} (nt_1.const\ c_1)\ (nt_2.cvtop\_nt_1) &\hookrightarrow (nt_2.const\ c) && \text{if } c \in cvtop_{nt_1, nt_2}(c_1) \\ (nt_1.const\ c_1)\ (nt_2.cvtop\_nt_1) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } cvtop_{nt_1, nt_2}(c_1) = \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

**4.6.3 Reference Instructions***ref.null x*

1. Let  $F$  be the **current frame**.
2. Assert: due to **validation**, the **defined type**  $F.module.types[x]$  exists.
3. Let *deftype* be the **defined type**  $F.module.types[x]$ .
4. Push the value **ref.null** *deftype* to the stack.

$$z; (\text{ref.null } x) \hookrightarrow (\text{ref.null } z.types[x])$$

**Note**

No formal reduction rule is required for the case **ref.null** *absheaptype*, since the instruction form is already a **value**.

*ref.func x*

1. Let  $z$  be the **current state**.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**,  $x < |z.module.funcs|$ .
3. Push the value  $(\text{ref.func } z.module.funcs[x])$  to the stack.

$$z; (\text{ref.func } x) \hookrightarrow (\text{ref.func } z.module.funcs[x])$$

`ref.is_null`

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a [reference value](#) is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value *ref* from the stack.
3. If *ref* is some `ref.null heaptypes`, then:
  - a. Push the value `(i32.const 1)` to the stack.
4. Else:
  - a. Push the value `(i32.const 0)` to the stack.

**Todo**

(3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ref } \text{ref.is\_null} &\hookrightarrow (i32.\text{const } 1) \quad \text{if } \text{ref} = (\text{ref.null } ht) \\ \text{ref } \text{ref.is\_null} &\hookrightarrow (i32.\text{const } 0) \quad \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$
`ref.as_non_null`

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a [reference value](#) is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value *ref* from the stack.
3. If *ref* is some `ref.null heaptypes`, then:
  - a. Trap.
4. Push the value *ref* to the stack.

**Todo**

(3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ref } \text{ref.as\_non\_null} &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} \quad \text{if } \text{ref} = (\text{ref.null } ht) \\ \text{ref } \text{ref.as\_non\_null} &\hookrightarrow \text{ref} \quad \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$
`ref.eq`

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a [reference value](#) is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value *ref*<sub>2</sub> from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a [reference value](#) is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value *ref*<sub>1</sub> from the stack.
5. If *ref*<sub>1</sub> is some `ref.null heaptypes`, then:
  - a. If *ref*<sub>2</sub> is some `ref.null heaptypes`, then:
    - 1) Push the value `(i32.const 1)` to the stack.
  - b. Else if *ref*<sub>1</sub> = *ref*<sub>2</sub>, then:
    - 1) Push the value `(i32.const 1)` to the stack.
  - c. Else:
    - 1) Push the value `(i32.const 0)` to the stack.

6. Else if  $ref_1 = ref_2$ , then:
  - a. Push the value (i32.const 1) to the stack.
7. Else:
  - a. Push the value (i32.const 0) to the stack.

**Todo**

(3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”.

$$\begin{aligned}
 ref_1 \ ref_2 \ ref.eq &\hookrightarrow (i32.const\ 1) && \text{if } ref_1 = (ref.null\ ht_1) \wedge ref_2 = (ref.null\ ht_2) \\
 ref_1 \ ref_2 \ ref.eq &\hookrightarrow (i32.const\ 1) && \text{otherwise, if } ref_1 = ref_2 \\
 ref_1 \ ref_2 \ ref.eq &\hookrightarrow (i32.const\ 0) && \text{otherwise}
 \end{aligned}$$

$ref.test\ rt$

1. Let  $F$  be the topmost frame.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **reference value** is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $ref$  from the stack.
4. Let  $rt'$  be the type of  $ref$ .
5. If  $rt'$  matches  $clos_{f.module}(rt)$ , then:
  - a. Push the value (i32.const 1) to the stack.
6. Else:
  - a. Push the value (i32.const 0) to the stack.

**Todo**

(9) Need to handle RulePr s  $\vdash ref : rt$  properly in prose instead of \$ref\_type\_of Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the **current frame**.
2. Let  $rt_1$  be the **reference type**  $clos_{F.module}(rt)$ .
3. Assert: due to **validation**,  $rt_1$  is **closed**.
4. Assert: due to **validation**, a **reference value** is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $ref$  from the stack.
6. Assert: due to **validation**, the **reference value** is **valid** with some **reference type**.
7. Let  $rt_2$  be the **reference type** of  $ref$ .
8. If the **reference type**  $rt_2$  **matches**  $rt_1$ , then:
  - a. Push the value i32.const 1 to the stack.
9. Else:
  - a. Push the value i32.const 0 to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned}
 s; f; ref\ (ref.test\ rt) &\hookrightarrow (i32.const\ 1) && \text{if } s \vdash ref : rt' \\
 & && \wedge \{\} \vdash rt' \leq clos_{f.module}(rt) \\
 s; f; ref\ (ref.test\ rt) &\hookrightarrow (i32.const\ 0) && \text{otherwise}
 \end{aligned}$$

*ref.cast rt*

1. Let  $F$  be the topmost frame.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **reference value** is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $ref$  from the stack.
4. Let  $rt'$  be the type of  $ref$ .
5. If  $rt'$  does not match  $\text{clos}_{f.\text{module}}(rt)$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
6. Push the value  $ref$  to the stack.

**Todo**

(9) Need to handle RulePr s  $\vdash ref : rt$  properly in prose instead of \$ref\_type\_of Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the **current frame**.
2. Let  $rt_1$  be the **reference type**  $\text{clos}_{F.\text{module}}(rt)$ .
3. Assert: due to **validation**,  $rt_1$  is **closed**.
4. Assert: due to **validation**, a **reference value** is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $ref$  from the stack.
6. Assert: due to **validation**, the **reference value** is **valid** with some **reference type**.
7. Let  $rt_2$  be the **reference type** of  $ref$ .
8. If the **reference type**  $rt_2$  **matches**  $rt_1$ , then:
  - a. Push the value  $ref$  back to the stack.
9. Else:
  - a. Trap.

$$\begin{aligned}
 s; f; ref \text{ (ref.cast } rt) &\hookrightarrow ref && \text{if } s \vdash ref : rt' \\
 &&& \wedge \{\} \vdash rt' \leq \text{clos}_{f.\text{module}}(rt) \\
 s; f; ref \text{ (ref.cast } rt) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{otherwise}
 \end{aligned}$$

*ref.i31*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type** **i32** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value  $(i32.\text{const } i)$  from the stack.
3. Push the value  $(\text{ref.i31 wrap}_{32,31}(i))$  to the stack.

$$(i32.\text{const } i) \text{ ref.i31} \hookrightarrow (\text{ref.i31 wrap}_{32,31}(i))$$

*i31.get\_sx*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value  $val$  from the stack.
3. If  $val$  is some  $\text{ref.null heaptype}$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
4. If  $val$  is some  $\text{ref.i31 } u31$ , then:
  - a. Let  $(\text{ref.i31 } i)$  be the destructuring of  $val$ .
  - b. Push the value  $(i32.\text{const extend}_{31,32}^{sx}(i))$  to the stack.



**Todo**

(3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”. (4) Guarantees from validation can help simplify the prose. Below is the actual prose.

1. Assert: due to **validation**, a value of type `(ref null i31)` is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value `ref` from the stack.
3. If `ref` is `ref.null t`, then:
  - a. Trap.
4. Assert: due to **validation**, a `ref` is a **scalar reference**.
5. Let `ref.i31 i` be the reference value `ref`.
6. Let `j` be the result of computing `extend31,32sx(i)`.
7. Push the value `i32.const j` to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{ref.null } ht) (i31.\text{get\_sx}) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\ (\text{ref.i31 } i) (i31.\text{get\_sx}) &\hookrightarrow (i32.\text{const } \text{extend}_{31,32}^{\text{sx}}(i)) \end{aligned}$$
**struct.new  $x$** 

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, the **expansion** of `z.types[x]` is some **struct structtype**.
3. Let `(struct structtype0)` be the destructuring of the **expansion** of `z.types[x]`.
4. Let `(mut?  $zt$ ) $n$`  be `structtype0`.
5. Let  $a$  be the length of `z.structs`.
6. Assert: Due to **validation**, there are at least  $n$  values on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the values `val $n$`  from the stack.
8. Let `si` be the **structure instance** `{type z.types[x], fields packzt(val) $n$ }`.
9. Push the value `(ref.struct a)` to the stack.
10. Perform `z[.structs =  $\oplus$  si]`.

**Todo**

(3') Introduce let binding instead of “is of the case”. (5) Use “the **expansion** of” instead of `$expand` function application. Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the **current frame**.
2. Assert: due to **validation**, the defined type `F.module.types[x]` exists.
3. Let `deftype` be the defined type `F.module.types[x]`.
4. Assert: due to **validation**, the **expansion** of `deftype` is a **structure type**.
5. Let `struct ft*` be the **expanded structure type** of `deftype`.
6. Let  $n$  be the length of the **field type sequence** `ft*`.
7. Assert: due to **validation**,  $n$  **values** are on the top of the stack.
8. Pop the  $n$  values `val*` from the stack.
9. For every value `vali` in `val*` and corresponding **field type** `fti` in `ft*`:
  - a. Let `fieldvali` be the result of computing `packfti(vali)`.

10. Let  $fieldval^*$  be the concatenation of all field values  $fieldval_i$ .
  11. Let  $si$  be the structure instance  $\{\text{type } deftype, \text{fields } fieldval^*\}$ .
  12. Let  $a$  be the length of  $S.structs$ .
  13. Append  $si$  to  $S.structs$ .
  14. Push the structure reference  $\text{ref.struct } a$  to the stack.
- $$z; val^n (\text{struct.new } x) \hookrightarrow z[\text{structs} = \oplus si]; (\text{ref.struct } a) \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{if } z.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{struct } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } zt)^n \\ \wedge a = |z.\text{structs}| \\ \wedge si = \{\text{type } z.\text{types}[x], \text{fields } (\text{pack}_{zt}(val))^n\} \end{array}$$

#### `struct.new_default` $x$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to validation, the expansion of  $z.\text{types}[x]$  is some struct  $structtype$ .
3. Let  $(\text{struct } structtype_0)$  be the destructuring of the expansion of  $z.\text{types}[x]$ .
4. Let  $(\text{mut}^? \text{ } zt)^*$  be  $structtype_0$ .
5. Assert: Due to validation, for all  $zt$  in  $zt^*$ ,  $\text{default}_{\text{unpack}(zt)}$  is defined.
6. Let  $val^*$  be  $\text{default}_{\text{unpack}(zt)}^*$ .
7. Assert: Due to validation,  $|val^*| = |zt^*|$ .
8. Push the values  $val^*$  to the stack.
9. Execute the instruction  $(\text{struct.new } x)$ .

#### Todo

(3') Introduce let binding instead of “is of the case”. (5) Use “the expansion of” instead of \$expand function application. Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the current frame.
2. Assert: due to validation, the defined type  $F.\text{module.types}[x]$  exists.
3. Let  $deftype$  be the defined type  $F.\text{module.types}[x]$ .
4. Assert: due to validation, the expansion of  $deftype$  is a structure type.
5. Let struct  $ft^*$  be the expanded structure type of  $deftype$ .
6. Let  $n$  be the length of the field type sequence  $ft^*$ .
7. For every field type  $ft_i$  in  $ft^*$ :
  - a. Let  $t_i$  be the value type  $\text{unpack}(ft_i)$ .
  - b. Assert: due to validation,  $\text{default}_{t_i}$  is defined.
  - c. Push the value  $\text{default}_{t_i}$  to the stack.
8. Execute the instruction  $(\text{struct.new } x)$ .

$$z; (\text{struct.new\_default } x) \hookrightarrow val^* (\text{struct.new } x) \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{if } z.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{struct } (\text{mut}^? \text{ } zt)^* \\ \wedge (\text{default}_{\text{unpack}(zt)} = val)^* \end{array}$$

#### `struct.get_sx?` $x \ i$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to validation, a value is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $val$  from the stack.

4. If *val* is some *ref.null heaptype*, then:
  - a. Trap.
5. If *val* is some *ref.struct structaddr*, then:
  - a. Let (*ref.struct a*) be the destructuring of *val*.
  - b. If  $i < |z.structs[a].fields|$  and  $a < |z.structs|$ , then:
    - 1) Assert: Due to *validation*, the *expansion* of  $z.types[x]$  is some *struct structtype*.
    - 2) Let (*struct structtype<sub>0</sub>*) be the destructuring of the *expansion* of  $z.types[x]$ .
    - 3) Let (*mut<sup>?</sup> zt*)<sup>\*</sup> be *structtype<sub>0</sub>*.
    - 4) If  $i < |zt^*|$ , then:
      - a) Push the value  $\text{unpack}_{zt^*[i]}^{sx^?}(z.structs[a].fields[i])$  to the stack.

#### Todo

(3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”. (5) Use “the expansion of” instead of \$expand function application. Below is the actual prose.

1. Let *F* be the *current frame*.
  2. Assert: due to *validation*, the defined type  $F.module.types[x]$  exists.
  3. Let *deftype* be the defined type  $F.module.types[x]$ .
  4. Assert: due to *validation*, the *expansion* of *deftype* is a *structure type* with at least  $y + 1$  fields.
  5. Let *struct ft<sup>\*</sup>* be the *expanded structure type* of *deftype*.
  6. Let *ft<sub>y</sub>* be the *y*-th *field type* of *ft<sup>\*</sup>*.
  7. Assert: due to *validation*, a value of type (*ref null x*) is on the top of the stack.
  8. Pop the value *ref* from the stack.
  9. If *ref* is *ref.null t*, then:
    - a. Trap.
  10. Assert: due to *validation*, a *ref* is a *structure reference*.
  11. Let *ref.struct a* be the reference value *ref*.
  12. Assert: due to *validation*, the *structure instance*  $S.structs[a]$  exists and has at least  $y + 1$  fields.
  13. Let *fieldval* be the *field value*  $S.structs[a].fields[y]$ .
  14. Let *val* be the result of computing  $\text{unpack}_{ft_y}^{sx^?}(fieldval)$ .
  15. Push the value *val* to the stack.
- $z; (\text{ref.null } ht) (\text{struct.get\_sx}^? x i) \hookrightarrow \text{trap}$   
 $z; (\text{ref.struct } a) (\text{struct.get\_sx}^? x i) \hookrightarrow \text{unpack}_{zt^*[i]}^{sx^?}(z.structs[a].fields[i]) \quad \text{if } z.types[x] \approx \text{struct } (\text{mut}^? zt)^*$

*struct.set x i*

1. Let *z* be the *current state*.
2. Assert: Due to *validation*, a value is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value *val* from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to *validation*, a value is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value *val'* from the stack.

6. If  $val'$  is some `ref.null heaptype`, then:
  - a. Trap.
7. If  $val'$  is some `ref.struct structaddr`, then:
  - a. Let  $(\text{ref.struct } a)$  be the destructuring of  $val'$ .
  - b. Assert: Due to `validation`, the `expansion` of  $z.\text{types}[x]$  is some `struct structtype`.
  - c. Let  $(\text{struct structtype}_0)$  be the destructuring of the `expansion` of  $z.\text{types}[x]$ .
  - d. Let  $(\text{mut}^? zt)^*$  be  $\text{structtype}_0$ .
  - e. If  $i < |zt^*|$ , then:
    - 1) Perform  $z[\text{structs}[a].\text{fields}[i]] = \text{pack}_{zt^*[i]}(val)$ .

### Todo

(3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”. (5) Use “the expansion of” instead of `$expand` function application. Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the `current frame`.
  2. Assert: due to `validation`, the `defined type`  $F.\text{module.types}[x]$  exists.
  3. Let  $deftype$  be the `defined type`  $F.\text{module.types}[x]$ .
  4. Assert: due to `validation`, the `expansion` of  $deftype$  is a `structure type` with at least  $y + 1$  fields.
  5. Let  $\text{struct } ft^*$  be the `expanded structure type` of  $deftype$ .
  6. Let  $ft_y$  be the  $y$ -th `field type` of  $ft^*$ .
  7. Assert: due to `validation`, a `value` is on the top of the stack.
  8. Pop the `value`  $val$  from the stack.
  9. Assert: due to `validation`, a `value` of type  $(\text{ref null } x)$  is on the top of the stack.
  10. Pop the `value`  $ref$  from the stack.
  11. If  $ref$  is `ref.null t`, then:
    - a. Trap.
  12. Assert: due to `validation`, a  $ref$  is a `structure reference`.
  13. Let  $\text{ref.struct } a$  be the reference value  $ref$ .
  14. Assert: due to `validation`, the `structure instance`  $S.\text{structs}[a]$  exists and has at least  $y + 1$  fields.
  15. Let  $fieldval$  be the result of computing  $\text{pack}_{ft_y}(val)$ .
  16. Replace the `field value`  $S.\text{structs}[a].\text{fields}[y]$  with  $fieldval$ .
- $$z; (\text{ref.null } ht) \text{ val } (\text{struct.set } x \ i) \hookrightarrow z; \text{trap}$$
- $$z; (\text{ref.struct } a) \text{ val } (\text{struct.set } x \ i) \hookrightarrow z[\text{structs}[a].\text{fields}[i]] = \text{pack}_{zt^*[i]}(val); \epsilon \quad \text{if } z.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{struct } (\text{mut}^? zt)^*$$

### `array.new x`

1. Assert: Due to `validation`, a `value` of `number type i32` is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the `value`  $(i32.\text{const } n)$  from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to `validation`, a `value` is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the `value`  $val$  from the stack.
5. Push the `values`  $val^n$  to the stack.
6. Execute the instruction  $(\text{array.new\_fixed } x \ n)$ .

$$val\ (i32.const\ n)\ (array.new\ x) \hookrightarrow val^n\ (array.new\_fixed\ x\ n)$$

`array.new_default x`

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type** `i32` is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value `(i32.const n)` from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, the **expansion** of  $z.types[x]$  is some **array** *arraytype*.
5. Let  $(array\ arraytype_0)$  be the destructuring of the **expansion** of  $z.types[x]$ .
6. Let  $(mut^? zt)$  be the destructuring of *arraytype*<sub>0</sub>.
7. Assert: Due to **validation**, `defaultunpack(zt)` is defined.
8. Let *val* be `defaultunpack(zt)`.
9. Push the values  $val^n$  to the stack.
10. Execute the instruction `(array.new_fixed x n)`.

#### Todo

(3') Introduce let binding instead of “is of the case”. (5) Use “the expansion of” instead of \$expand function application. Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the **current frame**.
2. Assert: due to **validation**, the **defined type**  $F.module.types[x]$  exists.
3. Let *deftype* be the **defined type**  $F.module.types[x]$ .
4. Assert: due to **validation**, the **expansion** of *deftype* is an **array type**.
5. Let *array ft* be the **expanded array type** of *deftype*.
6. Assert: due to **validation**, a value of type `i32` is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value `i32.const n` from the stack.
8. Let  $t$  be the **value type** `unpack(ft)`.
9. Assert: due to **validation**, `defaultt` is defined.
10. Push the **value** `defaultt` to the stack  $n$  times.
11. Execute the instruction `(array.new_fixed x n)`.

$$z; (i32.const\ n)\ (array.new\_default\ x) \hookrightarrow val^n\ (array.new\_fixed\ x\ n) \quad \text{if } z.types[x] \approx array\ (mut^? zt) \wedge default_{unpack(zt)} = val$$

`array.new_fixed x n`

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, the **expansion** of  $z.types[x]$  is some **array** *arraytype*.
3. Let  $(array\ arraytype_0)$  be the destructuring of the **expansion** of  $z.types[x]$ .
4. Let  $(mut^? zt)$  be the destructuring of *arraytype*<sub>0</sub>.
5. Let  $a$  be the length of  $z.arrays$ .
6. Assert: Due to **validation**, there are at least  $n$  values on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the values  $val^n$  from the stack.
8. Let  $ai$  be the **array instance**  $\{type\ z.types[x],\ fields\ pack_{zt}(val)^n\}$ .

9. Push the value (`ref.array a`) to the stack.
10. Perform  $z[\text{.arrays} \oplus ai]$ .

**Todo**

(3') Introduce let binding instead of “is of the case”. (5) Use “the expansion of” instead of \$expand function application. Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the **current frame**.
2. Assert: due to **validation**, the defined type  $F.\text{module.types}[x]$  exists.
3. Let  $\text{deftype}$  be the defined type  $F.\text{module.types}[x]$ .
4. Assert: due to **validation**, the expansion of  $\text{deftype}$  is a **array type**.
5. Let  $\text{array ft}$  be the expanded array type of  $\text{deftype}$ .
6. Assert: due to **validation**,  $n$  **values** are on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the  $n$  values  $\text{val}^*$  from the stack.
8. For every value  $\text{val}_i$  in  $\text{val}^*$ :
  - a. Let  $\text{fieldval}_i$  be the result of computing  $\text{pack}_{ft}(\text{val}_i)$ .
9. Let  $\text{fieldval}^*$  be the concatenation of all field values  $\text{fieldval}_i$ .
10. Let  $ai$  be the **array instance**  $\{\text{type } \text{deftype}, \text{fields } \text{fieldval}^*\}$ .
11. Let  $a$  be the length of  $S.\text{arrays}$ .
12. Append  $ai$  to  $S.\text{arrays}$ .
13. Push the **array reference** `ref.array a` to the stack.

$$z; \text{val}^n (\text{array.new\_fixed } x \ n) \hookrightarrow z[\text{.arrays} \oplus ai]; (\text{ref.array } a) \\ \text{if } z.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut}^? \ zt) \\ \wedge a = |z.\text{arrays}| \wedge ai = \{\text{type } z.\text{types}[x], \text{fields } (\text{pack}_{zt}(\text{val}))^n\}$$

`array.new_data x y`

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type** `i32` is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value (`i32.const n`) from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type** `i32` is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value (`i32.const i`) from the stack.
6. Assert: Due to **validation**, the expansion of  $z.\text{types}[x]$  is some **array arraytype**.
7. Let  $(\text{array } \text{arraytype}_0)$  be the destructuring of the expansion of  $z.\text{types}[x]$ .
8. Let  $(\text{mut}^? \ zt)$  be the destructuring of  $\text{arraytype}_0$ .
9. If  $i + n \cdot |zt|/8 > |z.\text{datas}[y].\text{bytes}|$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
10. Let  $\text{byte}^{**}$  be the result for which each  $\text{byte}^*$  has length  $|zt|/8$ , and the concatenation of  $\text{byte}^{**}$  is  $z.\text{datas}[y].\text{bytes}[i : n \cdot |zt|/8]$ .
11. Let  $c^n$  be the result for which  $(\text{bytes}_{zt}(c^n) = \text{byte}^*)^*$ .
12. Push the values  $\text{unpack}(zt).\text{const } \text{unpack}_{zt}(c)^n$  to the stack.
13. Execute the instruction `(array.new_fixed x n)`.

**Todo**

(7) Render `$inverse_` with display hint. Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the current frame.
  2. Assert: due to **validation**, the defined type  $F.\text{module.types}[x]$  exists.
  3. Let  $\text{deftype}$  be the defined type  $F.\text{module.types}[x]$ .
  4. Assert: due to **validation**, the expansion of  $\text{deftype}$  is an array type.
  5. Let array  $ft$  be the expanded array type of  $\text{deftype}$ .
  6. Assert: due to **validation**, the data address  $F.\text{module.datas}[y]$  exists.
  7. Let  $da$  be the data address  $F.\text{module.datas}[y]$ .
  8. Assert: due to **validation**, the data instance  $S.\text{datas}[da]$  exists.
  9. Let  $\text{datainst}$  be the data instance  $S.\text{datas}[da]$ .
  10. Assert: due to **validation**, two values of type `i32` are on the top of the stack.
  11. Pop the value `i32.const`  $n$  from the stack.
  12. Pop the value `i32.const`  $s$  from the stack.
  13. Assert: due to **validation**, the field type  $ft$  has a defined bit width.
  14. Let  $z$  be the bit width of field type  $ft$  divided by eight.
  15. If the sum of  $s$  and  $n$  times  $z$  is larger than the length of  $\text{datainst.bytes}$ , then:
    - a. Trap.
  16. Let  $b^*$  be the byte sequence  $\text{datainst.bytes}[s : n \cdot z]$ .
  17. Let  $t$  be the value type `unpack`( $ft$ ).
  18. For each of the  $n$  consecutive subsequences  $b'^z$  of  $b^*$ :
    - a. Assert: due to **validation**,  $\text{bytes}_{ft}$  is defined.
    - b. Let  $c_i$  be the constant for which  $\text{bytes}_{ft}(c_i)$  is  $b'^z$ .
    - c. Push the value  $t.\text{const}$   $c_i$  to the stack.
  19. Execute the instruction `(array.new_fixed x n)`.
- $z; (i32.\text{const } i) (i32.\text{const } n) (\text{array.new\_data } x y) \rightarrow \text{trap}$ 

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{if } z.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array}(\text{mut}^? zt) \\ & \wedge i + n \cdot |zt|/8 > |z.\text{datas}[y].\text{bytes}| \end{aligned}$$
 $z; (i32.\text{const } i) (i32.\text{const } n) (\text{array.new\_data } x y) \rightarrow (\text{unpack}(zt).\text{const } \text{unpack}_{zt}(c))^n (\text{array.new\_fixed } x n)$ 

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{if } z.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array}(\text{mut}^? zt) \\ & \wedge \bigoplus \text{bytes}_{zt}(c)^n = z.\text{datas}[y].\text{bytes}[i : n \cdot |zt|/8] \end{aligned}$$

`array.new_elem x y`

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of number type `i32` is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value `(i32.const n)` from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of number type `i32` is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value `(i32.const i)` from the stack.
6. If  $i + n > |z.\text{elems}[y].\text{elem}|$ , then:
  - a. Trap.

7. Let  $ref^n$  be  $z.elems[y].elem[i : n]$ .
8. Push the values  $ref^n$  to the stack.
9. Execute the instruction  $(array.new\_fixed\ x\ n)$ .

$z; (i32.const\ i)\ (i32.const\ n)\ (array.new\_elem\ x\ y) \hookrightarrow \text{trap}$  if  $i + n > |z.elems[y].elem|$   
 $z; (i32.const\ i)\ (i32.const\ n)\ (array.new\_elem\ x\ y) \hookrightarrow ref^n\ (array.new\_fixed\ x\ n)$  if  $ref^n = z.elems[y].elem[i : n]$

$array.get\_sx^? x$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type**  $i32$  is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $(i32.const\ i)$  from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $val$  from the stack.
6. If  $val$  is some  $ref.null\ heaptype$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
7. If  $val$  is some  $ref.array\ arrayaddr$ , then:
  - a. Let  $(ref.array\ a)$  be the destructuring of  $val$ .
  - b. If  $a < |z.arrays|$  and  $i \geq |z.arrays[a].fields|$ , then:
    - 1) Trap.
  - c. If  $i < |z.arrays[a].fields|$  and  $a < |z.arrays|$ , then:
    - 1) Assert: Due to **validation**, the expansion of  $z.types[x]$  is some  $array\ arraytype$ .
    - 2) Let  $(array\ arraytype_0)$  be the destructuring of the expansion of  $z.types[x]$ .
    - 3) Let  $(mut^? zt)$  be the destructuring of  $arraytype_0$ .
    - 4) Push the value  $unpack_{zt}^{sx^?}(z.arrays[a].fields[i])$  to the stack.

### Todo

(3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”. (5) Use “the expansion of” instead of \$expand function application. Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the **current frame**.
2. Assert: due to **validation**, the **defined type**  $F.module.types[x]$  exists.
3. Let  $deftype$  be the **defined type**  $F.module.types[x]$ .
4. Assert: due to **validation**, the expansion of  $deftype$  is an **array type**.
5. Let  $array\ ft$  be the **expanded array type** of  $deftype$ .
6. Assert: due to **validation**, a value of **type**  $i32$  is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value  $i32.const\ i$  from the stack.
8. Assert: due to **validation**, a value of **type**  $(ref\ null\ x)$  is on the top of the stack.
9. Pop the value  $ref$  from the stack.
10. If  $ref$  is  $ref.null\ t$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
11. Assert: due to **validation**,  $ref$  is an **array reference**.



12. Let `ref.array a` be the reference value `ref`.
13. Assert: due to **validation**, the array instance `S.arrays[a]` exists.
14. If `n` is larger than or equal to the length of `S.arrays[a].fields`, then:
  - a. Trap.
15. Let `fieldval` be the field value `S.arrays[a].fields[i]`.
16. Let `val` be the result of computing `unpackftsx?(fieldval)`.
17. Push the value `val` to the stack.

```

z; (ref.null ht) (i32.const i) (array.getsx? x)  ↪ trap
z; (ref.array a) (i32.const i) (array.getsx? x)  ↪ trap                                if i ≥ |z.arrays[a].fields|
z; (ref.array a) (i32.const i) (array.getsx? x)  ↪ unpackztsx?(z.arrays[a].fields[i])
                                                    if z.types[x] ≈ array (mut? zt)

```

#### `array.set x`

1. Let `z` be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value `val` from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type i32** is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value `(i32.const i)` from the stack.
6. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value `val'` from the stack.
8. If `val'` is some `ref.null heapytype`, then:
  - a. Trap.
9. If `val'` is some `ref.array arrayaddr`, then:
  - a. Let `(ref.array a)` be the destructuring of `val'`.
  - b. If `a < |z.arrays|` and `i ≥ |z.arrays[a].fields|`, then:
    - 1) Trap.
  - c. Assert: Due to **validation**, the expansion of `z.types[x]` is some array `arraytype`.
  - d. Let `(array arraytype0)` be the destructuring of the expansion of `z.types[x]`.
  - e. Let `(mut? zt)` be the destructuring of `arraytype0`.
  - f. Perform `z[.arrays[a].fields[i] = packzt(val)]`.

#### Todo

(3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”. (5) Use “the expansion of” instead of \$expand function application. Below is the actual prose.

1. Let `F` be the **current frame**.
2. Assert: due to **validation**, the defined type `F.module.types[x]` exists.
3. Let `deftype` be the defined type `F.module.types[x]`.
4. Assert: due to **validation**, the expansion of `deftype` is an array type.
5. Let `array ft` be the expanded array type of `deftype`.
6. Assert: due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.

7. Pop the value *val* from the stack.
8. Assert: due to **validation**, a value of type *i32* is on the top of the stack.
9. Pop the value *i32.const i* from the stack.
10. Assert: due to **validation**, a value of type (ref null *x*) is on the top of the stack.
11. Pop the value *ref* from the stack.
12. If *ref* is *ref.null t*, then:
  - a. Trap.
13. Assert: due to **validation**, *ref* is an array reference.
14. Let *ref.array a* be the reference value *ref*.
15. Assert: due to **validation**, the array instance *S.arrays[a]* exists.
16. If *n* is larger than or equal to the length of *S.arrays[a].fields*, then:
  - a. Trap.
17. Let *fieldval* be the result of computing *pack<sub>ft</sub>(val)*.
18. Replace the field value *S.arrays[a].fields[i]* with *fieldval*.

$$\begin{aligned}
 z; (\text{ref.null } ht) \text{ (i32.const } i) \text{ val (array.set } x) &\hookrightarrow z; \text{trap} \\
 z; (\text{ref.array } a) \text{ (i32.const } i) \text{ val (array.set } x) &\hookrightarrow z; \text{trap} && \text{if } i \geq |z.\text{arrays}[a].\text{fields}| \\
 z; (\text{ref.array } a) \text{ (i32.const } i) \text{ val (array.set } x) &\hookrightarrow z[.\text{arrays}[a].\text{fields}[i] = \text{pack}_{zt}(\text{val}); \epsilon \\
 &&& \text{if } z.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array (mut? } zt)
 \end{aligned}$$

#### array.len

1. Let *z* be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value *val* from the stack.
4. If *val* is some *ref.null heaptypes*, then:
  - a. Trap.
5. If *val* is some *ref.array arrayaddr*, then:
  - a. Let (ref.array *a*) be the destructuring of *val*.
  - b. If *a* < *|z.arrays|*, then:
    - 1) Push the value (i32.const *|z.arrays[a].fields|*) to the stack.

#### Todo

- (3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”.

$$\begin{aligned}
 z; (\text{ref.null } ht) \text{ array.len} &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\
 z; (\text{ref.array } a) \text{ array.len} &\hookrightarrow (\text{i32.const } |z.\text{arrays}[a].\text{fields}|)
 \end{aligned}$$

#### array.fill *x*

1. Let *z* be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of number type *i32* is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value (i32.const *n*) from the stack.

4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value *val* from the stack.
6. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type** *i32* is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value (*i32.const i*) from the stack.
8. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
9. Pop the value *val'* from the stack.
10. If *val'* is some **ref.null heaptypes**, then:
  - a. Trap.
11. If *val'* is some **ref.array arrayaddr**, then:
  - a. Let (**ref.array a**) be the destructuring of *val'*.
  - b. If  $a \geq |z.arrays|$ , then:
    - 1) Do nothing.
  - c. Else if  $i + n > |z.arrays[a].fields|$ , then:
    - 1) Trap.
  - d. If  $n = 0$ , then:
    - 1) Do nothing.
  - e. Else:
    - 1) Push the value (**ref.array a**) to the stack.
    - 2) Push the value (*i32.const i*) to the stack.
    - 3) Push the value *val* to the stack.
    - 4) Execute the instruction (**array.set x**).
    - 5) Push the value (**ref.array a**) to the stack.
    - 6) Push the value (*i32.const i + 1*) to the stack.
    - 7) Push the value *val* to the stack.
    - 8) Push the value (*i32.const n - 1*) to the stack.
    - 9) Execute the instruction (**array.fill x**).

#### Todo

- (3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”.

$$\begin{aligned}
 z; (\text{ref.null ht}) (i32.\text{const } i) \text{ val } (i32.\text{const } n) (\text{array.fill } x) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\
 z; (\text{ref.array } a) (i32.\text{const } i) \text{ val } (i32.\text{const } n) (\text{array.fill } x) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} \quad \text{if } i + n > |z.arrays[a].fields| \\
 z; (\text{ref.array } a) (i32.\text{const } i) \text{ val } (i32.\text{const } n) (\text{array.fill } x) &\hookrightarrow \epsilon \quad \text{otherwise, if } n = 0 \\
 z; (\text{ref.array } a) (i32.\text{const } i) \text{ val } (i32.\text{const } n) (\text{array.fill } x) &\hookrightarrow \\
 (\text{ref.array } a) (i32.\text{const } i) \text{ val } (\text{array.set } x) &\quad \text{otherwise} \\
 (\text{ref.array } a) (i32.\text{const } i + 1) \text{ val } (i32.\text{const } n - 1) (\text{array.fill } x) &
 \end{aligned}$$

**array.copy** *x*<sub>1</sub> *x*<sub>2</sub>

1. Let *z* be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type** *i32* is on the top of the stack.

3. Pop the value (`i32.const  $n$` ) from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [number type](#) `i32` is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value (`i32.const  $i_2$` ) from the stack.
6. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value `val` from the stack.
8. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [number type](#) `i32` is on the top of the stack.
9. Pop the value (`i32.const  $i_1$` ) from the stack.
10. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value is on the top of the stack.
11. Pop the value `val'` from the stack.
12. If `val'` is some [ref.null heaptypes](#) and `val` is reference value, then:
  - a. Trap.
13. If `val` is some [ref.null heaptypes](#) and `val'` is reference value, then:
  - a. Trap.
14. If `val'` is some [ref.array arrayaddr](#), then:
  - a. Let (`ref.array  $a_1$` ) be the destructuring of `val'`.
  - b. If `val` is some [ref.array arrayaddr](#), then:
    - 1) If  $a_1 < |z.arrays|$  and  $i_1 + n > |z.arrays[a_1].fields|$ , then:
      - a) Trap.
    - 2) Let (`ref.array  $a_2$` ) be the destructuring of `val`.
    - 3) If  $a_2 \geq |z.arrays|$ , then:
      - a) Do nothing.
    - 4) Else if  $i_2 + n > |z.arrays[a_2].fields|$ , then:
      - a) Trap.
    - 5) If  $n = 0$ , then:
      - a) Do nothing.
    - 6) Else:
      - a) Assert: Due to [validation](#), the [expansion](#) of `z.types[ $x_2$ ]` is some [array arraytypes](#).
      - b) Let (`array arraytypes0`) be the destructuring of the [expansion](#) of `z.types[ $x_2$ ]`.
      - c) Let (`mut?  $zt_2$` ) be the destructuring of `arraytypes0`.
      - d) Let `sx?` be `sx( $zt_2$ )`.
      - e) Push the value (`ref.array  $a_1$` ) to the stack.
      - f) If  $i_1 \leq i_2$ , then:
        1. Push the value (`i32.const  $i_1$` ) to the stack.
        2. Push the value (`ref.array  $a_2$` ) to the stack.
        3. Push the value (`i32.const  $i_2$` ) to the stack.
        4. Execute the instruction (`array.get_sx?  $x_2$` ).
        5. Execute the instruction (`array.set  $x_1$` ).
        6. Push the value (`ref.array  $a_1$` ) to the stack.
        7. Push the value (`i32.const  $i_1 + 1$` ) to the stack.

8. Push the value (`ref.array a2`) to the stack.
9. Push the value (`i32.const i2 + 1`) to the stack.
- g) Else:
  1. Push the value (`i32.const i1 + n - 1`) to the stack.
  2. Push the value (`ref.array a2`) to the stack.
  3. Push the value (`i32.const i2 + n - 1`) to the stack.
  4. Execute the instruction (`array.get_st? x2`).
  5. Execute the instruction (`array.set x1`).
  6. Push the value (`ref.array a1`) to the stack.
  7. Push the value (`i32.const i1`) to the stack.
  8. Push the value (`ref.array a2`) to the stack.
  9. Push the value (`i32.const i2`) to the stack.
- h) Push the value (`i32.const n - 1`) to the stack.
- i) Execute the instruction (`array.copy x1 x2`).

#### Todo

(3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”. (5) Use “the expansion of” instead of \$expand function application. + Was too deeply nested Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the `current frame`.
2. Assert: due to `validation`, the `defined type`  $F.module.types[y]$  exists.
3. Let `deftype` be the `defined type`  $F.module.types[y]$ .
4. Assert: due to `validation`, the `expansion of` `deftype` is an `array type`.
5. Let `array mut st` be the `expanded array type` `deftype`.
6. Assert: due to `validation`, a `value of type i32` is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value `i32.const n` from the stack.
8. Assert: due to `validation`, a `value of type i32` is on the top of the stack.
9. Pop the value `i32.const s` from the stack.
10. Assert: due to `validation`, a `value of type (ref null y)` is on the top of the stack.
11. Pop the value `ref2` from the stack.
12. Assert: due to `validation`, a `value of type i32` is on the top of the stack.
13. Pop the value `i32.const d` from the stack.
14. Assert: due to `validation`, a `value of type (ref null x)` is on the top of the stack.
15. Pop the value `ref1` from the stack.
16. If `ref1` is `ref.null t`, then:
  - a. Trap.
17. Assert: due to `validation`, `ref1` is an `array reference`.
18. Let `ref.array a1` be the reference value `ref1`.
19. If `ref2` is `ref.null t`, then:
  - a. Trap.

20. Assert: due to **validation**,  $ref_2$  is an **array reference**.
21. Let  $ref.array\ a_2$  be the reference value  $ref_2$ .
22. Assert: due to **validation**, the **array instance**  $S.arrays[a_1]$  exists.
23. Assert: due to **validation**, the **array instance**  $S.arrays[a_2]$  exists.
24. If  $d + n$  is larger than the length of  $S.arrays[a_1].fields$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
25. If  $s + n$  is larger than the length of  $S.arrays[a_2].fields$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
26. If  $n = 0$ , then:
  - a. Return.
27. If  $d \leq s$ , then:
  - a. Push the value  $ref.array\ a_1$  to the stack.
  - b. Push the value  $i32.const\ d$  to the stack.
  - c. Push the value  $ref.array\ a_2$  to the stack.
  - d. Push the value  $i32.const\ s$  to the stack.
  - e. Execute  $getfield(st)$ .
  - f. Execute the instruction  $array.set\ x$ .
  - g. Push the value  $ref.array\ a_1$  to the stack.
  - h. Assert: due to the earlier check against the array size,  $d + 1 < 2^{32}$ .
  - i. Push the value  $i32.const\ (d + 1)$  to the stack.
  - j. Push the value  $ref.array\ a_2$  to the stack.
  - k. Assert: due to the earlier check against the array size,  $s + 1 < 2^{32}$ .
  - l. Push the value  $i32.const\ (s + 1)$  to the stack.
28. Else:
  - a. Push the value  $ref.array\ a_1$  to the stack.
  - b. Assert: due to the earlier check against the array size,  $d + n - 1 < 2^{32}$ .
  - c. Push the value  $i32.const\ (d + n - 1)$  to the stack.
  - d. Push the value  $ref.array\ a_2$  to the stack.
  - e. Assert: due to the earlier check against the array size,  $s + n - 1 < 2^{32}$ .
  - f. Push the value  $i32.const\ (s + n - 1)$  to the stack.
  - g. Execute  $getfield(st)$ .
  - h. Execute the instruction  $array.set\ x$ .
  - i. Push the value  $ref.array\ a_1$  to the stack.
  - j. Push the value  $i32.const\ d$  to the stack.
  - k. Push the value  $ref.array\ a_2$  to the stack.
  - l. Push the value  $i32.const\ s$  to the stack.
29. Push the value  $i32.const\ (n - 1)$  to the stack.
30. Execute the instruction  $array.copy\ x\ y$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
& z; (\text{ref.null } ht_1) \text{ (i32.const } i_1) \text{ ref (i32.const } i_2) \text{ (i32.const } n) \text{ (array.copy } x_1 \text{ } x_2) \quad \hookrightarrow \text{ trap} \\
& z; \text{ref (i32.const } i_1) \text{ (ref.null } ht_2) \text{ (i32.const } i_2) \text{ (i32.const } n) \text{ (array.copy } x_1 \text{ } x_2) \quad \hookrightarrow \text{ trap} \\
& z; (\text{ref.array } a_1) \text{ (i32.const } i_1) \text{ (ref.array } a_2) \text{ (i32.const } i_2) \text{ (i32.const } n) \text{ (array.copy } x_1 \text{ } x_2) \quad \hookrightarrow \text{ trap} \\
& \quad \text{if } i_1 + n > |z.\text{arrays}[a_1].\text{fields}| \\
& z; (\text{ref.array } a_1) \text{ (i32.const } i_1) \text{ (ref.array } a_2) \text{ (i32.const } i_2) \text{ (i32.const } n) \text{ (array.copy } x_1 \text{ } x_2) \quad \hookrightarrow \text{ trap} \\
& \quad \text{if } i_2 + n > |z.\text{arrays}[a_2].\text{fields}| \\
& z; (\text{ref.array } a_1) \text{ (i32.const } i_1) \text{ (ref.array } a_2) \text{ (i32.const } i_2) \text{ (i32.const } n) \text{ (array.copy } x_1 \text{ } x_2) \quad \hookrightarrow \epsilon \\
& \quad \text{otherwise, if } n = 0 \\
& z; (\text{ref.array } a_1) \text{ (i32.const } i_1) \text{ (ref.array } a_2) \text{ (i32.const } i_2) \text{ (i32.const } n) \text{ (array.copy } x_1 \text{ } x_2) \quad \hookrightarrow \\
& \quad (\text{ref.array } a_1) \text{ (i32.const } i_1) \\
& \quad (\text{ref.array } a_2) \text{ (i32.const } i_2) \\
& \quad (\text{array.get\_sx}^? x_2) \text{ (array.set } x_1) \\
& \quad (\text{ref.array } a_1) \text{ (i32.const } i_1 + 1) \text{ (ref.array } a_2) \text{ (i32.const } i_2 + 1) \text{ (i32.const } n - 1) \text{ (array.copy } x_1 \text{ } x_2) \\
& \quad \text{otherwise, if } z.\text{types}[x_2] \approx \text{array (mut}^? zt_2) \\
& \quad \quad \wedge i_1 \leq i_2 \wedge sx^? = sx(zt_2) \\
& z; (\text{ref.array } a_1) \text{ (i32.const } i_1) \text{ (ref.array } a_2) \text{ (i32.const } i_2) \text{ (i32.const } n) \text{ (array.copy } x_1 \text{ } x_2) \quad \hookrightarrow \\
& \quad (\text{ref.array } a_1) \text{ (i32.const } i_1 + n - 1) \\
& \quad (\text{ref.array } a_2) \text{ (i32.const } i_2 + n - 1) \\
& \quad (\text{array.get\_sx}^? x_2) \text{ (array.set } x_1) \\
& \quad (\text{ref.array } a_1) \text{ (i32.const } i_1) \text{ (ref.array } a_2) \text{ (i32.const } i_2) \text{ (i32.const } n - 1) \text{ (array.copy } x_1 \text{ } x_2) \\
& \quad \text{otherwise, if } z.\text{types}[x_2] \approx \text{array (mut}^? zt_2) \\
& \quad \quad \wedge sx^? = sx(zt_2)
\end{aligned}$$

Where:

$$\begin{aligned}
sx(\text{consttype}) &= \epsilon \\
sx(\text{packtype}) &= s
\end{aligned}$$

`array.init_data x y`

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [number type i32](#) is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $(\text{i32.const } n)$  from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [number type i32](#) is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $(\text{i32.const } j)$  from the stack.
6. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [number type i32](#) is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value  $(\text{i32.const } i)$  from the stack.
8. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value is on the top of the stack.
9. Pop the value  $val$  from the stack.
10. If  $val$  is some [ref.null heaptype](#), then:
  - a. Trap.
11. If  $val$  is some [ref.array arrayaddr](#), then:
  - a. Let  $(\text{ref.array } a)$  be the destructuring of  $val$ .
  - b. If  $a < |z.\text{arrays}|$  and  $i + n > |z.\text{arrays}[a].\text{fields}|$ , then:
    - 1) Trap.
  - c. If the expansion of  $z.\text{types}[x]$  is some [array arraytype](#), then:
    - 1) Let  $(\text{array arraytype}_0)$  be the destructuring of the expansion of  $z.\text{types}[x]$ .
    - 2) Let  $(\text{mut}^? zt)$  be the destructuring of  $\text{arraytype}_0$ .
    - 3) If  $j + n \cdot |zt|/8 > |z.\text{datas}[y].\text{bytes}|$ , then:

- a) Trap.
- 4) If  $n = 0$ , then:
  - a) Do nothing.
- 5) Else:
  - a) Let  $c$  be the result for which  $\text{bytes}_{zt}(c) = z.\text{datas}[y].\text{bytes}[j : |zt|/8]$ .
  - b) Push the value  $(\text{ref.array } a)$  to the stack.
  - c) Push the value  $(\text{i32.const } i)$  to the stack.
  - d) Push the value  $\text{unpack}(zt).\text{const unpack}_{zt}(c)$  to the stack.
  - e) Execute the instruction  $(\text{array.set } x)$ .
  - f) Push the value  $(\text{ref.array } a)$  to the stack.
  - g) Push the value  $(\text{i32.const } i + 1)$  to the stack.
  - h) Push the value  $(\text{i32.const } j + |zt|/8)$  to the stack.
  - i) Push the value  $(\text{i32.const } n - 1)$  to the stack.
  - j) Execute the instruction  $(\text{array.init\_data } x \ y)$ .
- d. Else if  $n = 0$ , then:
  - 1) Do nothing.

#### Todo

(7) Render  $\$inverse\_$  with display hint. Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the **current frame**.
2. Assert: due to **validation**, the **defined type**  $F.\text{module.types}[x]$  exists.
3. Let  $\text{deftype}$  be the **defined type**  $F.\text{module.types}[x]$ .
4. Assert: due to **validation**, the **expansion** of  $\text{deftype}$  is an **array type**.
5. Let  $\text{array } ft$  be the **expanded array type**  $\text{deftype}$ .
6. Assert: due to **validation**, the **data address**  $F.\text{module.datas}[y]$  exists.
7. Let  $da$  be the **data address**  $F.\text{module.datas}[y]$ .
8. Assert: due to **validation**, the **data instance**  $S.\text{datas}[da]$  exists.
9. Let  $\text{datainst}$  be the **data instance**  $S.\text{datas}[da]$ .
10. Assert: due to **validation**, three values of type **i32** are on the top of the stack.
11. Pop the value  $\text{i32.const } n$  from the stack.
12. Pop the value  $\text{i32.const } s$  from the stack.
13. Pop the value  $\text{i32.const } d$  from the stack.
14. Assert: due to **validation**, a **value** of type  $(\text{ref null } x)$  is on the top of the stack.
15. Pop the value  $\text{ref}$  from the stack.
16. If  $\text{ref}$  is **ref.null**  $t$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
17. Assert: due to **validation**,  $\text{ref}$  is an **array reference**.
18. Let  $\text{ref.array } a$  be the reference value  $\text{ref}$ .



19. Assert: due to **validation**, the array instance  $S.\text{arrays}[a]$  exists.
20. Assert: due to **validation**, the field type  $ft$  has a defined bit width.
21. Let  $z$  be the bit width of field type  $ft$  divided by eight.
22. If  $d + n$  is larger than the length of  $S.\text{arrays}[a].\text{fields}$ , or the sum of  $s$  and  $n$  times  $z$  is larger than the length of  $\text{datainst}.\text{bytes}$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
23. If  $n = 0$ , then:
  - a. Return.
24. Let  $b^*$  be the byte sequence  $\text{datainst}.\text{bytes}[s : z]$ .
25. Let  $t$  be the value type  $\text{unpack}(ft)$ .
26. Assert: due to **validation**,  $\text{bytes}_{ft}$  is defined.
27. Let  $c$  be the constant for which  $\text{bytes}_{ft}(c)$  is  $b^*$ .
28. Push the value  $\text{ref.array } a$  to the stack.
29. Push the value  $\text{i32.const } d$  to the stack.
30. Push the value  $t.\text{const } c$  to the stack.
31. Execute the instruction  $\text{array.set } x$ .
32. Push the value  $\text{ref.array } a$  to the stack.
33. Push the value  $\text{i32.const } (d + 1)$  to the stack.
34. Push the value  $\text{i32.const } (s + z)$  to the stack.
35. Push the value  $\text{i32.const } (n - 1)$  to the stack.
36. Execute the instruction  $\text{array.init\_data } x y$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 & z; (\text{ref.null } ht) (\text{i32.const } i) (\text{i32.const } j) (\text{i32.const } n) (\text{array.init\_data } x y) \hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\
 & z; (\text{ref.array } a) (\text{i32.const } i) (\text{i32.const } j) (\text{i32.const } n) (\text{array.init\_data } x y) \hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\
 & \quad \text{if } i + n > |z.\text{arrays}[a].\text{fields}| \\
 & z; (\text{ref.array } a) (\text{i32.const } i) (\text{i32.const } j) (\text{i32.const } n) (\text{array.init\_data } x y) \hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\
 & \quad \text{if } z.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut? } zt) \\
 & \quad \quad \wedge j + n \cdot |zt|/8 > |z.\text{datas}[y].\text{bytes}| \\
 & z; (\text{ref.array } a) (\text{i32.const } i) (\text{i32.const } j) (\text{i32.const } n) (\text{array.init\_data } x y) \hookrightarrow \epsilon \\
 & \quad \text{otherwise, if } n = 0 \\
 & z; (\text{ref.array } a) (\text{i32.const } i) (\text{i32.const } j) (\text{i32.const } n) (\text{array.init\_data } x y) \hookrightarrow \\
 & \quad (\text{ref.array } a) (\text{i32.const } i) (\text{unpack}(zt).\text{const } \text{unpack}_{zt}(c)) (\text{array.set } x) \\
 & \quad (\text{ref.array } a) (\text{i32.const } i + 1) (\text{i32.const } j + |zt|/8) (\text{i32.const } n - 1) (\text{array.init\_data } x y) \\
 & \quad \text{otherwise, if } z.\text{types}[x] \approx \text{array } (\text{mut? } zt) \\
 & \quad \quad \wedge \text{bytes}_{zt}(c) = z.\text{datas}[y].\text{bytes}[j : |zt|/8]
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{array.init\_elem } x y$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of number type  $\text{i32}$  is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $(\text{i32.const } n)$  from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of number type  $\text{i32}$  is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $(\text{i32.const } j)$  from the stack.
6. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of number type  $\text{i32}$  is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value  $(\text{i32.const } i)$  from the stack.
8. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.

9. Pop the value *val* from the stack.
10. If *val* is some *ref.null heaptypes*, then:
  - a. Trap.
11. If *val* is some *ref.array arrayaddr*, then:
  - a. Let (*ref.array a*) be the destructuring of *val*.
  - b. If  $a < |z.arrays|$  and  $i + n > |z.arrays[a].fields|$ , then:
    - 1) Trap.
  - c. If  $j + n > |z.elems[y].elem|$ , then:
    - 1) Trap.
  - d. If  $n = 0$ , then:
    - 1) Do nothing.
  - e. Else if  $j < |z.elems[y].elem|$ , then:
    - 1) Let *ref* be the reference value  $z.elems[y].elem[j]$ .
    - 2) Push the value (*ref.array a*) to the stack.
    - 3) Push the value (*i32.const i*) to the stack.
    - 4) Push the value *ref* to the stack.
    - 5) Execute the instruction (*array.set x*).
    - 6) Push the value (*ref.array a*) to the stack.
    - 7) Push the value (*i32.const i + 1*) to the stack.
    - 8) Push the value (*i32.const j + 1*) to the stack.
    - 9) Push the value (*i32.const n - 1*) to the stack.
    - 10) Execute the instruction (*array.init\_elem x y*).

### Todo

- (3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”.

```

z; (ref.null ht) (i32.const i) (i32.const j) (i32.const n) (array.init_elem x y)  ↦ trap
z; (ref.array a) (i32.const i) (i32.const j) (i32.const n) (array.init_elem x y)  ↦ trap
  if i + n > |z.arrays[a].fields|
z; (ref.array a) (i32.const i) (i32.const j) (i32.const n) (array.init_elem x y)  ↦ trap
  if j + n > |z.elems[y].elem|
z; (ref.array a) (i32.const i) (i32.const j) (i32.const n) (array.init_elem x y)  ↦ ε
  otherwise, if n = 0
z; (ref.array a) (i32.const i) (i32.const j) (i32.const n) (array.init_elem x y)  ↦
  (ref.array a) (i32.const i) ref (array.set x)
  (ref.array a) (i32.const i + 1) (i32.const j + 1) (i32.const n - 1) (array.init_elem x y)
  otherwise, if ref = z.elems[y].elem[j]

```

*any.convert\_extern*

1. Assert: Due to *validation*, a value is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value *val* from the stack.
3. If *val* is some *ref.null heaptypes*, then:

- a. Push the value (`ref.null any`) to the stack.
4. If `val` is some `ref.extern addrref`, then:
  - a. Let (`ref.extern addrref`) be the destructuring of `val`.
  - b. Push the value `addrref` to the stack.

**Todo**

(3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”.

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{ref.null } ht) \text{ any.convert\_extern} &\hookrightarrow (\text{ref.null any}) \\ (\text{ref.extern } addrref) \text{ any.convert\_extern} &\hookrightarrow addrref \end{aligned}$$

`extern.convert_any`

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value `val` from the stack.
3. If `val` is some `ref.null heapttype`, then:
  - a. Push the value (`ref.null extern`) to the stack.
4. If `val` is address value, then:
  - a. Let `addrref` be the instruction `val`.
  - b. Push the value (`ref.extern addrref`) to the stack.

**Todo**

(3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”.

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{ref.null } ht) \text{ extern.convert\_any} &\hookrightarrow (\text{ref.null extern}) \\ addrref \text{ extern.convert\_any} &\hookrightarrow (\text{ref.extern } addrref) \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.6.4 Vector Instructions

Vector instructions that operate bitwise are handled as integer operations of respective bit width.

$$op_{vN}(i_1, \dots, i_k) = iop_N(i_1, \dots, i_k)$$

Most other vector instructions are defined in terms of [numeric operators](#) that are applied lane-wise according to the given [shape](#).

$$op_{txN}(n_1, \dots, n_k) = \text{lanes}_{txN}^{-1}(op_t(i_1, \dots, i_k)^*) \quad (\text{if } i_1^* = \text{lanes}_{txN}(n_1) \wedge \dots \wedge i_k^* = \text{lanes}_{txN}(n_k))$$

**Note**

For example, the result of instruction `i32x4.add` applied to operands `v1, v2` invokes `add_i32x4(v1, v2)`, which maps to `lanes_i32x4^{-1}(add_i32(i_1, i_2)^*)`, where `i_1^*` and `i_2^*` are sequences resulting from invoking `lanes_i32x4(v1)` and `lanes_i32x4(v2)` respectively.

For non-deterministic operators this definition is generalized to sets:

$$op_{txN}(n_1, \dots, n_k) = \{\text{lanes}_{txN}^{-1}(i^*) \mid i^* \in \times op_t(i_1, \dots, i_k)^* \wedge i_1^* = \text{lanes}_{txN}(n_1) \wedge \dots \wedge i_k^* = \text{lanes}_{txN}(n_k)\}$$

where  $\times \{x^*\}^N$  transforms a sequence of  $N$  sets of values into a set of sequences of  $N$  values by computing the set product:

$$\times(S_1 \dots S_N) = \{x_1 \dots x_N \mid x_1 \in S_1 \wedge \dots \wedge x_N \in S_N\}$$

The remaining vector operators use **individual definitions**.

#### *v128.const c*

1. Push the value *v128.const c* to the stack.

#### **Note**

No formal reduction rule is required for this instruction, since *const* instructions coincide with *values*.

#### *v128.vvunop*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (*v128.const c<sub>1</sub>*) from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to **validation**,  $|vvunop_{v128}(c_1)| > 0$ .
4. Let  $c$  be an element of  $vvunop_{v128}(c_1)$ .
5. Push the value (*v128.const c*) to the stack.

$$(v128.const\ c_1)\ (v128.vvunop) \hookrightarrow (v128.const\ c) \quad \text{if } c \in vvunop_{v128}(c_1)$$

#### *v128.vvbinop*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (*v128.const c<sub>2</sub>*) from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value (*v128.const c<sub>1</sub>*) from the stack.
5. Assert: Due to **validation**,  $|vvbinop_{v128}(c_1, c_2)| > 0$ .
6. Let  $c$  be an element of  $vvbinop_{v128}(c_1, c_2)$ .
7. Push the value (*v128.const c*) to the stack.

$$(v128.const\ c_1)\ (v128.const\ c_2)\ (v128.vvbinop) \hookrightarrow (v128.const\ c) \quad \text{if } c \in vvbinop_{v128}(c_1, c_2)$$

#### *v128.vvternop*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (*v128.const c<sub>3</sub>*) from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value (*v128.const c<sub>2</sub>*) from the stack.
5. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
6. Pop the value (*v128.const c<sub>1</sub>*) from the stack.
7. Assert: Due to **validation**,  $|vvternop_{v128}(c_1, c_2, c_3)| > 0$ .
8. Let  $c$  be an element of  $vvternop_{v128}(c_1, c_2, c_3)$ .

9. Push the value (`v128.const c`) to the stack.

$$(v128.const\ c_1)\ (v128.const\ c_2)\ (v128.const\ c_3)\ (v128.vvternop) \hookrightarrow (v128.const\ c) \\ \text{if } c \in vvternop_{v128}(c_1, c_2, c_3)$$

#### *v128.any\_true*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (`v128.const c1`) from the stack.
3. Let *c* be `ine|v128|(c1, 0)`.
4. Push the value (`i32.const c`) to the stack.

$$(v128.const\ c_1)\ (v128.any\_true) \hookrightarrow (i32.const\ c) \quad \text{if } c = ine_{|v128|}(c_1, 0)$$

#### *sh.vunop*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (`v128.const c1`) from the stack.
3. If `vunopsh(c1)` is empty, then:
  - a. Trap.
4. Let *c* be an element of `vunopsh(c1)`.
5. Push the value (`v128.const c`) to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} (v128.const\ c_1)\ (sh.vunop) &\hookrightarrow (v128.const\ c) && \text{if } c \in vunop_{sh}(c_1) \\ (v128.const\ c_1)\ (sh.vunop) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } vunop_{sh}(c_1) = \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

#### *sh.vbinop*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (`v128.const c2`) from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value (`v128.const c1`) from the stack.
5. If `vbinopsh(c1, c2)` is empty, then:
  - a. Trap.
6. Let *c* be an element of `vbinopsh(c1, c2)`.
7. Push the value (`v128.const c`) to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} (v128.const\ c_1)\ (v128.const\ c_2)\ (sh.vbinop) &\hookrightarrow (v128.const\ c) && \text{if } c \in vbinop_{sh}(c_1, c_2) \\ (v128.const\ c_1)\ (v128.const\ c_2)\ (sh.vbinop) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } vbinop_{sh}(c_1, c_2) = \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

#### *sh.vternop*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (`v128.const c3`) from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value (`v128.const c2`) from the stack.
5. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
6. Pop the value (`v128.const c1`) from the stack.
7. If `vternopsh(c1, c2, c3)` is empty, then:
  - a. Trap.

8. Let  $c$  be an element of  $vternop_{sh}(c_1, c_2, c_3)$ .

9. Push the value  $(v128.const\ c)$  to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} (v128.const\ c_1)\ (v128.const\ c_2)\ (v128.const\ c_3)\ (sh.vternop) &\hookrightarrow (v128.const\ c) && \text{if } c \in vternop_{sh}(c_1, c_2, c_3) \\ (v128.const\ c_1)\ (v128.const\ c_2)\ (v128.const\ c_3)\ (sh.vternop) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } vternop_{sh}(c_1, c_2, c_3) = \epsilon \end{aligned}$$

#### *sh.vtestop*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.

2. Pop the value  $(v128.const\ c_1)$  from the stack.

3. Let  $i$  be  $vtestop_{sh}(c_1)$ .

4. Push the value  $(i32.const\ i)$  to the stack.

$$(v128.const\ c_1)\ (sh.vtestop) \hookrightarrow (i32.const\ i) \quad \text{if } i = vtestop_{sh}(c_1)$$

#### *sh.vrelop*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.

2. Pop the value  $(v128.const\ c_2)$  from the stack.

3. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.

4. Pop the value  $(v128.const\ c_1)$  from the stack.

5. Let  $c$  be  $vrelop_{sh}(c_1, c_2)$ .

6. Push the value  $(v128.const\ c)$  to the stack.

$$(v128.const\ c_1)\ (v128.const\ c_2)\ (sh.vrelop) \hookrightarrow (v128.const\ c) \quad \text{if } c = vrelop_{sh}(c_1, c_2)$$

#### *sh.vshiftp*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type i32** is on the top of the stack.

2. Pop the value  $(i32.const\ i)$  from the stack.

3. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.

4. Pop the value  $(v128.const\ c_1)$  from the stack.

5. Let  $c$  be  $vshiftp_{sh}(c_1, i)$ .

6. Push the value  $(v128.const\ c)$  to the stack.

$$(v128.const\ c_1)\ (i32.const\ i)\ (sh.vshiftp) \hookrightarrow (v128.const\ c) \quad \text{if } c = vshiftp_{sh}(c_1, i)$$

#### *sh.bitmask*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.

2. Pop the value  $(v128.const\ c_1)$  from the stack.

3. Let  $c$  be  $bitmask_{sh}(c_1)$ .

4. Push the value  $(i32.const\ c)$  to the stack.

$$(v128.const\ c_1)\ (sh.bitmask) \hookrightarrow (i32.const\ c) \quad \text{if } c = bitmask_{sh}(c_1)$$

*sh.swizzlop*

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [vector type v128](#) is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value  $(\text{v128.const } c_2)$  from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [vector type v128](#) is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value  $(\text{v128.const } c_1)$  from the stack.
5. Let  $c$  be  $\text{swizzlop}_{sh}(c_1, c_2)$ .
6. Push the value  $(\text{v128.const } c)$  to the stack.

$$(\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{v128.const } c_2) (\text{sh.swizzlop}) \hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) \text{ if } c = \text{swizzlop}_{sh}(c_1, c_2)$$

*sh.shuffle i\**

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [vector type v128](#) is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value  $(\text{v128.const } c_2)$  from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [vector type v128](#) is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value  $(\text{v128.const } c_1)$  from the stack.
5. Let  $c$  be  $\text{shuffle}_{sh}(i^*, c_1, c_2)$ .
6. Push the value  $(\text{v128.const } c)$  to the stack.

$$(\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{v128.const } c_2) (\text{sh.shuffle } i^*) \hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) \text{ if } c = \text{shuffle}_{sh}(i^*, c_1, c_2)$$

*inxM.splat*

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value  $(\text{numtype}_0.\text{const } c_1)$  from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to [validation](#),  $\text{numtype}_0 = \text{unpack}(\text{inx})$ .
4. Let  $c$  be  $\text{lanes}_{\text{inx}M}^{-1}(\text{pack}_{\text{inx}}(c_1)^M)$ .
5. Push the value  $(\text{v128.const } c)$  to the stack.

$$(\text{unpack}(\text{inx}).\text{const } c_1) (\text{inxM.splat}) \hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) \text{ if } c = \text{lanes}_{\text{inx}M}^{-1}(\text{pack}_{\text{inx}}(c_1)^M)$$

*lanetypeexM.extract\_lane\_sx' i*

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [vector type v128](#) is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value  $(\text{v128.const } c_1)$  from the stack.
3. If  $sx'^?$  is not defined and *lanetype* is number type, then:
  - a. Let  $nt$  be the [lane type](#) *lanetype*.
  - b. If  $i < |\text{lanes}_{ntM}(c_1)|$ , then:
    - 1) Let  $c_2$  be  $\text{lanes}_{ntM}(c_1)[i]$ .
    - 2) Push the value  $(nt.\text{const } c_2)$  to the stack.
4. If *lanetype* is packed type, then:
  - a. Let  $pt$  be the [lane type](#) *lanetype*.
  - b. If  $sx'^?$  is defined, then:
    - 1) Let  $sx$  be  $sx'^?$ .
    - 2) If  $i < |\text{lanes}_{ptM}(c_1)|$ , then:
      - a) Let  $c_2$  be  $\text{extend}_{|pt|,32}^{sx}(\text{lanes}_{ptM}(c_1)[i])$ .

b) Push the value (`i32.const`  $c_2$ ) to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{ntxM.extract\_lane } i) &\hookrightarrow (\text{nt.const } c_2) \quad \text{if } c_2 = \text{lanes}_{\text{ntxM}}(c_1)[i] \\ (\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{ptxM.extract\_lane\_sx } i) &\hookrightarrow (\text{i32.const } c_2) \quad \text{if } c_2 = \text{extend}_{|\text{pt}|, 32}^{\text{sx}}(\text{lanes}_{\text{ptxM}}(c_1)[i]) \end{aligned}$$

`inxM.replace_lane`  $i$

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (`numtype0.const`  $c_2$ ) from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, `numtype0 = unpack`(`inx`).
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type** `v128` is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value (`v128.const`  $c_1$ ) from the stack.
6. Let  $c$  be  $\text{lanes}_{\text{inxM}}^{-1}(\text{lanes}_{\text{inxM}}(c_1)[[i] = \text{pack}_{\text{inx}}(c_2)])$ .
7. Push the value (`v128.const`  $c$ ) to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{unpack}(\text{inx}).\text{const } c_2) (\text{inxM.replace\_lane } i) &\hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) \\ \text{if } c = \text{lanes}_{\text{inxM}}^{-1}(\text{lanes}_{\text{inxM}}(c_1)[[i] = \text{pack}_{\text{inx}}(c_2)]) \end{aligned}$$

`sh2.vextunop_sh1`

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type** `v128` is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (`v128.const`  $c_1$ ) from the stack.
3. Let  $c$  be `vextunopsh1, sh2`( $c_1$ ).
4. Push the value (`v128.const`  $c$ ) to the stack.

$$(\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{sh}_2.\text{vextunop\_sh}_1) \hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) \quad \text{if } \text{vextunop}_{\text{sh}_1, \text{sh}_2}(c_1) = c$$

`sh2.vextbinop_sh1`

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type** `v128` is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (`v128.const`  $c_2$ ) from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type** `v128` is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value (`v128.const`  $c_1$ ) from the stack.
5. Let  $c$  be `vextbinopsh1, sh2`( $c_1, c_2$ ).
6. Push the value (`v128.const`  $c$ ) to the stack.

$$(\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{v128.const } c_2) (\text{sh}_2.\text{vextbinop\_sh}_1) \hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) \quad \text{if } \text{vextbinop}_{\text{sh}_1, \text{sh}_2}(c_1, c_2) = c$$

`sh2.vextternop_sh1`

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type** `v128` is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (`v128.const`  $c_3$ ) from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type** `v128` is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value (`v128.const`  $c_2$ ) from the stack.
5. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type** `v128` is on the top of the stack.
6. Pop the value (`v128.const`  $c_1$ ) from the stack.
7. Let  $c$  be `vextternopsh1, sh2`( $c_1, c_2, c_3$ ).
8. Push the value (`v128.const`  $c$ ) to the stack.

$$(\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{v128.const } c_2) (\text{v128.const } c_3) (\text{sh}_2.\text{vextternop\_sh}_1) \hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) \quad \text{if } \text{vextternop}_{\text{sh}_1, \text{sh}_2}(c_1, c_2, c_3) = c$$



*sh<sub>2</sub>.narrow\_sh<sub>1</sub>\_sx*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (**v128.const** *c*<sub>2</sub>) from the stack.
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the value (**v128.const** *c*<sub>1</sub>) from the stack.
5. Let *c* be **narrow**<sup>*sx*</sup><sub>*sh<sub>1</sub>, sh<sub>2</sub>*</sub>(*c*<sub>1</sub>, *c*<sub>2</sub>).
6. Push the value (**v128.const** *c*) to the stack.

$$(\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{v128.const } c_2) (\text{sh}_2.\text{narrow\_sh}_1.\text{sx}) \hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) \text{ if } c = \text{narrow}_{\text{sh}_1, \text{sh}_2}^{\text{sx}}(c_1, c_2)$$

*sh<sub>2</sub>.vcvtop\_zero?\_sh<sub>1</sub>\_half?*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **vector type v128** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (**v128.const** *c*<sub>1</sub>) from the stack.
3. Let *c* be **vcvtop**<sub>*sh<sub>1</sub>, sh<sub>2</sub>*</sub>(*vcvtop*, *half?*, *zero?*, *c*<sub>1</sub>).
4. Push the value (**v128.const** *c*) to the stack.

$$(\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{sh}_2.\text{vcvtop\_zero?\_sh}_1.\text{half?}) \hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) \text{ if } c = \text{vcvtop}_{\text{sh}_1, \text{sh}_2}(\text{vcvtop}, \text{half?}, \text{zero?}, c_1)$$

#### 4.6.5 Variable Instructions

*local.get x*

1. Let *z* be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, *z.locals[x]* is defined.
3. Let *val* be *z.locals[x]*.
4. Push the value *val* to the stack.

$$z; (\text{local.get } x) \hookrightarrow \text{val} \text{ if } z.\text{locals}[x] = \text{val}$$

*local.set x*

1. Let *z* be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value *val* from the stack.
4. Perform *z[.locals[x] = val]*.

$$z; \text{val } (\text{local.set } x) \hookrightarrow z[.locals[x] = \text{val}]; \epsilon$$

*local.tee x*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value *val* from the stack.
3. Push the value *val* to the stack.
4. Push the value *val* to the stack.
5. Execute the instruction (**local.set** *x*).

$$\text{val } (\text{local.tee } x) \hookrightarrow \text{val val } (\text{local.set } x)$$

`global.get x`

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Let  $val$  be the `value`  $z.globals[x].value$ .
3. Push the value  $val$  to the stack.

$$z; (\text{global.get } x) \hookrightarrow val \quad \text{if } z.globals[x].value = val$$

`global.set x`

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to `validation`, a value is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $val$  from the stack.
4. Perform  $z.globals[x].value = val$ .

$$z; val (\text{global.set } x) \hookrightarrow z.globals[x].value = val; \epsilon$$

## 4.6.6 Table Instructions

`table.get x`

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to `validation`, a `number value` is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $(at.const i)$  from the stack.
4. If  $i \geq |z.tables[x].elem|$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
5. Push the value  $z.tables[x].elem[i]$  to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} z; (at.const i) (\text{table.get } x) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } i \geq |z.tables[x].elem| \\ z; (at.const i) (\text{table.get } x) &\hookrightarrow z.tables[x].elem[i] && \text{if } i < |z.tables[x].elem| \end{aligned}$$

`table.set x`

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to `validation`, a `reference value` is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $ref$  from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to `validation`, a `number value` is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $(at.const i)$  from the stack.
6. If  $i \geq |z.tables[x].elem|$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
7. Perform  $z.tables[x].elem[i] = ref$ .

$$\begin{aligned} z; (at.const i) ref (\text{table.set } x) &\hookrightarrow z; \text{trap} && \text{if } i \geq |z.tables[x].elem| \\ z; (at.const i) ref (\text{table.set } x) &\hookrightarrow z.tables[x].elem[i] = ref; \epsilon && \text{if } i < |z.tables[x].elem| \end{aligned}$$

**table.size  $x$** 

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Let  $(at\ lim\ rt)$  be the destructuring of  $z.tables[x].type$ .
3. Let  $n$  be the length of  $z.tables[x].elem$ .
4. Push the value  $(at.const\ n)$  to the stack.

$$z; (table.size\ x) \hookrightarrow (at.const\ n) \quad \text{if } |z.tables[x].elem| = n \\ \wedge z.tables[x].type = at\ lim\ rt$$

**table.grow  $x$** 

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $(at.const\ n)$  from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **reference value** is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $ref$  from the stack.
6. Either:
  - a. Let  $ti$  be the **table instance**  $growtable(z.tables[x], n, ref)$ .
  - b. Push the value  $(at.const\ |z.tables[x].elem|)$  to the stack.
  - c. Perform  $z.tables[x] = ti$ .

7. Or:

- a. Push the value  $(at.const\ signed_{|at|}^{-1}(-1))$  to the stack.

$$z; ref\ (at.const\ n)\ (table.grow\ x) \hookrightarrow z[tables[x] = ti]; (at.const\ |z.tables[x].elem|) \\ \text{if } ti = growtable(z.tables[x], n, ref)$$

$$z; ref\ (at.const\ n)\ (table.grow\ x) \hookrightarrow z; (at.const\ signed_{|at|}^{-1}(-1))$$

**Note**

The **table.grow** instruction is non-deterministic. It may either succeed, returning the old table size  $sz$ , or fail, returning  $-1$ . Failure *must* occur if the referenced table instance has a maximum size defined that would be exceeded. However, failure *can* occur in other cases as well. In practice, the choice depends on the **resources** available to the **embedder**.

**table.fill  $x$** 

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $(at.const\ n)$  from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $val$  from the stack.
6. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type**  $at$  is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value  $(numtype_0.const\ i)$  from the stack.
8. If  $i + n > |z.tables[x].elem|$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
9. If  $n = 0$ , then:

a. Do nothing.

10. Else:

a. Push the value  $(at.const\ i)$  to the stack.

b. Push the value  $val$  to the stack.

c. Execute the instruction  $(table.set\ x)$ .

d. Push the value  $(at.const\ i + 1)$  to the stack.

e. Push the value  $val$  to the stack.

f. Push the value  $(at.const\ n - 1)$  to the stack.

g. Execute the instruction  $(table.fill\ x)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} z; (at.const\ i)\ val\ (at.const\ n)\ (table.fill\ x) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } i + n > |z.tables[x].elem| \\ z; (at.const\ i)\ val\ (at.const\ n)\ (table.fill\ x) &\hookrightarrow \epsilon && \text{otherwise, if } n = 0 \\ z; (at.const\ i)\ val\ (at.const\ n)\ (table.fill\ x) &\hookrightarrow && \\ & (at.const\ i)\ val\ (table.set\ x) && \text{otherwise} \\ & (at.const\ i + 1)\ val\ (at.const\ n - 1)\ (table.fill\ x) && \end{aligned}$$

$table.copy\ x_1'\ x_2'$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.

2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.

3. Pop the value  $(at'.const\ n)$  from the stack.

4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.

5. Pop the value  $(at_2.const\ i_2)$  from the stack.

6. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.

7. Pop the value  $(at_1.const\ i_1)$  from the stack.

8. Let  $x_1$  be the **table index**  $x_1'$ .

9. Let  $x_2$  be the **table index**  $x_2'$ .

10. If  $i_1 + n > |z.tables[x_1].elem|$ , then:

a. Trap.

11. If  $i_2 + n > |z.tables[x_2].elem|$ , then:

a. Trap.

12. If  $n = 0$ , then:

a. Do nothing.

13. Else:

a. Let  $x$  be the **table index**  $x_1'$ .

b. Let  $y$  be the **table index**  $x_2'$ .

c. If  $i_1 \leq i_2$ , then:

1) Push the value  $(at_1.const\ i_1)$  to the stack.

2) Push the value  $(at_2.const\ i_2)$  to the stack.

3) Execute the instruction  $(table.get\ y)$ .

4) Execute the instruction  $(table.set\ x)$ .

5) Push the value  $(at_1.const\ i_1 + 1)$  to the stack.

6) Push the value  $(at_2.const\ i_2 + 1)$  to the stack.

d. Else:

- 1) Push the value  $(at_1.\text{const } i_1 + n - 1)$  to the stack.
- 2) Push the value  $(at_2.\text{const } i_2 + n - 1)$  to the stack.
- 3) Execute the instruction  $(\text{table.get } y)$ .
- 4) Execute the instruction  $(\text{table.set } x)$ .
- 5) Push the value  $(at_1.\text{const } i_1)$  to the stack.
- 6) Push the value  $(at_2.\text{const } i_2)$  to the stack.

e. Push the value  $(at'.\text{const } n - 1)$  to the stack.

f. Execute the instruction  $(\text{table.copy } x y)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 z; (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (at'.\text{const } n) (\text{table.copy } x_1 x_2) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\
 &\quad \text{if } i_1 + n > |z.\text{tables}[x_1].\text{elem}| \vee i_2 + n > |z.\text{tables}[x_2].\text{elem}| \\
 z; (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (at'.\text{const } n) (\text{table.copy } x y) &\hookrightarrow \epsilon \quad \text{otherwise, if } n = 0 \\
 z; (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (at'.\text{const } n) (\text{table.copy } x y) &\hookrightarrow \\
 (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (\text{table.get } y) (\text{table.set } x) &\quad \text{otherwise, if } i_1 \leq i_2 \\
 (at_1.\text{const } i_1 + 1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2 + 1) (at'.\text{const } n - 1) (\text{table.copy } x y) & \\
 z; (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (at'.\text{const } n) (\text{table.copy } x y) &\hookrightarrow \\
 (at_1.\text{const } i_1 + n - 1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2 + n - 1) (\text{table.get } y) (\text{table.set } x) &\quad \text{otherwise} \\
 (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (at'.\text{const } n - 1) (\text{table.copy } x y) &
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{table.init } x y$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type i32** is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $(i32.\text{const } n)$  from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type i32** is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $(i32.\text{const } j)$  from the stack.
6. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value  $(at.\text{const } i)$  from the stack.
8. If  $i + n > |z.\text{tables}[x].\text{elem}|$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
9. If  $j + n > |z.\text{elems}[y].\text{elem}|$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
10. If  $n = 0$ , then:
  - a. Do nothing.
11. Else if  $j < |z.\text{elems}[y].\text{elem}|$ , then:
  - a. Push the value  $(at.\text{const } i)$  to the stack.
  - b. Push the value  $z.\text{elems}[y].\text{elem}[j]$  to the stack.
  - c. Execute the instruction  $(\text{table.set } x)$ .
  - d. Push the value  $(at.\text{const } i + 1)$  to the stack.
  - e. Push the value  $(i32.\text{const } j + 1)$  to the stack.
  - f. Push the value  $(i32.\text{const } n - 1)$  to the stack.
  - g. Execute the instruction  $(\text{table.init } x y)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
& z; (at.const\ i) (i32.const\ j) (i32.const\ n) (table.init\ x\ y) \hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\
& \quad \text{if } i + n > |z.tables[x].elem| \vee j + n > |z.elems[y].elem| \\
& z; (at.const\ i) (i32.const\ j) (i32.const\ n) (table.init\ x\ y) \hookrightarrow \epsilon \quad \text{otherwise, if } n = 0 \\
& z; (at.const\ i) (i32.const\ j) (i32.const\ n) (table.init\ x\ y) \hookrightarrow \\
& \quad (at.const\ i) z.elems[y].elem[j] (table.set\ x) \quad \text{otherwise} \\
& \quad (at.const\ i + 1) (i32.const\ j + 1) (i32.const\ n - 1) (table.init\ x\ y)
\end{aligned}$$

**elem.drop**  $x$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Perform  $z[.elems[x].elem] = \epsilon$ .

$$z; (\text{elem.drop } x) \hookrightarrow z[.elems[x].elem = \epsilon]; \epsilon$$

## 4.6.7 Memory Instructions

### Note

The alignment *memarg.align* in load and store instructions does not affect the semantics. It is a hint that the offset *ea* at which the memory is accessed is intended to satisfy the property  $ea \bmod 2^{\text{memarg.align}} = 0$ . A WebAssembly implementation can use this hint to optimize for the intended use. Unaligned access violating that property is still allowed and must succeed regardless of the annotation. However, it may be substantially slower on some hardware.

$nt'.loadloadop^? x\ ao$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to validation, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $(at.const\ i)$  from the stack.
4. If  $loadop^?$  is not defined, then:
  - a. Let  $nt$  be the **number type**  $nt'$ .
  - b. If  $i + ao.offset + |nt|/8 > |z.mems[x].bytes|$ , then:
    - 1) Trap.
  - c. Let  $c$  be the result for which  $bytes_{nt}(c) = z.mems[x].bytes[i + ao.offset : |nt|/8]$ .
  - d. Push the value  $(nt.const\ c)$  to the stack.
5. If  $nt'$  is **in**, then:
  - a. If  $loadop^?$  is defined, then:
    - 1) Let  $loadop\_o$  be  $loadop^?$ .
    - 2) Let  $n\_sx$  be the destructuring of  $loadop\_o$ .
    - 3) If  $i + ao.offset + n/8 > |z.mems[x].bytes|$ , then:
      - a) Trap.
  - b. Let **in** be the **number type**  $nt'$ .
  - c. If  $loadop^?$  is defined, then:
    - 1) Let  $loadop\_o$  be  $loadop^?$ .
    - 2) Let  $n\_sx$  be the destructuring of  $loadop\_o$ .
    - 3) Let  $c$  be the result for which  $bytes_{in}(c) = z.mems[x].bytes[i + ao.offset : n/8]$ .

- 4) Push the value  $(iV.\text{const } \text{extend}_{n,|iN|}^{sx}(c))$  to the stack.

#### Todo

(7) Render `$inverse_of_nbytes` with display hint. Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the `current frame`.
  2. Assert: due to `validation`,  $F.\text{module.mems}[x]$  exists.
  3. Let  $a$  be the `memory address`  $F.\text{module.mems}[x]$ .
  4. Assert: due to `validation`,  $S.\text{mems}[a]$  exists.
  5. Let  $mem$  be the `memory instance`  $S.\text{mems}[a]$ .
  6. Assert: due to `validation`, a value of some `address type`  $at$  is on the top of the stack.
  7. Pop the value  $at.\text{const } i$  from the stack.
  8. Let  $ea$  be the integer  $i + \text{memarg.offset}$ .
  9. If  $N$  is not part of the instruction, then:
    - a. Let  $N$  be the `bit width`  $|t|$  of `number type`  $t$ .
  10. If  $ea + N/8$  is larger than the length of  $mem.\text{bytes}$ , then:
    - a. Trap.
  11. Let  $b^*$  be the byte sequence  $mem.\text{bytes}[ea : N/8]$ .
  12. If  $N$  and  $sx$  are part of the instruction, then:
    - a. Let  $n$  be the integer for which  $\text{bytes}_{iN}(n) = b^*$ .
    - b. Let  $c$  be the result of computing  $\text{extend}_{N,|t|}^{sx}(n)$ .
  13. Else:
    - a. Let  $c$  be the constant for which  $\text{bytes}_t(c) = b^*$ .
  14. Push the value  $t.\text{const } c$  to the stack.
- $$\begin{aligned}
 z; (at.\text{const } i) (nt.\text{load } x \text{ } ao) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } i + ao.\text{offset} + |nt|/8 > |z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}| \\
 z; (at.\text{const } i) (nt.\text{load } x \text{ } ao) &\hookrightarrow (nt.\text{const } c) && \text{if } \text{bytes}_{nt}(c) = z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}[i + ao.\text{offset} : |nt|/8] \\
 z; (at.\text{const } i) (iV.\text{load}_{n\_sx} x \text{ } ao) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } i + ao.\text{offset} + n/8 > |z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}| \\
 z; (at.\text{const } i) (iV.\text{load}_{n\_sx} x \text{ } ao) &\hookrightarrow (iV.\text{const } \text{extend}_{n,|iN|}^{sx}(c)) && \text{if } \text{bytes}_{in}(c) = z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}[i + ao.\text{offset} : n/8]
 \end{aligned}$$

`v128.loadMxN_sx x memarg`

#### Todo

(\*) Rule and prose both not spliced.

1. Let  $F$  be the `current frame`.
2. Assert: due to `validation`,  $F.\text{module.mems}[x]$  exists.
3. Let  $a$  be the `memory address`  $F.\text{module.mems}[x]$ .
4. Assert: due to `validation`,  $S.\text{mems}[a]$  exists.
5. Let  $mem$  be the `memory instance`  $S.\text{mems}[a]$ .

6. Assert: due to [validation](#), a value of some [address type](#)  $at$  is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value  $at.\text{const } i$  from the stack.
8. Let  $ea$  be the integer  $i + \text{memarg.offset}$ .
9. If  $ea + M \cdot N/8$  is larger than the length of  $\text{mem.bytes}$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
10. Let  $b^*$  be the byte sequence  $\text{mem.bytes}[ea : M \cdot N/8]$ .
11. Let  $m_k$  be the integer for which  $\text{bytes}_{iM}(m_k) = b^*[k \cdot M/8 : M/8]$ .
12. Let  $W$  be the integer  $M \cdot 2$ .
13. Let  $n_k$  be the result of computing  $\text{extend}_{M,W}^{sx}(m_k)$ .
14. Let  $c$  be the result of computing  $\text{lanes}_{iW \times N}^{-1}(n_0 \dots n_{N-1})$ .
15. Push the value  $\text{v128.const } c$  to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned}
 &S; F; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadMxN}_{sx} \text{ } x \text{ memarg}) \hookrightarrow S; F; (\text{v128.const } c) \\
 &\quad (\text{if } ea = i + \text{memarg.offset} \\
 &\quad \wedge ea + M \cdot N/8 \leq |S.\text{mems}[F.\text{module.mems}[x]].\text{bytes}| \\
 &\quad \wedge \text{bytes}_{iM}(m_k) = S.\text{mems}[F.\text{module.mems}[x]].\text{bytes}[ea + k \cdot M/8 : M/8]) \\
 &\quad \wedge W = M \cdot 2 \\
 &\quad \wedge c = \text{lanes}_{iW \times N}^{-1}(\text{extend}_{M,W}^{sx}(m_0) \dots \text{extend}_{M,W}^{sx}(m_{N-1}))) \\
 &S; F; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadMxN}_{sx} \text{ } x \text{ memarg}) \hookrightarrow S; F; \text{trap} \\
 &\quad (\text{otherwise})
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &z; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadMxK}_{sx} \text{ } x \text{ } ao) \hookrightarrow \text{trap} \quad \text{if } i + ao.\text{offset} + M \cdot K/8 > |z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}| \\
 &z; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadMxK}_{sx} \text{ } x \text{ } ao) \hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) \\
 &\quad \text{if } (\text{bytes}_{iM}(j) = z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}[i + ao.\text{offset} + k \cdot M/8 : M/8])^{k < K} \\
 &\quad \wedge c = \text{lanes}_{iN \times K}^{-1}(\text{extend}_{M,N}^{sx}(j)^K) \wedge N = M \cdot 2
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{v128.loadN}_{\text{splat}} \text{ } x \text{ memarg}$

### Todo

(\*) Rule and prose both not spliced.

1. Let  $F$  be the [current frame](#).
2. Assert: due to [validation](#),  $F.\text{module.mems}[x]$  exists.
3. Let  $a$  be the [memory address](#)  $F.\text{module.mems}[x]$ .
4. Assert: due to [validation](#),  $S.\text{mems}[a]$  exists.
5. Let  $\text{mem}$  be the [memory instance](#)  $S.\text{mems}[a]$ .
6. Assert: due to [validation](#), a value of some [address type](#)  $at$  is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value  $at.\text{const } i$  from the stack.
8. Let  $ea$  be the integer  $i + \text{memarg.offset}$ .
9. If  $ea + N/8$  is larger than the length of  $\text{mem.bytes}$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
10. Let  $b^*$  be the byte sequence  $\text{mem.bytes}[ea : N/8]$ .
11. Let  $n$  be the integer for which  $\text{bytes}_{iN}(n) = b^*$ .
12. Let  $L$  be the integer  $128/N$ .



13. Let  $c$  be the result of computing  $\text{lanes}_{iN \times L}^{-1}(n^L)$ .

14. Push the value `v128.const`  $c$  to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} S; F; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadN\_splat } x \text{ memarg}) &\hookrightarrow S; F; (\text{v128.const } c) \\ &\quad (\text{if } ea = i + \text{memarg.offset} \\ &\quad \wedge ea + N/8 \leq |S.\text{mems}[F.\text{module.mems}[x]].\text{bytes}| \\ &\quad \wedge \text{bytes}_{iN}(n) = S.\text{mems}[F.\text{module.mems}[x]].\text{bytes}[ea : N/8] \\ &\quad \wedge c = \text{lanes}_{iN \times L}^{-1}(n^L)) \\ S; F; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadN\_splat } x \text{ memarg}) &\hookrightarrow S; F; \text{trap} \\ &\quad (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} z; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadN\_splat } x \text{ ao}) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } i + ao.\text{offset} + N/8 > |z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}| \\ z; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadN\_splat } x \text{ ao}) &\hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) && \text{if } \text{bytes}_{iN}(j) = z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}[i + ao.\text{offset} : N/8] \\ &&& \wedge N = |iN| \\ &&& \wedge M = 128/N \\ &&& \wedge c = \text{lanes}_{iN \times M}^{-1}(j^M) \end{aligned}$$

`v128.loadN\_zero`  $x \text{ memarg}$

#### Todo

(\*) Rule and prose both not spliced.

1. Let  $F$  be the `current frame`.
2. Assert: due to `validation`,  $F.\text{module.mems}[x]$  exists.
3. Let  $a$  be the `memory address`  $F.\text{module.mems}[x]$ .
4. Assert: due to `validation`,  $S.\text{mems}[a]$  exists.
5. Let  $mem$  be the `memory instance`  $S.\text{mems}[a]$ .
6. Assert: due to `validation`, a value of some `address type`  $at$  is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value `at.const`  $i$  from the stack.
8. Let  $ea$  be the integer  $i + \text{memarg.offset}$ .
9. If  $ea + N/8$  is larger than the length of  $mem.\text{bytes}$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
10. Let  $b^*$  be the byte sequence  $mem.\text{bytes}[ea : N/8]$ .
11. Let  $n$  be the integer for which  $\text{bytes}_{iN}(n) = b^*$ .
12. Let  $c$  be the result of computing  $\text{extend}_{N,128}^u(n)$ .
13. Push the value `v128.const`  $c$  to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned} S; F; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadN\_zero } x \text{ memarg}) &\hookrightarrow S; F; (\text{v128.const } c) \\ &\quad (\text{if } ea = i + \text{memarg.offset} \\ &\quad \wedge ea + N/8 \leq |S.\text{mems}[F.\text{module.mems}[x]].\text{bytes}| \\ &\quad \wedge \text{bytes}_{iN}(n) = S.\text{mems}[F.\text{module.mems}[x]].\text{bytes}[ea : N/8] \\ &\quad \wedge c = \text{extend}_{N,128}^u(n)) \\ S; F; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadN\_zero } x \text{ memarg}) &\hookrightarrow S; F; \text{trap} \\ &\quad (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} z; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadN\_zero } x \text{ ao}) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } i + ao.\text{offset} + N/8 > |z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}| \\ z; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.loadN\_zero } x \text{ ao}) &\hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) && \text{if } \text{bytes}_{iN}(j) = z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}[i + ao.\text{offset} : N/8] \\ &&& \wedge c = \text{extend}_{N,128}^u(j) \end{aligned}$$

`v128.loadN_lane x memarg y`

### Todo

(\*) Rule and prose both not spliced.

1. Let  $F$  be the **current frame**.
2. Assert: due to **validation**,  $F.\text{module.mems}[x]$  exists.
3. Let  $a$  be the **memory address**  $F.\text{module.mems}[x]$ .
4. Assert: due to **validation**,  $S.\text{mems}[a]$  exists.
5. Let  $mem$  be the **memory instance**  $S.\text{mems}[a]$ .
6. Assert: due to **validation**, a value of **value type** `v128` is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value `v128.const`  $v$  from the stack.
8. Assert: due to **validation**, a value of some **address type**  $at$  is on the top of the stack.
9. Pop the value  $at.\text{const}$   $i$  from the stack.
10. Let  $ea$  be the integer  $i + \text{memarg.offset}$ .
11. If  $ea + N/8$  is larger than the length of  $mem.\text{bytes}$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
12. Let  $b^*$  be the byte sequence  $mem.\text{bytes}[ea : N/8]$ .
13. Let  $r$  be the constant for which  $\text{bytes}_{iN}(r) = b^*$ .
14. Let  $L$  be  $128/N$ .
15. Let  $j^*$  be the result of computing  $\text{lanes}_{iN \times L}(v)$ .
16. Let  $c$  be the result of computing  $\text{lanes}_{iN \times L}^{-1}(j^* \text{ with } [y] = r)$ .
17. Push the value `v128.const`  $c$  to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned}
 S; F; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.const } v) (\text{v128.loadN\_lane } x \text{ memarg } y) &\hookrightarrow S; F; (\text{v128.const } c) \\
 &\quad (\text{if } ea = i + \text{memarg.offset} \\
 &\quad \wedge ea + N/8 \leq |S.\text{mems}[F.\text{module.mems}[x]].\text{bytes}| \\
 &\quad \wedge \text{bytes}_{iN}(r) = S.\text{mems}[F.\text{module.mems}[x]].\text{bytes}[ea : N/8]) \\
 &\quad \wedge L = 128/N \\
 &\quad \wedge c = \text{lanes}_{iN \times L}^{-1}(\text{lanes}_{iN \times L}(v) \text{ with } [y] = r)) \\
 S; F; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.const } v) (\text{v128.loadN\_lane } x \text{ memarg } y) &\hookrightarrow S; F; \text{trap} \\
 &\quad (\text{otherwise})
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 z; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{v128.loadN\_lane } x \text{ ao } j) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} && \text{if } i + \text{ao.offset} + N/8 > |z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}| \\
 z; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.const } c_1) (\text{v128.loadN\_lane } x \text{ ao } j) &\hookrightarrow (\text{v128.const } c) && \text{if } \text{bytes}_{iN}(k) = z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}[i + \text{ao.offset} : N/8] \\
 &&& \wedge N = |iN| \\
 &&& \wedge M = \lfloor \text{v128} \rfloor / N \\
 &&& \wedge c = \text{lanes}_{iN \times M}^{-1}(\text{lanes}_{iN \times M}(c_1)[[j] = k])
 \end{aligned}$$

`nt'.storestoreop? x ao`

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $(nt'''.\text{const } c)$  from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.

5. Pop the value  $(at.const\ i)$  from the stack.
6. Let  $nt$  be the **number type**  $nt'''$ .
7. If  $i + ao.offset + |nt|/8 > |z.mems[x].bytes|$  and  $nt' = nt$  and  $storeop^?$  is not defined, then:
  - a. Trap.
8. If  $nt' = nt$  and  $storeop^?$  is not defined, then:
  - a. Let  $b^*$  be  $bytes_{nt}(c)$ .
  - b. Perform  $z.mems[x].bytes[i + ao.offset : |nt|/8] = b^*$ .
9. If  $nt'''$  is **iN**, then:
  - a. Let **iN** be the **number type**  $nt'''$ .
  - b. If  $nt' = iN$  and  $storeop^?$  is defined, then:
    - 1) Let  $n$  be  $storeop^?$ .
    - 2) If  $i + ao.offset + n/8 > |z.mems[x].bytes|$ , then:
      - a) Trap.
    - 3) Let  $b^*$  be  $bytes_{in}(wrap_{iN,n}(c))$ .
    - 4) Perform  $z.mems[x].bytes[i + ao.offset : n/8] = b^*$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 z; (at.const\ i) (nt.const\ c) (nt.store\ x\ ao) &\hookrightarrow z; trap \\
 &\quad \text{if } i + ao.offset + |nt|/8 > |z.mems[x].bytes| \\
 z; (at.const\ i) (nt.const\ c) (nt.store\ x\ ao) &\hookrightarrow z.mems[x].bytes[i + ao.offset : |nt|/8] = b^*; \epsilon \\
 &\quad \text{if } b^* = bytes_{nt}(c) \\
 z; (at.const\ i) (iN.const\ c) (iN.store\ x\ ao) &\hookrightarrow z; trap \\
 &\quad \text{if } i + ao.offset + n/8 > |z.mems[x].bytes| \\
 z; (at.const\ i) (iN.const\ c) (iN.store\ x\ ao) &\hookrightarrow z.mems[x].bytes[i + ao.offset : n/8] = b^*; \epsilon \\
 &\quad \text{if } b^* = bytes_{in}(wrap_{iN,n}(c)) \\
 z; (at.const\ i) (v128.const\ c) (v128.store\ x\ ao) &\hookrightarrow z; trap \\
 z; (at.const\ i) (v128.const\ c) (v128.store\ x\ ao) &\hookrightarrow z.mems[x].bytes[i + ao.offset : |v128|/8] = b^*; \epsilon \quad \text{if } i + ao.offset + |v128|/8 > |z.mems[x].bytes| \\
 &\quad \text{if } b^* = bytes_{v128}(c)
 \end{aligned}$$

$v128.storeN\_lane\ x\ memarg\ y$

#### Todo

(\*) Rule and prose both not spliced.

1. Let  $F$  be the current frame.
2. Assert: due to **validation**,  $F.module.mems[x]$  exists.
3. Let  $a$  be the **memory address**  $F.module.mems[x]$ .
4. Assert: due to **validation**,  $S.mems[a]$  exists.
5. Let  $mem$  be the **memory instance**  $S.mems[a]$ .
6. Assert: due to **validation**, a value of **value type** **v128** is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value  $v128.const\ c$  from the stack.
8. Assert: due to **validation**, a value of some **address type**  $at$  is on the top of the stack.
9. Pop the value  $at.const\ i$  from the stack.
10. Let  $ea$  be the integer  $i + memarg.offset$ .
11. If  $ea + N/8$  is larger than the length of  $mem.bytes$ , then:
  - a. Trap.

12. Let  $L$  be  $128/N$ .
13. Let  $j^*$  be the result of computing  $\text{lanes}_{iN \times L}(c)$ .
14. Let  $b^*$  be the result of computing  $\text{bytes}_{iN}(j^*[y])$ .
15. Replace the bytes  $\text{mem.bytes}[ea : N/8]$  with  $b^*$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
& S; F; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.const } c) (\text{v128.storeN\_lane } x \text{ memarg } y) \hookrightarrow S'; F; \epsilon \\
& \quad (\text{if } ea = i + \text{memarg.offset} \\
& \quad \wedge ea + N \leq |S.\text{mems}[F.\text{module.mems}[x]].\text{bytes}| \\
& \quad \wedge L = 128/N \\
& \quad \wedge S' = S \text{ with } \text{mems}[F.\text{module.mems}[x]].\text{bytes}[ea : N/8] = \text{bytes}_{iN}(\text{lanes}_{iN \times L}(c)[y])) \\
& S; F; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.const } c) (\text{v128.storeN\_lane } x \text{ memarg } y) \hookrightarrow S; F; \text{trap} \\
& \quad (\text{otherwise})
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
z; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.const } c) (\text{v128.storeN\_lane } x \text{ ao } j) & \hookrightarrow z; \text{trap} & \text{if } i + \text{ao.offset} + N > |z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}| \\
z; (at.\text{const } i) (\text{v128.const } c) (\text{v128.storeN\_lane } x \text{ ao } j) & \hookrightarrow z[\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}[i + \text{ao.offset} : N/8] = b^*]; \epsilon & \text{if } N = |iN| \\
& & \wedge M = 128/N \\
& & \wedge b^* = \text{bytes}_{iN}(\text{lanes}_{iN \times L}(c)[y])
\end{aligned}$$

#### memory.size $x$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Let  $(at \text{ lim page})$  be the destructuring of  $z.\text{mems}[x].\text{type}$ .
3. Let  $n \cdot 64 \text{ Ki}$  be the length of  $z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}$ .
4. Push the value  $(at.\text{const } n)$  to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned}
z; (\text{memory.size } x) & \hookrightarrow (at.\text{const } n) \quad \text{if } n \cdot 64 \text{ Ki} = |z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}| \\
& \quad \wedge z.\text{mems}[x].\text{type} = at \text{ lim page}
\end{aligned}$$

#### memory.grow $x$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a [number value](#) is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $(at.\text{const } n)$  from the stack.
4. Either:
  - a. Let  $mi$  be the [memory instance](#)  $\text{growmem}(z.\text{mems}[x], n)$ .
  - b. Push the value  $(at.\text{const } |z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}|/(64 \text{ Ki}))$  to the stack.
  - c. Perform  $z[\text{mems}[x]] = mi$ .

5. Or:

- a. Push the value  $(at.\text{const } \text{signed}_{|at|}^{-1}(-1))$  to the stack.

$$\begin{aligned}
z; (at.\text{const } n) (\text{memory.grow } x) & \hookrightarrow z[\text{mems}[x] = mi]; (at.\text{const } |z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}|/64 \text{ Ki}) \\
& \quad \text{if } mi = \text{growmem}(z.\text{mems}[x], n) \\
z; (at.\text{const } n) (\text{memory.grow } x) & \hookrightarrow z; (at.\text{const } \text{signed}_{|at|}^{-1}(-1))
\end{aligned}$$

#### Note

The [memory.grow](#) instruction is non-deterministic. It may either succeed, returning the old memory size  $sz$ , or fail, returning  $-1$ . Failure *must* occur if the referenced memory instance has a maximum size defined that would be exceeded. However, failure *can* occur in other cases as well. In practice, the choice depends on the [resources](#) available to the [embedder](#).

**memory.fill  $x$** 

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
  2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.
  3. Pop the value ( $at.const\ n$ ) from the stack.
  4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
  5. Pop the value  $val$  from the stack.
  6. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type**  $at$  is on the top of the stack.
  7. Pop the value ( $numtype_0.const\ i$ ) from the stack.
  8. If  $i + n > |z.mems[x].bytes|$ , then:
    - a. Trap.
  9. If  $n = 0$ , then:
    - a. Do nothing.
  10. Else:
    - a. Push the value ( $at.const\ i$ ) to the stack.
    - b. Push the value  $val$  to the stack.
    - c. Execute the instruction ( $i32.store8\ x$ ).
    - d. Push the value ( $at.const\ i + 1$ ) to the stack.
    - e. Push the value  $val$  to the stack.
    - f. Push the value ( $at.const\ n - 1$ ) to the stack.
    - g. Execute the instruction (**memory.fill  $x$** ).
- $$\begin{array}{ll}
 z; (at.const\ i)\ val\ (at.const\ n)\ (memory.fill\ x) & \hookrightarrow \text{trap} \quad \text{if } i + n > |z.mems[x].bytes| \\
 z; (at.const\ i)\ val\ (at.const\ n)\ (memory.fill\ x) & \hookrightarrow \epsilon \quad \text{otherwise, if } n = 0 \\
 z; (at.const\ i)\ val\ (at.const\ n)\ (memory.fill\ x) & \hookrightarrow \\
 \quad (at.const\ i)\ val\ (i32.store8\ x) & \text{otherwise} \\
 \quad (at.const\ i + 1)\ val\ (at.const\ n - 1)\ (memory.fill\ x) & 
 \end{array}$$

**memory.copy  $x_1\ x_2$** 

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value ( $at'.const\ n$ ) from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value ( $at_2.const\ i_2$ ) from the stack.
6. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value ( $at_1.const\ i_1$ ) from the stack.
8. If  $i_1 + n > |z.mems[x_1].bytes|$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
9. If  $i_2 + n > |z.mems[x_2].bytes|$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
10. If  $n = 0$ , then:
  - a. Do nothing.
11. Else:

- a. If  $i_1 \leq i_2$ , then:
  - 1) Push the value  $(at_1.\text{const } i_1)$  to the stack.
  - 2) Push the value  $(at_2.\text{const } i_2)$  to the stack.
  - 3) Execute the instruction  $(i32.\text{load8\_u } x_2)$ .
  - 4) Execute the instruction  $(i32.\text{store8 } x_1)$ .
  - 5) Push the value  $(at_1.\text{const } i_1 + 1)$  to the stack.
  - 6) Push the value  $(at_2.\text{const } i_2 + 1)$  to the stack.
- b. Else:
  - 1) Push the value  $(at_1.\text{const } i_1 + n - 1)$  to the stack.
  - 2) Push the value  $(at_2.\text{const } i_2 + n - 1)$  to the stack.
  - 3) Execute the instruction  $(i32.\text{load8\_u } x_2)$ .
  - 4) Execute the instruction  $(i32.\text{store8 } x_1)$ .
  - 5) Push the value  $(at_1.\text{const } i_1)$  to the stack.
  - 6) Push the value  $(at_2.\text{const } i_2)$  to the stack.
- c. Push the value  $(at'.\text{const } n - 1)$  to the stack.
- d. Execute the instruction  $(\text{memory.copy } x_1 x_2)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 z; (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (at'.\text{const } n) (\text{memory.copy } x_1 x_2) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\
 &\text{if } i_1 + n > |z.\text{mems}[x_1].\text{bytes}| \vee i_2 + n > |z.\text{mems}[x_2].\text{bytes}| \\
 z; (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (at'.\text{const } n) (\text{memory.copy } x_1 x_2) &\hookrightarrow \epsilon && \text{otherwise, if } n = 0 \\
 z; (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (at'.\text{const } n) (\text{memory.copy } x_1 x_2) &\hookrightarrow \\
 (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (i32.\text{load8\_u } x_2) (i32.\text{store8 } x_1) &&& \text{otherwise, if } i_1 \leq i_2 \\
 (at_1.\text{const } i_1 + 1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2 + 1) (at'.\text{const } n - 1) (\text{memory.copy } x_1 x_2) &&& \\
 z; (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (at'.\text{const } n) (\text{memory.copy } x_1 x_2) &\hookrightarrow \\
 (at_1.\text{const } i_1 + n - 1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2 + n - 1) (i32.\text{load8\_u } x_2) (i32.\text{store8 } x_1) &&& \text{otherwise} \\
 (at_1.\text{const } i_1) (at_2.\text{const } i_2) (at'.\text{const } n - 1) (\text{memory.copy } x_1 x_2) &&&
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{memory.init } x y$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type i32** is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $(i32.\text{const } n)$  from the stack.
4. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type i32** is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $(i32.\text{const } j)$  from the stack.
6. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **number value** is on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the value  $(at.\text{const } i)$  from the stack.
8. If  $i + n > |z.\text{mems}[x].\text{bytes}|$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
9. If  $j + n > |z.\text{datas}[y].\text{bytes}|$ , then:
  - a. Trap.
10. If  $n = 0$ , then:
  - a. Do nothing.
11. Else if  $j < |z.\text{datas}[y].\text{bytes}|$ , then:
  - a. Push the value  $(at.\text{const } i)$  to the stack.

- b. Push the value  $(i32.const\ z.datas[y].bytes[j])$  to the stack.
- c. Execute the instruction  $(i32.store8\ x)$ .
- d. Push the value  $(at.const\ i + 1)$  to the stack.
- e. Push the value  $(i32.const\ j + 1)$  to the stack.
- f. Push the value  $(i32.const\ n - 1)$  to the stack.
- g. Execute the instruction  $(memory.init\ x\ y)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
z; (at.const\ i) (i32.const\ j) (i32.const\ n) (memory.init\ x\ y) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\
&\quad \text{if } i + n > |z.mems[x].bytes| \vee j + n > |z.datas[y].bytes| \\
z; (at.const\ i) (i32.const\ j) (i32.const\ n) (memory.init\ x\ y) &\hookrightarrow \epsilon \quad \text{otherwise, if } n = 0 \\
z; (at.const\ i) (i32.const\ j) (i32.const\ n) (memory.init\ x\ y) &\hookrightarrow \\
&\quad (at.const\ i) (i32.const\ z.datas[y].bytes[j]) (i32.store8\ x) \quad \text{otherwise} \\
&\quad (at.const\ i + 1) (i32.const\ j + 1) (i32.const\ n - 1) (memory.init\ x\ y)
\end{aligned}$$

**data.drop**  $x$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Perform  $z[.datas[x].bytes = \epsilon]$ .

$$z; (\text{data.drop}\ x) \hookrightarrow z[.datas[x].bytes = \epsilon]; \epsilon$$

## 4.6.8 Control Instructions

**block**  $bt\ instr^*$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Let  $t_1^m \rightarrow t_2^n$  be the destructuring of  $instrtype_z(bt)$ .
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, there are at least  $m$  values on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the values  $val^m$  from the stack.
5. Let  $L$  be the **label** whose arity is  $n$  and whose continuation is the end of the block.
6. Enter the block  $val^m\ instr^*$  with the **label**  $L$ .

$$z; val^m (\text{block}\ bt\ instr^*) \hookrightarrow (\text{label}_n\{\epsilon\}\ val^m\ instr^*) \quad \text{if } instrtype_z(bt) = t_1^m \rightarrow t_2^n$$

**loop**  $bt\ instr^*$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Let  $t_1^m \rightarrow t_2^n$  be the destructuring of  $instrtype_z(bt)$ .
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, there are at least  $m$  values on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the values  $val^m$  from the stack.
5. Let  $L$  be the **label** whose arity is  $m$  and whose continuation is the start of the block.
6. Enter the block  $val^m\ instr^*$  with the **label**  $L$ .

$$z; val^m (\text{loop}\ bt\ instr^*) \hookrightarrow (\text{label}_m\{\text{loop}\ bt\ instr^*\}\ val^m\ instr^*) \quad \text{if } instrtype_z(bt) = t_1^m \rightarrow t_2^n$$

if *bt instr<sub>1</sub><sup>\*</sup> instr<sub>2</sub><sup>\*</sup>*

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [number type i32](#) is on the top of the stack.
  2. Pop the value (*i32.const c*) from the stack.
  3. If  $c \neq 0$ , then:
    - a. Execute the instruction (*block bt instr<sub>1</sub><sup>\*</sup>*).
  4. Else:
    - a. Execute the instruction (*block bt instr<sub>2</sub><sup>\*</sup>*).
- $$\begin{aligned}
 (\text{i32.const } c) (\text{if } bt \text{ instr}_1^* \text{ else instr}_2^*) &\hookrightarrow (\text{block } bt \text{ instr}_1^*) && \text{if } c \neq 0 \\
 (\text{i32.const } c) (\text{if } bt \text{ instr}_1^* \text{ else instr}_2^*) &\hookrightarrow (\text{block } bt \text{ instr}_2^*) && \text{if } c = 0
 \end{aligned}$$

br *l*

1. If the first non-value entry of the stack is a [label](#), then:
  - a. Let *L* be the topmost [label](#).
  - b. Let *n* be the arity of *L*.
  - c. If  $l = 0$ , then:
    - 1) Assert: Due to [validation](#), there are at least *n* values on the top of the stack.
    - 2) Pop the values *val<sup>n</sup>* from the stack.
    - 3) Pop all values *val<sup>l</sup>\** from the top of the stack.
    - 4) Pop the [label](#) *L* from the stack.
    - 5) Push the values *val<sup>n</sup>* to the stack.
    - 6) Jump to the continuation of *L*.
  - d. Else:
    - 1) Pop all values *val<sup>l</sup>\** from the top of the stack.
    - 2) If  $l > 0$ , then:
      - a) Pop the [label](#) *L* from the stack.
      - b) Push the values *val<sup>l</sup>\** to the stack.
      - c) Execute the instruction (*br l - 1*).
2. Else if the first non-value entry of the stack is a [handler](#), then:
  - a. Pop all values *val<sup>l</sup>\** from the top of the stack.
  - b. Pop the [handler](#) *H* from the stack.
  - c. Push the values *val<sup>l</sup>\** to the stack.
  - d. Execute the instruction (*br l*).

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\text{label}_n \{ \text{instr}'^* \} \text{ val}'^* \text{ val}^n (\text{br } l) \text{ instr}^*) &\hookrightarrow \text{val}^n \text{ instr}'^* && \text{if } l = 0 \\
 (\text{label}_n \{ \text{instr}'^* \} \text{ val}^* (\text{br } l) \text{ instr}^*) &\hookrightarrow \text{val}^* (\text{br } l - 1) && \text{if } l > 0 \\
 (\text{handler}_n \{ \text{catch}^* \} \text{ val}^* (\text{br } l) \text{ instr}^*) &\hookrightarrow \text{val}^* (\text{br } l)
 \end{aligned}$$

br\_if *l*

1. Assert: Due to [validation](#), a value of [number type i32](#) is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value (*i32.const c*) from the stack.
3. If  $c \neq 0$ , then:
  - a. Execute the instruction (*br l*).



4. Else:
  - a. Do nothing.

$$\begin{aligned} (i32.\text{const } c) (\text{br\_if } l) &\hookrightarrow (\text{br } l) && \text{if } c \neq 0 \\ (i32.\text{const } c) (\text{br\_if } l) &\hookrightarrow \epsilon && \text{if } c = 0 \end{aligned}$$

*br\_table*  $l^* l'$

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value of **number type** *i32* is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value  $(i32.\text{const } i)$  from the stack.
3. If  $i < |l^*|$ , then:
  - a. Execute the instruction  $(\text{br } l^*[i])$ .
4. Else:
  - a. Execute the instruction  $(\text{br } l')$ .

$$\begin{aligned} (i32.\text{const } i) (\text{br\_table } l^* l') &\hookrightarrow (\text{br } l^*[i]) && \text{if } i < |l^*| \\ (i32.\text{const } i) (\text{br\_table } l^* l') &\hookrightarrow (\text{br } l') && \text{if } i \geq |l^*| \end{aligned}$$

*br\_on\_null* *l*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value *val* from the stack.
3. If *val* is some **ref.null** *heaptypes*, then:
  - a. Execute the instruction  $(\text{br } l)$ .
4. Else:
  - a. Push the value *val* to the stack.

#### Todo

- (3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{val } (\text{br\_on\_null } l) &\hookrightarrow (\text{br } l) && \text{if } \text{val} = \text{ref.null } ht \\ \text{val } (\text{br\_on\_null } l) &\hookrightarrow \text{val} && \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

*br\_on\_non\_null* *l*

1. Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the value *val* from the stack.
3. If *val* is some **ref.null** *heaptypes*, then:
  - a. Do nothing.
4. Else:
  - a. Push the value *val* to the stack.
  - b. Execute the instruction  $(\text{br } l)$ .

#### Todo

- (3) Introduce if-let instruction instead of “is of the case”.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{val}(\text{br\_on\_non\_null } l) &\hookrightarrow \epsilon && \text{if } \text{val} = \text{ref.null } ht \\ \text{val}(\text{br\_on\_non\_null } l) &\hookrightarrow \text{val}(\text{br } l) && \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

$\text{br\_on\_cast } l \text{ } rt_1 \text{ } rt_2$

1. Let  $F$  be the topmost frame.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **reference value** is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $ref$  from the stack.
4. Let  $rt$  be the type of  $ref$ .
5. Push the value  $ref$  to the stack.
6. If  $rt$  matches  $\text{clos}_{f.\text{module}}(rt_2)$ , then:
  - a. Execute the instruction  $(\text{br } l)$ .
7. Else:
  - a. Do nothing.

#### Todo

(9) Need to handle RulePr s  $\vdash \text{ref} : rt$  properly in prose instead of  $\$ref\_type\_of$  Below is the acutal prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the **current frame**.
2. Let  $rt'_2$  be the **reference type**  $\text{clos}_{F.\text{module}}(rt_2)$ .
3. Assert: due to **validation**,  $rt'_2$  is **closed**.
4. Assert: due to **validation**, a **reference value** is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $ref$  from the stack.
6. Assert: due to **validation**, the **reference value** is **valid** with some **reference type**.
7. Let  $rt$  be the **reference type** of  $ref$ .
8. Push the value  $ref$  back to the stack.
9. If the **reference type**  $rt$  **matches**  $rt'_2$ , then:
  - a. **Execute** the instruction  $(\text{br } l)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} s; f; ref(\text{br\_on\_cast } l \text{ } rt_1 \text{ } rt_2) &\hookrightarrow ref(\text{br } l) && \text{if } s \vdash ref : rt \\ &&& \wedge \{ \} \vdash rt \leq \text{clos}_{f.\text{module}}(rt_2) \\ s; f; ref(\text{br\_on\_cast } l \text{ } rt_1 \text{ } rt_2) &\hookrightarrow ref && \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

$\text{br\_on\_cast\_fail } l \text{ } rt_1 \text{ } rt_2$

1. Let  $F$  be the topmost frame.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**, a **reference value** is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $ref$  from the stack.
4. Let  $rt$  be the type of  $ref$ .
5. Push the value  $ref$  to the stack.
6. If  $rt$  matches  $\text{clos}_{f.\text{module}}(rt_2)$ , then:
  - a. Do nothing.
7. Else:

- a. Execute the instruction  $(br\ l)$ .

#### Todo

(9) Need to handle RulePr s |- ref : rt properly in prose instead of \$ref\_type\_of Below is the actual prose.

1. Let  $F$  be the current frame.
2. Let  $rt'_2$  be the reference type  $clos_{F.module}(rt_2)$ .
3. Assert: due to validation,  $rt'_2$  is closed.
4. Assert: due to validation, a reference value is on the top of the stack.
5. Pop the value  $ref$  from the stack.
6. Assert: due to validation, the reference value is valid with some reference type.
7. Let  $rt$  be the reference type of  $ref$ .
8. Push the value  $ref$  back to the stack.
9. If the reference type  $rt$  does not match  $rt'_2$ , then:

- a. Execute the instruction  $(br\ l)$ .

$$\begin{array}{ll} s; f; ref\ (br\_on\_cast\_fail\ l\ rt_1\ rt_2) \hookrightarrow ref & \text{if } s \vdash ref : rt \\ & \wedge \{\} \vdash rt \leq clos_{f.module}(rt_2) \\ s; f; ref\ (br\_on\_cast\_fail\ l\ rt_1\ rt_2) \hookrightarrow ref\ (br\ l) & \text{otherwise} \end{array}$$

return

1. If the first non-value entry of the stack is a frame, then:
  - a. Let  $F$  be the topmost frame.
  - b. Let  $n$  be the arity of  $F$
  - c. Assert: Due to validation, there are at least  $n$  values on the top of the stack.
  - d. Pop the values  $val^n$  from the stack.
  - e. Pop all values  $val'^*$  from the top of the stack.
  - f. Pop the frame  $F$  from the stack.
  - g. Push the values  $val^n$  to the stack.
2. Else if the first non-value entry of the stack is a label, then:
  - a. Pop all values  $val^*$  from the top of the stack.
  - b. Pop the label  $L$  from the stack.
  - c. Push the values  $val^*$  to the stack.
  - d. Execute the instruction return.
3. Else:
  - a. If the first non-value entry of the stack is a handler, then:
    - 1) Pop all values  $val^*$  from the top of the stack.
    - 2) Pop the handler  $H$  from the stack.
    - 3) Push the values  $val^*$  to the stack.
    - 4) Execute the instruction return.

$$\begin{aligned}
(\text{frame}_n\{f\} \text{ val}'^* \text{ val}^n \text{ return } \text{instr}^*) &\hookrightarrow \text{val}^n \\
(\text{label}_n\{\text{instr}'^*\} \text{ val}^* \text{ return } \text{instr}^*) &\hookrightarrow \text{val}^* \text{ return} \\
(\text{handler}_n\{\text{catch}^*\} \text{ val}^* \text{ return } \text{instr}^*) &\hookrightarrow \text{val}^* \text{ return}
\end{aligned}$$

**call**  $x$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to [validation](#),  $x < |z.\text{module}.\text{funcs}|$ .
3. Let  $a$  be the [address](#)  $z.\text{module}.\text{funcs}[x]$ .
4. Assert: Due to [validation](#),  $a < |z.\text{funcs}|$ .
5. Push the value  $(\text{ref}.\text{func } a)$  to the stack.
6. Execute the instruction  $(\text{call\_ref } z.\text{funcs}[a].\text{type})$ .

$$z; (\text{call } x) \hookrightarrow (\text{ref}.\text{func } a) (\text{call\_ref } z.\text{funcs}[a].\text{type}) \quad \text{if } z.\text{module}.\text{funcs}[x] = a$$

**call\_ref**  $x$

#### Todo

(\*) Prose not spliced, for the prose merges the two cases of null and non-null references.

1. Assert: due to [validation](#), a null or [function reference](#) is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the reference value  $r$  from the stack.
3. If  $r$  is [ref.null ht](#), then:
  - a. Trap.
4. Assert: due to [validation](#),  $r$  is a [function reference](#).
5. Let [ref.func](#)  $a$  be the reference  $r$ .
6. [Invoke](#) the function instance at address  $a$ .

$$z; (\text{ref.null } ht) (\text{call\_ref } y) \hookrightarrow \text{trap}$$

#### Note

The formal rule for calling a non-null function reference is described [below](#).

**call\_indirect**  $x \ y$

1. Execute the instruction  $(\text{table.get } x)$ .
2. Execute the instruction  $(\text{ref.cast } (\text{ref null } y))$ .
3. Execute the instruction  $(\text{call\_ref } y)$ .

$$(\text{call\_indirect } x \ y) \hookrightarrow (\text{table.get } x) (\text{ref.cast } (\text{ref null } y)) (\text{call\_ref } y)$$

**return\_call**  $x$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to [validation](#),  $x < |z.\text{module}.\text{funcs}|$ .
3. Let  $a$  be the [address](#)  $z.\text{module}.\text{funcs}[x]$ .
4. Assert: Due to [validation](#),  $a < |z.\text{funcs}|$ .

5. Push the value  $(\text{ref.func } a)$  to the stack.
6. Execute the instruction  $(\text{return\_call\_ref } z.\text{funcs}[a].\text{type})$ .

$$z; (\text{return\_call } x) \hookrightarrow (\text{ref.func } a) (\text{return\_call\_ref } z.\text{funcs}[a].\text{type}) \quad \text{if } z.\text{module}.\text{funcs}[x] = a$$

$\text{return\_call\_ref } x$

$\text{return\_call\_ref } y$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. If the first non-value entry of the stack is a **label**, then:
  - a. Pop all values  $\text{val}^*$  from the top of the stack.
  - b. Pop the **label**  $L$  from the stack.
  - c. Push the values  $\text{val}^*$  to the stack.
  - d. Execute the instruction  $(\text{return\_call\_ref } y)$ .
3. Else if the first non-value entry of the stack is a **handler**, then:
  - a. Pop all values  $\text{val}^*$  from the top of the stack.
  - b. Pop the **handler**  $H$  from the stack.
  - c. Push the values  $\text{val}^*$  to the stack.
  - d. Execute the instruction  $(\text{return\_call\_ref } y)$ .
4. Else:
  - a. If the first non-value entry of the stack is a **frame**, then:
    - 1) Assert: Due to **validation**, a value is on the top of the stack.
    - 2) Pop the value  $\text{val}''$  from the stack.
    - 3) If  $\text{val}''$  is some **ref.null heaptypes**, then:
      - a) Pop all values  $\text{val}^*$  from the top of the stack.
      - b) Pop the **frame**  $F$  from the stack.
      - c) Trap.
    - 4) If  $\text{val}''$  is some **ref.func funcaddr**, then:
      - a) Let  $(\text{ref.func } a)$  be the destructuring of  $\text{val}''$ .
      - b) If  $a < |z.\text{funcs}|$ , then:
        1. Assert: Due to **validation**, the expansion of  $z.\text{funcs}[a].\text{type}$  is some **func functype**.
        2. Let  $(\text{func functype}_0)$  be the destructuring of the expansion of  $z.\text{funcs}[a].\text{type}$ .
        3. Let  $t_1^n \rightarrow t_2^m$  be the destructuring of  $\text{functype}_0$ .
        4. Assert: Due to **validation**, there are at least  $n$  values on the top of the stack.
        5. Pop the values  $\text{val}^n$  from the stack.
        6. Pop all values  $\text{val}'^*$  from the top of the stack.
        7. Pop the **frame**  $F$  from the stack.
        8. Push the values  $\text{val}^n$  to the stack.
        9. Push the value  $(\text{ref.func } a)$  to the stack.
        10. Execute the instruction  $(\text{call\_ref } y)$ .

**Todo**

(\*) Prose not spliced, Sphinx cannot build the document with deeply nested ordered list. (mainly caused by spurious conditions that should be assertions)

1. Assert: due to **validation**, a **function reference** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the reference value  $r$  from the stack.
3. If  $r$  is **ref.null ht**, then:
  - a. Trap.
4. Assert: due to **validation**,  $r$  is a **function reference**.
5. Let **ref.func**  $a$  be the reference  $r$ .
6. **Tail-invoke** the function instance at address  $a$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 z; (\text{label}_k \{ \text{instr}'^* \} \text{ val}^* (\text{return\_call\_ref } y) \text{ instr}^*) &\hookrightarrow \text{val}^* (\text{return\_call\_ref } y) \\
 z; (\text{handler}_k \{ \text{catch}^* \} \text{ val}^* (\text{return\_call\_ref } y) \text{ instr}^*) &\hookrightarrow \text{val}^* (\text{return\_call\_ref } y) \\
 z; (\text{frame}_k \{ f \} \text{ val}^* (\text{ref.null ht}) (\text{return\_call\_ref } y) \text{ instr}^*) &\hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\
 z; (\text{frame}_k \{ f \} \text{ val}'^* \text{ val}^n (\text{ref.func } a) (\text{return\_call\_ref } y) \text{ instr}^*) &\hookrightarrow \text{val}^n (\text{ref.func } a) (\text{call\_ref } y) \\
 &\quad \text{if } z.\text{funcs}[a].\text{type} \approx \text{func } (t_1^n \rightarrow t_2^m)
 \end{aligned}$$

**return\_call\_indirect**  $x \ y$ 

1. Execute the instruction (**table.get**  $x$ ).
2. Execute the instruction (**ref.cast** (**ref null**  $y$ )).
3. Execute the instruction (**return\_call\_ref**  $y$ ).

$$(\text{return\_call\_indirect } x \ y) \hookrightarrow (\text{table.get } x) (\text{ref.cast } (\text{ref null } y)) (\text{return\_call\_ref } y)$$

**throw**  $x$ 

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to **validation**,  $x < |z.\text{tags}|$ .
3. Assert: Due to **validation**, the **expansion** of  $z.\text{tags}[x].\text{type}$  is some **func functype**.
4. Let  $(\text{func functype}_0)$  be the destructuring of the **expansion** of  $z.\text{tags}[x].\text{type}$ .
5. Let  $t^n \rightarrow \text{resulttype}_1$  be the destructuring of  $\text{functype}_0$ .
6. Assert: Due to **validation**,  $\text{resulttype}_1 = \epsilon$ .
7. Let  $a$  be the length of  $z.\text{exns}$ .
8. Assert: Due to **validation**, there are at least  $n$  values on the top of the stack.
9. Pop the values  $\text{val}^n$  from the stack.
10. Let  $\text{exn}$  be the **exception instance**  $\{\text{tag } z.\text{tags}[x], \text{fields } \text{val}^n\}$ .
11. Perform  $z[\text{exns}] = \oplus \text{exn}$ .
12. Push the value (**ref.exn**  $a$ ) to the stack.
13. Execute the instruction **throw\_ref**.

$$\begin{aligned}
 z; \text{val}^n (\text{throw } x) &\hookrightarrow z[\text{exns}] = \oplus \text{exn}; (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref} \\
 &\quad \text{if } z.\text{tags}[x].\text{type} \approx \text{func } (t^n \rightarrow \epsilon) \\
 &\quad \wedge a = |z.\text{exns}| \\
 &\quad \wedge \text{exn} = \{\text{tag } z.\text{tags}[x], \text{fields } \text{val}^n\}
 \end{aligned}$$

`throw_ref`

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Assert: Due to `validation`, a value is on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the value  $val'$  from the stack.
4. If  $val'$  is some `ref.null heaptypes`, then:
  - a. Trap.
5. If  $val'$  is some `ref.exn exnaddr`, then:
  - a. Let  $(ref.exn\ a)$  be the destructuring of  $val'$ .
  - b. Pop all values  $val^*$  from the top of the stack.
  - c. If  $val^* \neq \epsilon$ , then:
    - 1) Push the value  $(ref.exn\ a)$  to the stack.
    - 2) Execute the instruction `throw_ref`.
  - d. Else if the first non-value entry of the stack is a `label`, then:
    - 1) Pop the `label`  $L$  from the stack.
    - 2) Push the value  $(ref.exn\ a)$  to the stack.
    - 3) Execute the instruction `throw_ref`.
  - e. Else:
    - 1) If the first non-value entry of the stack is a `frame`, then:
      - a) Pop the `frame`  $F$  from the stack.
      - b) Push the value  $(ref.exn\ a)$  to the stack.
      - c) Execute the instruction `throw_ref`.
    - 2) Else if not the first non-value entry of the stack is a `handler`, then:
      - a) Throw the exception  $val'$  as a result.
    - 3) Else:
      - a) Let  $H$  be the topmost `handler`.
      - b) Let  $n$  be the arity of  $H$ .
      - c) Let  $catch''^*$  be the catch handler of  $H$ .
      - d) If  $catch''^* = \epsilon$ , then:
        1. Pop the `handler`  $H$  from the stack.
        2. Push the value  $(ref.exn\ a)$  to the stack.
        3. Execute the instruction `throw_ref`.
    - e) Else if  $a \geq |z.exns|$ , then:
      1. Let  $catch_0\ catch'^*$  be  $catch''^*$ .
      2. If  $catch_0$  is some `catch_all labelidx`, then:
        - a. Let  $(catch\_all\ l)$  be the destructuring of  $catch_0$ .
        - b. Pop the `handler`  $H$  from the stack.
        - c. Execute the instruction  $(br\ l)$ .
      3. Else if  $catch_0$  is not some `catch_all_ref labelidx`, then:
        - a. Let  $catch\ catch'^*$  be  $catch''^*$ .

- b. Pop the **handler**  $H$  from the stack.
  - c. Let  $H$  be the **handler** whose arity is  $n$  and whose catch handler is  $catch'^*$ .
  - d. Push the **handler**  $H$ .
  - e. Push the value  $(ref.exn\ a)$  to the stack.
  - f. Execute the instruction **throw\_ref**.
4. Else:
- a. Let  $(catch\_all\_ref\ l)$  be the destructuring of  $catch_0$ .
  - b. Pop the **handler**  $H$  from the stack.
  - c. Push the value  $(ref.exn\ a)$  to the stack.
  - d. Execute the instruction  $(br\ l)$ .
- f) Else:
1. Let  $val^*$  be  $z.exns[a].fields$ .
  2. Let  $catch_0\ catch'^*$  be  $catch''^*$ .
  3. If  $catch_0$  is some  $catch\ tagidx\ labelidx$ , then:
    - a. Let  $(catch\ x\ l)$  be the destructuring of  $catch_0$ .
    - b. If  $x < |z.tags|$  and  $z.exns[a].tag = z.tags[x]$ , then:
      - 1) Pop the **handler**  $H$  from the stack.
      - 2) Push the values  $val^*$  to the stack.
      - 3) Execute the instruction  $(br\ l)$ .
    - c. Else:
      - 1) Let  $catch\ catch'^*$  be  $catch''^*$ .
      - 2) Pop the **handler**  $H$  from the stack.
      - 3) Let  $H$  be the **handler** whose arity is  $n$  and whose catch handler is  $catch'^*$ .
      - 4) Push the **handler**  $H$ .
      - 5) Push the value  $(ref.exn\ a)$  to the stack.
      - 6) Execute the instruction **throw\_ref**.
  4. Else if  $catch_0$  is some  $catch\_ref\ tagidx\ labelidx$ , then:
    - a. Let  $(catch\_ref\ x\ l)$  be the destructuring of  $catch_0$ .
    - b. If  $x \geq |z.tags|$ , then:
      - 1) Let  $catch\ catch'^*$  be  $catch''^*$ .
      - 2) Pop the **handler**  $H$  from the stack.
      - 3) Let  $H$  be the **handler** whose arity is  $n$  and whose catch handler is  $catch'^*$ .
      - 4) Push the **handler**  $H$ .
      - 5) Push the value  $(ref.exn\ a)$  to the stack.
      - 6) Execute the instruction **throw\_ref**.
    - c. Else if  $z.exns[a].tag \neq z.tags[x]$ , then:
      - 1) Let  $catch\ catch'^*$  be  $catch''^*$ .
      - 2) Pop the **handler**  $H$  from the stack.
      - 3) Let  $H$  be the **handler** whose arity is  $n$  and whose catch handler is  $catch'^*$ .



- 4) Push the **handler**  $H$ .
- 5) Push the value  $(\text{ref.exn } a)$  to the stack.
- 6) Execute the instruction `throw_ref`.
- d. Else:
  - 1) Pop the **handler**  $H$  from the stack.
  - 2) Push the values  $\text{val}^*$  to the stack.
  - 3) Push the value  $(\text{ref.exn } a)$  to the stack.
  - 4) Execute the instruction `(br l)`.
5. Else:
  - a. If  $\text{catch}_0$  is some `catch_all labelidx`, then:
    - 1) Let  $(\text{catch\_all } l)$  be the destructuring of  $\text{catch}_0$ .
    - 2) Pop the **handler**  $H$  from the stack.
    - 3) Execute the instruction `(br l)`.
  - b. Else if  $\text{catch}_0$  is not some `catch_all_ref labelidx`, then:
    - 1) Let  $\text{catch } \text{catch}^*$  be  $\text{catch}''^*$ .
    - 2) Pop the **handler**  $H$  from the stack.
    - 3) Let  $H$  be the **handler** whose arity is  $n$  and whose catch handler is  $\text{catch}^*$ .
    - 4) Push the **handler**  $H$ .
    - 5) Push the value  $(\text{ref.exn } a)$  to the stack.
    - 6) Execute the instruction `throw_ref`.
  - c. Else:
    - 1) Let  $(\text{catch\_all\_ref } l)$  be the destructuring of  $\text{catch}_0$ .
    - 2) Pop the **handler**  $H$  from the stack.
    - 3) Push the value  $(\text{ref.exn } a)$  to the stack.
    - 4) Execute the instruction `(br l)`.
6. Else if not the first non-value entry of the stack is a **label** and not the first non-value entry of the stack is a **frame** and not the first non-value entry of the stack is a **handler**, then:
  - a. Throw the exception  $\text{val}'$  as a result.

**Todo**

Was too deeply nested

1. Assert: due to **validation**, a **reference** is on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the reference  $\text{ref}$  from the stack.
3. If  $\text{ref}$  is `ref.null ht`, then:
  - a. Trap.
4. Assert: due to **validation**,  $\text{ref}$  is an **exception reference**.
5. Let  $\text{ref.exn } ea$  be  $\text{ref}$ .
6. Assert: due to **validation**,  $S.\text{exns}[ea]$  exists.
7. Let  $\text{exn}$  be the **exception instance**  $S.\text{exns}[ea]$ .

8. Let  $a$  be the tag address  $exn.tag$ .
9. While the stack is not empty and the top of the stack is not an exception handler, do:
  - a. Pop the top element from the stack.
10. Assert: the stack is now either empty, or there is an exception handler on the top of the stack.
11. If the stack is empty, then:
  - a. Return the exception ( $ref.exn\ a$ ) as a result.
12. Assert: there is an exception handler on the top of the stack.
13. Pop the exception handler  $handler_n\{catch^*\}$  from the stack.
14. If  $catch^*$  is empty, then:
  - a. Push the exception reference  $ref.exn\ ea$  back to the stack.
  - b. Execute the instruction `throw_ref` again.
15. Else:
  - a. Let  $F$  be the current frame.
  - b. Let  $catch_1$  be the first catch clause in  $catch^*$  and  $catch'^*$  the remaining clauses.
  - c. If  $catch_1$  is of the form `catch  $x\ l$`  and the tag address  $a$  equals  $F.module.tags[x]$ , then:
    - i. Push the values  $exn.fields$  to the stack.
    - ii. Execute the instruction `br  $l$` .
  - d. Else if  $catch_1$  is of the form `catch_ref  $x\ l$`  and the tag address  $a$  equals  $F.module.tags[x]$ , then:
    - i. Push the values  $exn.fields$  to the stack.
    - ii. Push the exception reference  $ref.exn\ ea$  to the stack.
    - iii. Execute the instruction `br  $l$` .
  - e. Else if  $catch_1$  is of the form `catch_all  $l$` , then:
    - i. Execute the instruction `br  $l$` .
  - f. Else if  $catch_1$  is of the form `catch_all_ref  $l$` , then:
    - i. Push the exception reference  $ref.exn\ ea$  to the stack.
    - ii. Execute the instruction `br  $l$` .
  - g. Else:
    1. Push the modified handler  $handler_n\{catch'^*\}$  back to the stack.
    2. Push the exception reference  $ref.exn\ ea$  back to the stack.
    3. Execute the instruction `throw_ref` again.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & z; (\text{ref.null } ht) \text{ throw\_ref} \hookrightarrow \text{trap} \\
 & z; \text{val}^* (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref } \text{instr}^* \hookrightarrow (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref} \quad \text{if } \text{val}^* \neq \epsilon \vee \text{ } \\
 & z; (\text{label}_n \{ \text{instr}'^* \} (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref}) \hookrightarrow (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref} \\
 & z; (\text{frame}_n \{ f \} (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref}) \hookrightarrow (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref} \\
 & z; (\text{handler}_n \{ \epsilon \} (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref}) \hookrightarrow (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref} \\
 & z; (\text{handler}_n \{ (\text{catch } x \ l) \text{ catch}'^* \} (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref}) \hookrightarrow \text{val}^* (\text{br } l) \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{if } z.\text{exns}[a].\text{ta} \\ \wedge \text{val}^* = z.\text{ex} \end{array} \\
 & z; (\text{handler}_n \{ (\text{catch\_ref } x \ l) \text{ catch}'^* \} (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref}) \hookrightarrow \text{val}^* (\text{ref.exn } a) (\text{br } l) \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{if } z.\text{exns}[a].\text{ta} \\ \wedge \text{val}^* = z.\text{ex} \end{array} \\
 & z; (\text{handler}_n \{ (\text{catch\_all } l) \text{ catch}'^* \} (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref}) \hookrightarrow (\text{br } l) \\
 & z; (\text{handler}_n \{ (\text{catch\_all\_ref } l) \text{ catch}'^* \} (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref}) \hookrightarrow (\text{ref.exn } a) (\text{br } l) \\
 & z; (\text{handler}_n \{ \text{catch } \text{catch}'^* \} (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref}) \hookrightarrow (\text{handler}_n \{ \text{catch}'^* \} (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref}) \quad \text{otherwise}
 \end{aligned}$$

**try\_table**  $bt \text{ catch}^* \text{ instr}^*$

1. Let  $z$  be the current state.
2. Let  $t_1^m \rightarrow t_2^n$  be the destructuring of  $\text{instrtype}_z(bt)$ .
3. Assert: Due to [validation](#), there are at least  $m$  values on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the values  $\text{val}^m$  from the stack.
5. Let  $H$  be the [handler](#) whose arity is  $n$  and whose catch handler is  $\text{catch}^*$ .
6. Push the [handler](#)  $H$ .
7. Let  $L$  be the [label](#) whose arity is  $n$  and whose continuation is the end of the block.
8. Enter the block  $\text{val}^m \text{ instr}^*$  with the [label](#)  $L$ .

$$z; \text{val}^m (\text{try\_table } bt \text{ catch}^* \text{ instr}^*) \hookrightarrow (\text{handler}_n \{ \text{catch}^* \} (\text{label}_n \{ \epsilon \} \text{val}^m \text{ instr}^*)) \quad \text{if } \text{instrtype}_z(bt) = t_1^m \rightarrow t_2^n$$

## 4.6.9 Blocks

The following auxiliary rules define the semantics of executing an [instruction sequence](#) that forms a [block](#).

### Entering $\text{instr}^*$ with label $L$

1. Push  $L$  to the stack.
2. Jump to the start of the instruction sequence  $\text{instr}^*$ .

#### Note

No formal reduction rule is needed for entering an instruction sequence, because the label  $L$  is embedded in the [administrative instruction](#) that structured control instructions reduce to directly.

### Exiting $\text{instr}^*$ with label $L$

When the end of a block is reached without a jump, [exception](#), or [trap](#) aborting it, then the following steps are performed.

1. Pop all values  $\text{val}^*$  from the top of the stack.
2. Assert: due to [validation](#), the label  $L$  is now on the top of the stack.
3. Pop the label from the stack.
4. Push  $\text{val}^*$  back to the stack.
5. Jump to the position after the end of the [structured control instruction](#) associated with the label  $L$ .

$$(\text{label}_n\{instr^*\} val^*) \hookrightarrow val^*$$

**Note**

This semantics also applies to the instruction sequence contained in a loop instruction. Therefore, execution of a loop falls off the end, unless a backwards branch is performed explicitly.

## 4.6.10 Exception Handling

The following auxiliary rules define the semantics of entering and exiting try\_table blocks.

### Entering $instr^*$ with label $L$ and exception handler $H$

1. Push  $H$  to the stack.
2. Push  $L$  onto the stack.
3. Jump to the start of the instruction sequence  $instr^*$ .

**Note**

No formal reduction rule is needed for entering an exception handler because it is an administrative instruction that the try\_table instruction reduces to directly.

### Exiting an exception handler

When the end of a try\_table block is reached without a jump, exception, or trap, then the following steps are performed.

1. Let  $m$  be the number of values on the top of the stack.
2. Pop the values  $val^m$  from the stack.
3. Assert: due to validation, a handler and a label are now on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the label from the stack.
5. Pop the handler  $H$  from the stack.
6. Push  $val^m$  back to the stack.
7. Jump to the position after the end of the administrative instruction associated with the handler  $H$ .

$$(\text{handler}_n\{catch^*\} val^*) \hookrightarrow val^*$$

## 4.6.11 Function Calls

The following auxiliary rules define the semantics of invoking a function instance through one of the call instructions and returning from it.

### Invocation of function reference (ref.func $a$ )

1. Assert: due to validation,  $S.\text{funcs}[a]$  exists.
2. Let  $f$  be the function instance,  $S.\text{funcs}[a]$ .
3. Let  $\text{func } [t_1^n] \rightarrow [t_2^m]$  be the composite type  $\text{expand}(f.\text{type})$ .
4. Let  $local^*$  be the list of locals  $f.\text{code}.\text{locals}$ .
5. Let  $instr^*$  end be the expression  $f.\text{code}.\text{body}$ .

6. Assert: due to [validation](#),  $n$  values are on the top of the stack.
7. Pop the values  $val^n$  from the stack.
8. Let  $F$  be the [frame](#)  $\{\text{module } f.\text{module}, \text{locals } val^n (\text{default}_t)^*\}$ .
9. Push the activation of  $F$  with arity  $m$  to the stack.
10. Let  $L$  be the [label](#) whose arity is  $m$  and whose continuation is the end of the function.
11. [Enter](#) the instruction sequence  $instr^*$  with label  $L$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 z; val^n (\text{ref.func } a) (\text{call\_ref } y) &\hookrightarrow (\text{frame}_m\{f\} (\text{label}_m\{\epsilon\} instr^*)) \\
 &\quad \text{if } z.\text{funcs}[a] = f_i \\
 &\quad \wedge f_i.\text{type} \approx \text{func } (t_1^n \rightarrow t_2^m) \\
 &\quad \wedge f_i.\text{code} = \text{func } x (\text{local } t)^* (instr^*) \\
 &\quad \wedge f = \{\text{locals } val^n (\text{default}_t)^*, \text{module } f_i.\text{module}\}
 \end{aligned}$$

### Note

For non-defaultable types, the respective local is left uninitialized by these rules.

## Returning from a function

When the end of a function is reached without a jump (including through [return](#)), or an [exception](#) or [trap](#) aborting it, then the following steps are performed.

1. Let  $F$  be the [current frame](#).
2. Let  $n$  be the arity of the activation of  $F$ .
3. Assert: due to [validation](#), there are  $n$  values on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the results  $val^n$  from the stack.
5. Assert: due to [validation](#), the frame  $F$  is now on the top of the stack.
6. Pop the frame from the stack.
7. Push  $val^n$  back to the stack.
8. Jump to the instruction after the original call.

$$(\text{frame}_n\{f\} val^n) \hookrightarrow val^n$$

## Host Functions

Invoking a [host function](#) has non-deterministic behavior. It may either terminate with a [trap](#), an [exception](#), or return regularly. However, in the latter case, it must consume and produce the right number and types of WebAssembly [values](#) on the stack, according to its [function type](#).

A host function may also modify the [store](#). However, all store modifications must result in an [extension](#) of the original store, i.e., they must only modify mutable contents and must not have instances removed. Furthermore, the resulting store must be [valid](#), i.e., all data and code in it is well-typed.

$$\begin{aligned}
 S; val^n (\text{invoke } a) &\hookrightarrow S'; \text{result} \\
 &\quad (\text{if } S.\text{funcs}[a] = \{\text{type } \text{deftype}, \text{hostfunc } hf\} \\
 &\quad \wedge \text{expand}(\text{deftype}) = \text{func } [t_1^n] \rightarrow [t_2^m] \\
 &\quad \wedge (S'; \text{result}) \in hf(S; val^n)) \\
 S; val^n (\text{invoke } a) &\hookrightarrow S; val^n (\text{invoke } a) \\
 &\quad (\text{if } S.\text{funcs}[a] = \{\text{type } \text{deftype}, \text{hostfunc } hf\} \\
 &\quad \wedge \text{expand}(\text{deftype}) = \text{func } [t_1^n] \rightarrow [t_2^m] \\
 &\quad \wedge \perp \in hf(S; val^n))
 \end{aligned}$$

Here,  $hf(S; val^n)$  denotes the implementation-defined execution of host function  $hf$  in current store  $S$  with arguments  $val^n$ . It yields a set of possible outcomes, where each element is either a pair of a modified store  $S'$  and a **result** or the special value  $\perp$  indicating divergence. A host function is non-deterministic if there is at least one argument for which the set of outcomes is not singular.

For a WebAssembly implementation to be **sound** in the presence of host functions, every **host function instance** must be **valid**, which means that it adheres to suitable pre- and post-conditions: under a **valid store**  $S$ , and given arguments  $val^n$  matching the ascribed parameter types  $t_1^n$ , executing the host function must yield a non-empty set of possible outcomes each of which is either divergence or consists of a valid store  $S'$  that is an **extension** of  $S$  and a result matching the ascribed return types  $t_2^m$ . All these notions are made precise in the **Appendix**.

#### Note

A host function can call back into WebAssembly by **invoking** a function **exported** from a **module**. However, the effects of any such call are subsumed by the non-deterministic behavior allowed for the host function.

### 4.6.12 Expressions

An **expression** is **evaluated** relative to a **current frame** pointing to its containing **module instance**.

$eval\_expr\ instr^*$

1. Execute the sequence  $instr^*$ .
2. Pop the value  $val$  from the stack.
3. Return  $val$ .

#### Todo

This is the manual prose:

1. Jump to the start of the instruction sequence  $instr^*$  of the expression.
2. Execute the instruction sequence.
3. Assert: due to **validation**, the top of the stack contains a **value**.
4. Pop the **value**  $val$  from the stack.

The value  $val$  is the result of the evaluation.

$$z; instr^* \hookrightarrow^* z'; val^* \quad \text{if } z; instr^* \hookrightarrow^* z'; val^*$$

#### Note

Evaluation iterates this reduction rule until reaching a value. Expressions constituting **function** bodies are executed during function **invocation**.

## 4.7 Modules

For modules, the execution semantics primarily defines **instantiation**, which **allocates** instances for a module and its contained definitions, initializes **tables** and **memories** from contained **element** and **data** segments, and invokes the **start function** if present. It also includes **invocation** of exported functions.

### 4.7.1 Allocation

New instances of functions, tables, memories, globals, tags, element segments, and data segments are *allocated* in a store  $s$ , as defined by the following auxiliary functions.

#### Functions

$\text{allocfunc}(s, \text{deftype}, \text{code}, \text{moduleinst})$

1. Let  $\text{funcinst}$  be the function instance  $\{\text{type } \text{deftype}, \text{module } \text{moduleinst}, \text{code } \text{code}\}$ .
2. Let  $a$  be the length of  $s.\text{funcs}$ .
3. Append  $\text{funcinst}$  to  $s.\text{funcs}$ .
4. Return  $a$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{allocfunc}(s, \text{deftype}, \text{code}, \text{moduleinst}) &= (s \oplus \{\text{funcs } \text{funcinst}\}, |s.\text{funcs}|) \\ \text{if } \text{funcinst} &= \{\text{type } \text{deftype}, \text{module } \text{moduleinst}, \text{code } \text{code}\} \end{aligned}$$

#### Tables

$\text{alloctable}(s, \text{at } [i..j] \text{ rt}, \text{ref})$

1. Let  $\text{tableinst}$  be the table instance  $\{\text{type } (\text{at } [i..j] \text{ rt}), \text{elem } \text{ref}^i\}$ .
2. Let  $a$  be the length of  $s.\text{tables}$ .
3. Append  $\text{tableinst}$  to  $s.\text{tables}$ .
4. Return  $a$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{alloctable}(s, \text{at } [i..j] \text{ rt}, \text{ref}) &= (s \oplus \{\text{tables } \text{tableinst}\}, |s.\text{tables}|) \\ \text{if } \text{tableinst} &= \{\text{type } (\text{at } [i..j] \text{ rt}), \text{elem } \text{ref}^i\} \end{aligned}$$

#### Memories

$\text{allocmem}(s, \text{at } [i..j] \text{ page})$

1. Let  $\text{meminst}$  be the memory instance  $\{\text{type } (\text{at } [i..j] \text{ page}), \text{bytes } 0\text{x}00^{i \cdot 64 \text{ Ki}}\}$ .
2. Let  $a$  be the length of  $s.\text{mems}$ .
3. Append  $\text{meminst}$  to  $s.\text{mems}$ .
4. Return  $a$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{allocmem}(s, \text{at } [i..j] \text{ page}) &= (s \oplus \{\text{mems } \text{meminst}\}, |s.\text{mems}|) \\ \text{if } \text{meminst} &= \{\text{type } (\text{at } [i..j] \text{ page}), \text{bytes } (0\text{x}00)^{i \cdot 64 \text{ Ki}}\} \end{aligned}$$

#### Tags

$\text{alloctag}(s, \text{tagtype})$

1. Let  $\text{taginst}$  be the tag instance  $\{\text{type } \text{tagtype}\}$ .
2. Let  $a$  be the length of  $s.\text{tags}$ .
3. Append  $\text{taginst}$  to  $s.\text{tags}$ .
4. Return  $a$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{alloctag}(s, \text{tagtype}) &= (s \oplus \{\text{tags } \text{taginst}\}, |s.\text{tags}|) \\ \text{if } \text{taginst} &= \{\text{type } \text{tagtype}\} \end{aligned}$$

## Globals

$\text{allocglobal}(s, \text{globaltype}, \text{val})$

1. Let  $\text{globalinst}$  be the global instance  $\{\text{type } \text{globaltype}, \text{value } \text{val}\}$ .
2. Let  $a$  be the length of  $s.\text{globals}$ .
3. Append  $\text{globalinst}$  to  $s.\text{globals}$ .
4. Return  $a$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{allocglobal}(s, \text{globaltype}, \text{val}) &= (s \oplus \{\text{globals } \text{globalinst}\}, |s.\text{globals}|) \\ &\text{if } \text{globalinst} = \{\text{type } \text{globaltype}, \text{value } \text{val}\} \end{aligned}$$

## Element segments

$\text{allocelem}(s, \text{elemtype}, \text{ref}^*)$

1. Let  $\text{eleminst}$  be the element instance  $\{\text{type } \text{elemtype}, \text{elem } \text{ref}^*\}$ .
2. Let  $a$  be the length of  $s.\text{elems}$ .
3. Append  $\text{eleminst}$  to  $s.\text{elems}$ .
4. Return  $a$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{allocelem}(s, \text{elemtype}, \text{ref}^*) &= (s \oplus \{\text{elems } \text{eleminst}\}, |s.\text{elems}|) \\ &\text{if } \text{eleminst} = \{\text{type } \text{elemtype}, \text{elem } \text{ref}^*\} \end{aligned}$$

## Data segments

$\text{allocdata}(s, \text{ok}, \text{byte}^*)$

1. Let  $\text{datainst}$  be the data instance  $\{\text{bytes } \text{byte}^*\}$ .
2. Let  $a$  be the length of  $s.\text{datas}$ .
3. Append  $\text{datainst}$  to  $s.\text{datas}$ .
4. Return  $a$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{allocdata}(s, \text{ok}, \text{byte}^*) &= (s \oplus \{\text{datas } \text{datainst}\}, |s.\text{datas}|) \\ &\text{if } \text{datainst} = \{\text{bytes } \text{byte}^*\} \end{aligned}$$

## Growing tables

$\text{growtable}(\text{tableinst}, n, r)$

1. Let  $\{\text{type } (\text{at } [i \dots j] \text{ rt}), \text{elem } r'^*\}$  be the destructuring of  $\text{tableinst}$ .
2. If  $|r'^*| + n > j$ , then:
  - a. Fail.
3. Let  $i'$  be  $|r'^*| + n$ .
4. Let  $\text{tableinst}'$  be the table instance  $\{\text{type } (\text{at } [i' \dots j] \text{ rt}), \text{elem } r'^* r^n\}$ .
5. Return  $\text{tableinst}'$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{growtable}(\text{tableinst}, n, r) &= \text{tableinst}' \quad \text{if } \text{tableinst} = \{\text{type } (\text{at } [i \dots j] \text{ rt}), \text{elem } r'^*\} \\ &\quad \wedge \text{tableinst}' = \{\text{type } (\text{at } [i' \dots j] \text{ rt}), \text{elem } r'^* r^n\} \\ &\quad \wedge i' = |r'^*| + n \leq j \end{aligned}$$



## Growing memories

$\text{growmem}(\text{meminst}, n)$

1. Let  $\{\text{type}(\text{at } [i..j] \text{ page}), \text{bytes } b^*\}$  be the destructuring of  $\text{meminst}$ .
2. If  $|b^*|/(64 \text{ Ki}) + n > j$ , then:
  - a. Fail.
3. Let  $i'$  be  $|b^*|/(64 \text{ Ki}) + n$ .
4. Let  $\text{meminst}'$  be the memory instance  $\{\text{type}(\text{at } [i'..j] \text{ page}), \text{bytes } b^* \text{ 0x00}^{n \cdot 64 \text{ Ki}}\}$ .
5. Return  $\text{meminst}'$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{growmem}(\text{meminst}, n) = \text{meminst}' \quad & \text{if } \text{meminst} = \{\text{type}(\text{at } [i..j] \text{ page}), \text{bytes } b^*\} \\ & \wedge \text{meminst}' = \{\text{type}(\text{at } [i'..j] \text{ page}), \text{bytes } b^* \text{ (0x00)}^{n \cdot 64 \text{ Ki}}\} \\ & \wedge i' = |b^*|/(64 \text{ Ki}) + n \leq j \end{aligned}$$

## Modules

$\text{allocmodule}(s, \text{module}, \text{externaddr}^*, \text{val}_g^*, \text{ref}_t^*, \text{ref}_e^*)$

1. Let  $(\text{module type}^* \text{ import}^* \text{ func}^* \text{ global}^* \text{ table}^* \text{ mem}^* \text{ tag}^* \text{ elem}^* \text{ data}^* \text{ start}^? \text{ export}^*)$  be the destructuring of  $\text{module}$ .
2. Let  $\text{fa}_i^*$  be  $\text{funcs}(\text{externaddr}^*)$ .
3. Let  $\text{ga}_i^*$  be  $\text{globals}(\text{externaddr}^*)$ .
4. Let  $\text{aa}_i^*$  be  $\text{tags}(\text{externaddr}^*)$ .
5. Let  $\text{ma}_i^*$  be  $\text{mems}(\text{externaddr}^*)$ .
6. Let  $\text{ta}_i^*$  be  $\text{tables}(\text{externaddr}^*)$ .
7. Let  $\text{fa}^*$  be  $(|s.\text{funcs}| + i_f)^{i_f < |\text{func}^*|}$ .
8. Let  $\text{ga}^*$  be  $(|s.\text{globals}| + i_g)^{i_g < |\text{global}^*|}$ .
9. Let  $\text{ta}^*$  be  $(|s.\text{tables}| + i_t)^{i_t < |\text{table}^*|}$ .
10. Let  $\text{aa}^*$  be  $(|s.\text{tags}| + i_a)^{i_a < |\text{tag}^*|}$ .
11. Let  $\text{ma}^*$  be  $(|s.\text{mems}| + i_m)^{i_m < |\text{mem}^*|}$ .
12. Let  $\text{ea}^*$  be  $(|s.\text{elems}| + i_e)^{i_e < |\text{elem}^*|}$ .
13. Let  $\text{da}^*$  be  $(|s.\text{datas}| + i_d)^{i_d < |\text{data}^*|}$ .
14. Let  $(\text{memory memtype})^*$  be  $\text{mem}^*$ .
15. Let  $\text{dt}^*$  be  $\text{allocotype}^*(\text{type}^*)$ .
16. Let  $(\text{tag } y)^*$  be  $\text{tag}^*$ .
17. Let  $(\text{data byte}^* \text{ datamode})^*$  be  $\text{data}^*$ .
18. Let  $(\text{global globaltype expr}_g)^*$  be  $\text{global}^*$ .
19. Let  $(\text{table tabletype expr}_t)^*$  be  $\text{table}^*$ .
20. Let  $(\text{elem elemtype expr}_e^* \text{ elemmode})^*$  be  $\text{elem}^*$ .
21. Let  $(\text{func } x \text{ local}^* \text{ expr}_f)^*$  be  $\text{func}^*$ .
22. Let  $\text{xi}^*$  be  $\text{allocexport}^*(\{\text{funcs } \text{fa}_i^* \text{ fa}^*, \text{globals } \text{ga}_i^* \text{ ga}^*, \text{tables } \text{ta}_i^* \text{ ta}^*, \text{mems } \text{ma}_i^* \text{ ma}^*, \text{tags } \text{aa}_i^* \text{ aa}^*\}, \text{export}^*)$ .
23. Let  $\text{moduleinst}$  be the module instance  $\{\text{types } \text{dt}^*, \text{funcs } \text{fa}_i^* \text{ fa}^*, \text{globals } \text{ga}_i^* \text{ ga}^*, \text{tables } \text{ta}_i^* \text{ ta}^*, \text{mems } \text{ma}_i^* \text{ ma}^*, \text{tags } \text{aa}_i^* \text{ aa}^*\}$ .
24. Let  $\text{funcaddr}_0^*$  be  $\text{allocfunc}^*(s, \text{dt}^*[\text{x}]^*, (\text{func } x \text{ local}^* \text{ expr}_f)^*, \text{moduleinst}^{|\text{func}^*|})$ .
25. Assert: Due to validation,  $\text{funcaddr}_0^* = \text{fa}^*$ .

26. Let  $globaladdr_0^*$  be  $allocglobal^*(s, globaltype[:= dt^*]^*, val_g^*)$ .
27. Assert: Due to validation,  $globaladdr_0^* = ga^*$ .
28. Let  $tableaddr_0^*$  be  $alloctable^*(s, tabletype[:= dt^*]^*, ref_t^*)$ .
29. Assert: Due to validation,  $tableaddr_0^* = ta^*$ .
30. Let  $memaddr_0^*$  be  $allocmem^*(s, memtype[:= dt^*]^*)$ .
31. Assert: Due to validation,  $memaddr_0^* = ma^*$ .
32. Let  $tagaddr_0^*$  be  $allocatag^*(s, dt^*[y]^*)$ .
33. Assert: Due to validation,  $tagaddr_0^* = aa^*$ .
34. Let  $elemaddr_0^*$  be  $allocelem^*(s, elemtype[:= dt^*]^*, ref_e^{**})$ .
35. Assert: Due to validation,  $elemaddr_0^* = ea^*$ .
36. Let  $dataaddr_0^*$  be  $allocdata^*(s, ok^{data^*}, byte^{**})$ .
37. Assert: Due to validation,  $dataaddr_0^* = da^*$ .
38. Return  $moduleinst$ .

### Todo

Prose for Allocmodule was being skipped due to indentation error, which is fixed by now. Needs to check if the generated prose seems good.

The allocation function for **modules** requires a suitable list of **external addresses** that are assumed to **match** the **import** list of the module, a list of initialization **values** for the module's **globals**, and list of **reference** lists for the module's **element segments**.

1. Let  $module$  be the **module** to allocate and  $externaddr_{im}^*$  the list of **external addresses** providing the module's imports,  $val_g^*$  the initialization **values** of the module's **globals**,  $ref_t^*$  the initializer **reference** of the module's **tables**, and  $(ref_e^*)^*$  the **reference** lists of the module's **element segments**.
2. Let  $deftype^*$  be the sequence of **defined types** obtained by allocating the **types** from  $module.types$ .
3. For each function  $func_i$  in  $module.funcs$ , do:
  - a. Let  $funcaddr_i$  be the **function address** resulting from allocating  $func_i$  for the **module instance**  $moduleinst$  defined below.
4. For each table  $table_i$  in  $module.tables$ , do:
  - a. Let  $limits_i$   $t_i$  be the **table type** obtained by instantiating  $table_i.type$  in  $moduleinst$  defined below.
  - b. Let  $tableaddr_i$  be the **table address** resulting from allocating  $table_i.type$  with initialization value  $ref_t^*[i]$ .
5. For each memory  $mem_i$  in  $module.mems$ , do:
  - a. Let  $memtype_i$  be the **memory type** obtained by instantiating  $mem_i.type$  in  $moduleinst$  defined below.
  - b. Let  $memaddr_i$  be the **memory address** resulting from allocating  $memtype_i$ .
6. For each global  $global_i$  in  $module.globals$ , do:
  - a. Let  $globaltype_i$  be the **global type** obtained by instantiating  $global_i.type$  in  $moduleinst$  defined below.
  - b. Let  $globaladdr_i$  be the **global address** resulting from allocating  $globaltype_i$  with initializer value  $val_g^*[i]$ .
7. For each tag  $tag_i$  in  $module.tags$ , do:
  - a. Let  $tagtype$  be the **tag type**  $module.types[tag_i.type]$ .
  - b. Let  $tagaddr_i$  be the **tag address** resulting from allocating  $tagtype$ .
8. For each element segment  $elem_i$  in  $module.elms$ , do:

- a. Let  $ref_{type_i}$  be the element reference type obtained by instantiating  $elem_i.type$  in  $moduleinst$  defined below.
- b. Let  $elemaddr_i$  be the element address resulting from allocating a element instance of reference type  $ref_{type_i}$  with contents  $(ref_e^*)^*[i]$ .
9. For each data segment  $data_i$  in  $module.datas$ , do:
  - a. Let  $dataaddr_i$  be the data address resulting from allocating a data instance with contents  $data_i.init$ .
10. Let  $deftype^*$  be the concatenation of the defined types  $deftype_i$  in index order.
11. Let  $funcaddr^*$  be the concatenation of the function addresses  $funcaddr_i$  in index order.
12. Let  $tableaddr^*$  be the concatenation of the table addresses  $tableaddr_i$  in index order.
13. Let  $memaddr^*$  be the concatenation of the memory addresses  $memaddr_i$  in index order.
14. Let  $globaladdr^*$  be the concatenation of the global addresses  $globaladdr_i$  in index order.
15. Let  $tagaddr^*$  be the concatenation of the tag addresses  $tagaddr_i$  in index order.
16. Let  $elemaddr^*$  be the concatenation of the element addresses  $elemaddr_i$  in index order.
17. Let  $dataaddr^*$  be the concatenation of the data addresses  $dataaddr_i$  in index order.
18. Let  $funcaddr_{mod}^*$  be the list of function addresses extracted from  $externaddr_{im}^*$ , concatenated with  $funcaddr^*$ .
19. Let  $tableaddr_{mod}^*$  be the list of table addresses extracted from  $externaddr_{im}^*$ , concatenated with  $tableaddr^*$ .
20. Let  $memaddr_{mod}^*$  be the list of memory addresses extracted from  $externaddr_{im}^*$ , concatenated with  $memaddr^*$ .
21. Let  $globaladdr_{mod}^*$  be the list of global addresses extracted from  $externaddr_{im}^*$ , concatenated with  $globaladdr^*$ .
22. Let  $tagaddr_{mod}^*$  be the list of tag addresses extracted from  $externaddr_{im}^*$ , concatenated with  $tagaddr^*$ .
23. For each export  $export_i$  in  $module.exports$ , do:
  - a. Let  $exportinst_i$  be the export instance resulting from allocating  $export_i$ .
24. Let  $exportinst^*$  be the concatenation of the export instances  $exportinst_i$  in index order.
25. Let  $moduleinst$  be the module instance  $\{types\ deftype^*,\ funcs\ funcaddr_{mod}^*,\ tables\ tableaddr_{mod}^*,\ mems\ memaddr_{mod}^*,\ globals\ globaladdr_{mod}^*,\ tags\ tagaddr_{mod}^*,\ elems\ elemaddr^*,\ datas\ dataaddr^*,\ exports\ exportinst^*\}$ .
26. Return  $moduleinst$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{allocmodule}(s, \text{module}, \text{externaddr}^*, \text{val}_g^*, \text{ref}_t^*, (\text{ref}_e^*)^*) = (s_7, \text{moduleinst}) \\
&\quad \text{if } \text{module} = \text{module type}^* \text{ import}^* \text{ func}^* \text{ global}^* \text{ table}^* \text{ mem}^* \text{ tag}^* \text{ elem}^* \text{ data}^* \text{ start? export}^* \\
&\quad \wedge \text{func}^* = (\text{func } x \text{ local}^* \text{ expr}_f^*)^* \\
&\quad \wedge \text{global}^* = (\text{global } \text{globaltype} \text{ expr}_g^*)^* \\
&\quad \wedge \text{table}^* = (\text{table } \text{tabletype} \text{ expr}_t^*)^* \\
&\quad \wedge \text{mem}^* = (\text{memory } \text{memtype})^* \\
&\quad \wedge \text{tag}^* = (\text{tag } y)^* \\
&\quad \wedge \text{elem}^* = (\text{elem } \text{elemtype} \text{ expr}_e^* \text{ elemmode})^* \\
&\quad \wedge \text{data}^* = (\text{data } \text{byte}^* \text{ datamode})^* \\
&\quad \wedge \text{fa}_i^* = \text{funcs}(\text{externaddr}^*) \\
&\quad \wedge \text{ga}_i^* = \text{globals}(\text{externaddr}^*) \\
&\quad \wedge \text{ta}_i^* = \text{tables}(\text{externaddr}^*) \\
&\quad \wedge \text{ma}_i^* = \text{mems}(\text{externaddr}^*) \\
&\quad \wedge \text{aa}_i^* = \text{tags}(\text{externaddr}^*) \\
&\quad \wedge \text{fa}^* = (|s.\text{funcs}| + i_f)^{i_f < |func^*|} \\
&\quad \wedge \text{ga}^* = (|s.\text{globals}| + i_g)^{i_g < |global^*|} \\
&\quad \wedge \text{ta}^* = (|s.\text{tables}| + i_t)^{i_t < |table^*|} \\
&\quad \wedge \text{aa}^* = (|s.\text{tags}| + i_a)^{i_a < |tag^*|} \\
&\quad \wedge \text{ma}^* = (|s.\text{mems}| + i_m)^{i_m < |mem^*|} \\
&\quad \wedge \text{ea}^* = (|s.\text{elems}| + i_e)^{i_e < |elem^*|} \\
&\quad \wedge \text{da}^* = (|s.\text{datas}| + i_d)^{i_d < |data^*|} \\
&\quad \wedge \text{dt}^* = \text{alloctype}^*(\text{type}^*) \\
&\quad \wedge (s_1, \text{fa}^*) = \text{allocfunc}^*(s, \text{dt}^*[x]^*, (\text{func } x \text{ local}^* \text{ expr}_f^*)^*, \text{moduleinst}^{|func^*|}) \\
&\quad \wedge (s_2, \text{ga}^*) = \text{allocglobal}^*(s_1, \text{globaltype}^{|:= dt^*|}, \text{val}_g^*) \\
&\quad \wedge (s_3, \text{ta}^*) = \text{alloctable}^*(s_2, \text{tabletype}^{|:= dt^*|}, \text{ref}_t^*) \\
&\quad \wedge (s_4, \text{ma}^*) = \text{allocmem}^*(s_3, \text{memtype}^{|:= dt^*|}) \\
&\quad \wedge (s_5, \text{aa}^*) = \text{alloctag}^*(s_4, \text{dt}^*[y]^*) \\
&\quad \wedge (s_6, \text{ea}^*) = \text{allocelem}^*(s_5, \text{elemtype}^{|:= dt^*|}, (\text{ref}_e^*)^*) \\
&\quad \wedge (s_7, \text{da}^*) = \text{allocdata}^*(s_6, \text{ok}^{|data^*|}, (\text{byte}^*)^*) \\
&\quad \wedge \text{xi}^* = \text{allocexport}^*({\text{funcs } \text{fa}_i^* \text{ fa}^*, \text{globals } \text{ga}_i^* \text{ ga}^*, \text{tables } \text{ta}_i^* \text{ ta}^*, \text{mems } \text{ma}_i^* \text{ ma}^*, \text{tags } \text{aa}_i^* \text{ aa}^*}, \text{export}^*) \\
&\quad \wedge \text{moduleinst} = \{\text{types } \text{dt}^*, \\
&\quad \quad \text{funcs } \text{fa}_i^* \text{ fa}^*, \text{globals } \text{ga}_i^* \text{ ga}^*, \\
&\quad \quad \text{tables } \text{ta}_i^* \text{ ta}^*, \text{mems } \text{ma}_i^* \text{ ma}^*, \\
&\quad \quad \text{tags } \text{aa}_i^* \text{ aa}^*, \\
&\quad \quad \text{elems } \text{ea}^*, \text{datas } \text{da}^*, \\
&\quad \quad \text{exports } \text{xi}^*\}
\end{aligned}$$

Here, the notation  $\text{allocx}^*$  is shorthand for multiple allocations of object kind  $X$ , defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{allocX}^*(s, \epsilon, \epsilon) &= (s, \epsilon) \\
\text{allocX}^*(s, X \text{ X}'^*, Y \text{ Y}'^*) &= (s_2, a \text{ a}'^*) \quad \text{if } (s_1, a) = \text{allocX}(X, Y, s, X, Y) \\
&\quad \wedge (s_2, a') = \text{allocX}^*(s_1, X'^*, Y'^*)
\end{aligned}$$

For types, however, allocation is defined in terms of [rolling](#) and [substitution](#) of all preceding types to produce a list of [closed defined types](#):

$\text{alloctype}^*(\text{type}''^*)$

1. If  $\text{type}''^* = \epsilon$ , then:
  - a. Return  $\epsilon$ .
2. Let  $\text{type}'^* \text{ type}$  be  $\text{type}''^*$ .
3. Let  $(\text{type } \text{rectype})$  be the destructuring of  $\text{type}$ .
4. Let  $\text{deftype}'^*$  be  $\text{alloctype}^*(\text{type}'^*)$ .
5. Let  $x$  be the length of  $\text{deftype}'^*$ .
6. Let  $\text{deftype}^*$  be  $\text{roll}_x^*(\text{rectype})[:= \text{deftype}'^*]$ .
7. Return  $\text{deftype}'^* \text{ deftype}^*$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{alloctype}^*(\epsilon) &= \epsilon \\
\text{alloctype}^*(type'^* type) &= deftype'^* deftype^* \quad \text{if } deftype'^* = \text{alloctype}^*(type'^*) \\
&\quad \wedge type = \text{type } rectype \\
&\quad \wedge deftype^* = \text{roll}_x^*(rectype)[:= deftype'^*] \\
&\quad \wedge x = |deftype'^*|
\end{aligned}$$

Finally, export instances are produced with the help of the following definition:

$\text{allocexport}(moduleinst, \text{export name } externidx)$

1. If  $externidx$  is some `func funcidx`, then:
  - a. Let  $(\text{func } x)$  be the destructuring of  $externidx$ .
  - b. Return  $\{\text{name } name, \text{addr } (\text{func } moduleinst.funcs[x])\}$ .
2. If  $externidx$  is some `global globalidx`, then:
  - a. Let  $(\text{global } x)$  be the destructuring of  $externidx$ .
  - b. Return  $\{\text{name } name, \text{addr } (\text{global } moduleinst.globals[x])\}$ .
3. If  $externidx$  is some `table tableidx`, then:
  - a. Let  $(\text{table } x)$  be the destructuring of  $externidx$ .
  - b. Return  $\{\text{name } name, \text{addr } (\text{table } moduleinst.tables[x])\}$ .
4. If  $externidx$  is some `memory memidx`, then:
  - a. Let  $(\text{memory } x)$  be the destructuring of  $externidx$ .
  - b. Return  $\{\text{name } name, \text{addr } (\text{mem } moduleinst.mems[x])\}$ .
5. Assert: Due to validation,  $externidx$  is some `tag tagidx`.
6. Let  $(\text{tag } x)$  be the destructuring of  $externidx$ .
7. Return  $\{\text{name } name, \text{addr } (\text{tag } moduleinst.tags[x])\}$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{allocexport}(moduleinst, \text{export name } (\text{func } x)) &= \{\text{name } name, \text{addr } (\text{func } moduleinst.funcs[x])\} \\
\text{allocexport}(moduleinst, \text{export name } (\text{global } x)) &= \{\text{name } name, \text{addr } (\text{global } moduleinst.globals[x])\} \\
\text{allocexport}(moduleinst, \text{export name } (\text{table } x)) &= \{\text{name } name, \text{addr } (\text{table } moduleinst.tables[x])\} \\
\text{allocexport}(moduleinst, \text{export name } (\text{memory } x)) &= \{\text{name } name, \text{addr } (\text{mem } moduleinst.mems[x])\} \\
\text{allocexport}(moduleinst, \text{export name } (\text{tag } x)) &= \{\text{name } name, \text{addr } (\text{tag } moduleinst.tags[x])\}
\end{aligned}$$

#### Note

The definition of module allocation is mutually recursive with the allocation of its associated functions, because the resulting module instance is passed to the allocators as an argument, in order to form the necessary closures. In an implementation, this recursion is easily unraveled by mutating one or the other in a secondary step.

### 4.7.2 Instantiation

Given a `store`  $s$ , a `module` is instantiated with a list of `external addresses`  $externaddr^*$  supplying the required imports as follows.

Instantiation checks that the module is `valid` and the provided imports `match` the declared types, and may `fail` with an error otherwise. Instantiation can also result in an `exception` or `trap` when initializing a `table` or `memory` from an `active segment` or when executing the `start` function. It is up to the `embedder` to define how such conditions are reported.

$\text{instantiate}(s, \text{module}, \text{externaddr}^*)$

1. If  $\text{module}$  is not **valid**, then:
  - a. Fail.
2. Let  $xt_i^* \rightarrow xt_e^*$  be the destructuring of the type of  $\text{module}$ .
3. Let  $(\text{module type}^* \text{ import}^* \text{ func}^* \text{ global}^* \text{ table}^* \text{ mem}^* \text{ tag}^* \text{ elem}^* \text{ data}^* \text{ start}^? \text{ export}^*)$  be the destructuring of  $\text{module}$ .
4. If  $|\text{externaddr}^*| \neq |xt_i^*|$ , then:
  - a. Fail.
5. For all  $\text{externaddr}$ , and  $xt_i$  in  $(\text{externaddr}, xt_i)^*$ :
  - a. If  $\text{externaddr}$  is not **valid** with type  $xt_i$ , then:
    - 1) Fail.
6. Let  $\text{instr}_d^*$  be the concatenation of  $\text{rundata}_{i_d}(\text{data}^*[i_d])^{i_d < |\text{data}^*|}$ .
7. Let  $\text{instr}_e^*$  be the concatenation of  $\text{runelem}_{i_e}(\text{elem}^*[i_e])^{i_e < |\text{elem}^*|}$ .
8. Let  $(\text{start } x)^?$  be  $\text{start}^?$ .
9. Let  $\text{moduleinst}_0$  be the module instance  $\{\text{types } \text{alloctype}^*(\text{type}^*), \text{funcs } \text{funcs}(\text{externaddr}^*) (|s.\text{funcs}| + i_f)^{i_f < |\text{func}^*|}, \text{glob}$
10. Let  $(\text{table } \text{tabletype } \text{expr}_t)^*$  be  $\text{table}^*$ .
11. Let  $(\text{global } \text{globaltype } \text{expr}_g)^*$  be  $\text{global}^*$ .
12. Let  $(\text{elem } \text{reftype } \text{expr}_e^* \text{ elemmode})^*$  be  $\text{elem}^*$ .
13. Let  $\text{instr}_s^?$  be  $(\text{call } x)^?$ .
14. Let  $z$  be the state  $(s, \{\text{module } \text{moduleinst}_0\})$ .
15. Let  $F$  be the frame  $z.\text{frame}$ .
16. Push the frame  $F$ .
17. Let  $\text{val}_g^*$  be  $\text{evalglobal}^*(z, \text{globaltype}^*, \text{expr}_g^*)$ .
18. Pop the frame  $F$  from the stack.
19. Let  $F$  be the frame  $f$ .
20. Push the frame  $F$ .
21. Let  $\text{ref}_t^*$  be the result of evaluating  $\text{expr}_t^*$  with state  $z$ .
22. Pop the frame  $F$  from the stack.
23. Let  $F$  be the frame  $f$ .
24. Push the frame  $F$ .
25. Let  $\text{ref}_e^{**}$  be the result of evaluating  $\text{expr}_e^{**}$  with state  $z$ .
26. Pop the frame  $F$  from the stack.
27. Let  $\text{moduleinst}$  be  $\text{allocmodule}(s, \text{module}, \text{externaddr}^*, \text{val}_g^*, \text{ref}_t^*, \text{ref}_e^{**})$ .
28. Let  $f$  be the frame  $\{\text{module } \text{moduleinst}\}$ .
29. Let  $F$  be the frame  $f$ .
30. Push the frame  $F$ .
31. Execute the sequence  $\text{instr}_e^*$ .
32. Execute the sequence  $\text{instr}_d^*$ .
33. If  $\text{instr}_s^?$  is defined, then:

- a. Let  $instr_0$  be  $instr_s^?$ .
  - b. Execute the instruction  $instr_0$ .
34. Pop the frame  $F$  from the stack.
35. Return  $f.module$ .
1. If  $module$  is not **valid**, then:
  - a. Fail.
2. Assert:  $module$  is **valid** with external types  $externtype_{im}^m$  classifying its **imports**.
3. If the number  $m$  of **imports** is not equal to the number  $n$  of provided **external addresses**, then:
  - a. Fail.
4. For each **external address**  $externaddr_i$  in  $externaddr^n$  and **external type**  $externtype'_i$  in  $externtype_{im}^n$ , do:
  - a. If  $externaddr_i$  is not **valid** with an **external type**  $externtype_i$  in store  $S$ , then:
    - i. Fail.
  - b. Let  $externtype''_i$  be the **external type** obtained by **instantiating**  $externtype'_i$  in  $moduleinst$  defined below.
  - c. If  $externtype_i$  does not **match**  $externtype''_i$ , then:
    - i. Fail.
6. Let  $F$  be the auxiliary **frame**  $\{\text{module } moduleinst, \text{locals } \epsilon\}$ , that consists of the final module instance  $moduleinst$ , defined below.
7. Push the frame  $F$  to the stack.
8. Let  $val_g^*$  be the list of **global initialization values** determined by  $module$  and  $externaddr^n$ . These may be calculated as follows.
  - a. For each **global**  $global_i$  in  $module.globals$ , do:
    - i. Let  $val_{gi}$  be the result of **evaluating** the initializer expression  $global_i.init$ .
  - b. Assert: due to **validation**, the frame  $F$  is now on the top of the stack.
  - c. Let  $val_g^*$  be the concatenation of  $val_{gi}$  in index order.
9. Let  $ref_t^*$  be the list of **table initialization references** determined by  $module$  and  $externaddr^n$ . These may be calculated as follows.
  - a. For each **table**  $table_i$  in  $module.tables$ , do:
    - i. Let  $val_{ti}$  be the result of **evaluating** the initializer expression  $table_i.init$ .
    - ii. Assert: due to **validation**,  $val_{ti}$  is a **reference**.
    - iii. Let  $ref_{ti}$  be the reference  $val_{ti}$ .
  - b. Assert: due to **validation**, the frame  $F$  is now on the top of the stack.
  - c. Let  $ref_t^*$  be the concatenation of  $ref_{ti}$  in index order.
10. Let  $(ref_e^*)^*$  be the list of **reference lists** determined by the **element segments** in  $module$ . These may be calculated as follows.
  - a. For each **element segment**  $elem_i$  in  $module.elems$ , and for each **element expression**  $expr_{ij}$  in  $elem_i.init$ , do:
    - i. Let  $ref_{ij}$  be the result of **evaluating** the initializer expression  $expr_{ij}$ .
  - b. Let  $ref_i^*$  be the concatenation of function elements  $ref_{ij}$  in order of index  $j$ .
  - c. Let  $(ref_e^*)^*$  be the concatenation of function element lists  $ref_i^*$  in order of index  $i$ .

11. Let *moduleinst* be a new module instance allocated from *module* in store *S* with imports *externaddr<sup>n</sup>*, global initializer values *val<sub>g</sub><sup>\*</sup>*, table initializer values *ref<sub>t</sub><sup>\*</sup>*, and element segment contents *(ref<sub>e</sub><sup>\*</sup>)<sup>\*</sup>*, and let *S'* be the extended store produced by module allocation.
12. For each element segment *elem<sub>i</sub>* in *module.elems* whose *mode* is of the form active {table *tableidx<sub>i</sub>*, offset *instr<sub>i</sub><sup>\*</sup>* end}, do:
  - a. Let *n* be the length of the list *elem<sub>i</sub>.init*.
  - b. Execute the instruction sequence *instr<sub>i</sub><sup>\*</sup>*.
  - c. Execute the instruction *i32.const 0*.
  - d. Execute the instruction *i32.const n*.
  - e. Execute the instruction *table.init tableidx<sub>i</sub> i*.
  - f. Execute the instruction *elem.drop i*.
13. For each element segment *elem<sub>i</sub>* in *module.elems* whose *mode* is of the form declare, do:
  - a. Execute the instruction *elem.drop i*.
14. For each data segment *data<sub>i</sub>* in *module.datas* whose *mode* is of the form active {memory *memidx<sub>i</sub>*, offset *dinstr<sub>i</sub><sup>\*</sup>* end}, do:
  - a. Let *n* be the length of the list *data<sub>i</sub>.init*.
  - b. Execute the instruction sequence *dinstr<sub>i</sub><sup>\*</sup>*.
  - c. Execute the instruction *i32.const 0*.
  - d. Execute the instruction *i32.const n*.
  - e. Execute the instruction *memory.init i*.
  - f. Execute the instruction *data.drop i*.
15. If the start function *module.start* is not empty, then:
  - a. Let *start* be the start function *module.start*.
  - b. Execute the instruction call *start.func*.
16. Assert: due to validation, the frame *F* is now on the top of the stack.
17. Pop the frame *F* from the stack.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{instantiate}(s, \text{module}, \text{externaddr}^*) &= s'; f; \text{instr}_e^* \text{instr}_d^* \text{instr}_s^? \\
 &\text{if } \vdash \text{module} : \text{xt}_i^* \rightarrow \text{xt}_e^* \\
 &\wedge (s \vdash \text{externaddr} : \text{xt}_i)^* \\
 &\wedge \text{module} = \text{module type}^* \text{import}^* \text{func}^* \text{global}^* \text{table}^* \text{mem}^* \text{tag}^* \text{elem}^* \text{data}^* \text{start}^? \text{export}^* \\
 &\wedge \text{global}^* = (\text{global globaltype expr}_g^*)^* \\
 &\wedge \text{table}^* = (\text{table tabletype expr}_t^*)^* \\
 &\wedge \text{elem}^* = (\text{elem reftype expr}_e^* \text{elemmode})^* \\
 &\wedge \text{data}^* = (\text{data byte}^* \text{datamode})^* \\
 &\wedge \text{start}^? = (\text{start } x)^? \\
 &\wedge \text{moduleinst}_0 = \{\text{types alloctype}^*(\text{type}^*), \\
 &\quad \text{funcs funcs}(\text{externaddr}^*) (|s.\text{funcs}| + i_f)^{i_f < |\text{func}^*|}, \\
 &\quad \text{globals globals}(\text{externaddr}^*)\} \\
 &\wedge z = s; \{\text{module moduleinst}_0\} \\
 &\wedge (z', \text{val}_g^*) = \text{evalglobal}^*(z, \text{globaltype}^*, \text{expr}_g^*) \\
 &\wedge (z'; \text{expr}_t \hookrightarrow^* z'; \text{ref}_t)^* \\
 &\wedge (z'; \text{expr}_e \hookrightarrow^* z'; \text{ref}_e)^{**} \\
 &\wedge (s', \text{moduleinst}) = \text{allocmodule}(s, \text{module}, \text{externaddr}^*, \text{val}_g^*, \text{ref}_t^*, (\text{ref}_e^*)^*) \\
 &\wedge f = \{\text{module moduleinst}\} \\
 &\wedge \text{instr}_e^* = \bigoplus \text{runelem}_{i_e}(\text{elem}^*[i_e])^{i_e < |\text{elem}^*|} \\
 &\wedge \text{instr}_d^* = \bigoplus \text{rundata}_{i_d}(\text{data}^*[i_d])^{i_d < |\text{data}^*|} \\
 &\wedge \text{instr}_s^? = (\text{call } x)^?
 \end{aligned}$$



where:

$\text{evalglobal}^*(z, \text{globaltype}^*, \text{expr}''^*)$

1. If  $\text{globaltype}^* = \epsilon$  and  $\text{expr}''^* = \epsilon$ , then:
  - a. Return  $\epsilon$ .
2. Assert: Due to validation,  $|\text{expr}''^*| \geq 1$ .
3. Let  $\text{expr } \text{expr}'^*$  be  $\text{expr}''^*$ .
4. Assert: Due to validation,  $|\text{globaltype}^*| \geq 1$ .
5. Let  $gt \text{ } gt'^*$  be  $\text{globaltype}^*$ .
6. Let  $(s, f)$  be the destructuring of  $z$ .
7. Let  $val$  be the result of evaluating  $\text{expr}$  with state  $z$ .
8. Let  $a$  be  $\text{allocglobal}(s, gt, val)$ .
9. Append  $a$  to  $f.\text{module.globals}$ .
10. Let  $val'^*$  be  $\text{evalglobal}^*((s, f), gt'^*, \text{expr}'^*)$ .
11. Return  $val \text{ } val'^*$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{evalglobal}^*(z, \epsilon, \epsilon) &= (z, \epsilon) \\ \text{evalglobal}^*(z, gt \text{ } gt'^*, \text{expr } \text{expr}'^*) &= (z', val \text{ } val'^*) \\ &\quad \text{if } z; \text{expr} \hookrightarrow^* z; val \\ &\quad \wedge z = s; f \\ &\quad \wedge (s', a) = \text{allocglobal}(s, gt, val) \\ &\quad \wedge (z', val'^*) = \text{evalglobal}^*((s'; f[.module.globals = \oplus a]), gt'^*, \text{expr}'^*) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{runelem}_x(\text{elem } rt \text{ } e^n \text{ } elemmode)$

1. If  $elemmode = \text{passive}$ , then:
  - a. Return  $\epsilon$ .
2. If  $elemmode = \text{declare}$ , then:
  - a. Return  $(\text{elem.drop } x)$ .
3. Assert: Due to validation,  $elemmode$  is some active  $tableidx \text{ } \text{expr}$ .
4. Let  $(\text{active } y \text{ } instr^*)$  be the destructuring of  $elemmode$ .
5. Return  $instr^* (\text{i32.const } 0) (\text{i32.const } n) (\text{table.init } y \text{ } x) (\text{elem.drop } x)$ .

$\text{rundata}_x(\text{data } b^n \text{ } datamode)$

1. If  $datamode = \text{passive}$ , then:
  - a. Return  $\epsilon$ .
2. Assert: Due to validation,  $datamode$  is some active  $memidx \text{ } \text{expr}$ .
3. Let  $(\text{active } y \text{ } instr^*)$  be the destructuring of  $datamode$ .
4. Return  $instr^* (\text{i32.const } 0) (\text{i32.const } n) (\text{memory.init } y \text{ } x) (\text{data.drop } x)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{runelem}_x(\text{elem } rt \text{ } e^n \text{ } (\text{passive})) &= \epsilon \\ \text{runelem}_x(\text{elem } rt \text{ } e^n \text{ } (\text{declare})) &= (\text{elem.drop } x) \\ \text{runelem}_x(\text{elem } rt \text{ } e^n \text{ } (\text{active } y \text{ } instr^*)) &= \\ &\quad instr^* (\text{i32.const } 0) (\text{i32.const } n) (\text{table.init } y \text{ } x) (\text{elem.drop } x) \\ \text{rundata}_x(\text{data } b^n \text{ } (\text{passive})) &= \epsilon \\ \text{rundata}_x(\text{data } b^n \text{ } (\text{active } y \text{ } instr^*)) &= \\ &\quad instr^* (\text{i32.const } 0) (\text{i32.const } n) (\text{memory.init } y \text{ } x) (\text{data.drop } x) \end{aligned}$$

**Note**

Checking import types assumes that the **module instance** has already been **allocated** to compute the respective **closed defined types**. However, this forward reference merely is a way to simplify the specification. In practice, implementations will likely allocate or canonicalize types beforehand, when *compiling* a module, in a stage before instantiation and before imports are checked.

Similarly, module **allocation** and the **evaluation** of **global** and **table** initializers as well as **element segments** are mutually recursive because the global initialization values  $val_g^*$ ,  $ref_t$ , and element segment contents  $ref_e^{**}$  are passed to the module allocator while depending on the module instance  $moduleinst$  and store  $s'$  returned by allocation. Again, this recursion is just a specification device. In practice, the initialization values can be **determined** beforehand by staging module allocation such that first, the module's own **function instances** are pre-allocated in the store, then the initializer expressions are evaluated in order, allocating globals on the way, then the rest of the module instance is allocated, and finally the new function instances' module fields are set to that module instance. This is possible because **validation** ensures that initialization expressions cannot actually call a function, only take their reference.

All failure conditions are checked before any observable mutation of the store takes place. Store mutation is not atomic; it happens in individual steps that may be interleaved with other threads.

**Evaluation of constant expressions** does not affect the store.

**4.7.3 Invocation**

$invoke(s, funcaddr, val^*)$

1. Assert: Due to validation, the **expansion** of  $s.funcs[funcaddr].type$  is some **func functype**.
2. Let  $(func\ functype_0)$  be the destructuring of the **expansion** of  $s.funcs[funcaddr].type$ .
3. Let  $t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*$  be the destructuring of  $functype_0$ .
4. Let  $f$  be the **frame**  $\{\text{module } \{\}\}$ .
5. If  $|t_1^*| \neq |val^*|$ , then:
  - a. Fail.
6. For all  $t_1$ , and  $val$  in  $(t_1, val)^*$ :
  - a. If  $val$  is not **valid** with type  $t_1$ , then:
    - 1) Fail.
7. Let  $k$  be the length of  $t_2^*$ .
8. Let  $F$  be the frame  $f$  whose arity is  $k$ .
9. Push the frame  $F$ .
10. Push the values  $val^*$  to the stack.
11. Push the value  $(ref.func\ funcaddr)$  to the stack.
12. Execute the instruction  $(call\_ref\ s.funcs[funcaddr].type)$ .
13. Pop the values  $val'^k$  from the stack.
14. Pop the frame  $F$  from the stack.
15. Return  $val'^k$ .

Once a **module** has been **instantiated**, any exported function can be *invoked* externally via its **function address**  $funcaddr$  in the **store**  $s$  and an appropriate list  $val^*$  of argument **values**.

Invocation may *fail* with an error if the arguments do not fit the **function type**. Invocation can also result in an **exception** or **trap**. It is up to the **embedder** to define how such conditions are reported.

**Note**

If the `embedder` API performs type checks itself, either statically or dynamically, before performing an invocation, then no failure other than traps or exceptions can occur.

The following steps are performed:

1. Assert:  $S.\text{funcs}[\text{funcaddr}]$  exists.
2. Let  $\text{funcinst}$  be the function instance  $S.\text{funcs}[\text{funcaddr}]$ .
3. Let  $\text{func} [t_1^n] \rightarrow [t_2^m]$  be the composite type  $\text{expand}(\text{funcinst.type})$ .
4. If the length  $|\text{val}^*|$  of the provided argument values is different from the number  $n$  of expected arguments, then:
  - a. Fail.
5. For each value type  $t_i$  in  $t_1^n$  and corresponding value  $\text{val}_i$  in  $\text{val}^*$ , do:
  - a. If  $\text{val}_i$  is not valid with value type  $t_i$ , then:
    - i. Fail.
6. Let  $F$  be the dummy frame  $\{\text{module } \{\}, \text{locals } \epsilon\}$ .
7. Push the frame  $F$  to the stack.
8. Push the values  $\text{val}^*$  to the stack.
9. Invoke the function instance at address  $\text{funcaddr}$ .

Once the function has returned, the following steps are executed:

1. Assert: due to validation,  $m$  values are on the top of the stack.
2. Pop  $\text{val}_{\text{res}}^m$  from the stack.
3. Assert: due to validation, the frame  $F$  is now on the top of the stack.
4. Pop the frame  $F$  from the stack.

The values  $\text{val}_{\text{res}}^m$  are returned as the results of the invocation.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{invoke}(s, \text{funcaddr}, \text{val}^*) &= s; f; \text{val}^* (\text{ref.func } \text{funcaddr}) (\text{call\_ref } s.\text{funcs}[\text{funcaddr}].\text{type}) \\ &\text{ if } s.\text{funcs}[\text{funcaddr}].\text{type} \approx \text{func } (t_1^* \rightarrow t_2^*) \\ &\wedge (s \vdash \text{val} : t_1)^* \\ &\wedge f = \{\text{module } \{\}\} \end{aligned}$$



## 5.1 Conventions

The binary format for WebAssembly **modules** is a dense linear *encoding* of their **abstract syntax**.<sup>28</sup>

The format is defined by an *attribute grammar* whose only terminal symbols are **bytes**. A byte sequence is a well-formed encoding of a module if and only if it is generated by the grammar.

Each production of this grammar has exactly one synthesized attribute: the abstract syntax that the respective byte sequence encodes. Thus, the attribute grammar implicitly defines a *decoding* function (i.e., a parsing function for the binary format).

Except for a few exceptions, the binary grammar closely mirrors the grammar of the abstract syntax.

### Note

Some phrases of abstract syntax have multiple possible encodings in the binary format. For example, numbers may be encoded as if they had optional leading zeros. Implementations of decoders must support all possible alternatives; implementations of encoders can pick any allowed encoding.

The recommended extension for files containing WebAssembly modules in binary format is “.wasm” and the recommended **Media Type**<sup>27</sup> is “application/wasm”.

### 5.1.1 Grammar

The following conventions are adopted in defining grammar rules for the binary format. They mirror the conventions used for **abstract syntax**. In order to distinguish symbols of the binary syntax from symbols of the abstract syntax, **typewriter** font is adopted for the former.

- Terminal symbols are **bytes** expressed in hexadecimal notation: 0x0F.
- Nonterminal symbols are written in typewriter font: **valtype**, **instr**.
- $B^n$  is a sequence of  $n \geq 0$  iterations of  $B$ .
- $B^*$  is a possibly empty sequence of iterations of  $B$ . (This is a shorthand for  $B^n$  used where  $n$  is not relevant.)

<sup>28</sup> Additional encoding layers – for example, introducing compression – may be defined on top of the basic representation defined here. However, such layers are outside the scope of the current specification.

<sup>27</sup> <https://www.iana.org/assignments/media-types/media-types.xhtml>

- $B^?$  is an optional occurrence of  $B$ . (This is a shorthand for  $B^n$  where  $n \leq 1$ .)
- $x:B$  denotes the same language as the nonterminal  $B$ , but also binds the variable  $x$  to the attribute synthesized for  $B$ . A pattern may also be used instead of a variable, e.g.,  $7:B$ .
- Productions are written  $\text{sym} ::= B_1 \Rightarrow A_1 \mid \dots \mid B_n \Rightarrow A_n$ , where each  $A_i$  is the attribute that is synthesized for  $\text{sym}$  in the given case, usually from attribute variables bound in  $B_i$ .
- Some productions are augmented by side conditions in parentheses, which restrict the applicability of the production. They provide a shorthand for a combinatorial expansion of the production into many separate cases.
- If the same meta variable or non-terminal symbol appears multiple times in a production (in the syntax or in an attribute), then all those occurrences must have the same instantiation. (This is a shorthand for a side condition requiring multiple different variables to be equal.)

### Note

For example, the **binary grammar** for **number types** is given as follows:

$$\begin{array}{lcl} \text{numtype} & ::= & 0x7C \Rightarrow f_{64} \\ & & | 0x7D \Rightarrow f_{32} \\ & & | 0x7E \Rightarrow i_{64} \\ & & | 0x7F \Rightarrow i_{32} \end{array}$$

Consequently, the byte 0x7F encodes the type  $i_{32}$ , 0x7E encodes the type  $i_{64}$ , and so forth. No other byte value is allowed as the encoding of a number type.

The **binary grammar** for **limits** is defined as follows:

$$\begin{array}{lcl} \text{limits} & ::= & 0x00 \ n:\text{u64} \Rightarrow (i_{32}, [n \dots 2^{64} - 1]) \\ & & | 0x01 \ n:\text{u64} \ m:\text{u64} \Rightarrow (i_{64}, [n \dots m]) \\ & & | 0x04 \ n:\text{u64} \Rightarrow (i_{32}, [n \dots 2^{64} - 1]) \\ & & | 0x05 \ n:\text{u64} \ m:\text{u64} \Rightarrow (i_{64}, [n \dots m]) \end{array}$$

That is, a limits pair is encoded as either the byte 0x00 followed by the encoding of a **u32** value, or the byte 0x01 followed by two such encodings. The variables  $n$  and  $m$  name the attributes of the respective **u32** nonterminals, which in this case are the actual **unsigned integers** those decode into. The attribute of the complete production then is the abstract syntax for the limit, expressed in terms of the former values.

## 5.1.2 Auxiliary Notation

When dealing with binary encodings the following notation is also used:

- $\epsilon$  denotes the empty byte sequence.
- $||B||$  is the length of the byte sequence generated from the production  $B$  in a derivation.

## 5.1.3 Lists

**Lists** are encoded with their **u32** length followed by the encoding of their element sequence.

$$\text{list}(X) ::= n:\text{u32} \ (el:X)^n \Rightarrow el^n$$

## 5.2 Values

### 5.2.1 Bytes

**Bytes** encode themselves.

$$\text{byte} ::= b:0x00 \mid \dots \mid b:0xFF \Rightarrow b$$

## 5.2.2 Integers

All **integers** are encoded using the **LEB128**<sup>29</sup> variable-length integer encoding, in either unsigned or signed variant.

**Unsigned integers** are encoded in **unsigned LEB128**<sup>30</sup> format. As an additional constraint, the total number of bytes encoding a  $uN$  value must not exceed  $\text{ceil}(N/7)$  bytes.

$$\begin{aligned} uN &::= n:\text{byte} && \Rightarrow n && \text{if } n < 2^7 \wedge n < 2^N \\ &| n:\text{byte } m:\text{u}(N-7) && \Rightarrow 2^7 \cdot m + (n - 2^7) && \text{if } n \geq 2^7 \wedge N > 7 \end{aligned}$$

**Signed integers** are encoded in **signed LEB128**<sup>31</sup> format, which uses a two's complement representation. As an additional constraint, the total number of bytes encoding an  $sN$  value must not exceed  $\text{ceil}(N/7)$  bytes.

$$\begin{aligned} sN &::= n:\text{byte} && \Rightarrow n && \text{if } n < 2^6 \wedge n < 2^{N-1} \\ &| n:\text{byte} && \Rightarrow n - 2^7 && \text{if } 2^6 \leq n < 2^7 \wedge n \geq 2^7 - 2^{N-1} \\ &| n:\text{byte } i:\text{u}(N-7) && \Rightarrow 2^7 \cdot i + (n - 2^7) && \text{if } n \geq 2^7 \wedge N > 7 \end{aligned}$$

**Uninterpreted integers** are encoded as signed integers.

$$iN ::= i:sN \Rightarrow \text{signed}_N^{-1}(i)$$

### Note

The side conditions  $N > 7$  in the productions for non-terminal bytes of the  $uN$  and  $sN$  encodings restrict the encoding's length. However, “trailing zeros” are still allowed within these bounds. For example, 0x03 and 0x83 0x00 are both well-formed encodings for the value 3 as a  $us$ . Similarly, either of 0x7E and 0xFE 0x7F and 0xFE 0xFF 0x7F are well-formed encodings of the value  $-2$  as an  $s16$ .

The side conditions on the value  $n$  of terminal bytes further enforce that any unused bits in these bytes must be 0 for positive values and 1 for negative ones. For example, 0x83 0x10 is malformed as a  $us$  encoding. Similarly, both 0x83 0x3E and 0xFF 0x7B are malformed as  $ss$  encodings.

## 5.2.3 Floating-Point

**Floating-point** values are encoded directly by their **IEEE 754**<sup>32</sup> (Section 3.4) bit pattern in **little endian**<sup>33</sup> byte order:

$$fN ::= b*:\text{byte}^{N/8} \Rightarrow \text{bytes}_{fN}^{-1}(b*)$$

## 5.2.4 Names

**Names** are encoded as a **list** of bytes containing the **Unicode**<sup>34</sup> (Section 3.9) UTF-8 encoding of the name's character sequence.

$$\text{name} ::= b*:\text{list}(\text{byte}) \Rightarrow \text{name} \text{ if } \text{utf8}(\text{name}) = b*$$

<sup>29</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/LEB128>

<sup>30</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/LEB128#Unsigned\\_LEB128](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/LEB128#Unsigned_LEB128)

<sup>31</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/LEB128#Signed\\_LEB128](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/LEB128#Signed_LEB128)

<sup>32</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

<sup>33</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Endianness#Little-endian>

<sup>34</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/versions/latest/>

The auxiliary `utf8` function expressing this encoding is defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{utf8}(ch^*) &= \bigoplus \text{utf8}(ch)^* \\
 \text{utf8}(ch) &= b && \text{if } ch < U+80 \\
 & && \wedge ch = b \\
 \text{utf8}(ch) &= b_1 b_2 && \text{if } U+80 \leq ch < U+0800 \\
 & && \wedge ch = 2^6 \cdot (b_1 - 0xC0) + \text{cont}(b_2) \\
 \text{utf8}(ch) &= b_1 b_2 b_3 && \text{if } U+0800 \leq ch < U+D800 \vee U+E000 \leq ch < U+10000 \\
 & && \wedge ch = 2^{12} \cdot (b_1 - 0xE0) + 2^6 \cdot \text{cont}(b_2) + \text{cont}(b_3) \\
 \text{utf8}(ch) &= b_1 b_2 b_3 b_4 && \text{if } U+10000 \leq ch < U+11000 \\
 & && \wedge ch = 2^{18} \cdot (b_1 - 0xF0) + 2^{12} \cdot \text{cont}(b_2) + 2^6 \cdot \text{cont}(b_3) + \text{cont}(b_4)
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $\text{cont}(b) = b - 0x80$  if  $(0x80 < b < 0xC0)$

#### Note

Unlike in some other formats, name strings are not 0-terminated.

## 5.3 Types

#### Note

In some places, possible types include both type constructors or types denoted by [type indices](#). Thus, the binary format for type constructors corresponds to the encodings of small negative *sN* values, such that they can unambiguously occur in the same place as (positive) type indices.

### 5.3.1 Number Types

Number types are encoded by a single byte.

<code>numtype</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>0x7C</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>f64</code>
		<code>0x7D</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>f32</code>
		<code>0x7E</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64</code>
		<code>0x7F</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i32</code>

### 5.3.2 Vector Types

Vector types are also encoded by a single byte.

<code>vectype</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>0x7B</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>v128</code>
----------------------	------------------	-------------------	---------------	-------------------



### 5.3.3 Heap Types

Heap types are encoded as either a single byte, or as a [type index](#) encoded as a positive signed integer.

<code>absheaptype</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>0x69</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>exn</code>	
		<code>0x6A</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>array</code>	
		<code>0x6B</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>struct</code>	
		<code>0x6C</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i31</code>	
		<code>0x6D</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>eq</code>	
		<code>0x6E</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>any</code>	
		<code>0x6F</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>extern</code>	
		<code>0x70</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>func</code>	
		<code>0x71</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>none</code>	
		<code>0x72</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>noextern</code>	
		<code>0x73</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>nofunc</code>	
		<code>0x74</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>noexn</code>	
<code>heaptype</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>ht:absheaptype</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>ht</code>	
		<code>x:s33</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>x</code>	if $x \geq 0$

#### Note

The heap type `bot` cannot occur in a module.

### 5.3.4 Reference Types

Reference types are either encoded by a single byte followed by a [heap type](#), or, as a short form, directly as an abstract heap type.

<code>reftype</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>0x63 ht:heaptype</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>ref null ht</code>
		<code>0x64 ht:heaptype</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>ref ht</code>
		<code>ht:absheaptype</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>ref null ht</code>

### 5.3.5 Value Types

Value types are encoded with their respective encoding as a [number type](#), [vector type](#), or [reference type](#).

<code>valtype</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>nt:numtype</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>nt</code>
		<code>vt:vectype</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>vt</code>
		<code>rt:reftype</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>rt</code>

#### Note

The value type `bot` cannot occur in a module.

Value types can occur in contexts where [type indices](#) are also allowed, such as in the case of [block types](#). Thus, the binary format for types corresponds to the [signed LEB128](#)<sup>35</sup> encoding of small negative  $sN$  values, so that they can coexist with (positive) type indices in the future.

### 5.3.6 Result Types

Result types are encoded by the respective [lists](#) of [value types](#).

<code>resulttype</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>t*:list(valtype)</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>t*</code>
-------------------------	------------------	-------------------------------	---------------	-----------------

<sup>35</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/LEB128#Signed\\_LEB128](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/LEB128#Signed_LEB128)

### 5.3.7 Composite Types

Composite types are encoded by a distinct byte followed by a type encoding of the respective form.

<code>mut</code>	::=	<code>0x00</code>	⇒	$\epsilon$
		<code>0x01</code>	⇒	<code>mut</code>
<code>comptype</code>	::=	<code>0x5E</code> <code>yt:fieldtype</code>	⇒	<code>array yt</code>
		<code>0x5F</code> <code>yt*:list(fieldtype)</code>	⇒	<code>struct yt*</code>
		<code>0x60</code> <code>t*:resultttype</code> <code>t*:resultttype</code>	⇒	<code>func (t<sub>1</sub>* → t<sub>2</sub>*)</code>
<code>fieldtype</code>	::=	<code>zt:storagetype</code> <code>mut?:mut</code>	⇒	<code>mut? zt</code>
<code>storagetype</code>	::=	<code>t:valtype</code>	⇒	<code>t</code>
		<code>pt:packtype</code>	⇒	<code>pt</code>
<code>packtype</code>	::=	<code>0x77</code>	⇒	<code>i16</code>
		<code>0x78</code>	⇒	<code>i8</code>

### 5.3.8 Recursive Types

Recursive types are encoded by the byte `0x4E` followed by a list of sub types. Additional shorthands are recognized for unary recursions and sub types without super types.

<code>rectype</code>	::=	<code>0x4E</code> <code>st*:list(subtype)</code>	⇒	<code>rec st*</code>
		<code>st:subtype</code>	⇒	<code>rec st</code>
<code>subtype</code>	::=	<code>0x4F</code> <code>x*:list(typeidx)</code> <code>ct:comptype</code>	⇒	<code>sub final x* ct</code>
		<code>0x50</code> <code>x*:list(typeidx)</code> <code>ct:comptype</code>	⇒	<code>sub x* ct</code>
		<code>ct:comptype</code>	⇒	<code>sub final <math>\epsilon</math> ct</code>

### 5.3.9 Limits

Limits are encoded with a preceding flag indicating whether a maximum is present, and a flag for the address type.

<code>limits</code>	::=	<code>0x00</code> <code>n:u64</code>	⇒	$(i_{32}, [n .. 2^{64} - 1])$
		<code>0x01</code> <code>n:u64</code> <code>m:u64</code>	⇒	$(i_{64}, [n .. m])$
		<code>0x04</code> <code>n:u64</code>	⇒	$(i_{32}, [n .. 2^{64} - 1])$
		<code>0x05</code> <code>n:u64</code> <code>m:u64</code>	⇒	$(i_{64}, [n .. m])$

### 5.3.10 Memory Types

Memory types are encoded with their limits.

`memtype` ::=  $(at, lim):limits \Rightarrow at \ lim \ page$

### 5.3.11 Table Types

Table types are encoded with their limits and the encoding of their element reference type.

`tabletype` ::=  $rt:reftype \ (at, lim):limits \Rightarrow at \ lim \ rt$

### 5.3.12 Global Types

Global types are encoded by their value type and a flag for their mutability.

`globaltype` ::=  $t:valtype \ mut?:mut \Rightarrow mut? \ t$

### 5.3.13 Tag Types

Tag types are encoded by a [type index](#) denoting a function type.

$$\text{tagtype} ::= 0x00 \ x:\text{typeid}x \Rightarrow x$$

#### Note

In future versions of WebAssembly, the preceding zero byte may encode additional flags.

### 5.3.14 External Types

External types are encoded by a distinguishing byte followed by an encoding of the respective form of type.

<code>externtype</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>0x00</code>	<code>x:typeid</code>	<code>⇒</code>	<code>func</code> <code>x</code>
		<code> </code>	<code>0x01</code>	<code>tt:tabletype</code>	<code>⇒</code> <code>table</code> <code>tt</code>
		<code> </code>	<code>0x02</code>	<code>mt:memtype</code>	<code>⇒</code> <code>mem</code> <code>mt</code>
		<code> </code>	<code>0x03</code>	<code>gt:globaltype</code>	<code>⇒</code> <code>global</code> <code>gt</code>
		<code> </code>	<code>0x04</code>	<code>x:tagtype</code>	<code>⇒</code> <code>tag</code> <code>x</code>

## 5.4 Instructions

[Instructions](#) are encoded by *opcodes*. Each opcode is represented by a single byte, and is followed by the instruction's immediate arguments, where present. The only exception are [structured control instructions](#), which consist of several opcodes bracketing their nested instruction sequences.

#### Note

Gaps in the byte code ranges for encoding instructions are reserved for future extensions.

### 5.4.1 Control Instructions

[Control instructions](#) have varying encodings. For structured instructions, the instruction sequences forming nested blocks are delimited with explicit opcodes for end and else.

[Block types](#) are encoded in special compressed form, by either the byte 0x40 indicating the empty type, as a single [value type](#), or as a [type index](#) encoded as a positive [signed integer](#).

<code>blocktype</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>0x40</code>	$\Rightarrow$	$\epsilon$	
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>t:valtype</code>	
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i:s33</code>	if $i \geq 0$
<code>instr</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>0x00</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>unreachable</code>	
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x01</code>	<code>nop</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x02 bt:blocktype (in:instr)* 0x0B</code>	<code>block bt in*</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x03 bt:blocktype (in:instr)* 0x0B</code>	<code>loop bt in*</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x04 bt:blocktype (in:instr)* 0x0B</code>	<code>if bt in* else <math>\epsilon</math></code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x04 bt:blocktype (in<sub>1</sub>:instr)*</code>	
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x05 (in<sub>2</sub>:instr)* 0x0B</code>	<code>if bt in<sub>1</sub>* else in<sub>2</sub>*</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x08 x:tagidx</code>	<code>throw x</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x0A</code>	<code>throw_ref</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x0C l:labelidx</code>	<code>br l</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x0D l:labelidx</code>	<code>br_if l</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x0E l*:list(labelidx) l<sub>n</sub>:labelidx</code>	<code>br_table l* l<sub>n</sub></code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x0F</code>	<code>return</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x10 x:funcidx</code>	<code>call x</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x11 y:typeidx x:tableidx</code>	<code>call_indirect x y</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x12 x:funcidx</code>	<code>return_call x</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x13 y:typeidx x:tableidx</code>	<code>return_call_indirect x y</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x1F bt:blocktype c*:list(catch) (in:instr)* 0x0B</code>	<code>try_table bt c* in*</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>...</code>	
<code>catch</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>0x00 x:tagidx l:labelidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>catch x l</code>	
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x01 x:tagidx l:labelidx</code>	<code>catch_ref x l</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x02 l:labelidx</code>	<code>catch_all l</code>
		<code> </code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>0x03 l:labelidx</code>	<code>catch_all_ref l</code>

**Note**

The else opcode 0x05 in the encoding of an if instruction can be omitted if the following instruction sequence is empty.

Unlike any other occurrence, the type index in a block type is encoded as a positive signed integer, so that its signed LEB128 bit pattern cannot collide with the encoding of value types or the special code 0x40, which correspond to the LEB128 encoding of negative integers. To avoid any loss in the range of allowed indices, it is treated as a 33 bit signed integer.

## 5.4.2 Reference Instructions

Generic reference instructions are represented by single byte codes, others use prefixes and type operands.

<code>instr ::=</code>	<code>...</code>	
	<code>0xD0 <i>ht</i>:heaptype</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>ref.null <i>ht</i></code>
	<code>0xD1</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>ref.is_null</code>
	<code>0xD2 <i>x</i>:funcidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>ref.func <i>x</i></code>
	<code>0xD3</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>ref.eq</code>
	<code>0xD4</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>ref.as_non_null</code>
	<code>0xD5 <i>l</i>:labelidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>br_on_null <i>l</i></code>
	<code>0xD6 <i>l</i>:labelidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>br_on_non_null <i>l</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 0:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>struct.new <i>x</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 1:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>struct.new_default <i>x</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 2:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx <i>i</i>:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>struct.get <i>x</i> <i>i</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 3:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx <i>i</i>:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>struct.get_s <i>x</i> <i>i</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 4:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx <i>i</i>:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>struct.get_u <i>x</i> <i>i</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 5:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx <i>i</i>:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>struct.set <i>x</i> <i>i</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 6:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.new <i>x</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 7:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.new_default <i>x</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 8:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx <i>n</i>:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.new_fixed <i>x</i> <i>n</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 9:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx <i>y</i>:dataidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.new_data <i>x</i> <i>y</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 10:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx <i>y</i>:elemidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.new_elem <i>x</i> <i>y</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 11:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.get <i>x</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 12:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.get_s <i>x</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 13:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.get_u <i>x</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 14:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.set <i>x</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 15:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.len</code>
	<code>0xFB 16:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.fill <i>x</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 17:u32 <i>x</i><sub>1</sub>:typeidx <i>x</i><sub>2</sub>:typeidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.copy <i>x</i><sub>1</sub> <i>x</i><sub>2</sub></code>
	<code>0xFB 18:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx <i>y</i>:dataidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.init_data <i>x</i> <i>y</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 19:u32 <i>x</i>:typeidx <i>y</i>:elemidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>array.init_elem <i>x</i> <i>y</i></code>
	<code>0xFB 20:u32 <i>ht</i>:heaptype</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>ref.test (ref <i>ht</i>)</code>
	<code>0xFB 21:u32 <i>ht</i>:heaptype</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>ref.test (ref null <i>ht</i>)</code>
	<code>0xFB 22:u32 <i>ht</i>:heaptype</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>ref.cast (ref <i>ht</i>)</code>
	<code>0xFB 23:u32 <i>ht</i>:heaptype</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>ref.cast (ref null <i>ht</i>)</code>
	<code>0xFB 24:u32 (null<sub>1</sub><sup>?</sup>, null<sub>2</sub><sup>?</sup>):castop</code>	
	<code><i>l</i>:labelidx <i>ht</i><sub>1</sub>:heaptype <i>ht</i><sub>2</sub>:heaptype</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>br_on_cast <i>l</i> (ref null<sub>1</sub><sup>?</sup> <i>ht</i><sub>1</sub>) (ref null<sub>2</sub><sup>?</sup> <i>ht</i><sub>2</sub>)</code>
	<code>0xFB 25:u32 (null<sub>1</sub><sup>?</sup>, null<sub>2</sub><sup>?</sup>):castop</code>	
	<code><i>l</i>:labelidx <i>ht</i><sub>1</sub>:heaptype <i>ht</i><sub>2</sub>:heaptype</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>br_on_cast_fail <i>l</i> (ref null<sub>1</sub><sup>?</sup> <i>ht</i><sub>1</sub>) (ref null<sub>2</sub><sup>?</sup> <i>ht</i><sub>2</sub>)</code>
	<code>0xFB 26:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>any.convert_extern</code>
	<code>0xFB 27:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>extern.convert_any</code>
	<code>0xFB 28:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>ref.i31</code>
	<code>0xFB 29:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>i31.get_s</code>
	<code>0xFB 30:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>i31.get_u</code>
	<code>...</code>	
<code>castop ::=</code>	<code>0x00</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>(<math>\epsilon</math>, <math>\epsilon</math>)</code>
	<code>0x01</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>(null, <math>\epsilon</math>)</code>
	<code>0x02</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>(<math>\epsilon</math>, null)</code>
	<code>0x03</code>	$\Rightarrow$ <code>(null, null)</code>

### 5.4.3 Parametric Instructions

Parametric instructions are represented by single byte codes, possibly followed by a type annotation.

```

instr ::= ...
      | 0x1A                               ⇒ drop
      | 0x1B                               ⇒ select
      | 0x1C t*:list(valtype)             ⇒ select t*
      | ...

```

### 5.4.4 Variable Instructions

Variable instructions are represented by byte codes followed by the encoding of the respective `index`.

```

instr ::= ...
      | 0x20 x:localidx ⇒ local.get x
      | 0x21 x:localidx ⇒ local.set x
      | 0x22 x:localidx ⇒ local.tee x
      | 0x23 x:globalidx ⇒ global.get x
      | 0x24 x:globalidx ⇒ global.set x
      | ...

```

### 5.4.5 Table Instructions

Table instructions are represented either by a single byte or a one byte prefix followed by a variable-length `unsigned integer`.

```

instr ::= ...
      | 0x25 x:tableidx ⇒ table.get x
      | 0x26 x:tableidx ⇒ table.set x
      | 0xFC 12:u32 y:elemidx x:tableidx ⇒ table.init x y
      | 0xFC 13:u32 x:elemidx ⇒ elem.drop x
      | 0xFC 14:u32 x1:tableidx x2:tableidx ⇒ table.copy x1 x2
      | 0xFC 15:u32 x:tableidx ⇒ table.grow x
      | 0xFC 16:u32 x:tableidx ⇒ table.size x
      | 0xFC 17:u32 x:tableidx ⇒ table.fill x
      | ...

```

### 5.4.6 Memory Instructions

Each variant of `memory instruction` is encoded with a different byte code. Loads and stores are followed by the encoding of their `memarg` immediate, which includes the `memory index` if bit 6 of the flags field containing alignment is set; the memory index defaults to 0 otherwise.

<code>memarg ::=</code>	<code>n:u32 m:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$	$(0, \{\text{align } n, \text{offset } m\})$	if $n < 2^6$
	<code>n:u32 x:memidx m:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$	$(x, \{\text{align } (n - 2^6), \text{offset } m\})$	if $2^6 \leq n < 2^7$
<code>instr ::=</code>	<code>...</code>			
	<code>0x28 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i32.load x ao</code>	
	<code>0x29 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.load x ao</code>	
	<code>0x2A (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>f32.load x ao</code>	
	<code>0x2B (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>f64.load x ao</code>	
	<code>0x2C (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i32.load8_s x ao</code>	
	<code>0x2D (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i32.load8_u x ao</code>	
	<code>0x2E (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i32.load16_s x ao</code>	
	<code>0x2F (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i32.load16_u x ao</code>	
	<code>0x30 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.load8_s x ao</code>	
	<code>0x31 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.load8_u x ao</code>	
	<code>0x32 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.load16_s x ao</code>	
	<code>0x33 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.load16_u x ao</code>	
	<code>0x34 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.load32_s x ao</code>	
	<code>0x35 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.load32_u x ao</code>	
	<code>0x36 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i32.store x ao</code>	
	<code>0x37 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.store x ao</code>	
	<code>0x38 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>f32.store x ao</code>	
	<code>0x39 (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>f64.store x ao</code>	
	<code>0x3A (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i32.store8 x ao</code>	
	<code>0x3B (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i32.store16 x ao</code>	
	<code>0x3C (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.store8 x ao</code>	
	<code>0x3D (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.store16 x ao</code>	
	<code>0x3E (x, ao):memarg</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.store32 x ao</code>	
	<code>0x3F x:memidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>memory.size x</code>	
	<code>0x40 x:memidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>memory.grow x</code>	
	<code>0xFC 8:u32 y:dataidx x:memidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>memory.init x y</code>	
	<code>0xFC 9:u32 x:dataidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>data.drop x</code>	
	<code>0xFC 10:u32 x1:memidx x2:memidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>memory.copy x1 x2</code>	
	<code>0xFC 11:u32 x:memidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>memory.fill x</code>	
	<code>...</code>			

### 5.4.7 Numeric Instructions

All variants of [numeric instructions](#) are represented by separate byte codes.

The const instructions are followed by the respective literal.

<code>instr ::=</code>	<code>...</code>		
	<code>0x41 n:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i32.const n</code>
	<code>0x42 n:u64</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64.const n</code>
	<code>0x43 p:f32</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>f32.const p</code>
	<code>0x44 p:f64</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>f64.const p</code>
	<code>...</code>		

All other numeric instructions are plain opcodes without any immediates.

```
instr ::= ...
        | 0x45 ⇒ i32.eqz
        | 0x46 ⇒ i32.eq
        | 0x47 ⇒ i32.ne
        | 0x48 ⇒ i32.lt_s
        | 0x49 ⇒ i32.lt_u
        | 0x4A ⇒ i32.gt_s
        | 0x4B ⇒ i32.gt_u
        | 0x4C ⇒ i32.le_s
        | 0x4D ⇒ i32.le_u
        | 0x4E ⇒ i32.ge_s
        | 0x4F ⇒ i32.ge_u
        | 0x50 ⇒ i64.eqz
        | 0x51 ⇒ i64.eq
        | 0x52 ⇒ i64.ne
        | 0x53 ⇒ i64.lt_s
        | 0x54 ⇒ i64.lt_u
        | 0x55 ⇒ i64.gt_s
        | 0x56 ⇒ i64.gt_u
        | 0x57 ⇒ i64.le_s
        | 0x58 ⇒ i64.le_u
        | 0x59 ⇒ i64.ge_s
        | 0x5A ⇒ i64.ge_u
        | ...

instr ::= ...
        | 0x5B ⇒ f32.eq
        | 0x5C ⇒ f32.ne
        | 0x5D ⇒ f32.lt
        | 0x5E ⇒ f32.gt
        | 0x5F ⇒ f32.le
        | 0x60 ⇒ f32.ge
        | 0x61 ⇒ f64.eq
        | 0x62 ⇒ f64.ne
        | 0x63 ⇒ f64.lt
        | 0x64 ⇒ f64.gt
        | 0x65 ⇒ f64.le
        | 0x66 ⇒ f64.ge
        | ...
```



```
instr ::= ...  
      | 0x67 ⇒ i32.clz  
      | 0x68 ⇒ i32.ctz  
      | 0x69 ⇒ i32.popcnt  
      | 0x6A ⇒ i32.add  
      | 0x6B ⇒ i32.sub  
      | 0x6C ⇒ i32.mul  
      | 0x6D ⇒ i32.div_s  
      | 0x6E ⇒ i32.div_u  
      | 0x6F ⇒ i32.rem_s  
      | 0x70 ⇒ i32.rem_u  
      | 0x71 ⇒ i32.and  
      | 0x72 ⇒ i32.or  
      | 0x73 ⇒ i32.xor  
      | 0x74 ⇒ i32.shl  
      | 0x75 ⇒ i32.shr_s  
      | 0x76 ⇒ i32.shr_u  
      | 0x77 ⇒ i32.rotl  
      | 0x78 ⇒ i32.rotr  
      | 0x79 ⇒ i64.clz  
      | 0x7A ⇒ i64.ctz  
      | 0x7B ⇒ i64.popcnt  
      | 0x7C ⇒ i64.add  
      | 0x7D ⇒ i64.sub  
      | 0x7E ⇒ i64.mul  
      | 0x7F ⇒ i64.div_s  
      | 0x80 ⇒ i64.div_u  
      | 0x81 ⇒ i64.rem_s  
      | 0x82 ⇒ i64.rem_u  
      | 0x83 ⇒ i64.and  
      | 0x84 ⇒ i64.or  
      | 0x85 ⇒ i64.xor  
      | 0x86 ⇒ i64.shl  
      | 0x87 ⇒ i64.shr_s  
      | 0x88 ⇒ i64.shr_u  
      | 0x89 ⇒ i64.rotl  
      | 0x8A ⇒ i64.rotr  
      | ...
```

```

instr ::= ...
| 0x8B ⇒ f32.abs
| 0x8C ⇒ f32.neg
| 0x8D ⇒ f32.ceil
| 0x8E ⇒ f32.floor
| 0x8F ⇒ f32.trunc
| 0x90 ⇒ f32.nearest
| 0x91 ⇒ f32.sqrt
| 0x92 ⇒ f32.add
| 0x93 ⇒ f32.sub
| 0x94 ⇒ f32.mul
| 0x95 ⇒ f32.div
| 0x96 ⇒ f32.min
| 0x97 ⇒ f32.max
| 0x98 ⇒ f32.copysign
| 0x99 ⇒ f64.abs
| 0x9A ⇒ f64.neg
| 0x9B ⇒ f64.ceil
| 0x9C ⇒ f64.floor
| 0x9D ⇒ f64.trunc
| 0x9E ⇒ f64.nearest
| 0x9F ⇒ f64.sqrt
| 0xA0 ⇒ f64.add
| 0xA1 ⇒ f64.sub
| 0xA2 ⇒ f64.mul
| 0xA3 ⇒ f64.div
| 0xA4 ⇒ f64.min
| 0xA5 ⇒ f64.max
| 0xA6 ⇒ f64.copysign
| ...

```

```

instr ::= ...
| 0xA7 ⇒ i32.wrap_i64
| 0xA8 ⇒ i32.trunc_s_f32
| 0xA9 ⇒ i32.trunc_u_f32
| 0xAA ⇒ i32.trunc_s_f64
| 0xAB ⇒ i32.trunc_u_f64
| 0xAC ⇒ i64.extend_s_i32
| 0xAD ⇒ i64.extend_u_i32
| 0xAE ⇒ i64.trunc_s_f32
| 0xAF ⇒ i64.trunc_u_f32
| 0xB0 ⇒ i64.trunc_s_f64
| 0xB1 ⇒ i64.trunc_u_f64
| 0xB2 ⇒ f32.convert_s_i32
| 0xB3 ⇒ f32.convert_u_i32
| 0xB4 ⇒ f32.convert_s_i64
| 0xB5 ⇒ f32.convert_u_i64
| 0xB6 ⇒ f32.demote_f64
| 0xB7 ⇒ f64.convert_s_i32
| 0xB8 ⇒ f64.convert_u_i32
| 0xB9 ⇒ f64.convert_s_i64
| 0xBA ⇒ f64.convert_u_i64
| 0xBB ⇒ f32.promote_f64
| 0xBC ⇒ i32.reinterpret_f32
| 0xBD ⇒ i64.reinterpret_f64
| 0xBE ⇒ f32.reinterpret_i32
| 0xBF ⇒ f64.reinterpret_i64
| ...

```

```

instr ::= ...
      | 0xC0 ⇒ i32.extend8_s
      | 0xC1 ⇒ i32.extend16_s
      | 0xC2 ⇒ i64.extend8_s
      | 0xC3 ⇒ i64.extend16_s
      | 0xC4 ⇒ i64.extend32_s
      | ...

```

The saturating truncation instructions all have a one byte prefix, whereas the actual opcode is encoded by a variable-length [unsigned integer](#).

```

instr ::= ...
      | 0xFC 0:u32 ⇒ i32.trunc_sat_s_f32
      | 0xFC 1:u32 ⇒ i32.trunc_sat_u_f32
      | 0xFC 2:u32 ⇒ i32.trunc_sat_s_f64
      | 0xFC 3:u32 ⇒ i32.trunc_sat_u_f64
      | 0xFC 4:u32 ⇒ i64.trunc_sat_s_f32
      | 0xFC 5:u32 ⇒ i64.trunc_sat_u_f32
      | 0xFC 6:u32 ⇒ i64.trunc_sat_s_f64
      | 0xFC 7:u32 ⇒ i64.trunc_sat_u_f64
      | ...

```

### 5.4.8 Vector Instructions

All variants of [vector instructions](#) are represented by separate byte codes. They all have a one byte prefix, whereas the actual opcode is encoded by a variable-length [unsigned integer](#).

Vector loads and stores are followed by the encoding of their *memarg* immediate.

```

laneidx ::= l:byte ⇒ l
instr ::= ...
      | 0xFD 0:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load x ao
      | 0xFD 1:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load8x8_s x ao
      | 0xFD 2:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load8x8_u x ao
      | 0xFD 3:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load16x4_s x ao
      | 0xFD 4:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load16x4_u x ao
      | 0xFD 5:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load32x2_s x ao
      | 0xFD 6:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load32x2_u x ao
      | 0xFD 7:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load8_splat x ao
      | 0xFD 8:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load16_splat x ao
      | 0xFD 9:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load32_splat x ao
      | 0xFD 10:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load64_splat x ao
      | 0xFD 11:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.store x ao
      | 0xFD 84:u32 (x, ao):memarg l:laneidx ⇒ v128.load8_lane x ao l
      | 0xFD 85:u32 (x, ao):memarg l:laneidx ⇒ v128.load16_lane x ao l
      | 0xFD 86:u32 (x, ao):memarg l:laneidx ⇒ v128.load32_lane x ao l
      | 0xFD 87:u32 (x, ao):memarg l:laneidx ⇒ v128.load64_lane x ao l
      | 0xFD 88:u32 (x, ao):memarg l:laneidx ⇒ v128.store8_lane x ao l
      | 0xFD 89:u32 (x, ao):memarg l:laneidx ⇒ v128.store16_lane x ao l
      | 0xFD 90:u32 (x, ao):memarg l:laneidx ⇒ v128.store32_lane x ao l
      | 0xFD 91:u32 (x, ao):memarg l:laneidx ⇒ v128.store64_lane x ao l
      | 0xFD 92:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load32_zero x ao
      | 0xFD 93:u32 (x, ao):memarg ⇒ v128.load64_zero x ao
      | ...

```

The const instruction for vectors is followed by 16 immediate bytes, which are converted into an *u128* in

littleendian byte order:

```
instr ::= ...
      | 0xFD 12:u32 (b:byte)16 ⇒ v128.const bytesi128-1((b)16)
      | ...
```

The shuffle instruction is also followed by the encoding of 16 *laneidx* immediates.

```
instr ::= ...
      | 0xFD 13:u32 (l:laneidx)16 ⇒ i8x16.shuffle l16
      | 0xFD 14:u32                ⇒ i8x16.swizzle
      | 0xFD 256:u32                ⇒ i8x16.relaxed_swizzle
      | ...
```

Lane instructions are followed by the encoding of a *laneidx* immediate.

```
instr ::= ...
      | 0xFD 21:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ i8x16.extract_lane_s l
      | 0xFD 22:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ i8x16.extract_lane_u l
      | 0xFD 23:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ i8x16.replace_lane l
      | 0xFD 24:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ i16x8.extract_lane_s l
      | 0xFD 25:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ i16x8.extract_lane_u l
      | 0xFD 26:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ i16x8.replace_lane l
      | 0xFD 27:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ i32x4.extract_lane l
      | 0xFD 28:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ i32x4.replace_lane l
      | 0xFD 29:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ i64x2.extract_lane l
      | 0xFD 30:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ i64x2.replace_lane l
      | 0xFD 31:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ f32x4.extract_lane l
      | 0xFD 32:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ f32x4.replace_lane l
      | 0xFD 33:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ f64x2.extract_lane l
      | 0xFD 34:u32 l:laneidx ⇒ f64x2.replace_lane l
      | ...
```

All other vector instructions are plain opcodes without any immediates.

```
instr ::= ...
      | 0xFD 15:u32 ⇒ i8x16.splat
      | 0xFD 16:u32 ⇒ i16x8.splat
      | 0xFD 17:u32 ⇒ i32x4.splat
      | 0xFD 18:u32 ⇒ i64x2.splat
      | 0xFD 19:u32 ⇒ f32x4.splat
      | 0xFD 20:u32 ⇒ f64x2.splat
      | ...
```

```

instr ::= ...
| 0xFD 35:u32 ⇒ i8x16.eq
| 0xFD 36:u32 ⇒ i8x16.ne
| 0xFD 37:u32 ⇒ i8x16.lt_s
| 0xFD 38:u32 ⇒ i8x16.lt_u
| 0xFD 39:u32 ⇒ i8x16.gt_s
| 0xFD 40:u32 ⇒ i8x16.gt_u
| 0xFD 41:u32 ⇒ i8x16.le_s
| 0xFD 42:u32 ⇒ i8x16.le_u
| 0xFD 43:u32 ⇒ i8x16.ge_s
| 0xFD 44:u32 ⇒ i8x16.ge_u
| 0xFD 45:u32 ⇒ i16x8.eq
| 0xFD 46:u32 ⇒ i16x8.ne
| 0xFD 47:u32 ⇒ i16x8.lt_s
| 0xFD 48:u32 ⇒ i16x8.lt_u
| 0xFD 49:u32 ⇒ i16x8.gt_s
| 0xFD 50:u32 ⇒ i16x8.gt_u
| 0xFD 51:u32 ⇒ i16x8.le_s
| 0xFD 52:u32 ⇒ i16x8.le_u
| 0xFD 53:u32 ⇒ i16x8.ge_s
| 0xFD 54:u32 ⇒ i16x8.ge_u
| 0xFD 55:u32 ⇒ i32x4.eq
| 0xFD 56:u32 ⇒ i32x4.ne
| 0xFD 57:u32 ⇒ i32x4.lt_s
| 0xFD 58:u32 ⇒ i32x4.lt_u
| 0xFD 59:u32 ⇒ i32x4.gt_s
| 0xFD 60:u32 ⇒ i32x4.gt_u
| 0xFD 61:u32 ⇒ i32x4.le_s
| 0xFD 62:u32 ⇒ i32x4.le_u
| 0xFD 63:u32 ⇒ i32x4.ge_s
| 0xFD 64:u32 ⇒ i32x4.ge_u
| 0xFD 214:u32 ⇒ i64x2.eq
| 0xFD 215:u32 ⇒ i64x2.ne
| 0xFD 216:u32 ⇒ i64x2.lt_s
| 0xFD 217:u32 ⇒ i64x2.gt_s
| 0xFD 218:u32 ⇒ i64x2.le_s
| 0xFD 219:u32 ⇒ i64x2.ge_s
| ...

```

```

instr ::= ...
| 0xFD 65:u32 ⇒ f32x4.eq
| 0xFD 66:u32 ⇒ f32x4.ne
| 0xFD 67:u32 ⇒ f32x4.lt
| 0xFD 68:u32 ⇒ f32x4.gt
| 0xFD 69:u32 ⇒ f32x4.le
| 0xFD 70:u32 ⇒ f32x4.ge
| 0xFD 71:u32 ⇒ f64x2.eq
| 0xFD 72:u32 ⇒ f64x2.ne
| 0xFD 73:u32 ⇒ f64x2.lt
| 0xFD 74:u32 ⇒ f64x2.gt
| 0xFD 75:u32 ⇒ f64x2.le
| 0xFD 76:u32 ⇒ f64x2.ge
| ...

```

```
instr ::= ...  
      | 0xFD 77:u32 ⇒ v128.not  
      | 0xFD 78:u32 ⇒ v128.and  
      | 0xFD 79:u32 ⇒ v128.andnot  
      | 0xFD 80:u32 ⇒ v128.or  
      | 0xFD 81:u32 ⇒ v128.xor  
      | 0xFD 82:u32 ⇒ v128.bitselect  
      | 0xFD 83:u32 ⇒ v128.any_true  
      | ...
```

```
instr ::= ...  
      | 0xFD 96:u32 ⇒ i8x16.abs  
      | 0xFD 97:u32 ⇒ i8x16.neg  
      | 0xFD 98:u32 ⇒ i8x16.popcnt  
      | 0xFD 99:u32 ⇒ i8x16.all_true  
      | 0xFD 100:u32 ⇒ i8x16.bitmask  
      | 0xFD 101:u32 ⇒ i8x16.narrow_i16x8_s  
      | 0xFD 102:u32 ⇒ i8x16.narrow_i16x8_u  
      | 0xFD 107:u32 ⇒ i8x16.shl  
      | 0xFD 108:u32 ⇒ i8x16.shr_s  
      | 0xFD 109:u32 ⇒ i8x16.shr_u  
      | 0xFD 110:u32 ⇒ i8x16.add  
      | 0xFD 111:u32 ⇒ i8x16.add_sat_s  
      | 0xFD 112:u32 ⇒ i8x16.add_sat_u  
      | 0xFD 113:u32 ⇒ i8x16.sub  
      | 0xFD 114:u32 ⇒ i8x16.sub_sat_s  
      | 0xFD 115:u32 ⇒ i8x16.sub_sat_u  
      | 0xFD 118:u32 ⇒ i8x16.min_s  
      | 0xFD 119:u32 ⇒ i8x16.min_u  
      | 0xFD 120:u32 ⇒ i8x16.max_s  
      | 0xFD 121:u32 ⇒ i8x16.max_u  
      | 0xFD 123:u32 ⇒ i8x16.avgr_u  
      | ...
```

```

instr ::= ...
      | 0xFD 124:u32 ⇒ i16x8.extadd_pairwise_s_i8x16
      | 0xFD 125:u32 ⇒ i16x8.extadd_pairwise_u_i8x16
      | 0xFD 128:u32 ⇒ i16x8.abs
      | 0xFD 129:u32 ⇒ i16x8.neg
      | 0xFD 131:u32 ⇒ i16x8.all_true
      | 0xFD 132:u32 ⇒ i16x8.bitmask
      | 0xFD 133:u32 ⇒ i16x8.narrow_i32x4_s
      | 0xFD 134:u32 ⇒ i16x8.narrow_i32x4_u
      | 0xFD 135:u32 ⇒ i16x8.(extend_s)_i8x16_low
      | 0xFD 136:u32 ⇒ i16x8.(extend_s)_i8x16_high
      | 0xFD 137:u32 ⇒ i16x8.(extend_u)_i8x16_low
      | 0xFD 138:u32 ⇒ i16x8.(extend_u)_i8x16_high
      | 0xFD 139:u32 ⇒ i16x8.shl
      | 0xFD 140:u32 ⇒ i16x8.shr_s
      | 0xFD 141:u32 ⇒ i16x8.shr_u
      | 0xFD 130:u32 ⇒ i16x8.q15mulr_sat_s
      | 0xFD 273:u32 ⇒ i16x8.relaxed_q15mulr_s
      | 0xFD 142:u32 ⇒ i16x8.add
      | 0xFD 143:u32 ⇒ i16x8.add_sat_s
      | 0xFD 144:u32 ⇒ i16x8.add_sat_u
      | 0xFD 145:u32 ⇒ i16x8.sub
      | 0xFD 146:u32 ⇒ i16x8.sub_sat_s
      | 0xFD 147:u32 ⇒ i16x8.sub_sat_u
      | 0xFD 149:u32 ⇒ i16x8.mul
      | 0xFD 150:u32 ⇒ i16x8.min_s
      | 0xFD 151:u32 ⇒ i16x8.min_u
      | 0xFD 152:u32 ⇒ i16x8.max_s
      | 0xFD 153:u32 ⇒ i16x8.max_u
      | 0xFD 155:u32 ⇒ i16x8.avgr_u
      | 0xFD 156:u32 ⇒ i16x8.extmul_s_low_i8x16
      | 0xFD 157:u32 ⇒ i16x8.extmul_s_high_i8x16
      | 0xFD 158:u32 ⇒ i16x8.extmul_u_low_i8x16
      | 0xFD 159:u32 ⇒ i16x8.extmul_u_high_i8x16
      | 0xFD 274:u32 ⇒ i16x8.relaxed_dot_s_i8x16
      | ...

```

```

instr ::= ...
    | 0xFD 126:u32 ⇒ i32x4.extadd_pairwise_s_i16x8
    | 0xFD 127:u32 ⇒ i32x4.extadd_pairwise_u_i16x8
    | 0xFD 160:u32 ⇒ i32x4.abs
    | 0xFD 161:u32 ⇒ i32x4.neg
    | 0xFD 163:u32 ⇒ i32x4.all_true
    | 0xFD 164:u32 ⇒ i32x4.bitmask
    | 0xFD 167:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(extend_s)_i16x8_low
    | 0xFD 168:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(extend_s)_i16x8_high
    | 0xFD 169:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(extend_u)_i16x8_low
    | 0xFD 170:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(extend_u)_i16x8_high
    | 0xFD 171:u32 ⇒ i32x4.shl
    | 0xFD 172:u32 ⇒ i32x4.shr_s
    | 0xFD 173:u32 ⇒ i32x4.shr_u
    | 0xFD 174:u32 ⇒ i32x4.add
    | 0xFD 177:u32 ⇒ i32x4.sub
    | 0xFD 181:u32 ⇒ i32x4.mul
    | 0xFD 182:u32 ⇒ i32x4.min_s
    | 0xFD 183:u32 ⇒ i32x4.min_u
    | 0xFD 184:u32 ⇒ i32x4.max_s
    | 0xFD 185:u32 ⇒ i32x4.max_u
    | 0xFD 186:u32 ⇒ i32x4.dot_s_i16x8
    | 0xFD 188:u32 ⇒ i32x4.extmul_s_low_i16x8
    | 0xFD 189:u32 ⇒ i32x4.extmul_s_high_i16x8
    | 0xFD 190:u32 ⇒ i32x4.extmul_u_low_i16x8
    | 0xFD 191:u32 ⇒ i32x4.extmul_u_high_i16x8
    | 0xFD 275:u32 ⇒ i32x4.relaxed_dot_add_s_i16x8
    | ...

instr ::= ...
    | 0xFD 192:u32 ⇒ i64x2.abs
    | 0xFD 193:u32 ⇒ i64x2.neg
    | 0xFD 195:u32 ⇒ i64x2.all_true
    | 0xFD 196:u32 ⇒ i64x2.bitmask
    | 0xFD 199:u32 ⇒ i64x2.(extend_s)_i32x4_low
    | 0xFD 200:u32 ⇒ i64x2.(extend_s)_i32x4_high
    | 0xFD 201:u32 ⇒ i64x2.(extend_u)_i32x4_low
    | 0xFD 202:u32 ⇒ i64x2.(extend_u)_i32x4_high
    | 0xFD 203:u32 ⇒ i64x2.shl
    | 0xFD 204:u32 ⇒ i64x2.shr_s
    | 0xFD 205:u32 ⇒ i64x2.shr_u
    | 0xFD 206:u32 ⇒ i64x2.add
    | 0xFD 209:u32 ⇒ i64x2.sub
    | 0xFD 213:u32 ⇒ i64x2.mul
    | 0xFD 220:u32 ⇒ i64x2.extmul_s_low_i32x4
    | 0xFD 221:u32 ⇒ i64x2.extmul_s_high_i32x4
    | 0xFD 222:u32 ⇒ i64x2.extmul_u_low_i32x4
    | 0xFD 223:u32 ⇒ i64x2.extmul_u_high_i32x4
    | ...

```



```

instr ::= ...
    0xFD 103:u32 ⇒ f32x4.ceil
    0xFD 104:u32 ⇒ f32x4.floor
    0xFD 105:u32 ⇒ f32x4.trunc
    0xFD 106:u32 ⇒ f32x4.nearest
    0xFD 224:u32 ⇒ f32x4.abs
    0xFD 225:u32 ⇒ f32x4.neg
    0xFD 227:u32 ⇒ f32x4.sqrt
    0xFD 228:u32 ⇒ f32x4.add
    0xFD 229:u32 ⇒ f32x4.sub
    0xFD 230:u32 ⇒ f32x4.mul
    0xFD 231:u32 ⇒ f32x4.div
    0xFD 232:u32 ⇒ f32x4.min
    0xFD 233:u32 ⇒ f32x4.max
    0xFD 234:u32 ⇒ f32x4.pmin
    0xFD 235:u32 ⇒ f32x4.pmax
    0xFD 269:u32 ⇒ f32x4.relaxed_min
    0xFD 270:u32 ⇒ f32x4.relaxed_max
    0xFD 261:u32 ⇒ f32x4.relaxed_madd
    0xFD 262:u32 ⇒ f32x4.relaxed_nmadd
    ...

instr ::= ...
    0xFD 116:u32 ⇒ f64x2.ceil
    0xFD 117:u32 ⇒ f64x2.floor
    0xFD 122:u32 ⇒ f64x2.trunc
    0xFD 148:u32 ⇒ f64x2.nearest
    0xFD 236:u32 ⇒ f64x2.abs
    0xFD 237:u32 ⇒ f64x2.neg
    0xFD 239:u32 ⇒ f64x2.sqrt
    0xFD 240:u32 ⇒ f64x2.add
    0xFD 241:u32 ⇒ f64x2.sub
    0xFD 242:u32 ⇒ f64x2.mul
    0xFD 243:u32 ⇒ f64x2.div
    0xFD 244:u32 ⇒ f64x2.min
    0xFD 245:u32 ⇒ f64x2.max
    0xFD 246:u32 ⇒ f64x2.pmin
    0xFD 247:u32 ⇒ f64x2.pmax
    0xFD 271:u32 ⇒ f64x2.relaxed_min
    0xFD 272:u32 ⇒ f64x2.relaxed_max
    0xFD 263:u32 ⇒ f64x2.relaxed_madd
    0xFD 264:u32 ⇒ f64x2.relaxed_nmadd
    ...

```

```

instr ::= ...
| 0xFD 94:u32 ⇒ f32x4.demote_f64x2_zero
| 0xFD 95:u32 ⇒ f64x2.promote_f32x4_low
| 0xFD 248:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(trunc_sat_s)_f32x4
| 0xFD 249:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(trunc_sat_u)_f32x4
| 0xFD 250:u32 ⇒ f32x4.(convert_s)_i32x4
| 0xFD 251:u32 ⇒ f32x4.(convert_u)_i32x4
| 0xFD 252:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(trunc_sat_s)_f64x2_zero
| 0xFD 253:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(trunc_sat_u)_f64x2_zero
| 0xFD 254:u32 ⇒ f64x2.(convert_s)_i32x4_low
| 0xFD 255:u32 ⇒ f64x2.(convert_u)_i32x4_low
| 0xFD 257:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(relaxed_trunc_s)_f32x4
| 0xFD 258:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(relaxed_trunc_u)_f32x4
| 0xFD 259:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(relaxed_trunc_s)_f64x2_zero
| 0xFD 260:u32 ⇒ i32x4.(relaxed_trunc_u)_f64x2_zero

| 0xFD 256:u32 ⇒ i16x8.relaxed_swizzle
| 0xFD 257:u32 ⇒ i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_s
| 0xFD 258:u32 ⇒ i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_u
| 0xFD 259:u32 ⇒ i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_s_zero
| 0xFD 260:u32 ⇒ i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_u_zero
| 0xFD 261:u32 ⇒ f32x4.relaxed_madd
| 0xFD 262:u32 ⇒ f32x4.relaxed_nmadd
| 0xFD 263:u32 ⇒ f64x2.relaxed_madd
| 0xFD 264:u32 ⇒ f64x2.relaxed_nmadd
| 0xFD 265:u32 ⇒ i8x16.relaxed_laneselect
| 0xFD 266:u32 ⇒ i16x8.relaxed_laneselect
| 0xFD 267:u32 ⇒ i32x4.relaxed_laneselect
| 0xFD 268:u32 ⇒ i64x2.relaxed_laneselect
| 0xFD 269:u32 ⇒ f32x4.relaxed_min
| 0xFD 270:u32 ⇒ f32x4.relaxed_max
| 0xFD 271:u32 ⇒ f64x2.relaxed_min
| 0xFD 272:u32 ⇒ f64x2.relaxed_max
| 0xFD 273:u32 ⇒ i16x8.relaxed_q15mulr_s
| 0xFD 274:u32 ⇒ i16x8.relaxed_dot_i8x16_i7x16_s
| 0xFD 275:u32 ⇒ i16x8.relaxed_dot_i8x16_i7x16_add_s

```

### 5.4.9 Expressions

Expressions are encoded by their instruction sequence terminated with an explicit 0x0B opcode for end.

$$\text{expr} ::= (\text{in}:\text{instr})^* 0x0B \Rightarrow \text{in}^*$$

## 5.5 Modules

The binary encoding of modules is organized into *sections*. Most sections correspond to one component of a *module* record, except that *function definitions* are split into two sections, separating their type declarations in the *function section* from their bodies in the *code section*.

#### Note

This separation enables *parallel* and *streaming* compilation of the functions in a module.

### 5.5.1 Indices

All basic [indices](#) are encoded with their respective value.

```

typeidx ::= x:u32 ⇒ x
funcidx ::= x:u32 ⇒ x
tableidx ::= x:u32 ⇒ x
memidx ::= x:u32 ⇒ x
globalidx ::= x:u32 ⇒ x
tagidx ::= x:u32 ⇒ x
elemidx ::= x:u32 ⇒ x
dataidx ::= x:u32 ⇒ x
localidx ::= x:u32 ⇒ x
labelidx ::= l:u32 ⇒ l

```

External indices are encoded by a distinguishing byte followed by an encoding of their respective value.

```

externidx ::= 0x00 x:funcidx ⇒ func x
           | 0x01 x:tableidx ⇒ table x
           | 0x02 x:memidx ⇒ memory x
           | 0x03 x:globalidx ⇒ global x
           | 0x04 x:tagidx ⇒ tag x

```

### 5.5.2 Sections

Each section consists of

- a one-byte section *id*,
- the *u32* *length* of the contents, in bytes,
- the actual *contents*, whose structure is dependent on the section id.

Every section is optional; an omitted section is equivalent to the section being present with empty contents.

The following parameterized grammar rule defines the generic structure of a section with id *N* and contents described by the grammar *X*.

$$\begin{array}{llll}
 \text{section}_N(X) & ::= & N:\text{byte} \text{ len}:\text{u32} \text{ en}^*:X & \Rightarrow \text{en}^* \text{ if } \text{len} = ||X|| \\
 & | & \epsilon & \Rightarrow \epsilon
 \end{array}$$

For most sections, the contents *X* encodes a [list](#). In these cases, the empty result  $\epsilon$  is interpreted as the empty list.

#### Note

Other than for unknown [custom](#) sections, the *size* is not required for decoding, but can be used to skip sections when navigating through a binary. The module is malformed if the size does not match the length of the binary contents *X*.

The following section ids are used:

Id	Section
0	custom section
1	type section
2	import section
3	function section
4	table section
5	memory section
6	global section
7	export section
8	start section
9	element section
10	code section
11	data section
12	data count section
13	tag section

**Note**

Section ids do not always correspond to the [order of sections](#) in the encoding of a module.

### 5.5.3 Custom Section

*Custom sections* have the id 0. They are intended to be used for debugging information or third-party extensions, and are ignored by the WebAssembly semantics. Their contents consist of a [name](#) further identifying the custom section, followed by an uninterpreted sequence of bytes for custom use.

```
customsec ::= section0(custom)
custom   ::= name byte*
```

**Note**

If an implementation interprets the data of a custom section, then errors in that data, or the placement of the section, must not invalidate the module.

### 5.5.4 Type Section

The *type section* has the id 1. It decodes into the list of [recursive types](#) of a [module](#).

```
typesec ::= ty*:section1(list(type)) ⇒ ty*
type    ::= qt:rectype                ⇒ type qt
```

### 5.5.5 Import Section

The *import section* has the id 2. It decodes into the list of [imports](#) of a [module](#).

```
importsec ::= im*:section2(list(import)) ⇒ im*
import    ::= nm1:name nm2:name xt:externtype ⇒ import nm1 nm2 xt
```

### 5.5.6 Function Section

The *function section* has the id 3. It decodes into a list of [type indices](#) that classify the [functions](#) defined by a [module](#). The bodies of the respective functions are encoded separately in the [code section](#).

$$\text{funcsec} ::= x^*:\text{section}_3(\text{list}(\text{typeid}x)) \Rightarrow x^*$$

### 5.5.7 Table Section

The *table section* has the id 4. It decodes into the list of [tables](#) defined by a [module](#).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{tablesec} &::= \text{tab}^*:\text{section}_4(\text{list}(\text{table})) &\Rightarrow \text{tab}^* \\ \text{table} &::= \text{tt}:\text{tabletype} &\Rightarrow \text{table } \text{tt} \text{ (ref.null ht) if } \text{tt} = \text{at lim (ref null}^? \text{ ht)} \\ &| 0x40 \text{ } 0x00 \text{ } \text{tt}:\text{tabletype} \text{ } e:\text{expr} &\Rightarrow \text{table } \text{tt} \text{ } e \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

The encoding of a table type cannot start with byte 0x40, hence decoding is unambiguous. The zero byte following it is reserved for future extensions.

### 5.5.8 Memory Section

The *memory section* has the id 5. It decodes into the list of [memories](#) defined by a [module](#).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{memsec} &::= \text{mem}^*:\text{section}_5(\text{list}(\text{mem})) &\Rightarrow \text{mem}^* \\ \text{mem} &::= \text{mt}:\text{memtype} &\Rightarrow \text{memory } \text{mt} \end{aligned}$$

### 5.5.9 Global Section

The *global section* has the id 6. It decodes into the list of [globals](#) defined by a [module](#).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{globalsec} &::= \text{glob}^*:\text{section}_6(\text{list}(\text{global})) &\Rightarrow \text{glob}^* \\ \text{global} &::= \text{gt}:\text{globaltype} \text{ } e:\text{expr} &\Rightarrow \text{global } \text{gt} \text{ } e \end{aligned}$$

### 5.5.10 Export Section

The *export section* has the id 7. It decodes into the list of [exports](#) of a [module](#).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{exportsec} &::= \text{ex}^*:\text{section}_7(\text{list}(\text{export})) &\Rightarrow \text{ex}^* \\ \text{export} &::= \text{nm}:\text{name} \text{ } \text{xx}:\text{externidx} &\Rightarrow \text{export } \text{nm} \text{ } \text{xx} \end{aligned}$$

### 5.5.11 Start Section

The *start section* has the id 8. It decodes into the optional [start function](#) of a [module](#).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{startsec} &::= \text{start}^?:\text{section}_8(\text{start}) &\Rightarrow \text{start}^? \\ \text{start} &::= x:\text{funcidx} &\Rightarrow (\text{start } x) \end{aligned}$$

### 5.5.12 Element Section

The *element section* has the id 9. It decodes into the list of *element segments* defined by a *module*.

<code>elemsec</code>	<code>::= elem*:section<sub>9</sub>(list(elem))</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>elem*</code>
<code>elemkind</code>	<code>::= 0x00</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>ref null func</code>
<code>elem</code>	<code>::= 0:u32 e<sub>o</sub>:expr y*:list(funcidx)</code>	$\Rightarrow$	
	<code>elem (ref func) (ref.func y)* (active 0 e<sub>o</sub>)</code>		
	1:u32 rt:elemkind y*:list(funcidx)	$\Rightarrow$	
	<code>elem rt (ref.func y)* passive</code>		
	2:u32 x:tableidx e:expr rt:elemkind y*:list(funcidx)	$\Rightarrow$	
	<code>elem rt (ref.func y)* (active x e)</code>		
	3:u32 rt:elemkind y*:list(funcidx)	$\Rightarrow$	
	<code>elem rt (ref.func y)* declare</code>		
	4:u32 e <sub>o</sub> :expr e*:list(expr)	$\Rightarrow$	
	<code>elem (ref null func) e* (active 0 e<sub>o</sub>)</code>		
	5:u32 rt:reftype e*:list(expr)	$\Rightarrow$	
	<code>elem rt e* passive</code>		
	6:u32 x:tableidx e <sub>o</sub> :expr e*:list(expr)	$\Rightarrow$	
	<code>elem (ref null func) e* (active x e<sub>o</sub>)</code>		
	7:u32 rt:reftype e*:list(expr)	$\Rightarrow$	
	<code>elem rt e* declare</code>		

#### Note

The initial integer can be interpreted as a bitfield. Bit 0 distinguishes a passive or declarative segment from an active segment, bit 1 indicates the presence of an explicit table index for an active segment and otherwise distinguishes passive from declarative segments, bit 2 indicates the use of element type and element *expressions* instead of element kind and element indices.

Additional element kinds may be added in future versions of WebAssembly.

### 5.5.13 Code Section

The *code section* has the id 10. It decodes into the list of *code entries* that are pairs of lists of *locals* and *expressions*. They represent the body of the *functions* defined by a *module*. The types of the respective functions are encoded separately in the *function section*.

The encoding of each code entry consists of

- the *u32 length* of the function code in bytes,
- the actual *function code*, which in turn consists of
  - the declaration of *locals*,
  - the function *body* as an *expression*.

Local declarations are compressed into a list whose entries consist of

- a *u32 count*,
- a *value type*,

denoting *count* locals of the same value type.

<code>codesec</code>	<code>::= code*:section<sub>10</sub>(list(code))</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>code*</code>
<code>code</code>	<code>::= len:u32 code:func</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>code</code> if $len =   func  $
<code>func</code>	<code>::= loc*:list(locals) e:expr</code>	$\Rightarrow$	$(\bigoplus loc^{**}, e)$ if $ \bigoplus loc^{**}  < 2^{32}$
<code>locals</code>	<code>::= n:u32 t:valtype</code>	$\Rightarrow$	$(local\ t)^n$

Here, *code* ranges over pairs  $(local^*, expr)$ . Any code for which the length of the resulting sequence is out of bounds of the maximum size of a *list* is malformed.

**Note**

Like with [sections](#), the code *size* is not needed for decoding, but can be used to skip functions when navigating through a binary. The module is malformed if a size does not match the length of the respective function code.

**5.5.14 Data Section**

The *data section* has the id 11. It decodes into the list of [data segments](#) defined by a [module](#).

<code>datasec</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>data*:section<sub>11</sub>(list(data))</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>data*</code>
<code>data</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>0:u32 e:expr b*:list(byte)</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>data b* (active 0 e)</code>
		<code>  1:u32 b*:list(byte)</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>data b* passive</code>
		<code>  2:u32 x:memidx e:expr b*:list(byte)</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>data b* (active x e)</code>

**Note**

The initial integer can be interpreted as a bitfield. Bit 0 indicates a passive segment, bit 1 indicates the presence of an explicit memory index for an active segment.

**5.5.15 Data Count Section**

The *data count section* has the id 12. It decodes into an optional [u32](#) count that represents the number of [data segments](#) in the [data section](#). If this count does not match the length of the data segment list, the module is malformed.

<code>datacntsec</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>n?:section<sub>12</sub>(datacnt)</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>n?</code>
<code>datacnt</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>n:u32</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>n</code>

**Note**

The data count section is used to simplify single-pass validation. Since the data section occurs after the code section, the `memory.init` and `data.drop` instructions would not be able to check whether the data segment index is valid until the data section is read. The data count section occurs before the code section, so a single-pass validator can use this count instead of deferring validation.

**5.5.16 Tag Section**

The *tag section* has the id 13. It decodes into the list of [tags](#) defined by a [module](#).

<code>tagsec</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>tag*:section<sub>13</sub>(list(tag))</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>tag*</code>
<code>tag</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>x:typeidx</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>tag x</code>

**5.5.17 Modules**

The encoding of a [module](#) starts with a preamble containing a 4-byte magic number (the string ‘\0asm’) and a version field. The current version of the WebAssembly binary format is 1.

The preamble is followed by a sequence of [sections](#). [Custom sections](#) may be inserted at any place in this sequence, while other sections must occur at most once and in the prescribed order. All sections can be empty.

The lengths of lists produced by the (possibly empty) [function](#) and [code](#) section must match up.

Similarly, the optional data count must match the length of the [data segment](#) list. Furthermore, it must be present if any [data index](#) occurs in the code section.

```

magic ::= 0x00 0x61 0x73 0x6D
version ::= 0x01 0x00 0x00 0x00
module ::= magic version
         customsec* type*:typesec
         customsec* import*:importsec
         customsec* typeidx*:funcsec
         customsec* table*:tablesec
         customsec* mem*:memsec
         customsec* tag*:tagsec
         customsec* global*:globalsec
         customsec* export*:exportsec
         customsec* start?:startsec
         customsec* elem*:elemsec
         customsec* n?:datacntsec
         customsec* (local*, expr)*:codesec
         customsec* data*:datasec
         customsec*
           ⇒
           module type* import* func* global* table* mem* tag* elem* data* start? export*
           if (n = |data*|)?
           ∧ (n? ≠ ε ∨ dataidx(func*) = ε)
           ∧ (func = func typeidx local* expr)*

```

#### Note

The version of the WebAssembly binary format may increase in the future if backward-incompatible changes have to be made to the format. However, such changes are expected to occur very infrequently, if ever. The binary format is intended to be forward-compatible, such that future extensions can be made without incrementing its version.



## 6.1 Conventions

The textual format for WebAssembly **modules** is a rendering of their **abstract syntax** into **S-expressions**<sup>36</sup>.

Like the **binary format**, the text format is defined by an *attribute grammar*. A text string is a well-formed description of a module if and only if it is generated by the grammar. Each production of this grammar has at most one synthesized attribute: the abstract syntax that the respective character sequence expresses. Thus, the attribute grammar implicitly defines a *parsing* function. Some productions also take a **context** as an inherited attribute that records bound **identifiers**.

Except for a few exceptions, the core of the text grammar closely mirrors the grammar of the abstract syntax. However, it also defines a number of *abbreviations* that are “syntactic sugar” over the core syntax.

The recommended extension for files containing WebAssembly modules in text format is “.wat”. Files with this extension are assumed to be encoded in UTF-8, as per **Unicode**<sup>37</sup> (Section 2.5).

### 6.1.1 Grammar

The following conventions are adopted in defining grammar rules of the text format. They mirror the conventions used for **abstract syntax** and for the **binary format**. In order to distinguish symbols of the textual syntax from symbols of the abstract syntax, typewriter font is adopted for the former.

- Terminal symbols are either literal strings of characters enclosed in quotes or expressed as **Unicode**<sup>38</sup> scalar values: ‘module’, U+0A. (All characters written literally are unambiguously drawn from the 7-bit **ASCII**<sup>39</sup> subset of Unicode.)
- Nonterminal symbols are written in typewriter font: `valtype`, `instr`.
- $T^n$  is a sequence of  $n \geq 0$  iterations of  $T$ .
- $T^*$  is a possibly empty sequence of iterations of  $T$ . (This is a shorthand for  $T^n$  used where  $n$  is not relevant.)
- $T^+$  is a sequence of one or more iterations of  $T$ . (This is a shorthand for  $T^n$  where  $n \geq 1$ .)
- $T^?$  is an optional occurrence of  $T$ . (This is a shorthand for  $T^n$  where  $n \leq 1$ .)

<sup>36</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/S-expression>

<sup>37</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/versions/latest/>

<sup>38</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/versions/latest/>

<sup>39</sup> <https://webstore.ansi.org/RecordDetail.aspx?sku=INCITS+4-1986%5bR2012%5d>

- $x:T$  denotes the same language as the nonterminal  $T$ , but also binds the variable  $x$  to the attribute synthesized for  $T$ . A pattern may also be used instead of a variable, e.g.,  $(x, y):T$ .
- Productions are written  $\text{sym} ::= T_1 \Rightarrow A_1 \mid \dots \mid T_n \Rightarrow A_n$ , where each  $A_i$  is the attribute that is synthesized for  $\text{sym}$  in the given case, usually from attribute variables bound in  $T_i$ .
- Some productions are augmented by side conditions in parentheses, which restrict the applicability of the production. They provide a shorthand for a combinatorial expansion of the production into many separate cases.
- If the same meta variable or non-terminal symbol appears multiple times in a production (in the syntax or in an attribute), then all those occurrences must have the same instantiation.
- A distinction is made between *lexical* and *syntactic* productions. For the latter, arbitrary **white space** is allowed in any place where the grammar contains spaces. The productions defining **lexical syntax** and the syntax of **values** are considered lexical, all others are syntactic.

#### Note

For example, the **textual grammar** for **number types** is given as follows:

```
numtype ::= 'i32'  ⇒ i32
          | 'i64'  ⇒ i64
          | 'f32'  ⇒ f32
          | 'f64'  ⇒ f64
```

The **textual grammar** for **limits** is defined as follows:

```
limits ::= n:u32      ⇒ {min n, max ε}
        | n:u32 m:u32 ⇒ {min n, max m}
```

The variables  $n$  and  $m$  name the attributes of the respective **u32** nonterminals, which in this case are the actual **unsigned integers** those parse into. The attribute of the complete production then is the abstract syntax for the limit, expressed in terms of the former values.

## 6.1.2 Abbreviations

In addition to the core grammar, which corresponds directly to the **abstract syntax**, the textual syntax also defines a number of *abbreviations* that can be used for convenience and readability.

Abbreviations are defined by *rewrite rules* specifying their expansion into the core syntax:

$$\text{abbreviation syntax} \equiv \text{expanded syntax}$$

These expansions are assumed to be applied, recursively and in order of appearance, before applying the core grammar rules to construct the abstract syntax.

## 6.1.3 Contexts

The text format allows the use of symbolic **identifiers** in place of **indices**. To resolve these identifiers into concrete indices, some grammar productions are indexed by an *identifier context*  $I$  as a synthesized attribute that records the declared identifiers in each **index space**. In addition, the context records the types defined in the module, so that **parameter** indices can be computed for **functions**.

It is convenient to define identifier contexts as **records**  $I$  with abstract syntax as follows:

```

I ::= { types      (name?)*,
        funcs      (name?)*,
        tables      (name?)*,
        mems        (name?)*,
        globals     (name?)*,
        tags        (name?)*,
        elem        (name?)*,
        data        (name?)*,
        locals      (name?)*,
        labels      (name?)*,
        fields      ((name?)*)*,
        typedefs    subtype* }

```

For each index space, such a context contains the list of `names` assigned to the defined indices, which were denoted by the corresponding `identifiers`. Unnamed indices are associated with empty ( $\epsilon$ ) entries in these lists. Fields have *dependent* name spaces, and hence a separate list of field identifiers per type.

An identifier context is *well-formed* if no index space contains duplicate identifiers. For fields, names need only be unique within a single type.

## Conventions

To avoid unnecessary clutter, empty components are omitted when writing out identifier contexts. For example, the record  $\{\}$  is shorthand for an **identifier context** whose components are all empty.

### 6.1.4 Lists

**Lists** are written as plain sequences, but with a restriction on the length of these sequence.

$$\text{list}(\mathbf{A}) ::= (x:\mathbf{A})^n \Rightarrow x^n \quad (\text{if } n < 2^{32})$$

## 6.2 Lexical Format

### 6.2.1 Characters

The text format assigns meaning to *source text*, which consists of a sequence of *characters*. Characters are assumed to be represented as valid [Unicode](#)<sup>40</sup> (Section 2.4) *scalar values*.

```
source ::= char*
char    ::= U+00 | ... | U+D7FF | U+E000 | ... | U+10FFFF
```

### Note

While source text may contain any Unicode character in `comments` or `string` literals, the rest of the grammar is formed exclusively from the characters supported by the 7-bit [ASCII](#)<sup>41</sup> subset of Unicode.

### 6.2.2 Tokens

The character stream in the source text is divided, from left to right, into a sequence of *tokens*, as defined by the following grammar.

```

token      ::= keyword | uN | sN | fN | string | id | '(' | ')' | reserved
keyword    ::= ('a' | ... | 'z') idchar*      (if occurring as a literal terminal in the grammar)
reserved   ::= (idchar | string | ';' | ':' | '[' | ']' | '{' | '}' )+

```

<sup>40</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/versions/latest/>

<sup>41</sup> <https://webstore.ansi.org/RecordDetail.aspx?sku=INCITS+4-1986%5bR2012%5d>

Tokens are formed from the input character stream according to the *longest match* rule. That is, the next token always consists of the longest possible sequence of characters that is recognized by the above lexical grammar. Tokens can be separated by [white space](#), but except for strings, they cannot themselves contain whitespace.

*Keyword* tokens are defined either implicitly by an occurrence of a [terminal symbol](#) in literal form, such as ‘keyword’, in a [syntactic](#) production of this chapter, or explicitly where they arise in this chapter.

Any token that does not fall into any of the other categories is considered *reserved*, and cannot occur in source text.

#### Note

The effect of defining the set of reserved tokens is that all tokens must be separated by either parentheses, [white space](#), or [comments](#). For example, ‘0\$x’ is a single reserved token, as is ‘”a”b”’. Consequently, they are not recognized as two separate tokens ‘0’ and ‘\$x’, or ‘”a”’ and ‘”b”’, respectively, but instead disallowed. This property of tokenization is not affected by the fact that the definition of reserved tokens overlaps with other token classes.

## 6.2.3 White Space

*White space* is any sequence of literal space characters, formatting characters, [comments](#), or [annotations](#). The allowed formatting characters correspond to a subset of the [ASCII](#)<sup>42</sup> *format effectors*, namely, *horizontal tabulation* (U+09), *line feed* (U+0A), and *carriage return* (U+0D).

```
space    ::= ( ' ' | format | comment ) *
format   ::= newline | U+09
newline  ::= U+0A | U+0D | U+0D U+0A
```

The only relevance of white space is to separate [tokens](#). It is otherwise ignored.

## 6.2.4 Comments

A *comment* can either be a *line comment*, started with a double semicolon ‘;;’ and extending to the end of the line, or a *block comment*, enclosed in delimiters ‘(;’ ... ‘;’)’. Block comments can be nested.

```
comment   ::= linecomment | blockcomment
linecomment ::= ‘;;’ linechar* (newline | eof)
linechar  ::= c:char                               (if c ≠ U+0A ∧ c ≠ U+0D)
blockcomment ::= ‘(;’ blockchar* ‘;’)
blockchar  ::= c:char                               (if c ≠ ‘;’ ∧ c ≠ ‘(’)
              | ‘;’                               (if the next character is not ‘;’)
              | ‘(’                               (if the next character is not ‘;’)
              | blockcomment
```

Here, the pseudo token `eof` indicates the end of the input. The *look-ahead* restrictions on the productions for `blockchar` disambiguate the grammar such that only well-bracketed uses of block comment delimiters are allowed.

#### Note

Any formatting and control characters are allowed inside comments.

## 6.2.5 Annotations

An *annotation* is a bracketed token sequence headed by an *annotation id* of the form ‘@id’ or ‘@”...”’. No [space](#) is allowed between the opening parenthesis and this id. Annotations are intended to be used for third-party extensions; they can appear anywhere in a program but are ignored by the WebAssembly semantics itself, which treats them as [white space](#).

<sup>42</sup> <https://webstore.ansi.org/RecordDetail.aspx?sku=INCITS+4-1986%5bR2012%5d>

Annotations can contain other parenthesized token sequences (including nested annotations), as long as they are well-nested. [String literals](#) and [comments](#) occurring in an annotation must also be properly nested and closed.

```
annot    ::= '(@' annotid (space | token)* ')'  
annotid  ::= idchar+ | name
```

#### Note

The annotation id is meant to be an identifier categorising the extension, and plays a role similar to the name of a [custom section](#). By convention, annotations corresponding to a custom section should use the custom section's name as an id.

Implementations are expected to ignore annotations with ids that they do not recognize. On the other hand, they may impose restrictions on annotations that they do recognize, e.g., requiring a specific structure by superimposing a more concrete grammar. It is up to an implementation how it deals with errors in such annotations.

## 6.3 Values

The grammar productions in this section define *lexical syntax*, hence no [white space](#) is allowed.

### 6.3.1 Integers

All [integers](#) can be written in either decimal or hexadecimal notation. In both cases, digits can optionally be separated by underscores.

```
sign      ::=  $\epsilon \Rightarrow +$  | '+'  $\Rightarrow +$  | '-'  $\Rightarrow -$   
digit     ::= '0'  $\Rightarrow 0$  | ... | '9'  $\Rightarrow 9$   
hexdigit  ::= d:digit  $\Rightarrow d$   
           | 'A'  $\Rightarrow 10$  | ... | 'F'  $\Rightarrow 15$   
           | 'a'  $\Rightarrow 10$  | ... | 'f'  $\Rightarrow 15$   
  
num        ::= d:digit  $\Rightarrow d$   
           | n:num '_'? d:digit  $\Rightarrow 10 \cdot n + d$   
hexnum     ::= h:hexdigit  $\Rightarrow h$   
           | n:hexnum '_'? h:hexdigit  $\Rightarrow 16 \cdot n + h$ 
```

The allowed syntax for integer literals depends on size and signedness. Moreover, their value must lie within the range of the respective type.

```
uN ::= n:num  $\Rightarrow n$  (if  $n < 2^N$ )  
    | '0x' n:hexnum  $\Rightarrow n$  (if  $n < 2^N$ )  
sN ::=  $\pm$ :sign n:num  $\Rightarrow \pm n$  (if  $-2^{N-1} \leq \pm n < 2^{N-1}$ )  
    |  $\pm$ :sign '0x' n:hexnum  $\Rightarrow \pm n$  (if  $-2^{N-1} \leq \pm n < 2^{N-1}$ )
```

[Uninterpreted integers](#) can be written as either signed or unsigned, and are normalized to unsigned in the abstract syntax.

```
iN ::= n:uN  $\Rightarrow n$   
    | i:sN  $\Rightarrow n$  (if  $i = \text{signed}(n)$ )
```

## 6.3.2 Floating-Point

Floating-point values can be represented in either decimal or hexadecimal notation.

<code>frac</code>	<code>::= d:digit</code>	$\Rightarrow d/10$
	<code>  d:digit ‘_’<sup>?</sup> p:frac</code>	$\Rightarrow (d + p/10)/10$
<code>hexfrac</code>	<code>::= h:hexdigit</code>	$\Rightarrow h/16$
	<code>  h:hexdigit ‘_’<sup>?</sup> p:hexfrac</code>	$\Rightarrow (h + p/16)/16$
<code>float</code>	<code>::= p:num ‘.’<sup>?</sup></code>	$\Rightarrow p$
	<code>  p:num ‘.’ q:frac</code>	$\Rightarrow p + q$
	<code>  p:num ‘.’<sup>?</sup> (‘E’   ‘e’) <math>\pm</math>:sign e:num</code>	$\Rightarrow p \cdot 10^{\pm e}$
	<code>  p:num ‘.’ q:frac (‘E’   ‘e’) <math>\pm</math>:sign e:num</code>	$\Rightarrow (p + q) \cdot 10^{\pm e}$
<code>hexfloat</code>	<code>::= ‘0x’ p:hexnum ‘.’<sup>?</sup></code>	$\Rightarrow p$
	<code>  ‘0x’ p:hexnum ‘.’ q:hexfrac</code>	$\Rightarrow p + q$
	<code>  ‘0x’ p:hexnum ‘.’<sup>?</sup> (‘P’   ‘p’) <math>\pm</math>:sign e:num</code>	$\Rightarrow p \cdot 2^{\pm e}$
	<code>  ‘0x’ p:hexnum ‘.’ q:hexfrac (‘P’   ‘p’) <math>\pm</math>:sign e:num</code>	$\Rightarrow (p + q) \cdot 2^{\pm e}$

The value of a literal must not lie outside the representable range of the corresponding [IEEE 754<sup>43</sup>](#) type (that is, a numeric value must not overflow to  $\pm$ infinity), but it may be [rounded](#) to the nearest representable value.

### Note

Rounding can be prevented by using hexadecimal notation with no more significant bits than supported by the required type.

Floating-point values may also be written as constants for *infinity* or *canonical NaN* (*not a number*). Furthermore, arbitrary NaN values may be expressed by providing an explicit payload value.

<code>fN</code>	<code>::= <math>\pm</math>:sign z:fNmag</code>	$\Rightarrow \pm z$
<code>fNmag</code>	<code>::= z:float</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{float}_N(z)$ (if $\text{float}_N(z) \neq \pm\infty$ )
	<code>  z:hexfloat</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{float}_N(z)$ (if $\text{float}_N(z) \neq \pm\infty$ )
	<code>  ‘inf’</code>	$\Rightarrow \infty$
	<code>  ‘nan’</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{nan}(\text{canon}_N)$
	<code>  ‘nan:0x’ n:hexnum</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{nan}(n)$ (if $1 \leq n < 2^{\text{signif}(N)}$ )

## 6.3.3 Strings

*Strings* denote sequences of bytes that can represent both textual and binary data. They are enclosed in quotation marks and may contain any character other than [ASCII<sup>44</sup>](#) control characters, quotation marks (“”), or backslash (“\”), except when expressed with an *escape sequence*.

<code>string</code>	<code>::= “” (b*:stringelem)* “”</code>	$\Rightarrow \bigoplus((b^*)^*)$ (if $ \bigoplus((b^*)^*)  < 2^{32}$ )
<code>stringelem</code>	<code>::= c:stringchar</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{utf8}(c)$
	<code>  ‘\’ n:hexdigit m:hexdigit</code>	$\Rightarrow 16 \cdot n + m$

Each character in a string literal represents the byte sequence corresponding to its UTF-8 [Unicode<sup>45</sup>](#) (Section 2.5) encoding, except for hexadecimal escape sequences ‘\hh’, which represent raw bytes of the respective value.

<code>stringchar</code>	<code>::= c:char</code>	$\Rightarrow c$ (if $c \geq \text{U}+20 \wedge c \neq \text{U}+7\text{F} \wedge c \neq \text{”} \wedge c \neq \text{”} \wedge c \neq \text{”} \wedge c \neq \text{”}$ )
	<code>  ‘\t’</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{U}+09$
	<code>  ‘\n’</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{U}+0A$
	<code>  ‘\r’</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{U}+0D$
	<code>  ‘\”</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{U}+22$
	<code>  ‘\’</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{U}+27$
	<code>  ‘\’</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{U}+5C$
	<code>  ‘\u{ n:hexnum }’</code>	$\Rightarrow \text{U}+(n)$ (if $n < 0\text{x}D800 \vee 0\text{x}E000 \leq n < 0\text{x}110000$ )

<sup>43</sup> <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/8766229>

<sup>44</sup> <https://webstore.ansi.org/RecordDetail.aspx?sku=INCITS+4-1986%5bR2012%5d>

<sup>45</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/versions/latest/>

### 6.3.4 Names

**Names** are strings denoting a literal character sequence. A name string must form a valid UTF-8 encoding as defined by [Unicode](#)<sup>46</sup> (Section 2.5) and is interpreted as a string of Unicode scalar values.

$$\text{name} ::= b^*:\text{string} \Rightarrow c^* \quad (\text{if } b^* = \text{utfs}(c^*))$$

#### Note

Presuming the source text is itself encoded correctly, strings that do not contain any uses of hexadecimal byte escapes are always valid names.

### 6.3.5 Identifiers

**Indices** can be given in both numeric and symbolic form. Symbolic *identifiers* that stand in lieu of indices start with ‘\$’, followed by either a sequence of printable [ASCII](#)<sup>47</sup> characters that does not contain a space, quotation mark, comma, semicolon, or bracket, or by a quoted **name**.

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{id} & ::= & \text{‘\$’ } c^*:\text{idchar}^+ & \Rightarrow c^* \\ & | & \text{‘\$’ } c^*:\text{name} & \Rightarrow c^* \quad (\text{if } |c^*| > 0) \\ \text{idchar} & ::= & \begin{array}{l} \text{‘0’} \mid \dots \mid \text{‘9’} \\ \text{‘A’} \mid \dots \mid \text{‘Z’} \\ \text{‘a’} \mid \dots \mid \text{‘z’} \\ \text{‘!’} \mid \text{‘\#’} \mid \text{‘\$’} \mid \text{‘\%’} \mid \text{‘\&’} \mid \text{‘\’} \mid \text{‘*’} \mid \text{‘+’} \mid \text{‘-’} \mid \text{‘.’} \mid \text{‘/’} \\ \text{‘:’} \mid \text{‘<’} \mid \text{‘=’} \mid \text{‘>’} \mid \text{‘?’} \mid \text{‘@’} \mid \text{‘\backslash’} \mid \text{‘^’} \mid \text{‘_’} \mid \text{‘~’} \mid \text{‘|’} \mid \text{‘~’} \end{array} \end{array}$$

#### Note

The value of an identifier character is the Unicode codepoint denoting it.

### Conventions

The expansion rules of some abbreviations require insertion of a *fresh* identifier. That may be any syntactically valid identifier that does not already occur in the given source text.

## 6.4 Types

### 6.4.1 Number Types

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{numtype}_I & ::= & \begin{array}{l} \text{‘i32’} \\ \text{‘i64’} \\ \text{‘f32’} \\ \text{‘f64’} \end{array} & \Rightarrow \begin{array}{l} \text{i32} \\ \text{i64} \\ \text{f32} \\ \text{f64} \end{array} \end{array}$$

### 6.4.2 Vector Types

$$\text{vectype}_I ::= \text{‘v128’} \Rightarrow \text{v128}$$

<sup>46</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/versions/latest/>

<sup>47</sup> <https://webstore.ansi.org/RecordDetail.aspx?sku=INCITS+4-1986%5bR2012%5d>

### 6.4.3 Heap Types

<code>absheaptypes</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>'any'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>any</code>
		<code>'eq'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>eq</code>
		<code>'i31'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i31</code>
		<code>'struct'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>struct</code>
		<code>'array'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>array</code>
		<code>'none'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>none</code>
		<code>'func'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>func</code>
		<code>'nofunc'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>nofunc</code>
		<code>'extern'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>extern</code>
		<code>'noexn'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>noexn</code>
		<code>'exn'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>exn</code>
		<code>'noextern'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>noextern</code>
<code>heaptypes<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>t:absheaptypes</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>y</code>
		<code>x:typeidx<sub>I</sub></code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>x</code>

### 6.4.4 Reference Types

<code>reftypes<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>('ref' ht:heaptypes '')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>ref ht</code>
		<code>('ref' 'null' ht:heaptypes '')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>ref null ht</code>

#### Abbreviations

There are shorthands for references to abstract heap types.

<code>'anyref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'any' '')</code>
<code>'eqref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'eq' '')</code>
<code>'i31ref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'i31' '')</code>
<code>'structref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'struct' '')</code>
<code>'arrayref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'array' '')</code>
<code>'nullref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'none' '')</code>
<code>'funcref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'func' '')</code>
<code>'nullfuncref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'nofunc' '')</code>
<code>'exnref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'exn' '')</code>
<code>'nullexnref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'noexn' '')</code>
<code>'externref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'extern' '')</code>
<code>'nullexternref'</code>	$\equiv$	<code>('ref' 'null' 'noextern' '')</code>

### 6.4.5 Value Types

<code>valtypes<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>t:numtypes<sub>I</sub></code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>t</code>
		<code>t:vectypes<sub>I</sub></code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>t</code>
		<code>t:reftypes<sub>I</sub></code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>t</code>

### 6.4.6 Function Types

<code>functypes<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>('func' t<sub>1</sub><sup>*</sup>.list(param<sub>I</sub>) t<sub>2</sub><sup>*</sup>.list(result<sub>I</sub>) '')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>[t<sub>1</sub><sup>*</sup>] <math>\rightarrow</math> [t<sub>2</sub><sup>*</sup>]</code>
<code>param<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>('param' id<sup>?</sup> t:valtypes<sub>I</sub> '')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>t</code>
<code>result<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>('result' t:valtypes<sub>I</sub> '')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>t</code>

#### Note

The optional identifier names for parameters in a function type only have documentation purpose. They cannot be referenced from anywhere.



## Abbreviations

Multiple anonymous parameters or results may be combined into a single declaration:

$$\begin{aligned} (' \text{'param' valtype}^* ') &\equiv ((' \text{'param' valtype} ')^* \\ (' \text{'result' valtype}^* ') &\equiv ((' \text{'result' valtype} ')^* \end{aligned}$$

### 6.4.7 Aggregate Types

<code>arraytype<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>(' 'array' ft:fieldtype<sub>I</sub> ')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>ft</code>
<code>structtype<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>(' 'struct' ft*:list(field<sub>I</sub>) ')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>ft*</code>
<code>field<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>(' 'field' id? ft:fieldtype<sub>I</sub> ')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>ft</code>
<code>fieldtype<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>st:storagetype</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>const st</code>
		<code>  (' 'mut' st:storagetype ')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>var st</code>
<code>storagetype<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>t:valtype<sub>I</sub></code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>t</code>
		<code>  t:packtype</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>t</code>
<code>packtype</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>'i8'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i8</code>
		<code>  'i16'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i16</code>

## Abbreviations

Multiple anonymous structure fields may be combined into a single declaration:

$$(' \text{'field' fieldtype}^* ') \equiv ((' \text{'field' fieldtype} ')^*)$$

### 6.4.8 Composite Types

<code>comptype<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>at:arraytype<sub>I</sub></code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>array at</code>
		<code>  st:structtype<sub>I</sub></code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>struct at</code>
		<code>  ft:functype<sub>I</sub></code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>func ft</code>

### 6.4.9 Recursive Types

<code>rectype<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>(' 'rec' st*:list(typedef<sub>I</sub>) ')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>rec st*</code>
<code>typedef<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>(' 'type' id? st:subtype<sub>I</sub> ')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>st</code>
<code>subtype<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>(' 'sub' 'final'? x*:list(typeidx<sub>I</sub>) ct:comptype<sub>I</sub> ')</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>sub final? x* ct</code>

## Abbreviations

Singular recursive types can omit the 'rec' keyword:

$$\text{typedef} \equiv (' \text{'rec' typedef} ')$$

Similarly, final sub types with no super-types can omit the `sub` keyword and arguments:

$$\text{comptype} \equiv (' \text{'sub' 'final' } \epsilon \text{ comptype} ')$$

### 6.4.10 Address Types

<code>addrtype</code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>'i32'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i32</code>
		<code>  'i64'</code>	$\Rightarrow$	<code>i64</code>

## Abbreviations

The address type can be omitted, in which case it defaults `i32`:

$$\text{' } \equiv \text{'i32'}$$

### 6.4.11 Limits

$$\begin{aligned} \text{limits} &::= n:\text{u32} &\Rightarrow \{\min n, \max \epsilon\} \\ &| n:\text{u32 } m:\text{u32} &\Rightarrow \{\min n, \max m\} \end{aligned}$$

### 6.4.12 Memory Types

$$\text{memory}_I ::= \text{at}:\text{addrtype } \text{lim}:\text{limits} \Rightarrow \text{at } \text{lim}$$

### 6.4.13 Table Types

$$\text{tabletype}_I ::= \text{at}:\text{addrtype } \text{lim}:\text{limits } \text{et}:\text{reftype}_I \Rightarrow \text{at } \text{lim } \text{et}$$

### 6.4.14 Global Types

$$\begin{aligned} \text{globaltype}_I &::= t:\text{valtype} &\Rightarrow \text{const } t \\ &| \text{'(' 'mut' } t:\text{valtype}_I \text{' )' } &\Rightarrow \text{var } t \end{aligned}$$

## 6.5 Instructions

Instructions are syntactically distinguished into *plain* and *structured* instructions.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{instr}_I &::= \text{in}:\text{plaininstr}_I &\Rightarrow \text{in} \\ &| \text{in}:\text{blockinstr}_I &\Rightarrow \text{in} \end{aligned}$$

In addition, as a syntactic abbreviation, instructions can be written as S-expressions in *folded* form, to group them visually.

### 6.5.1 Labels

Structured control instructions can be annotated with a symbolic *label identifier*. They are the only *symbolic identifiers* that can be bound locally in an instruction sequence. The following grammar handles the corresponding update to the *identifier context* by *composing* the context with an additional label entry.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{label}_I &::= v:\text{id} &\Rightarrow v, \{\text{labels } v\} \oplus I & \quad (\text{if } v \notin I.\text{labels}) \\ &| v:\text{id} &\Rightarrow v, \{\text{labels } v\} \oplus (I \text{ with labels}[i] = \epsilon) & \quad (\text{if } I.\text{labels}[i] = v) \\ &| \epsilon &\Rightarrow \epsilon, \{\text{labels } (\epsilon)\} \oplus I \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

The new label entry is inserted at the *beginning* of the label list in the identifier context. This effectively shifts all existing labels up by one, mirroring the fact that control instructions are indexed relatively not absolutely.

If a label with the same name already exists, then it is shadowed and the earlier label becomes inaccessible.

### 6.5.2 Control Instructions

Structured control instructions can bind an optional symbolic label identifier. The same label identifier may optionally be repeated after the corresponding end or else keywords, to indicate the matching delimiters.

Their block type is given as a type use, analogous to the type of functions. However, the special case of a type use that is syntactically empty or consists of only a single result is not regarded as an abbreviation for an inline function type, but is parsed directly into an optional value type.

```

blocktypeI ::= (t:resultI)? ⇒ t?
              | x, I':typeuseI ⇒ x (if I' = {locals (ε)*})
blockinstrI ::= 'block' (v?, I'):labelI bt:blocktypeI (in:instrI')* 'end' v?:id?
              ⇒ block bt in* end (if v? = ε ∨ v? = v?)
              | 'loop' (v?, I'):labelI bt:blocktypeI (in:instrI')* 'end' v?:id?
              ⇒ loop bt in* end (if v? = ε ∨ v? = v?)
              | 'if' (v?, I'):labelI bt:blocktypeI (in1:instrI')* 'else' v1?:id1? (in2:instrI')* 'end' v2?:id2?
              ⇒ if bt in1* else in2* end (if v1? = ε ∨ v1? = v1?, v2? = ε ∨ v2? = v2?)
              | 'try_table' I':labelI bt:blocktypeI (c:catchI)* (in:instrI')* 'end' id?
              ⇒ try_table bt c* in* end (if id? = ε ∨ id? = label)
catchI ::= (' 'catch' x:tagidxI l:labelidxI ') ⇒ catch x l
          | (' 'catch_ref' x:tagidxI l:labelidxI ') ⇒ catch_ref x l
          | (' 'catch_all' l:labelidxI ') ⇒ catch_all l
          | (' 'catch_all_ref' l:labelidxI ') ⇒ catch_all_ref l

```

#### Note

The side condition stating that the identifier context  $I'$  must only contain unnamed entries in the rule for `typeuse` block types enforces that no identifier can be bound in any `param` declaration for a block type.

All other control instruction are represented verbatim.

```

plaininstrI ::= 'unreachable' ⇒ unreachable
              | 'nop' ⇒ nop
              | 'br' l:labelidxI ⇒ br l
              | 'br_if' l:labelidxI ⇒ br_if l
              | 'br_table' l*:list(labelidxI) lN:labelidxI ⇒ br_table l* lN
              | 'br_on_null' l:labelidxI ⇒ br_on_null l
              | 'br_on_non_null' l:labelidxI ⇒ br_on_non_null l
              | 'br_on_cast' l:labelidxI t1:reftype t2:reftype ⇒ br_on_cast l t1 t2
              | 'br_on_cast_fail' l:labelidxI t1:reftype t2:reftype ⇒ br_on_cast_fail l t1 t2
              | 'return' ⇒ return
              | 'call' x:funcidxI ⇒ call x
              | 'call_ref' x:typeidx ⇒ call_ref x
              | 'call_indirect' x:tableidx y, I':typeuseI ⇒ call_indirect x y (if I' = { })
              | 'return_call' x:funcidxI ⇒ return_call x
              | 'return_call_ref' x:typeidx ⇒ return_call_ref x
              | 'return_call_indirect' x:tableidx y, I':typeuseI ⇒ return_call_indirect x y (if I' = { })
              | 'throw' x:tagidxI ⇒ throw x
              | 'throw_ref' ⇒ throw_ref

```

#### Note

The side condition stating that the identifier context  $I'$  must only contain unnamed entries in the rule for `call_indirect` enforces that no identifier can be bound in any `param` declaration appearing in the type annotation.

## Abbreviations

The ‘else’ keyword of an ‘if’ instruction can be omitted if the following instruction sequence is empty.

‘if’ label blocktype<sub>I</sub> instr\* ‘end’ ≡ ‘if’ label blocktype<sub>I</sub> instr\* ‘else’ ‘end’

Also, for backwards compatibility, the table index to ‘call\_indirect’ and ‘return\_call\_indirect’ can be omitted, defaulting to 0.

‘call\_indirect’ typeuse ≡ ‘call\_indirect’ 0 typeuse  
 ‘return\_call\_indirect’ typeuse ≡ ‘return\_call\_indirect’ 0 typeuse

### 6.5.3 Reference Instructions

```
plaininstrI ::= ...
| ‘ref.null’ t:heaptypes ⇒ ref.null t
| ‘ref.func’ x:funcidx ⇒ ref.func x
| ‘ref.is_null’ ⇒ ref.is_null
| ‘ref.as_non_null’ ⇒ ref.as_non_null
| ‘ref.eq’ ⇒ ref.eq
| ‘ref.test’ t:reftypes ⇒ ref.test t
| ‘ref.cast’ t:reftypes ⇒ ref.cast t
| ‘struct.new’ x:typeidxI ⇒ struct.new x
| ‘struct.new_default’ x:typeidxI ⇒ struct.new_default x
| ‘struct.get’ x:typeidxI y:fieldidxI,x ⇒ struct.get x y
| ‘struct.get_u’ x:typeidxI y:fieldidxI,x ⇒ struct.get_u x y
| ‘struct.get_s’ x:typeidxI y:fieldidxI,x ⇒ struct.get_s x y
| ‘struct.set’ x:typeidxI y:fieldidxI,x ⇒ struct.set x y
| ‘array.new’ x:typeidxI ⇒ array.new x
| ‘array.new_default’ x:typeidxI ⇒ array.new_default x
| ‘array.new_fixed’ x:typeidxI n:u32 ⇒ array.new_fixed x n
| ‘array.new_data’ x:typeidxI y:dataidxI ⇒ array.new_data x y
| ‘array.new_elem’ x:typeidxI y:elemidxI ⇒ array.new_elem x y
| ‘array.get’ x:typeidxI ⇒ array.get x
| ‘array.get_u’ x:typeidxI ⇒ array.get_u x
| ‘array.get_s’ x:typeidxI ⇒ array.get_s x
| ‘array.set’ x:typeidxI ⇒ array.set x
| ‘array.len’ ⇒ array.len
| ‘array.fill’ x:typeidxI ⇒ array.fill x
| ‘array.copy’ x:typeidxI y:typeidxI ⇒ array.copy x y
| ‘array.init_data’ x:typeidxI y:dataidxI ⇒ array.init_data x y
| ‘array.init_elem’ x:typeidxI y:elemidxI ⇒ array.init_elem x y
| ‘ref.i31’ ⇒ ref.i31
| ‘i31.get_u’ ⇒ i31.get_u
| ‘i31.get_s’ ⇒ i31.get_s
| ‘any.convert_extern’ ⇒ any.convert_extern
| ‘extern.convert_any’ ⇒ extern.convert_any
```

### 6.5.4 Parametric Instructions

```
plaininstrI ::= ...
| ‘drop’ ⇒ drop
| ‘select’ ((t:resultI)*)? ⇒ select (t*)?
```

### 6.5.5 Variable Instructions

```

plaininstrI ::= ...
               | 'local.get' x:localidxI    ⇒ local.get x
               | 'local.set' x:localidxI    ⇒ local.set x
               | 'local.tee' x:localidxI    ⇒ local.tee x
               | 'global.get' x:globalidxI ⇒ global.get x
               | 'global.set' x:globalidxI ⇒ global.set x

```

### 6.5.6 Table Instructions

```

plaininstrI ::= ...
               | 'table.get' x:tableidxI    ⇒ table.get x
               | 'table.set' x:tableidxI    ⇒ table.set x
               | 'table.size' x:tableidxI    ⇒ table.size x
               | 'table.grow' x:tableidxI    ⇒ table.grow x
               | 'table.fill' x:tableidxI    ⇒ table.fill x
               | 'table.copy' x:tableidxI y:tableidxI ⇒ table.copy x y
               | 'table.init' x:tableidxI y:elemidxI ⇒ table.init x y
               | 'elem.drop' x:elemidxI      ⇒ elem.drop x

```

#### Abbreviations

For backwards compatibility, all **table indices** may be omitted from table instructions, defaulting to 0.

```

'table.get'           ≡ 'table.get' '0'
'table.set'           ≡ 'table.set' '0'
'table.size'          ≡ 'table.size' '0'
'table.grow'          ≡ 'table.grow' '0'
'table.fill'          ≡ 'table.fill' '0'
'table.copy'          ≡ 'table.copy' '0' '0'
'table.init' x:elemidxI ≡ 'table.init' '0' x:elemidxI

```

### 6.5.7 Memory Instructions

The offset and alignment immediates to memory instructions are optional. The offset defaults to 0, the alignment to the storage size of the respective memory access, which is its *natural alignment*. Lexically, an **offset** or **align**

phrase is considered a single **keyword token**, so no **white space** is allowed around the '='.

<code>memarg<sub>N</sub></code>	::=	<code>o:offset a:align<sub>N</sub></code>	⇒	{align
<code>offset</code>	::=	<code>'offset='o:u32</code>	⇒	<code>o</code>
		<code>ε</code>	⇒	<code>0</code>
<code>align<sub>N</sub></code>	::=	<code>'align='a:u32</code>	⇒	<code>a</code>
		<code>ε</code>	⇒	<code>N</code>
<code>plaininstr<sub>I</sub></code>	::=	...		
		<code>'i32.load' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>4</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i32.load</code>
		<code>'i64.load' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i64.load</code>
		<code>'f32.load' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>4</sub></code>	⇒	<code>f32.load</code>
		<code>'f64.load' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>f64.load</code>
		<code>'v128.load' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>16</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load</code>
		<code>'i32.load8_s' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>1</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i32.load8_s</code>
		<code>'i32.load8_u' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>1</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i32.load8_u</code>
		<code>'i32.load16_s' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>2</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i32.load16_s</code>
		<code>'i32.load16_u' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>2</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i32.load16_u</code>
		<code>'i64.load8_s' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>1</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i64.load8_s</code>
		<code>'i64.load8_u' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>1</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i64.load8_u</code>
		<code>'i64.load16_s' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>2</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i64.load16_s</code>
		<code>'i64.load16_u' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>2</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i64.load16_u</code>
		<code>'i64.load32_s' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>4</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i64.load32_s</code>
		<code>'i64.load32_u' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>4</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i64.load32_u</code>
		<code>'v128.load8x8_s' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load8x8_s</code>
		<code>'v128.load8x8_u' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load8x8_u</code>
		<code>'v128.load16x4_s' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load16x4_s</code>
		<code>'v128.load16x4_u' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load16x4_u</code>
		<code>'v128.load32x2_s' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load32x2_s</code>
		<code>'v128.load32x2_u' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load32x2_u</code>
		<code>'v128.load8_splat' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>1</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load8_splat</code>
		<code>'v128.load16_splat' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>2</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load16_splat</code>
		<code>'v128.load32_splat' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>4</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load32_splat</code>
		<code>'v128.load64_splat' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load64_splat</code>
		<code>'v128.load32_zero' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>4</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load32_zero</code>
		<code>'v128.load64_zero' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.load64_zero</code>
		<code>'v128.load8_lane' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>1</sub> y:u8</code>	⇒	<code>v128.load8_lane</code>
		<code>'v128.load16_lane' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>2</sub> y:u8</code>	⇒	<code>v128.load16_lane</code>
		<code>'v128.load32_lane' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>4</sub> y:u8</code>	⇒	<code>v128.load32_lane</code>
		<code>'v128.load64_lane' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub> y:u8</code>	⇒	<code>v128.load64_lane</code>
		<code>'i32.store' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>4</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i32.store</code>
		<code>'i64.store' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i64.store</code>
		<code>'f32.store' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>4</sub></code>	⇒	<code>f32.store</code>
		<code>'f64.store' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub></code>	⇒	<code>f64.store</code>
		<code>'v128.store' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>16</sub></code>	⇒	<code>v128.store</code>
		<code>'i32.store8' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>1</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i32.store8</code>
		<code>'i32.store16' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>2</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i32.store16</code>
		<code>'i64.store8' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>1</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i64.store8</code>
		<code>'i64.store16' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>2</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i64.store16</code>
		<code>'i64.store32' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>4</sub></code>	⇒	<code>i64.store32</code>
		<code>'v128.store8_lane' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>1</sub> y:u8</code>	⇒	<code>v128.store8_lane</code>
		<code>'v128.store16_lane' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>2</sub> y:u8</code>	⇒	<code>v128.store16_lane</code>
		<code>'v128.store32_lane' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>4</sub> y:u8</code>	⇒	<code>v128.store32_lane</code>
		<code>'v128.store64_lane' x:memidx m:memarg<sub>8</sub> y:u8</code>	⇒	<code>v128.store64_lane</code>
<code>'memory.size' x:memidx</code>	⇒	<code>memory.size x</code>		
		<code>'memory.grow' x:memidx</code>	⇒	<code>memory.grow</code>
		<code>'memory.fill' x:memidx</code>	⇒	<code>memory.fill</code>
		<code>'memory.copy' x:memidx y:memidx</code>	⇒	<code>memory.copy</code>
		<code>'memory.init' x:memidx y:dataidx<sub>I</sub></code>	⇒	<code>memory.init</code>
		<code>'data.drop' x:dataidx<sub>I</sub></code>	⇒	<code>data.drop</code>

## Abbreviations

As an abbreviation, the memory index can be omitted in all memory instructions, defaulting to 0.

<code>numtype.load memarg</code>	<code>≡ numtype.load '0' memarg</code>
<code>vectype.load memarg</code>	<code>≡ vectype.load '0' memarg</code>
<code>numtype.load N'_sx memarg</code>	<code>≡ numtype.load N'_sx '0' memarg</code>
<code>vectype.load NxM'_sx memarg</code>	<code>≡ vectype.load NxM'_sx '0' memarg</code>
<code>vectype.load N'_splat memarg</code>	<code>≡ vectype.load N'_splat '0' memarg</code>
<code>vectype.load N'_zero memarg</code>	<code>≡ vectype.load N'_zero '0' memarg</code>
<code>vectype.load N'_lane memarg u8</code>	<code>≡ vectype.load N'_lane '0' memarg u8</code>
<code>numtype.store memarg</code>	<code>≡ numtype.store '0' memarg</code>
<code>vectype.store memarg</code>	<code>≡ vectype.store '0' memarg</code>
<code>numtype.store N memarg</code>	<code>≡ numtype.store N '0' memarg</code>
<code>vectype.store N'_lane memarg u8</code>	<code>≡ vectype.store N'_lane '0' memarg u8</code>
<code>'memory.size'</code>	<code>≡ 'memory.size' '0'</code>
<code>'memory.grow'</code>	<code>≡ 'memory.grow' '0'</code>
<code>'memory.fill'</code>	<code>≡ 'memory.fill' '0'</code>
<code>'memory.copy'</code>	<code>≡ 'memory.copy' '0' '0'</code>
<code>'memory.init' x:elemidx<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>≡ 'memory.init' '0' x:elemidx<sub>I</sub></code>

## 6.5.8 Numeric Instructions

<code>plaininstr<sub>I</sub></code>	<code>::=</code>	<code>...</code>
		<code>'i32.const' n:i32 ⇒ i32.const n</code>
		<code>'i64.const' n:i64 ⇒ i64.const n</code>
		<code>'f32.const' z:f32 ⇒ f32.const z</code>
		<code>'f64.const' z:f64 ⇒ f64.const z</code>
		<code>'i32.clz' ⇒ i32.clz</code>
		<code>'i32.ctz' ⇒ i32.ctz</code>
		<code>'i32.popcnt' ⇒ i32.popcnt</code>
		<code>'i32.add' ⇒ i32.add</code>
		<code>'i32.sub' ⇒ i32.sub</code>
		<code>'i32.mul' ⇒ i32.mul</code>
		<code>'i32.div_s' ⇒ i32.div_s</code>
		<code>'i32.div_u' ⇒ i32.div_u</code>
		<code>'i32.rem_s' ⇒ i32.rem_s</code>
		<code>'i32.rem_u' ⇒ i32.rem_u</code>
		<code>'i32.and' ⇒ i32.and</code>
		<code>'i32.or' ⇒ i32.or</code>
		<code>'i32.xor' ⇒ i32.xor</code>
		<code>'i32.shl' ⇒ i32.shl</code>
		<code>'i32.shr_s' ⇒ i32.shr_s</code>
		<code>'i32.shr_u' ⇒ i32.shr_u</code>
		<code>'i32.rotl' ⇒ i32.rotl</code>
		<code>'i32.rotr' ⇒ i32.rotr</code>

'i64.clz'	⇒	i64.clz
'i64.ctz'	⇒	i64.ctz
'i64.popcnt'	⇒	i64.popcnt
'i64.add'	⇒	i64.add
'i64.sub'	⇒	i64.sub
'i64.mul'	⇒	i64.mul
'i64.div_s'	⇒	i64.div_s
'i64.div_u'	⇒	i64.div_u
'i64.rem_s'	⇒	i64.rem_s
'i64.rem_u'	⇒	i64.rem_u
'i64.and'	⇒	i64.and
'i64.or'	⇒	i64.or
'i64.xor'	⇒	i64.xor
'i64.shl'	⇒	i64.shl
'i64.shr_s'	⇒	i64.shr_s
'i64.shr_u'	⇒	i64.shr_u
'i64.rotl'	⇒	i64.rotl
'i64.rotr'	⇒	i64.rotr
'f32.abs'	⇒	f32.abs
'f32.neg'	⇒	f32.neg
'f32.ceil'	⇒	f32.ceil
'f32.floor'	⇒	f32.floor
'f32.trunc'	⇒	f32.trunc
'f32.nearest'	⇒	f32.nearest
'f32.sqrt'	⇒	f32.sqrt
'f32.add'	⇒	f32.add
'f32.sub'	⇒	f32.sub
'f32.mul'	⇒	f32.mul
'f32.div'	⇒	f32.div
'f32.min'	⇒	f32.min
'f32.max'	⇒	f32.max
'f32.copysign'	⇒	f32.copysign
'f64.abs'	⇒	f64.abs
'f64.neg'	⇒	f64.neg
'f64.ceil'	⇒	f64.ceil
'f64.floor'	⇒	f64.floor
'f64.trunc'	⇒	f64.trunc
'f64.nearest'	⇒	f64.nearest
'f64.sqrt'	⇒	f64.sqrt
'f64.add'	⇒	f64.add
'f64.sub'	⇒	f64.sub
'f64.mul'	⇒	f64.mul
'f64.div'	⇒	f64.div
'f64.min'	⇒	f64.min
'f64.max'	⇒	f64.max
'f64.copysign'	⇒	f64.copysign



	'i32.eqz'	⇒	i32.eqz
	'i32.eq'	⇒	i32.eq
	'i32.ne'	⇒	i32.ne
	'i32.lt_s'	⇒	i32.lt_s
	'i32.lt_u'	⇒	i32.lt_u
	'i32.gt_s'	⇒	i32.gt_s
	'i32.gt_u'	⇒	i32.gt_u
	'i32.le_s'	⇒	i32.le_s
	'i32.le_u'	⇒	i32.le_u
	'i32.ge_s'	⇒	i32.ge_s
	'i32.ge_u'	⇒	i32.ge_u

	'i64.eqz'	⇒	i64.eqz
	'i64.eq'	⇒	i64.eq
	'i64.ne'	⇒	i64.ne
	'i64.lt_s'	⇒	i64.lt_s
	'i64.lt_u'	⇒	i64.lt_u
	'i64.gt_s'	⇒	i64.gt_s
	'i64.gt_u'	⇒	i64.gt_u
	'i64.le_s'	⇒	i64.le_s
	'i64.le_u'	⇒	i64.le_u
	'i64.ge_s'	⇒	i64.ge_s
	'i64.ge_u'	⇒	i64.ge_u

	'f32.eq'	⇒	f32.eq
	'f32.ne'	⇒	f32.ne
	'f32.lt'	⇒	f32.lt
	'f32.gt'	⇒	f32.gt
	'f32.le'	⇒	f32.le
	'f32.ge'	⇒	f32.ge

	'f64.eq'	⇒	f64.eq
	'f64.ne'	⇒	f64.ne
	'f64.lt'	⇒	f64.lt
	'f64.gt'	⇒	f64.gt
	'f64.le'	⇒	f64.le
	'f64.ge'	⇒	f64.ge

'i32.wrap_i64'	⇒	i32.wrap_i64
'i32.trunc_f32_s'	⇒	i32.trunc_f32_s
'i32.trunc_f32_u'	⇒	i32.trunc_f32_u
'i32.trunc_f64_s'	⇒	i32.trunc_f64_s
'i32.trunc_f64_u'	⇒	i32.trunc_f64_u
'i32.trunc_sat_f32_s'	⇒	i32.trunc_sat_f32_s
'i32.trunc_sat_f32_u'	⇒	i32.trunc_sat_f32_u
'i32.trunc_sat_f64_s'	⇒	i32.trunc_sat_f64_s
'i32.trunc_sat_f64_u'	⇒	i32.trunc_sat_f64_u
'i64.extend_i32_s'	⇒	i64.extend_i32_s
'i64.extend_i32_u'	⇒	i64.extend_i32_u
'i64.trunc_f32_s'	⇒	i64.trunc_f32_s
'i64.trunc_f32_u'	⇒	i64.trunc_f32_u
'i64.trunc_f64_s'	⇒	i64.trunc_f64_s
'i64.trunc_f64_u'	⇒	i64.trunc_f64_u
'i64.trunc_sat_f32_s'	⇒	i64.trunc_sat_f32_s
'i64.trunc_sat_f32_u'	⇒	i64.trunc_sat_f32_u
'i64.trunc_sat_f64_s'	⇒	i64.trunc_sat_f64_s
'i64.trunc_sat_f64_u'	⇒	i64.trunc_sat_f64_u
'f32.convert_i32_s'	⇒	f32.convert_i32_s
'f32.convert_i32_u'	⇒	f32.convert_i32_u
'f32.convert_i64_s'	⇒	f32.convert_i64_s
'f32.convert_i64_u'	⇒	f32.convert_i64_u
'f32.demote_f64'	⇒	f32.demote_f64
'f64.convert_i32_s'	⇒	f64.convert_i32_s
'f64.convert_i32_u'	⇒	f64.convert_i32_u
'f64.convert_i64_s'	⇒	f64.convert_i64_s
'f64.convert_i64_u'	⇒	f64.convert_i64_u
'f64.promote_f32'	⇒	f64.promote_f32
'i32.reinterpret_f32'	⇒	i32.reinterpret_f32
'i64.reinterpret_f64'	⇒	i64.reinterpret_f64
'f32.reinterpret_i32'	⇒	f32.reinterpret_i32
'f64.reinterpret_i64'	⇒	f64.reinterpret_i64
'i32.extend8_s'	⇒	i32.extend8_s
'i32.extend16_s'	⇒	i32.extend16_s
'i64.extend8_s'	⇒	i64.extend8_s
'i64.extend16_s'	⇒	i64.extend16_s
'i64.extend32_s'	⇒	i64.extend32_s

### 6.5.9 Vector Instructions

Vector constant instructions have a mandatory [shape](#) descriptor, which determines how the following values are parsed.

'v128.const' 'i8x16' (n:i8) <sup>16</sup>	⇒	v128.const bytes <sub>i128</sub> <sup>-1</sup> (bytes <sub>i8</sub> (n) <sup>16</sup> )
'v128.const' 'i16x8' (n:i16) <sup>8</sup>	⇒	v128.const bytes <sub>i128</sub> <sup>-1</sup> (bytes <sub>i16</sub> (n) <sup>8</sup> )
'v128.const' 'i32x4' (n:i32) <sup>4</sup>	⇒	v128.const bytes <sub>i128</sub> <sup>-1</sup> (bytes <sub>i32</sub> (n) <sup>4</sup> )
'v128.const' 'i64x2' (n:i64) <sup>2</sup>	⇒	v128.const bytes <sub>i128</sub> <sup>-1</sup> (bytes <sub>i64</sub> (n) <sup>2</sup> )
'v128.const' 'f32x4' (z:f32) <sup>4</sup>	⇒	v128.const bytes <sub>i128</sub> <sup>-1</sup> (bytes <sub>f32</sub> (z) <sup>4</sup> )
'v128.const' 'f64x2' (z:f64) <sup>2</sup>	⇒	v128.const bytes <sub>i128</sub> <sup>-1</sup> (bytes <sub>f64</sub> (z) <sup>2</sup> )
'i8x16.shuffle' (laneidx:u8) <sup>16</sup>	⇒	i8x16.shuffle laneidx <sup>16</sup>
'i8x16.swizzle'	⇒	i8x16.swizzle

'i8x16.splat'	⇒	i8x16.splat
'i16x8.splat'	⇒	i16x8.splat
'i32x4.splat'	⇒	i32x4.splat
'i64x2.splat'	⇒	i64x2.splat
'f32x4.splat'	⇒	f32x4.splat
'f64x2.splat'	⇒	f64x2.splat
'i8x16.extract_lane_s' laneidx:u8	⇒	i8x16.extract_lane_s laneidx
'i8x16.extract_lane_u' laneidx:u8	⇒	i8x16.extract_lane_u laneidx
'i8x16.replace_lane' laneidx:u8	⇒	i8x16.replace_lane laneidx
'i16x8.extract_lane_s' laneidx:u8	⇒	i16x8.extract_lane_s laneidx
'i16x8.extract_lane_u' laneidx:u8	⇒	i16x8.extract_lane_u laneidx
'i16x8.replace_lane' laneidx:u8	⇒	i16x8.replace_lane laneidx
'i32x4.extract_lane' laneidx:u8	⇒	i32x4.extract_lane laneidx
'i32x4.replace_lane' laneidx:u8	⇒	i32x4.replace_lane laneidx
'i64x2.extract_lane' laneidx:u8	⇒	i64x2.extract_lane laneidx
'i64x2.replace_lane' laneidx:u8	⇒	i64x2.replace_lane laneidx
'f32x4.extract_lane' laneidx:u8	⇒	f32x4.extract_lane laneidx
'f32x4.replace_lane' laneidx:u8	⇒	f32x4.replace_lane laneidx
'f64x2.extract_lane' laneidx:u8	⇒	f64x2.extract_lane laneidx
'f64x2.replace_lane' laneidx:u8	⇒	f64x2.replace_lane laneidx
'i8x16.eq'	⇒	i8x16.eq
'i8x16.ne'	⇒	i8x16.ne
'i8x16.lt_s'	⇒	i8x16.lt_s
'i8x16.lt_u'	⇒	i8x16.lt_u
'i8x16.gt_s'	⇒	i8x16.gt_s
'i8x16.gt_u'	⇒	i8x16.gt_u
'i8x16.le_s'	⇒	i8x16.le_s
'i8x16.le_u'	⇒	i8x16.le_u
'i8x16.ge_s'	⇒	i8x16.ge_s
'i8x16.ge_u'	⇒	i8x16.ge_u
'i16x8.eq'	⇒	i16x8.eq
'i16x8.ne'	⇒	i16x8.ne
'i16x8.lt_s'	⇒	i16x8.lt_s
'i16x8.lt_u'	⇒	i16x8.lt_u
'i16x8.gt_s'	⇒	i16x8.gt_s
'i16x8.gt_u'	⇒	i16x8.gt_u
'i16x8.le_s'	⇒	i16x8.le_s
'i16x8.le_u'	⇒	i16x8.le_u
'i16x8.ge_s'	⇒	i16x8.ge_s
'i16x8.ge_u'	⇒	i16x8.ge_u
'i32x4.eq'	⇒	i32x4.eq
'i32x4.ne'	⇒	i32x4.ne
'i32x4.lt_s'	⇒	i32x4.lt_s
'i32x4.lt_u'	⇒	i32x4.lt_u
'i32x4.gt_s'	⇒	i32x4.gt_s
'i32x4.gt_u'	⇒	i32x4.gt_u
'i32x4.le_s'	⇒	i32x4.le_s
'i32x4.le_u'	⇒	i32x4.le_u
'i32x4.ge_s'	⇒	i32x4.ge_s
'i32x4.ge_u'	⇒	i32x4.ge_u

'i64x2.eq'	⇒	i64x2.eq
'i64x2.ne'	⇒	i64x2.ne
'i64x2.lt_s'	⇒	i64x2.lt_s
'i64x2.gt_s'	⇒	i64x2.gt_s
'i64x2.le_s'	⇒	i64x2.le_s
'i64x2.ge_s'	⇒	i64x2.ge_s
'f32x4.eq'	⇒	f32x4.eq
'f32x4.ne'	⇒	f32x4.ne
'f32x4.lt'	⇒	f32x4.lt
'f32x4.gt'	⇒	f32x4.gt
'f32x4.le'	⇒	f32x4.le
'f32x4.ge'	⇒	f32x4.ge
'f64x2.eq'	⇒	f64x2.eq
'f64x2.ne'	⇒	f64x2.ne
'f64x2.lt'	⇒	f64x2.lt
'f64x2.gt'	⇒	f64x2.gt
'f64x2.le'	⇒	f64x2.le
'f64x2.ge'	⇒	f64x2.ge
'v128.not'	⇒	v128.not
'v128.and'	⇒	v128.and
'v128.andnot'	⇒	v128.andnot
'v128.or'	⇒	v128.or
'v128.xor'	⇒	v128.xor
'v128.bitselect'	⇒	v128.bitselect
'v128.any_true'	⇒	v128.any_true
'i8x16.abs'	⇒	i8x16.abs
'i8x16.neg'	⇒	i8x16.neg
'i8x16.all_true'	⇒	i8x16.all_true
'i8x16.bitmask'	⇒	i8x16.bitmask
'i8x16.narrow_i16x8_s'	⇒	i8x16.narrow_i16x8_s
'i8x16.narrow_i16x8_u'	⇒	i8x16.narrow_i16x8_u
'i8x16.shl'	⇒	i8x16.shl
'i8x16.shr_s'	⇒	i8x16.shr_s
'i8x16.shr_u'	⇒	i8x16.shr_u
'i8x16.add'	⇒	i8x16.add
'i8x16.add_sat_s'	⇒	i8x16.add_sat_s
'i8x16.add_sat_u'	⇒	i8x16.add_sat_u
'i8x16.sub'	⇒	i8x16.sub
'i8x16.sub_sat_s'	⇒	i8x16.sub_sat_s
'i8x16.sub_sat_u'	⇒	i8x16.sub_sat_u
'i8x16.min_s'	⇒	i8x16.min_s
'i8x16.min_u'	⇒	i8x16.min_u
'i8x16.max_s'	⇒	i8x16.max_s
'i8x16.max_u'	⇒	i8x16.max_u
'i8x16.avgr_u'	⇒	i8x16.avgr_u
'i8x16.popcnt'	⇒	i8x16.popcnt

'i16x8.abs'	⇒	i16x8.abs
'i16x8.neg'	⇒	i16x8.neg
'i16x8.all_true'	⇒	i16x8.all_true
'i16x8.bitmask'	⇒	i16x8.bitmask
'i16x8.narrow_i32x4_s'	⇒	i16x8.narrow_i32x4_s
'i16x8.narrow_i32x4_u'	⇒	i16x8.narrow_i32x4_u
'i16x8.extend_low_i8x16_s'	⇒	i16x8.extend_low_i8x16_s
'i16x8.extend_high_i8x16_s'	⇒	i16x8.extend_high_i8x16_s
'i16x8.extend_low_i8x16_u'	⇒	i16x8.extend_low_i8x16_u
'i16x8.extend_high_i8x16_u'	⇒	i16x8.extend_high_i8x16_u
'i16x8.shl'	⇒	i16x8.shl
'i16x8.shr_s'	⇒	i16x8.shr_s
'i16x8.shr_u'	⇒	i16x8.shr_u
'i16x8.add'	⇒	i16x8.add
'i16x8.add_sat_s'	⇒	i16x8.add_sat_s
'i16x8.add_sat_u'	⇒	i16x8.add_sat_u
'i16x8.sub'	⇒	i16x8.sub
'i16x8.sub_sat_s'	⇒	i16x8.sub_sat_s
'i16x8.sub_sat_u'	⇒	i16x8.sub_sat_u
'i16x8.mul'	⇒	i16x8.mul
'i16x8.min_s'	⇒	i16x8.min_s
'i16x8.min_u'	⇒	i16x8.min_u
'i16x8.max_s'	⇒	i16x8.max_s
'i16x8.max_u'	⇒	i16x8.max_u
'i16x8.avgr_u'	⇒	i16x8.avgr_u
'i16x8.q15mulr_sat_s'	⇒	i16x8.q15mulr_sat_s
'i16x8.extmul_low_i8x16_s'	⇒	i16x8.extmul_low_i8x16_s
'i16x8.extmul_high_i8x16_s'	⇒	i16x8.extmul_high_i8x16_s
'i16x8.extmul_low_i8x16_u'	⇒	i16x8.extmul_low_i8x16_u
'i16x8.extmul_high_i8x16_u'	⇒	i16x8.extmul_high_i8x16_u
'i16x8.extadd_pairwise_i8x16_s'	⇒	i16x8.extadd_pairwise_i8x16_s
'i16x8.extadd_pairwise_i8x16_u'	⇒	i16x8.extadd_pairwise_i8x16_u
'i32x4.abs'	⇒	i32x4.abs
'i32x4.neg'	⇒	i32x4.neg
'i32x4.all_true'	⇒	i32x4.all_true
'i32x4.bitmask'	⇒	i32x4.bitmask
'i32x4.extadd_pairwise_i16x8_s'	⇒	i32x4.extadd_pairwise_i16x8_s
'i32x4.extadd_pairwise_i16x8_u'	⇒	i32x4.extadd_pairwise_i16x8_u
'i32x4.extend_low_i16x8_s'	⇒	i32x4.extend_low_i16x8_s
'i32x4.extend_high_i16x8_s'	⇒	i32x4.extend_high_i16x8_s
'i32x4.extend_low_i16x8_u'	⇒	i32x4.extend_low_i16x8_u
'i32x4.extend_high_i16x8_u'	⇒	i32x4.extend_high_i16x8_u
'i32x4.shl'	⇒	i32x4.shl
'i32x4.shr_s'	⇒	i32x4.shr_s
'i32x4.shr_u'	⇒	i32x4.shr_u
'i32x4.add'	⇒	i32x4.add
'i32x4.sub'	⇒	i32x4.sub
'i32x4.mul'	⇒	i32x4.mul
'i32x4.min_s'	⇒	i32x4.min_s
'i32x4.min_u'	⇒	i32x4.min_u
'i32x4.max_s'	⇒	i32x4.max_s
'i32x4.max_u'	⇒	i32x4.max_u
'i32x4.dot_i16x8_s'	⇒	i32x4.dot_i16x8_s
'i32x4.extmul_low_i16x8_s'	⇒	i32x4.extmul_low_i16x8_s
'i32x4.extmul_high_i16x8_s'	⇒	i32x4.extmul_high_i16x8_s
'i32x4.extmul_low_i16x8_u'	⇒	i32x4.extmul_low_i16x8_u
'i32x4.extmul_high_i16x8_u'	⇒	i32x4.extmul_high_i16x8_u

'i64x2.abs'	⇒	i64x2.abs
'i64x2.neg'	⇒	i64x2.neg
'i64x2.all_true'	⇒	i64x2.all_true
'i64x2.bitmask'	⇒	i64x2.bitmask
'i64x2.extend_low_i32x4_s'	⇒	i64x2.extend_low_i32x4_s
'i64x2.extend_high_i32x4_s'	⇒	i64x2.extend_high_i32x4_s
'i64x2.extend_low_i32x4_u'	⇒	i64x2.extend_low_i32x4_u
'i64x2.extend_high_i32x4_u'	⇒	i64x2.extend_high_i32x4_u
'i64x2.shl'	⇒	i64x2.shl
'i64x2.shr_s'	⇒	i64x2.shr_s
'i64x2.shr_u'	⇒	i64x2.shr_u
'i64x2.add'	⇒	i64x2.add
'i64x2.sub'	⇒	i64x2.sub
'i64x2.mul'	⇒	i64x2.mul
'i64x2.extmul_low_i32x4_s'	⇒	i64x2.extmul_low_i32x4_s
'i64x2.extmul_high_i32x4_s'	⇒	i64x2.extmul_high_i32x4_s
'i64x2.extmul_low_i32x4_u'	⇒	i64x2.extmul_low_i32x4_u
'i64x2.extmul_high_i32x4_u'	⇒	i64x2.extmul_high_i32x4_u
'f32x4.abs'	⇒	f32x4.abs
'f32x4.neg'	⇒	f32x4.neg
'f32x4.sqrt'	⇒	f32x4.sqrt
'f32x4.ceil'	⇒	f32x4.ceil
'f32x4.floor'	⇒	f32x4.floor
'f32x4.trunc'	⇒	f32x4.trunc
'f32x4.nearest'	⇒	f32x4.nearest
'f32x4.add'	⇒	f32x4.add
'f32x4.sub'	⇒	f32x4.sub
'f32x4.mul'	⇒	f32x4.mul
'f32x4.div'	⇒	f32x4.div
'f32x4.min'	⇒	f32x4.min
'f32x4.max'	⇒	f32x4.max
'f32x4.pmin'	⇒	f32x4.pmin
'f32x4.pmax'	⇒	f32x4.pmax
'f64x2.abs'	⇒	f64x2.abs
'f64x2.neg'	⇒	f64x2.neg
'f64x2.sqrt'	⇒	f64x2.sqrt
'f64x2.ceil'	⇒	f64x2.ceil
'f64x2.floor'	⇒	f64x2.floor
'f64x2.trunc'	⇒	f64x2.trunc
'f64x2.nearest'	⇒	f64x2.nearest
'f64x2.add'	⇒	f64x2.add
'f64x2.sub'	⇒	f64x2.sub
'f64x2.mul'	⇒	f64x2.mul
'f64x2.div'	⇒	f64x2.div
'f64x2.min'	⇒	f64x2.min
'f64x2.max'	⇒	f64x2.max
'f64x2.pmin'	⇒	f64x2.pmin
'f64x2.pmax'	⇒	f64x2.pmax

'i32x4.trunc_sat_f32x4_s'	⇒	i32x4.trunc_sat_f32x4_s
'i32x4.trunc_sat_f32x4_u'	⇒	i32x4.trunc_sat_f32x4_u
'i32x4.trunc_sat_f64x2_s_zero'	⇒	i32x4.trunc_sat_f64x2_s_zero
'i32x4.trunc_sat_f64x2_u_zero'	⇒	i32x4.trunc_sat_f64x2_u_zero
'f32x4.convert_i32x4_s'	⇒	f32x4.convert_i32x4_s
'f32x4.convert_i32x4_u'	⇒	f32x4.convert_i32x4_u
'f64x2.convert_low_i32x4_s'	⇒	f64x2.convert_low_i32x4_s
'f64x2.convert_low_i32x4_u'	⇒	f64x2.convert_low_i32x4_u
'f32x4.demote_f64x2_zero'	⇒	f32x4.demote_f64x2_zero
'f64x2.promote_low_f32x4'	⇒	f64x2.promote_low_f32x4
'i16x8.relaxed_swizzle'	⇒	i16x8.relaxed_swizzle
'i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_s'	⇒	i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_s
'i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_u'	⇒	i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_u
'i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_s_zero'	⇒	i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_s_zero
'i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_u_zero'	⇒	i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_u_zero
'f32x4.relaxed_madd'	⇒	f32x4.relaxed_madd
'f32x4.relaxed_nmadd'	⇒	f32x4.relaxed_nmadd
'f64x2.relaxed_madd'	⇒	f64x2.relaxed_madd
'f64x2.relaxed_nmadd'	⇒	f64x2.relaxed_nmadd
'i8x16.relaxed_laneselect'	⇒	i8x16.relaxed_laneselect
'i16x8.relaxed_laneselect'	⇒	i16x8.relaxed_laneselect
'i32x4.relaxed_laneselect'	⇒	i32x4.relaxed_laneselect
'i64x2.relaxed_laneselect'	⇒	i64x2.relaxed_laneselect
'f32x4.relaxed_min'	⇒	f32x4.relaxed_min
'f32x4.relaxed_max'	⇒	f32x4.relaxed_max
'f64x2.relaxed_min'	⇒	f64x2.relaxed_min
'f64x2.relaxed_max'	⇒	f64x2.relaxed_max
'i16x8.relaxed_q15mulr_s'	⇒	i16x8.relaxed_q15mulr_s
'i16x8.relaxed_dot_i8x16_i7x16_s'	⇒	i16x8.relaxed_dot_i8x16_i7x16_s
'i16x8.relaxed_dot_i8x16_i7x16_add_s'	⇒	i16x8.relaxed_dot_i8x16_i7x16_add_s

### 6.5.10 Folded Instructions

Instructions can be written as S-expressions by grouping them into *folded* form. In that notation, an instruction is wrapped in parentheses and optionally includes nested folded instructions to indicate its operands.

In the case of **block instructions**, the folded form omits the 'end' delimiter. For **if** instructions, both branches have to be wrapped into nested S-expressions, headed by the keywords 'then' and 'else'.

The set of all phrases defined by the following abbreviations recursively forms the auxiliary syntactic class **foldedinstr**. Such a folded instruction can appear anywhere a regular instruction can.

('plaininstr foldedinstr*')	≡	foldedinstr* plaininstr
('block' label blocktype instr*')	≡	'block' label blocktype instr* 'end'
('loop' label blocktype instr*')	≡	'loop' label blocktype instr* 'end'
('if' label blocktype foldedinstr* foldedinstr* 'if' label blocktype instr <sub>1</sub> 'else' (instr <sub>2</sub> )? 'end')	≡	('then' instr <sub>1</sub> 'else' instr <sub>2</sub> )? 'end'
('try_table' label blocktype catch* instr* 'end')	≡	'try_table' label blocktype catch* instr* 'end'

#### Note

For example, the instruction sequence

```
(local.get $x) (i32.const 2) i32.add (i32.const 3) i32.mul
```

can be folded into

```
(i32.mul (i32.add (local.get $x) (i32.const 2)) (i32.const 3))
```

Folded instructions are solely syntactic sugar, no additional syntactic or type-based checking is implied.

### 6.5.11 Expressions

Expressions are written as instruction sequences. No explicit ‘end’ keyword is included, since they only occur in bracketed positions.

$$\text{expr}_I ::= (\text{in}:\text{instr}_I)^* \Rightarrow \text{in}^* \text{end}$$

## 6.6 Modules

### 6.6.1 Indices

*Indices* can be given either in raw numeric form or as symbolic *identifiers* when bound by a respective construct. Such identifiers are looked up in the suitable space of the *identifier context*  $I$ .

$\text{typeid}_I$	$::=$	$x:\text{u32}$	$\Rightarrow$	$x$
		$ $	$v:\text{id}$	$\Rightarrow x \text{ (if } I.\text{types}[x] = v)$
$\text{funcid}_I$	$::=$	$x:\text{u32}$	$\Rightarrow$	$x$
		$ $	$v:\text{id}$	$\Rightarrow x \text{ (if } I.\text{funcs}[x] = v)$
$\text{tableid}_I$	$::=$	$x:\text{u32}$	$\Rightarrow$	$x$
		$ $	$v:\text{id}$	$\Rightarrow x \text{ (if } I.\text{tables}[x] = v)$
$\text{memid}_I$	$::=$	$x:\text{u32}$	$\Rightarrow$	$x$
		$ $	$v:\text{id}$	$\Rightarrow x \text{ (if } I.\text{mems}[x] = v)$
$\text{globalid}_I$	$::=$	$x:\text{u32}$	$\Rightarrow$	$x$
		$ $	$v:\text{id}$	$\Rightarrow x \text{ (if } I.\text{globals}[x] = v)$
$\text{tagid}_I$	$::=$	$x:\text{u32}$	$\Rightarrow$	$x$
		$ $	$v:\text{id}$	$\Rightarrow x \text{ (if } I.\text{tags}[x] = v)$
$\text{elemid}_I$	$::=$	$x:\text{u32}$	$\Rightarrow$	$x$
		$ $	$v:\text{id}$	$\Rightarrow x \text{ (if } I.\text{elem}[x] = v)$
$\text{dataid}_I$	$::=$	$x:\text{u32}$	$\Rightarrow$	$x$
		$ $	$v:\text{id}$	$\Rightarrow x \text{ (if } I.\text{data}[x] = v)$
$\text{localid}_I$	$::=$	$x:\text{u32}$	$\Rightarrow$	$x$
		$ $	$v:\text{id}$	$\Rightarrow x \text{ (if } I.\text{locals}[x] = v)$
$\text{labelid}_I$	$::=$	$l:\text{u32}$	$\Rightarrow$	$l$
		$ $	$v:\text{id}$	$\Rightarrow l \text{ (if } I.\text{labels}[l] = v)$
$\text{fieldid}_{I,x}$	$::=$	$i:\text{u32}$	$\Rightarrow$	$i$
		$ $	$v:\text{id}$	$\Rightarrow i \text{ (if } I.\text{fields}[x][i] = v)$

### 6.6.2 Type Uses

A *type use* is a reference to a function *type definition*. It may optionally be augmented by explicit inlined *parameter* and *result* declarations. That allows binding symbolic *identifiers* to name the *local indices* of parameters. If inline declarations are given, then their types must match the referenced *function type*.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{typeuse}_I &::= \text{'(' 'type' } x:\text{typeid}_I \text{'')} \Rightarrow x, I' \\ &\quad (\text{if } I.\text{typedefs}[x] = \text{sub final (func } [t_1^n] \rightarrow [t_2^*]) \wedge I' = \{\text{locals } (\epsilon)^n\}) \\ &| \text{'(' 'type' } x:\text{typeid}_I \text{'') } (t_1:\text{param})^* (t_2:\text{result})^* \Rightarrow x, I' \\ &\quad (\text{if } I.\text{typedefs}[x] = \text{sub final (func } [t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]) \wedge I' = \{\text{locals id(param)}^*\} \text{ well-formed}) \end{aligned}$$



**Note**

If inline declarations are given, their types must be *syntactically* equal to the types from the indexed definition; possible type [substitutions](#) from other definitions that might make them equal are not taken into account. This is to simplify syntactic pre-processing.

The synthesized attribute of a [typeuse](#) is a pair consisting of both the used [type index](#) and the local [identifier context](#) containing possible parameter identifiers. The following auxiliary function extracts optional identifiers from parameters:

$$\text{id}(\text{'(' 'param' id}^? \text{ ... ')'}) = \text{id}^?$$

**Note**

Both productions overlap for the case that the function type is  $\square \rightarrow \square$ . However, in that case, they also produce the same results, so that the choice is immaterial.

The [well-formedness](#) condition on  $I'$  ensures that the parameters do not contain duplicate identifiers.

**Abbreviations**

A [typeuse](#) may also be replaced entirely by inline [parameter](#) and [result](#) declarations. In that case, a [type index](#) is automatically inserted:

$$(t_1:\text{param})^* (t_2:\text{result})^* \equiv \text{'(' 'type' } x \text{' )' param}^* \text{ result}^*$$

where  $x$  is the smallest existing [type index](#) whose [recursive type](#) definition in the current module is of the form

$$\text{'(' 'rec' '(' 'type' '(' 'sub' 'final' '(' 'func' param}^* \text{ result}^* \text{' )' )' )' )' }$$

If no such index exists, then a new [recursive type](#) of the same form is inserted at the end of the module.

Abbreviations are expanded in the order they appear, such that previously inserted type definitions are reused by consecutive expansions.

**6.6.3 Imports**

The descriptors in imports can bind a symbolic function, table, memory, tag, or global [identifier](#).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{import}_I &::= \text{'(' 'import' mod:name nm:name d:importdesc}_I \text{' )'} \\ &\Rightarrow \{\text{module mod, name nm, desc d}\} \\ \text{importdesc}_I &::= \begin{array}{ll} \text{'(' 'func' id}^? x, I':\text{typeuse}_I \text{' )'} & \Rightarrow \text{func } x \\ | \text{'(' 'table' id}^? tt:\text{tabletype}_I \text{' )'} & \Rightarrow \text{table } tt \\ | \text{'(' 'memory' id}^? mt:\text{memtype}_I \text{' )'} & \Rightarrow \text{mem } mt \\ | \text{'(' 'global' id}^? gt:\text{globaltype}_I \text{' )'} & \Rightarrow \text{global } gt \\ | \text{'(' 'tag' id}^? tt:\text{tag} \text{' )'} & \Rightarrow \text{tag } tt \end{array} \end{aligned}$$

**Abbreviations**

As an abbreviation, imports may also be specified inline with [function](#), [table](#), [memory](#), [global](#), or [tag](#) definitions; see the respective sections.

**6.6.4 Functions**

Function definitions can bind a symbolic [function identifier](#), and local identifiers for its [parameters](#) and locals.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{func}_I &::= \text{'(' 'func' id}^? x, I':\text{typeuse}_I (\text{loc:local}_I)^* (\text{in:instr}_{I''})^* \text{' )'} \\ &\Rightarrow \{\text{type } x, \text{locals loc}^*, \text{body in}^* \text{ end}\} \\ &\quad (\text{if } I'' = I \oplus I' \oplus \{\text{locals id}(\text{local})^*\} \text{ well-formed}) \\ \text{local}_I &::= \text{'(' 'local' id}^? t:\text{valtype}_I \text{' )'} \Rightarrow \{\text{type } t\} \end{aligned}$$

The definition of the local **identifier context**  $I''$  uses the following auxiliary function to extract optional identifiers from locals:

$$\text{id}(\text{'(' 'local' id? ... ')'}) = \text{id?}$$

#### Note

The **well-formedness** condition on  $I''$  ensures that parameters and locals do not contain duplicate identifiers.

## Abbreviations

Multiple anonymous locals may be combined into a single declaration:

$$\text{'(' 'local' valtype* ')'} \equiv (\text{'(' 'local' valtype ')'})^*$$

Functions can be defined as **imports** or **exports** inline:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{'(' 'func' id? (' 'import' name_1 name_2 ') typeuse ')'} \equiv \\ &\quad \text{'(' 'import' name_1 name_2 (' 'func' id? typeuse ') ')'} \\ &\text{'(' 'func' id? (' 'export' name ') ... ')'} \equiv \\ &\quad \text{'(' 'export' name (' 'func' id' ') ') (' 'func' id' ... ')'} \\ &\quad (\text{if id?} \neq \epsilon \wedge \text{id' = id?} \vee \text{id?} = \epsilon \wedge \text{id' fresh}) \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

The latter abbreviation can be applied repeatedly, if “...” contains additional export clauses. Consequently, a function declaration can contain any number of exports, possibly followed by an import.

## 6.6.5 Tables

Table definitions can bind a symbolic **table identifier**.

$$\text{table}_I ::= \text{'(' 'table' id? tt:tabletype}_I \text{ e:expr}_I \text{ ')'} \Rightarrow \{\text{type tt, init e}\}$$

## Abbreviations

A table’s initialization **expression** can be omitted, in which case it defaults to **ref.null**:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{'(' 'table' id? tabletype ')'} \equiv \text{'(' 'table' id? tabletype (' ref.null ht ') ')'} \\ &\quad (\text{if tabletype = limits (' 'ref' 'null'? ht ')}) \end{aligned}$$

An **element segment** can be given inline with a table definition, in which case its offset is 0 and the **limits** of the **table type** are inferred from the length of the given segment:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{'(' 'table' id? addrtype? reftype (' 'elem' expr^n:list(elemexpr) ') ')'} \equiv \\ &\quad \text{'(' 'table' id' addrtype? n n reftype ')'} \\ &\quad \text{'(' 'elem' (' 'table' id' ') (' addrtype? .const '0' ') reftype list(elemexpr) ')'} \\ &\quad (\text{if id?} \neq \epsilon \wedge \text{id' = id?} \vee \text{id?} = \epsilon \wedge \text{id' fresh,} \\ &\quad \text{if addrtype?} \neq \epsilon \wedge \text{addrtype' = addrtype?} \vee \text{addrtype' =} \epsilon \wedge \text{addrtype' = 'i32'}) \\ &\text{'(' 'table' id? addrtype? reftype (' 'elem' x^n:list(funcidx) ') ')'} \equiv \\ &\quad \text{'(' 'table' id' addrtype? n n reftype ')'} \\ &\quad \text{'(' 'elem' (' 'table' id' ') (' addrtype? .const '0' ') reftype list((' 'ref.func' funcidx ') ')')} \\ &\quad (\text{if id?} \neq \epsilon \wedge \text{id' = id?} \vee \text{id?} = \epsilon \wedge \text{id' fresh,} \\ &\quad \text{if addrtype?} \neq \epsilon \wedge \text{addrtype' = addrtype?} \vee \text{addrtype' =} \epsilon \wedge \text{addrtype' = 'i32'}) \end{aligned}$$

Tables can be defined as [imports](#) or [exports](#) inline:

$$\begin{aligned} &(' \text{ 'table' } id^? (' \text{ 'import' } name_1 name_2 ') \text{ tabletype } ') \equiv \\ & \quad (' \text{ 'import' } name_1 name_2 (' \text{ 'table' } id^? \text{ tabletype } ') ') \\ &(' \text{ 'table' } id^? (' \text{ 'export' } name ') \dots ') \equiv \\ & \quad (' \text{ 'export' } name (' \text{ 'table' } id^? ') ') (' \text{ 'table' } id^? \dots ') \\ & \quad (\text{if } id^? \neq \epsilon \wedge id' = id^? \vee id^? = \epsilon \wedge id' \text{ fresh}) \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

The latter abbreviation can be applied repeatedly, if “...” contains additional export clauses. Consequently, a table declaration can contain any number of exports, possibly followed by an import.

## 6.6.6 Memories

Memory definitions can bind a symbolic [memory identifier](#).

$$mem_I ::= (' \text{ 'memory' } id^? mt:memtype_I ') \Rightarrow \{type\ mt\}$$

### Abbreviations

A [data segment](#) can be given inline with a memory definition, in which case its offset is 0 and the [limits](#) of the [memory type](#) are inferred from the length of the data, rounded up to [page size](#):

$$\begin{aligned} &(' \text{ 'memory' } id^? addrtype^? (' \text{ 'data' } b^n:datastring ') ') \equiv \\ & \quad (' \text{ 'memory' } id^? addrtype^? m m ') \\ & \quad (' \text{ 'data' } (' \text{ 'memory' } id^? ') (' \text{ 'addrtype' } \text{'.const' } '0' ') datastring ') \\ & \quad (\text{if } id^? \neq \epsilon \wedge id' = id^? \vee id^? = \epsilon \wedge id' \text{ fresh,} \\ & \quad \text{if } addrtype^? \neq \epsilon \wedge addrtype' = addrtype^? \vee addrtype^? = \epsilon \wedge addrtype' = \text{'i32'}, \\ & \quad m = \text{ceil}(n/64 \text{ Ki})) \end{aligned}$$

Memories can be defined as [imports](#) or [exports](#) inline:

$$\begin{aligned} &(' \text{ 'memory' } id^? (' \text{ 'import' } name_1 name_2 ') memtype ') \equiv \\ & \quad (' \text{ 'import' } name_1 name_2 (' \text{ 'memory' } id^? memtype ') ') \\ &(' \text{ 'memory' } id^? (' \text{ 'export' } name ') \dots ') \equiv \\ & \quad (' \text{ 'export' } name (' \text{ 'memory' } id^? ') ') (' \text{ 'memory' } id^? \dots ') \\ & \quad (\text{if } id^? \neq \epsilon \wedge id' = id^? \vee id^? = \epsilon \wedge id' \text{ fresh}) \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

The latter abbreviation can be applied repeatedly, if “...” contains additional export clauses. Consequently, a memory declaration can contain any number of exports, possibly followed by an import.

## 6.6.7 Globals

Global definitions can bind a symbolic [global identifier](#).

$$global_I ::= (' \text{ 'global' } id^? gt:globaltype_I e:expr_I ') \Rightarrow \{type\ gt, init\ e\}$$

## Abbreviations

Globals can be defined as [imports](#) or [exports](#) inline:

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(' \text{global} \text{ id}^? (' \text{import} \text{ name}_1 \text{ name}_2 ') \text{ globaltype} ') \equiv \\
 &(' \text{import} \text{ name}_1 \text{ name}_2 (' \text{global} \text{ id}^? \text{ globaltype} ') ') \\
 &(' \text{global} \text{ id}^? (' \text{export} \text{ name} ') \dots ') \equiv \\
 &(' \text{export} \text{ name} (' \text{global} \text{ id}^? ') ') (' \text{global} \text{ id}^? \dots ') \\
 &(\text{if } \text{id}^? \neq \epsilon \wedge \text{id}^? = \text{id}^? \vee \text{id}^? = \epsilon \wedge \text{id}^? \text{ fresh})
 \end{aligned}$$

### Note

The latter abbreviation can be applied repeatedly, if “...” contains additional export clauses. Consequently, a global declaration can contain any number of exports, possibly followed by an import.

## 6.6.8 Tags

An tag definition can bind a symbolic [tag identifier](#).

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{tag}_I &::= (' \text{tag} \text{ id}^? x, I':\text{typeuse}_I ') \\
 &\Rightarrow \{ \text{type } x \}
 \end{aligned}$$

## Abbreviations

Tags can be defined as [imports](#) or [exports](#) inline:

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(' \text{tag} \text{ id}^? (' \text{import} \text{ name}_1 \text{ name}_2 ') \text{ typeuse} ') \equiv \\
 &(' \text{import} \text{ name}_1 \text{ name}_2 (' \text{tag} \text{ id}^? \text{ typeuse} ') ') \\
 &(' \text{tag} \text{ id}^? (' \text{export} \text{ name} ') \dots ') \equiv \\
 &(' \text{export} \text{ name} (' \text{tag} \text{ id}^? ') ') (' \text{tag} \text{ id}^? \dots ') \\
 &(\text{if } \text{id}^? \neq \epsilon \wedge \text{id}^? = \text{id}^? \vee \text{id}^? = \epsilon \wedge \text{id}^? \text{ fresh})
 \end{aligned}$$

### Note

The latter abbreviation can be applied repeatedly, if “...” contains additional export clauses. Consequently, a memory declaration can contain any number of exports, possibly followed by an import.

## 6.6.9 Exports

The syntax for exports mirrors their [abstract syntax](#) directly.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{export}_I &::= (' \text{export} \text{ nm}:\text{name} \text{ d}:\text{exportdesc}_I ') &\Rightarrow \{ \text{name } \text{nm}, \text{desc } \text{d} \} \\
 \text{exportdesc}_I &::= (' \text{func} \text{ x}:\text{funcidx}_I ') &\Rightarrow \text{func } x \\
 &| (' \text{table} \text{ x}:\text{tableidx}_I ') &\Rightarrow \text{table } x \\
 &| (' \text{memory} \text{ x}:\text{memidx}_I ') &\Rightarrow \text{mem } x \\
 &| (' \text{global} \text{ x}:\text{globalidx}_I ') &\Rightarrow \text{global } x \\
 &| (' \text{tag} \text{ x}:\text{tagidx}_I ') &\Rightarrow \text{tag } x
 \end{aligned}$$

## Abbreviations

As an abbreviation, exports may also be specified inline with [function](#), [table](#), [memory](#), [global](#), or [tag](#) definitions; see the respective sections.

### 6.6.10 Start Function

A [start function](#) is defined in terms of its index.

$$\text{start}_I ::= \text{'(' 'start' } x:\text{funcidx}_I \text{'')} \Rightarrow \{\text{func } x\}$$

#### Note

At most one start function may occur in a module, which is ensured by a suitable side condition on the [module](#) grammar.

### 6.6.11 Element Segments

Element segments allow for an optional [table index](#) to identify the table to initialize.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{elem}_I & ::= \text{'(' 'elem' id? (et,y*):\text{elemlist}_I \text{'')} \\ & \quad \Rightarrow \{\text{type et, init y*, mode passive}\} \\ & \quad | \text{'(' 'elem' id? } x:\text{tableuse}_I \text{'(' 'offset' } e:\text{expr}_I \text{'')} (et,y*):\text{elemlist}_I \text{'')} \\ & \quad \quad \Rightarrow \{\text{type et, init y*, mode active \{table x, offset e\}\}} \\ & \quad \text{'(' 'elem' id? 'declare' (et,y*):\text{elemlist}_I \text{'')} \\ & \quad \quad \Rightarrow \{\text{type et, init y*, mode declare}\} \\ \text{elemlist}_I & ::= t:\text{reftype}_I \text{ y*:\text{list}(\text{elemexpr}_I) \Rightarrow (\text{type t, init y*})} \\ \text{elemexpr}_I & ::= \text{'(' 'item' } e:\text{expr}_I \text{'')} \Rightarrow e \\ \text{tableuse}_I & ::= \text{'(' 'table' } x:\text{tableidx}_I \text{'')} \Rightarrow x \end{aligned}$$

#### Abbreviations

As an abbreviation, a single instruction may occur in place of the offset of an active element segment or as an element expression:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{'(' instr '')} & \equiv \text{'(' 'offset' instr '')} \\ \text{'(' instr '')} & \equiv \text{'(' 'item' instr '')} \end{aligned}$$

Also, the element list may be written as just a sequence of [function indices](#):

$$\text{'func' list(funcidx}_I) \equiv \text{'(ref' 'func' list(' 'ref.func' funcidx}_I \text{'))}$$

A table use can be omitted, defaulting to 0. Furthermore, for backwards compatibility with earlier versions of WebAssembly, if the table use is omitted, the 'func' keyword can be omitted as well.

$$\begin{aligned} \epsilon & \equiv \text{'(' 'table' '0' ')} \\ \text{'(' 'elem' id? (' 'offset' expr}_I \text{'')} \text{list(funcidx}_I \text{'')} & \equiv \text{'(' 'elem' id? (' 'table' '0' ')} \text{'(' 'offset' expr}_I \text{'')} \end{aligned}$$

As another abbreviation, element segments may also be specified inline with [table](#) definitions; see the respective section.

### 6.6.12 Data Segments

Data segments allow for an optional [memory index](#) to identify the memory to initialize. The data is written as a [string](#), which may be split up into a possibly empty sequence of individual string literals.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{data}_I & ::= \text{'(' 'data' id? b*:\text{datastring} \text{'')} \\ & \quad \Rightarrow \{\text{init b*, mode passive}\} \\ & \quad | \text{'(' 'data' id? } x:\text{memuse}_I \text{'(' 'offset' } e:\text{expr}_I \text{'')} b*:\text{datastring} \text{'')} \\ & \quad \quad \Rightarrow \{\text{init b*, mode active \{memory x', offset e\}\}} \\ \text{datastring} & ::= (b*:\text{string})^* \Rightarrow \bigoplus((b^*)^*) \\ \text{memuse}_I & ::= \text{'(' 'memory' } x:\text{memidx}_I \text{'')} \Rightarrow x \end{aligned}$$

**Note**

In the current version of WebAssembly, the only valid memory index is 0 or a symbolic [memory identifier](#) resolving to the same value.

**Abbreviations**

As an abbreviation, a single instruction may occur in place of the offset of an active data segment:

$$(' \text{instr} ') \equiv (' \text{'offset' instr} ')$$

Also, a memory use can be omitted, defaulting to 0.

$$\epsilon \equiv (' \text{'memory' '0'} ')$$

As another abbreviation, data segments may also be specified inline with [memory](#) definitions; see the respective section.

**6.6.13 Modules**

A module consists of a sequence of fields that can occur in any order. All definitions and their respective bound [identifiers](#) scope over the entire module, including the text preceding them.

A module may optionally bind an [identifier](#) that names the module. The name serves a documentary role only.

**Note**

Tools may include the module name in the [name section](#) of the [binary format](#).

```

module      ::= (' 'module' id? (m:modulefieldI)* ' ') ⇒ ⊕ m*
              (if I = ⊕ idc(modulefield)* well-formed)
modulefieldI ::= ty*:retypeI ⇒ {types ty*}
              | im:importI ⇒ {imports im}
              | fn:funcI ⇒ {funcs fn}
              | ta:tableI ⇒ {tables ta}
              | me:memI ⇒ {mems me}
              | gl:globalI ⇒ {globals gl}
              | tg:tagI ⇒ {tags tg}
              | el:elemI ⇒ {elems el}
              | da:dataI ⇒ {datas da}
              | st:startI ⇒ {start st}
              | ex:exportI ⇒ {exports ex}

```

The following restrictions are imposed on the composition of [modules](#):  $m_1 \oplus m_2$  is defined if and only if

- $m_1.\text{start} = \epsilon \vee m_2.\text{start} = \epsilon$
- $m_1.\text{funcs} = m_1.\text{tables} = m_1.\text{mems} = m_1.\text{globals} = m_1.\text{tags} = \epsilon \vee m_2.\text{imports} = \epsilon$

**Note**

The first condition ensures that there is at most one start function. The second condition enforces that all [imports](#) must occur before any regular definition of a [function](#), [table](#), [memory](#), [global](#), or [tag](#), thereby maintaining the ordering of the respective [index spaces](#).

The [well-formedness](#) condition on  $I$  in the grammar for [module](#) ensures that no namespace contains duplicate identifiers.

The definition of the initial **identifier context**  $I$  uses the following auxiliary definition which maps each relevant definition to a singular context with one (possibly empty) identifier:

<code>idc('(' 'rec' typedef* ')')</code>	$= \bigoplus \text{idc}(\text{typedef})^*$
<code>idc('(' 'type' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> subtype ')')</code>	$= \{\text{types } (v^?), \text{fields idf}(\text{subtype}), \text{typedefs } st\}$
<code>idc('(' 'func' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ')')</code>	$= \{\text{funcs } (v^?)\}$
<code>idc('(' 'table' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ')')</code>	$= \{\text{tables } (v^?)\}$
<code>idc('(' 'memory' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ')')</code>	$= \{\text{mems } (v^?)\}$
<code>idc('(' 'global' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ')')</code>	$= \{\text{globals } (v^?)\}$
<code>idc('(' 'tag' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ')')</code>	$= \{\text{tags } (v^?)\}$
<code>idc('(' 'elem' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ')')</code>	$= \{\text{elem } (v^?)\}$
<code>idc('(' 'data' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ')')</code>	$= \{\text{data } (v^?)\}$
<code>idc('(' 'import' ... (' 'func' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ') ')')</code>	$= \{\text{funcs } (v^?)\}$
<code>idc('(' 'import' ... (' 'table' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ') ')')</code>	$= \{\text{tables } (v^?)\}$
<code>idc('(' 'import' ... (' 'memory' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ') ')')</code>	$= \{\text{mems } (v^?)\}$
<code>idc('(' 'import' ... (' 'global' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ') ')')</code>	$= \{\text{globals } (v^?)\}$
<code>idc('(' ... ')')</code>	$= \{\}$
<code>idf('(' 'sub' ... comptype ')')</code>	$= \text{idf}(\text{comptype})$
<code>idf('(' 'struct' <math>T\text{field}^*</math> ')')</code>	$= \bigoplus \text{idf}(\text{field})^*$
<code>idf('(' 'array' ... ')')</code>	$= \epsilon$
<code>idf('(' 'func' ... ')')</code>	$= \epsilon$
<code>idf('(' 'field' <math>v^?:\text{id}^?</math> ... ')')</code>	$= v^?$

## Abbreviations

In a source file, the toplevel (module ...) surrounding the module body may be omitted.

$$\text{modulefield}^* \equiv ('(' \text{module} \text{ modulefield}^* ')')$$





## 7.1 Embedding

A WebAssembly implementation will typically be *embedded* into a *host* environment. An *embedder* implements the connection between such a host environment and the WebAssembly semantics as defined in the main body of this specification. An embedder is expected to interact with the semantics in well-defined ways.

This section defines a suitable interface to the WebAssembly semantics in the form of entry points through which an embedder can access it. The interface is intended to be complete, in the sense that an embedder does not need to reference other functional parts of the WebAssembly specification directly.

### Note

On the other hand, an embedder does not need to provide the host environment with access to all functionality defined in this interface. For example, an implementation may not support [parsing](#) of the [text format](#).

### 7.1.1 Types

In the description of the embedder interface, syntactic classes from the [abstract syntax](#) and the [runtime's abstract machine](#) are used as names for variables that range over the possible objects from that class. Hence, these syntactic classes can also be interpreted as types.

For numeric parameters, notation like  $i : u64$  is used to specify a symbolic name in addition to the respective value range.

### 7.1.2 Booleans

Interface operation that are predicates return Boolean values:

$$bool ::= false \mid true$$

### 7.1.3 Exceptions and Errors

Invoking an exported function may throw or propagate exceptions, expressed by an auxiliary syntactic class:

$$exception ::= exception \textit{exnaddr}$$

The exception address *exnaddr* identifies the exception thrown.

Failure of an interface operation is also indicated by an auxiliary syntactic class:

$$error ::= error$$

In addition to the error conditions specified explicitly in this section, such as invalid arguments or **exceptions** and **traps** resulting from **execution**, implementations may also return errors when specific **implementation limitations** are reached.

#### Note

Errors are abstract and unspecific with this definition. Implementations can refine it to carry suitable classifications and diagnostic messages.

### 7.1.4 Pre- and Post-Conditions

Some operations state *pre-conditions* about their arguments or *post-conditions* about their results. It is the embedder's responsibility to meet the pre-conditions. If it does, the post conditions are guaranteed by the semantics.

In addition to pre- and post-conditions explicitly stated with each operation, the specification adopts the following conventions for **runtime objects** (*store*, *moduleinst*, *addresses*):

- Every runtime object passed as a parameter must be **valid** per an implicit pre-condition.
- Every runtime object returned as a result is **valid** per an implicit post-condition.

#### Note

As long as an embedder treats runtime objects as abstract and only creates and manipulates them through the interface defined here, all implicit pre-conditions are automatically met.

### 7.1.5 Store

`store_init() : store`

1. Return the empty **store**.

$$\text{store\_init()} = \{\}$$

### 7.1.6 Modules

`module_decode(byte*) : module | error`

1. If there exists a derivation for the **byte** sequence *byte\** as a **module** according to the **binary grammar** for **modules**, yielding a **module** *m*, then return *m*.
2. Else, return **error**.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{module\_decode}(b^*) &= m && (\text{if } \text{module} \xRightarrow{*} m:b^*) \\ \text{module\_decode}(b^*) &= \text{error} && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

`module_parse(char*) : module | error`

1. If there exists a derivation for the **source** *char\** as a **module** according to the **text grammar** for **modules**, yielding a **module** *m*, then return *m*.
2. Else, return **error**.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{module\_parse}(c^*) &= m && (\text{if } \text{module} \xRightarrow{*} m:c^*) \\ \text{module\_parse}(c^*) &= \text{error} && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{module\_validate}(\text{module}) : \text{error}^?$

1. If  $\text{module}$  is valid, then return nothing.
2. Else, return  $\text{error}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{module\_validate}(m) &= \epsilon && (\text{if } \vdash m : \text{externtype}^* \rightarrow \text{externtype}'^*) \\ \text{module\_validate}(m) &= \text{error} && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{module\_instantiate}(\text{store}, \text{module}, \text{externaddr}^*) : (\text{store}, \text{moduleinst} \mid \text{exception} \mid \text{error})$

1. Try instantiating  $\text{module}$  in  $\text{store}$  with external addresses  $\text{externaddr}^*$  as imports:
  - a. If it succeeds with a module instance  $\text{moduleinst}$ , then let  $\text{result}$  be  $\text{moduleinst}$ .
  - b. Else, let  $\text{result}$  be  $\text{error}$ .
2. Return the new store paired with  $\text{result}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{module\_instantiate}(S, m, \text{ev}^*) &= (S', F.\text{module}) && (\text{if } \text{instantiate}(S, m, \text{ev}^*) \hookrightarrow^* S'; F; \epsilon) \\ \text{module\_instantiate}(S, m, \text{ev}^*) &= (S', \text{error}) && (\text{otherwise, if } \text{instantiate}(S, m, \text{ev}^*) \hookrightarrow^* S'; F; \text{result}) \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

The store may be modified even in case of an error.

$\text{module\_imports}(\text{module}) : (\text{name}, \text{name}, \text{externtype})^*$

1. Pre-condition:  $\text{module}$  is valid with the external import types  $\text{externtype}^*$  and external export types  $\text{externtype}'^*$ .
2. Let  $\text{import}^*$  be the imports  $\text{module}.\text{imports}$ .
3. Assert: the length of  $\text{import}^*$  equals the length of  $\text{externtype}^*$ .
4. For each  $\text{import}_i$  in  $\text{import}^*$  and corresponding  $\text{externtype}_i$  in  $\text{externtype}^*$ , do:
  - a. Let  $\text{result}_i$  be the triple  $(\text{import}_i.\text{module}, \text{import}_i.\text{name}, \text{externtype}_i)$ .
5. Return the concatenation of all  $\text{result}_i$ , in index order.
6. Post-condition: each  $\text{externtype}_i$  is valid under the empty context.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{module\_imports}(m) &= (im.\text{module}, im.\text{name}, \text{externtype})^* \\ &\quad (\text{if } im^* = m.\text{imports} \wedge \vdash m : \text{externtype}^* \rightarrow \text{externtype}'^*) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{module\_exports}(\text{module}) : (\text{name}, \text{externtype})^*$

1. Pre-condition:  $\text{module}$  is valid with the external import types  $\text{externtype}^*$  and external export types  $\text{externtype}'^*$ .
2. Let  $\text{export}^*$  be the exports  $\text{module}.\text{exports}$ .
3. Assert: the length of  $\text{export}^*$  equals the length of  $\text{externtype}'^*$ .
4. For each  $\text{export}_i$  in  $\text{export}^*$  and corresponding  $\text{externtype}'_i$  in  $\text{externtype}'^*$ , do:
  - a. Let  $\text{result}_i$  be the pair  $(\text{export}_i.\text{name}, \text{externtype}'_i)$ .
5. Return the concatenation of all  $\text{result}_i$ , in index order.
6. Post-condition: each  $\text{externtype}'_i$  is valid under the empty context.

$$\text{module\_exports}(m) = (ex.\text{name}, \text{externtype}')^* \\ (\text{if } ex^* = m.\text{exports} \wedge \vdash m : \text{externtype}^* \rightarrow \text{externtype}'^*)$$

### 7.1.7 Module Instances

$\text{instance\_export}(\text{moduleinst}, \text{name}) : \text{externaddr} \mid \text{error}$

1. Assert: due to **validity** of the module instance  $\text{moduleinst}$ , all its **export names** are different.
2. If there exists an  $\text{exportinst}_i$  in  $\text{moduleinst}.\text{exports}$  such that  $\text{name } \text{exportinst}_i.\text{name}$  equals  $\text{name}$ , then:
  - a. Return the **external address**  $\text{exportinst}_i.\text{addr}$ .
3. Else, return **error**.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{instance\_export}(m, \text{name}) &= m.\text{exports}[i].\text{addr} && (\text{if } m.\text{exports}[i].\text{name} = \text{name}) \\ \text{instance\_export}(m, \text{name}) &= \text{error} && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

### 7.1.8 Functions

$\text{func\_alloc}(\text{store}, \text{func\textit{type}}, \text{hostfunc}) : (\text{store}, \text{funcaddr})$

1. Pre-condition: the  $\text{func\textit{type}}$  is **valid** under the empty context.
2. Let  $\text{funcaddr}$  be the result of **allocating a host function** in  $\text{store}$  with **function type**  $\text{func\textit{type}}$ , **host function code**  $\text{hostfunc}$  and an empty **module instance**.
3. Return the new store paired with  $\text{funcaddr}$ .

$$\text{func\_alloc}(S, ft, \text{code}) = (S', a) \quad \begin{aligned} &(\text{if } dt = (\text{rec } (\text{func } ft)).0 \\ &\wedge \text{allocfunc}(S, dt, \text{code}, \{\}) = S', a) \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

This operation assumes that  $\text{hostfunc}$  satisfies the **pre- and post-conditions** required for a function instance with type  $\text{func\textit{type}}$ .

Regular (non-host) function instances can only be created indirectly through **module instantiation**.

$\text{func\_type}(\text{store}, \text{funcaddr}) : \text{func\textit{type}}$

1. Let  $\text{func\textit{type}}$  be the **function type**  $S.\text{funcs}[a].\text{type}$ .
2. Return  $\text{func\textit{type}}$ .
3. Post-condition: the returned **function type** is **valid**.

$$\text{func\_type}(S, a) = S.\text{funcs}[a].\text{type}$$

$\text{func\_invoke}(\text{store}, \text{funcaddr}, \text{val}^*) : (\text{store}, \text{val}^* \mid \text{exception} \mid \text{error})$

1. Try **invoking the function**  $\text{funcaddr}$  in  $\text{store}$  with values  $\text{val}^*$  as arguments:
  - a. If it succeeds with values  $\text{val}'^*$  as results, then let  $\text{result}$  be  $\text{val}'^*$ .
  - b. Else if the outcome is an exception with a thrown **exception ref.exn**  $\text{exnaddr}$  as the result, then let  $\text{result}$  be **exception**  $\text{exnaddr}$
  - c. Else it has trapped, hence let  $\text{result}$  be **error**.

2. Return the new store paired with *result*.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{func\_invoke}(S, a, v^*) &= (S', v'^*) && (\text{if } \text{invoke}(S, a, v^*) \hookrightarrow *S'; F; v'^*) \\
 \text{func\_invoke}(S, a, v^*) &= (S', \text{exception } a') && (\text{if } \text{invoke}(S, a, v^*) \hookrightarrow *S'; F; (\text{ref.exn } a') \text{ throw\_ref}) \\
 \text{func\_invoke}(S, a, v^*) &= (S', \text{error}) && (\text{if } \text{invoke}(S, a, v^*) \hookrightarrow *S'; F; \text{trap})
 \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

The store may be modified even in case of an error.

## 7.1.9 Tables

$\text{table\_alloc}(\text{store}, \text{tabletype}, \text{ref}) : (\text{store}, \text{tableaddr})$

1. Pre-condition: the *tabletype* is valid under the empty context.
2. Let *tableaddr* be the result of allocating a table in *store* with table type *tabletype* and initialization value *ref*.
3. Return the new store paired with *tableaddr*.

$$\text{table\_alloc}(S, tt, r) = (S', a) \quad (\text{if } \text{alloctable}(S, tt, r) = S', a)$$

$\text{table\_type}(\text{store}, \text{tableaddr}) : \text{tabletype}$

1. Return *S.tables[a].type*.
2. Post-condition: the returned table type is valid under the empty context.

$$\text{table\_type}(S, a) = S.\text{tables}[a].\text{type}$$

$\text{table\_read}(\text{store}, \text{tableaddr}, i : u64) : \text{ref} \mid \text{error}$

1. Let *ti* be the table instance *store.tables[tableaddr]*.
2. If *i* is larger than or equal to the length of *ti.elem*, then return *error*.
3. Else, return the reference value *ti.elem[i]*.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{table\_read}(S, a, i) &= r && (\text{if } S.\text{tables}[a].\text{elem}[i] = r) \\
 \text{table\_read}(S, a, i) &= \text{error} && (\text{otherwise})
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{table\_write}(\text{store}, \text{tableaddr}, i : u64, \text{ref}) : \text{store} \mid \text{error}$

1. Let *ti* be the table instance *store.tables[tableaddr]*.
2. If *i* is larger than or equal to the length of *ti.elem*, then return *error*.
3. Replace *ti.elem[i]* with the reference value *ref*.
4. Return the updated store.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{table\_write}(S, a, i, r) &= S' && (\text{if } S' = S \text{ with } \text{tables}[a].\text{elem}[i] = r) \\
 \text{table\_write}(S, a, i, r) &= \text{error} && (\text{otherwise})
 \end{aligned}$$

$\text{table\_size}(\text{store}, \text{tableaddr}) : u64$

1. Return the length of *store.tables[tableaddr].elem*.

$$\text{table\_size}(S, a) = n \quad (\text{if } |S.\text{tables}[a].\text{elem}| = n)$$

$\text{table\_grow}(\text{store}, \text{tableaddr}, n : u64, \text{ref}) : \text{store} \mid \text{error}$

1. Try growing the table instance  $\text{store.tables}[\text{tableaddr}]$  by  $n$  elements with initialization value  $\text{ref}$ :
  - a. If it succeeds, return the updated store.
  - b. Else, return **error**.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{table\_grow}(S, a, n, r) &= S' && (\text{if } S' = S \text{ with } \text{tables}[a] = \text{growtable}(S.\text{tables}[a], n, r)) \\ \text{table\_grow}(S, a, n, r) &= \text{error} && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

## 7.1.10 Memories

$\text{mem\_alloc}(\text{store}, \text{memtype}) : (\text{store}, \text{memaddr})$

1. Pre-condition: the *memtype* is valid under the empty context.
2. Let *memaddr* be the result of allocating a memory in *store* with memory type *memtype*.
3. Return the new store paired with *memaddr*.

$$\text{mem\_alloc}(S, mt) = (S', a) \quad (\text{if } \text{allocmem}(S, mt) = S', a)$$

$\text{mem\_type}(\text{store}, \text{memaddr}) : \text{memtype}$

1. Return  $S.\text{mems}[a].\text{type}$ .
2. Post-condition: the returned memory type is valid under the empty context.

$$\text{mem\_type}(S, a) = S.\text{mems}[a].\text{type}$$

$\text{mem\_read}(\text{store}, \text{memaddr}, i : u64) : \text{byte} \mid \text{error}$

1. Let *mi* be the memory instance  $\text{store.mems}[\text{memaddr}]$ .
2. If *i* is larger than or equal to the length of *mi.bytes*, then return **error**.
3. Else, return the byte  $\text{mi.bytes}[i]$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mem\_read}(S, a, i) &= b && (\text{if } S.\text{mems}[a].\text{bytes}[i] = b) \\ \text{mem\_read}(S, a, i) &= \text{error} && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{mem\_write}(\text{store}, \text{memaddr}, i : u64, \text{byte}) : \text{store} \mid \text{error}$

1. Let *mi* be the memory instance  $\text{store.mems}[\text{memaddr}]$ .
2. If *i* is larger than or equal to the length of *mi.bytes*, then return **error**.
3. Replace  $\text{mi.bytes}[i]$  with *byte*.
4. Return the updated store.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mem\_write}(S, a, i, b) &= S' && (\text{if } S' = S \text{ with } \text{mems}[a].\text{bytes}[i] = b) \\ \text{mem\_write}(S, a, i, b) &= \text{error} && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{mem\_size}(\text{store}, \text{memaddr}) : u64$

1. Return the length of  $\text{store.mems}[\text{memaddr}].\text{bytes}$  divided by the page size.

$$\text{mem\_size}(S, a) = n \quad (\text{if } |S.\text{mems}[a].\text{bytes}| = n \cdot 64 \text{ Ki})$$

$\text{mem\_grow}(\text{store}, \text{memaddr}, n : u64) : \text{store} \mid \text{error}$

1. Try growing the memory instance  $\text{store.mems}[\text{memaddr}]$  by  $n$  pages:
  - a. If it succeeds, return the updated store.
  - b. Else, return  $\text{error}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mem\_grow}(S, a, n) &= S' && (\text{if } S' = S \text{ with } \text{mems}[a] = \text{growmem}(S.\text{mems}[a], n)) \\ \text{mem\_grow}(S, a, n) &= \text{error} && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

### 7.1.11 Tags

$\text{tag\_alloc}(\text{store}, \text{tagtype}) : (\text{store}, \text{tagaddr})$

1. Pre-condition:  $\text{tagtype}$  is valid.
2. Let  $\text{tagaddr}$  be the result of allocating a tag in  $\text{store}$  with tag type  $\text{tagtype}$ .
3. Return the new store paired with  $\text{tagaddr}$ .

$$\text{tag\_alloc}(S, tt) = (S', a) \quad (\text{if } \text{alloc\_tag}(S, tt) = S', a)$$

$\text{tag\_type}(\text{store}, \text{tagaddr}) : \text{tagtype}$

1. Return  $S.\text{tags}[a].\text{type}$ .
2. Post-condition: the returned tag type is valid.

$$\text{tag\_type}(S, a) = S.\text{tags}[a].\text{type}$$

### 7.1.12 Exceptions

$\text{exn\_alloc}(\text{store}, \text{tagaddr}, \text{val}^*) : (\text{store}, \text{exnaddr})$

1. Pre-condition:  $\text{tagaddr}$  is an allocated tag address.
2. Let  $\text{exnaddr}$  be the result of allocating an exception instance in  $\text{store}$  with tag address  $\text{tagaddr}$  and initialization values  $\text{val}^*$ .
3. Return the new store paired with  $\text{exnaddr}$ .

$$\text{exn\_alloc}(S, \text{tagaddr}, \text{val}^*) = (S \oplus \{\text{exns } \text{exninst}\}, |S.\text{exns}|) \quad (\text{if } \text{exninst} = \{\text{tag } \text{tagaddr}, \text{fields } \text{val}^*\})$$

$\text{exn\_tag}(\text{store}, \text{exnaddr}) : \text{tagaddr}$

1. Let  $\text{exninst}$  be the exception instance  $\text{store.exns}[\text{exnaddr}]$ .
2. Return the tag address  $\text{exninst.tag}$ .

$$\text{exn\_tag}(S, a) = \text{exninst.tag} \quad (\text{if } \text{exninst} = S.\text{exns}[a])$$

$\text{exn\_read}(\text{store}, \text{exnaddr}) : \text{val}^*$

1. Let  $\text{exninst}$  be the exception instance  $\text{store.exns}[\text{exnaddr}]$ .
2. Return the values  $\text{exninst.fields}$ .

$$\text{exn\_read}(S, a) = \text{exninst.fields} \quad (\text{if } \text{exninst} = S.\text{exns}[a])$$

### 7.1.13 Globals

$\text{global\_alloc}(\text{store}, \text{globaltype}, \text{val}) : (\text{store}, \text{globaladdr})$

1. Pre-condition: the *globaltype* is valid under the empty context.
2. Let *globaladdr* be the result of allocating a global in *store* with global type *globaltype* and initialization value *val*.
3. Return the new store paired with *globaladdr*.

$$\text{global\_alloc}(S, gt, v) = (S', a) \quad (\text{if } \text{allocglobal}(S, gt, v) = S', a)$$

$\text{global\_type}(\text{store}, \text{globaladdr}) : \text{globaltype}$

1. Return  $S.\text{globals}[a].\text{type}$ .
2. Post-condition: the returned global type is valid under the empty context.

$$\text{global\_type}(S, a) = S.\text{globals}[a].\text{type}$$

$\text{global\_read}(\text{store}, \text{globaladdr}) : \text{val}$

1. Let *gi* be the global instance  $\text{store.globals}[\text{globaladdr}]$ .
2. Return the value *gi.value*.

$$\text{global\_read}(S, a) = v \quad (\text{if } S.\text{globals}[a].\text{value} = v)$$

$\text{global\_write}(\text{store}, \text{globaladdr}, \text{val}) : \text{store} \mid \text{error}$

1. Let *gi* be the global instance  $\text{store.globals}[\text{globaladdr}]$ .
2. Let *mut t* be the structure of the global type *gi.type*.
3. If *mut* is not *var*, then return *error*.
4. Replace *gi.value* with the value *val*.
5. Return the updated store.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{global\_write}(S, a, v) &= S' && (\text{if } S.\text{globals}[a].\text{type} = \text{var } t \wedge S' = S \text{ with } \text{globals}[a].\text{value} = v) \\ \text{global\_write}(S, a, v) &= \text{error} && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

### 7.1.14 Values

$\text{ref\_type}(\text{store}, \text{ref}) : \text{reftype}$

1. Pre-condition: the reference *ref* is valid under store *S*.
2. Return the reference type *t* with which *ref* is valid.
3. Post-condition: the returned reference type is valid under the empty context.

$$\text{ref\_type}(S, r) = t \quad (\text{if } S \vdash r : t)$$

#### Note

In future versions of WebAssembly, not all references may carry precise type information at run time. In such cases, this function may return a less precise supertype.



$\text{val\_default}(\text{valtype}) : \text{val}$

1. If  $\text{default}_{\text{valtype}}$  is not defined, then return *error*.
1. Else, return the value  $\text{default}_{\text{valtype}}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{val\_default}(t) &= v && (\text{if } \text{default}_t = v) \\ \text{val\_default}(t) &= \text{error} && (\text{if } \text{default}_t = \epsilon) \end{aligned}$$

### 7.1.15 Matching

$\text{match\_valtype}(\text{valtype}_1, \text{valtype}_2) : \text{bool}$

1. Pre-condition: the value types  $\text{valtype}_1$  and  $\text{valtype}_2$  are valid under the empty context.
2. If  $\text{valtype}_1$  matches  $\text{valtype}_2$ , then return *true*.
3. Else, return *false*.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{match\_reftype}(t_1, t_2) &= \text{true} && (\text{if } \vdash t_1 \leq t_2) \\ \text{match\_reftype}(t_1, t_2) &= \text{false} && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

$\text{match\_externtype}(\text{externtype}_1, \text{externtype}_2) : \text{bool}$

1. Pre-condition: the extern types  $\text{externtype}_1$  and  $\text{externtype}_2$  are valid under the empty context.
2. If  $\text{externtype}_1$  matches  $\text{externtype}_2$ , then return *true*.
3. Else, return *false*.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{match\_externtype}(et_1, et_2) &= \text{true} && (\text{if } \vdash et_1 \leq et_2) \\ \text{match\_externtype}(et_1, et_2) &= \text{false} && (\text{otherwise}) \end{aligned}$$

## 7.2 Profiles

To enable the use of WebAssembly in as many environments as possible, *profiles* specify coherent language subsets that fit constraints imposed by common classes of host environments. A host platform can thereby decide to support the language only under a restricted profile, or even the intersection of multiple profiles.

### 7.2.1 Conventions

A profile modification is specified by decorating selected rules in the main body of this specification with a *profile annotation* that defines them as conditional on the choice of profile.

For that purpose, every profile defines a *profile marker*, an alphanumeric short-hand like ABC. A profile annotation of the form  $[\text{!ABC XYZ}]$  on a rule indicates that this rule is *excluded* for either of the profiles whose marker is ABC or XYZ.

There are two ways of subsetting the language in a profile:

- *Syntactic*, by *omitting* a feature, in which case certain constructs are removed from the syntax altogether.
- *Semantic*, by *restricting* a feature, in which case certain constructs are still present but some behaviours are ruled out.

### Syntax Annotations

To omit a construct from a profile syntactically, respective productions in the grammar of the *abstract syntax* are annotated with an associated profile marker. This is defined to have the following implications:

1. Any production in the *binary* or *textual* syntax that produces abstract syntax with a marked construct is omitted by extension.
2. Any *validation* or *execution* rule that handles a marked construct is omitted by extension.

The overall effect is that the respective construct is no longer part of the language under a respective profile.

#### Note

For example, a “busy” profile marked BUSY could rule out the `nop` instruction by marking the production for it in the abstract syntax as follows:

$$\begin{array}{lcl} \text{instr} & ::= & \dots \\ \text{[!BUSY]} & | & \text{nop} \\ & | & \text{unreachable} \end{array}$$

A rule may be annotated by multiple markers, which could be the case if a construct is in the intersection of multiple features.

## Semantics Annotations

To restrict certain behaviours in a profile, individual `validation` or `reduction` rules or auxiliary definitions are annotated with an associated marker.

This has the consequence that the respective rule is no longer applicable under the given profile.

#### Note

For example, an “infinite” profile marked INF could define that growing memory never fails:

$$\begin{array}{lcl} S; F; (i32.\text{const } n) \text{ memory.grow } x & \hookrightarrow & S'; F; (i32.\text{const } sz) \\ & & (\text{if } F.\text{module.mems}[x] = a \\ & & \wedge sz = |S.\text{mems}[a].\text{datas}|/64 \text{ Ki} \\ & & \wedge S' = S \text{ with mems}[a] = \text{growmem}(S.\text{mems}[a], n)) \\ \text{[!INF]} \quad S; F; (i32.\text{const } n) \text{ memory.grow } x & \hookrightarrow & S; F; (i32.\text{const signed}_{32}^{-1}(-1)) \end{array}$$

## Properties

All profiles are defined such that the following properties are preserved:

- All profiles represent syntactic and semantic subsets of the `full profile`, i.e., they do not *add* syntax or *alter* behaviour.
- All profiles are mutually compatible, i.e., no two profiles subset semantic behaviour in inconsistent or ambiguous ways, and any intersection of profiles preserves the properties described here.
- Profiles do not violate `soundness`, i.e., all `configurations` valid under that profile still have well-defined execution behaviour.

#### Note

Tools are generally expected to handle and produce code for the full profile by default. In particular, producers should not generate code that *depends* on specific profiles. Instead, all code should preserve correctness when executed under the full profile.

Moreover, profiles should be considered static and fixed for a given platform or ecosystem. Runtime conditioning on the “current” profile is not intended and should be avoided.

## 7.2.2 Defined Profiles

**Note**

The number of defined profiles is expected to remain small in the future. Profiles are intended for broad and permanent use cases only. In particular, profiles are not intended for language versioning.

**Full Profile (FUL)**

The *full* profile contains the complete language and all possible behaviours. It imposes no restrictions, i.e., all rules and definitions are active. All other profiles define sub-languages of this profile.

**Deterministic Profile (DET)**

The *deterministic* profile excludes all rules marked <sup>[!DET]</sup>. It defines a sub-language that does not exhibit any incidental non-deterministic behaviour:

- All NaN values generated by floating-point instructions are canonical and positive.
- All relaxed vector instructions have a fixed behaviour that does not depend on the implementation.

Even under this profile, the `memory.grow` and `table.grow` instructions technically remain *non-deterministic*, in order to be able to indicate resource exhaustion.

**Note**

In future versions of WebAssembly, new non-deterministic behaviour may be added to the language, such that the deterministic profile will induce additional restrictions.

## 7.3 Implementation Limitations

Implementations typically impose additional restrictions on a number of aspects of a WebAssembly module or execution. These may stem from:

- physical resource limits,
- constraints imposed by the embedder or its environment,
- limitations of selected implementation strategies.

This section lists allowed limitations. Where restrictions take the form of numeric limits, no minimum requirements are given, nor are the limits assumed to be concrete, fixed numbers. However, it is expected that all implementations have “reasonably” large limits to enable common applications.

**Note**

A conforming implementation is not allowed to leave out individual *features*. However, designated subsets of WebAssembly may be specified in the future.

### 7.3.1 Syntactic Limits

**Structure**

An implementation may impose restrictions on the following dimensions of a module:

- the number of `types` in a `module`
- the number of `functions` in a `module`, including imports
- the number of `tables` in a `module`, including imports
- the number of `memories` in a `module`, including imports

- the number of [globals](#) in a [module](#), including imports
- the number of [tags](#) in a [module](#), including imports
- the number of [element segments](#) in a [module](#)
- the number of [data segments](#) in a [module](#)
- the number of [imports](#) to a [module](#)
- the number of [exports](#) from a [module](#)
- the number of [sub types](#) in a [recursive type](#)
- the subtyping depth of a [sub type](#)
- the number of fields in a [structure type](#)
- the number of parameters in a [function type](#)
- the number of results in a [function type](#)
- the number of parameters in a [block type](#)
- the number of results in a [block type](#)
- the number of [locals](#) in a [function](#)
- the number of [instructions](#) in a [function body](#)
- the number of [instructions](#) in a [structured control instruction](#)
- the number of [structured control instructions](#) in a [function](#)
- the nesting depth of [structured control instructions](#)
- the number of [label indices](#) in a [br\\_table](#) instruction
- the number of instructions in a [constant expression](#)
- the length of the array in a [array.new\\_fixed](#) instruction
- the length of an [element segment](#)
- the length of a [data segment](#)
- the length of a [name](#)
- the range of [characters](#) in a [name](#)

If the limits of an implementation are exceeded for a given module, then the implementation may reject the [validation](#), compilation, or [instantiation](#) of that module with an embedder-specific error.

#### Note

The last item allows [embedders](#) that operate in limited environments without support for [Unicode](#)<sup>48</sup> to limit the names of [imports](#) and [exports](#) to common subsets like [ASCII](#)<sup>49</sup>.

## Binary Format

For a module given in [binary format](#), additional limitations may be imposed on the following dimensions:

- the size of a [module](#)
- the size of any [section](#)
- the size of an individual [function's code](#)
- the size of a [structured control instruction](#)

---

<sup>48</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/versions/latest/>

<sup>49</sup> <https://webstore.ansi.org/RecordDetail.aspx?sku=INCITS+4-1986%5bR2012%5d>

- the size of an individual [constant expression](#)'s instruction sequence
- the number of [sections](#)

### Text Format

For a module given in [text format](#), additional limitations may be imposed on the following dimensions:

- the size of the [source text](#)
- the size of any syntactic element
- the size of an individual [token](#)
- the nesting depth of [folded instructions](#)
- the length of symbolic [identifiers](#)
- the range of literal [characters](#) allowed in the [source text](#)

## 7.3.2 Validation

An implementation may defer [validation](#) of individual [functions](#) until they are first [invoked](#).

If a function turns out to be invalid, then the invocation, and every consecutive call to the same function, results in a [trap](#).

### Note

This is to allow implementations to use interpretation or just-in-time compilation for functions. The function must still be fully validated before execution of its body begins.

### 7.3.3 Execution

Restrictions on the following dimensions may be imposed during [execution](#) of a WebAssembly program:

- the number of allocated [module instances](#)
- the number of allocated [function instances](#)
- the number of allocated [table instances](#)
- the number of allocated [memory instances](#)
- the number of allocated [global instances](#)
- the number of allocated [tag instances](#)
- the number of allocated [structure instances](#)
- the number of allocated [array instances](#)
- the number of allocated [exception instances](#)
- the size of a [table instance](#)
- the size of a [memory instance](#)
- the size of an [array instance](#)
- the number of [frames](#) on the [stack](#)
- the number of [labels](#) on the [stack](#)
- the number of [values](#) on the [stack](#)

If the runtime limits of an implementation are exceeded during execution of a computation, then it may terminate that computation and report an embedder-specific error to the invoking code.

Some of the above limits may already be verified during instantiation, in which case an implementation may report exceedance in the same manner as for [syntactic limits](#).

#### Note

Concrete limits are usually not fixed but may be dependent on specifics, interdependent, vary over time, or depend on other implementation- or embedder-specific situations or events.

## 7.4 Type Soundness

The [type system](#) of WebAssembly is *sound*, implying both *type safety* and *memory safety* with respect to the WebAssembly semantics. For example:

- All types declared and derived during validation are respected at run time; e.g., every [local](#) or [global](#) variable will only contain type-correct values, every [instruction](#) will only be applied to operands of the expected type, and every [function invocation](#) always evaluates to a result of the right type (if it does not diverge, throw an exception, or [trap](#)).
- No memory location will be read or written except those explicitly defined by the program, i.e., as a [local](#), a [global](#), an element in a [table](#), or a location within a linear [memory](#).
- There is no undefined behavior, i.e., the [execution rules](#) cover all possible cases that can occur in a [valid](#) program, and the rules are mutually consistent.

Soundness also is instrumental in ensuring additional properties, most notably, *encapsulation* of function and module scopes: no [locals](#) can be accessed outside their own function and no [module](#) components can be accessed outside their own module unless they are explicitly [exported](#) or [imported](#).

The typing rules defining WebAssembly [validation](#) only cover the *static* components of a WebAssembly program. In order to state and prove soundness precisely, the typing rules must be extended to the *dynamic* components of the abstract [runtime](#), that is, the [store](#), [configurations](#), and [administrative instructions](#).<sup>50</sup>

### 7.4.1 Contexts

In order to check [rolled up](#) recursive types, the [context](#) is locally extended with an additional component that records the [sub type](#) corresponding to each [recursive type index](#) within the current [recursive type](#):

$$C ::= \{ \dots, \text{recs } subtype^* \}$$

### 7.4.2 Types

Well-formedness for [extended type forms](#) is defined as follows.

#### Heap Type bot

- The heap type is valid.

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{bot} : \text{ok}}$$

<sup>50</sup> The formalization and theorems are derived from the following article: Andreas Haas, Andreas Rossberg, Derek Schuff, Ben Titzer, Dan Gohman, Luke Wagner, Alon Zakai, JF Bastien, Michael Holman. [Bringing the Web up to Speed with WebAssembly](#)<sup>51</sup>. Proceedings of the 38th ACM SIGPLAN Conference on Programming Language Design and Implementation (PLDI 2017). ACM 2017.

<sup>51</sup> <https://dl.acm.org/citation.cfm?doid=3062341.3062363>

**Heap Type**  $\text{rec } i$ 

- The recursive type index  $i$  must exist in  $C.\text{recs}$ .
- Then the heap type is valid.

$$\frac{C.\text{recs}[i] = \text{subtype}}{C \vdash \text{rec } i : \text{ok}}$$

**Value Type**  $\text{bot}$ 

- The value type is valid.

$$\overline{C \vdash \text{bot} : \text{ok}}$$

**Recursive Types**  $\text{rec subtype}^*$ 

- Let  $C'$  be the current context  $C$ , but where  $\text{recs}$  is  $\text{subtype}^*$ .
- There must be a type index  $x$ , such that for each sub type  $\text{subtype}_i$  in  $\text{subtype}^*$ :
  - Under the context  $C'$ , the sub type  $\text{subtype}_i$  must be valid for type index  $x + i$  and recursive type index  $i$ .
- Then the recursive type is valid for the type index  $x$ .

$$\frac{C, \text{recs } \text{subtype}^* \vdash \text{rec } \text{subtype}^* : \text{ok}(x, 0)}{C \vdash \text{rec } \text{subtype}^* : \text{ok}(x)}$$

$$\frac{C \vdash \text{subtype} : \text{ok}(x, i) \quad C \vdash \text{rec } \text{subtype}'^* : \text{ok}(x + 1, i + 1)}{C \vdash \text{rec } \text{subtype } \text{subtype}'^* : \text{ok}(x, i)}$$

**Note**

These rules are a generalisation of the ones previously given.

**Sub types**  $\text{sub final}^? \text{ ht}^* \text{ comptime}$ 

- The composite type  $\text{comptime}$  must be valid.
- The sequence  $\text{ht}^*$  may be no longer than 1.
- For every heap type  $\text{ht}_k$  in  $\text{ht}^*$ :
  - The heap type  $\text{ht}_k$  must be ordered before a type index  $x$  and recursive type index  $i$ , meaning:
    - \* Either  $\text{ht}_k$  is a defined type.
    - \* Or  $\text{ht}_k$  is a type index  $y_k$  that is smaller than  $x$ .
    - \* Or  $\text{ht}_k$  is a recursive type index  $\text{rec } j_k$  where  $j_k$  is smaller than  $i$ .
  - Let sub type  $\text{subtype}_k$  be the unrolling of the heap type  $\text{ht}_k$ , meaning:
    - \* Either  $\text{ht}_k$  is a defined type  $\text{deftype}_k$ , then  $\text{subtype}_k$  must be the unrolling of  $\text{deftype}_k$ .
    - \* Or  $\text{ht}_k$  is a type index  $y_k$ , then  $\text{subtype}_k$  must be the unrolling of the defined type  $C.\text{types}[y_k]$ .
    - \* Or  $\text{ht}_k$  is a recursive type index  $\text{rec } j_k$ , then  $\text{subtype}_k$  must be  $C.\text{recs}[j_k]$ .
  - The sub type  $\text{subtype}_k$  must not contain **final**.
  - Let  $\text{comptime}'_k$  be the composite type in  $\text{subtype}_k$ .
  - The composite type  $\text{comptime}$  must match  $\text{comptime}'_k$ .
- Then the sub type is valid for the type index  $x$  and recursive type index  $i$ .

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} |ht^*| \leq 1 \quad (ht \prec x, i)^* \quad (\text{unroll}_C(ht) = \text{sub } ht'^* \text{ comptype}')^* \\ C \vdash \text{comptype} : \text{ok} \quad (C \vdash \text{comptype} \leq \text{comptype}')^* \end{array}}{C \vdash \text{sub final? } ht^* \text{ comptype} : \text{ok}(x, i)}$$

where:

$$\begin{aligned} (deftype \prec x, i) &= \text{true} \\ (y \prec x, i) &= y < x \\ (\text{rec } j \prec x, i) &= j < i \\ \text{unroll}_C(deftype) &= \text{unroll}(deftype) \\ \text{unroll}_C(y) &= \text{unroll}(C.\text{types}[y]) \\ \text{unroll}_C(\text{rec } j) &= C.\text{recs}[j] \end{aligned}$$

#### Note

This rule is a generalisation of the ones previously given, which only allowed type indices as supertypes.

### 7.4.3 Subtyping

In a rolled-up recursive type, a recursive type indices `rec i` matches another heap type `ht` if:

- Let `sub final? ht'^* comptype` be the sub type `C.recs[i]`.
- The heap type `ht` is contained in `ht'^*`.

$$\frac{C.\text{recs}[i] = \text{sub final? } (ht_1^* ht ht_2^*) \text{ comptype}}{C \vdash \text{rec } i \leq ht}$$

#### Note

This rule is only invoked when checking validity of rolled-up recursive types.

### 7.4.4 Results

Results can be classified by result types as follows.

#### Results `val*`

- For each value `vali` in `val*`:
  - The value `vali` is valid with some value type `ti`.
- Let `t*` be the concatenation of all `ti`.
- Then the result is valid with result type `[t*]`.

$$\frac{(S \vdash \text{val} : t)^*}{S \vdash \text{val}^* : [t^*]}$$

#### Results (ref.exn a) throw\_ref

- The value `ref.exn a` must be valid.
- Then the result is valid with result type `[t*]`, for any valid closed result types.

$$\frac{S \vdash \text{REFEXNADDR } a : \text{REF EXN} \quad \vdash [t^*] : \text{ok}}{S \vdash (\text{ref.exn } a) \text{ throw\_ref} : [t^*]}$$



### Results trap

- The result is valid with result type  $[t^*]$ , for any valid closed result types.

$$\frac{\vdash [t^*] : \text{ok}}{S \vdash \text{trap} : [t^*]}$$

### 7.4.5 Store Validity

The following typing rules specify when a runtime store  $S$  is *valid*. A valid store must consist of **function**, **table**, **memory**, **global**, **tag**, **element**, **data**, **structure**, **array**, **exception**, and **module** instances that are themselves valid, relative to  $S$ .

To that end, each kind of instance is classified by a respective **function**, **table**, **memory**, **global**, **tag**, **element**, or **data** type, or just **ok** in the case of **structures**, **arrays**, or **exceptions**. Module instances are classified by *module contexts*, which are regular **contexts** repurposed as module types describing the **index spaces** defined by a module.

#### Store $S$

- Each **function** instance  $\text{funcinst}_i$  in  $S.\text{funcs}$  must be **valid** with some **function** type  $\text{functype}_i$ .
- Each **table** instance  $\text{tableinst}_i$  in  $S.\text{tables}$  must be **valid** with some **table** type  $\text{tabletype}_i$ .
- Each **memory** instance  $\text{meminst}_i$  in  $S.\text{mems}$  must be **valid** with some **memory** type  $\text{memtype}_i$ .
- Each **global** instance  $\text{globalinst}_i$  in  $S.\text{globals}$  must be **valid** with some **global** type  $\text{globaltype}_i$ .
- Each **tag** instance  $\text{taginst}_i$  in  $S.\text{tags}$  must be **valid** with some **tag** type  $\text{tagtype}_i$ .
- Each **element** instance  $\text{eleminst}_i$  in  $S.\text{elems}$  must be **valid** with some **reference** type  $\text{reftype}_i$ .
- Each **data** instance  $\text{datainst}_i$  in  $S.\text{datas}$  must be **valid**.
- Each **structure** instance  $\text{structinst}_i$  in  $S.\text{structs}$  must be **valid**.
- Each **array** instance  $\text{arrayinst}_i$  in  $S.\text{arrays}$  must be **valid**.
- Each **exception** instance  $\text{exninst}_i$  in  $S.\text{exns}$  must be **valid**.
- No **reference** to a bound **structure** **address** must be reachable from itself through a path consisting only of **indirections** through **immutable structure**, or **array** **fields** or **fields** of **exception** **instances**.
- No **reference** to a bound **array** **address** must be reachable from itself through a path consisting only of **indirections** through **immutable structure** or **array** **fields** or **fields** of **exception** **instances**.
- No **reference** to a bound **exception** **address** must be reachable from itself through a path consisting only of **indirections** through **immutable structure** or **array** **fields** or **fields** of **exception** **instances**.
- Then the store is **valid**.

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} (S \vdash \text{funcinst} : \text{deftype})^* \quad (S \vdash \text{tableinst} : \text{tabletype})^* \\ (S \vdash \text{meminst} : \text{memtype})^* \quad (S \vdash \text{globalinst} : \text{globaltype})^* \\ (S \vdash \text{taginst} : \text{tagtype})^* \\ (S \vdash \text{eleminst} : \text{reftype})^* \quad (S \vdash \text{datainst} : \text{ok})^* \\ (S \vdash \text{structinst} : \text{ok})^* \quad (S \vdash \text{arrayinst} : \text{ok})^* \quad (S \vdash \text{exninst} : \text{ok})^* \\ S = \{\text{funcs } \text{funcinst}^*, \text{globals } \text{globalinst}^*, \text{tables } \text{tableinst}^*, \text{mems } \text{meminst}^*, \text{tags } \text{taginst}^*, \\ \text{elems } \text{eleminst}^*, \text{datas } \text{datainst}^*, \text{structs } \text{structinst}^*, \text{arrays } \text{arrayinst}^*, \text{exns } \text{exninst}^*\} \\ (S.\text{structs}[a_s] = \text{structinst})^* \quad ((\text{ref.struct } a_s) \gg_S^+ (\text{ref.struct } a_s))^* \\ (S.\text{arrays}[a_a] = \text{arrayinst})^* \quad ((\text{ref.array } a_a) \gg_S^+ (\text{ref.array } a_a))^* \\ (S.\text{exns}[a_e] = \text{exninst})^* \quad ((\text{ref.exn } a_e) \gg_S^+ (\text{ref.exn } a_e))^* \end{array}}{\vdash S : \text{ok}}$$

where  $\text{val}_1 \gg_S^+ \text{val}_2$  denotes the transitive closure of the following *immutable reachability* relation on **values**:

$$\begin{array}{lll} (\text{ref.struct } a) & \gg_S & S.\text{structs}[a].\text{fields}[i] \quad \text{if } \text{expand}(S.\text{structs}[a].\text{type}) = \text{struct } ft_1^i (\text{const } st) ft_2^* \\ (\text{ref.array } a) & \gg_S & S.\text{arrays}[a].\text{fields}[i] \quad \text{if } \text{expand}(S.\text{arrays}[a].\text{type}) = \text{array } (\text{const } st) \\ (\text{ref.exn } a) & \gg_S & S.\text{exns}[a].\text{fields}[i] \\ (\text{ref.extern } ref) & \gg_S & ref \end{array}$$

**Note**

The constraint on reachability through immutable fields prevents the presence of cyclic data structures that can not be constructed in the language. Cycles can only be formed using mutation.

**Function Instances**  $\{\text{type } \text{functype}, \text{module } \text{moduleinst}, \text{code } \text{func}\}$ 

- The function type *functype* must be valid under an empty context.
- The module instance *moduleinst* must be valid with some context *C*.
- Under context *C*:
  - The function *func* must be valid with some function type *functype'*.
  - The function type *functype'* must match *functype*.
- Then the function instance is valid with function type *functype*.

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \vdash \text{functype} : \text{ok} \quad S \vdash \text{moduleinst} : C \\ C \vdash \text{func} : \text{functype}' \quad C \vdash \text{functype}' \leq \text{functype} \end{array}}{S \vdash \{\text{type } \text{functype}, \text{module } \text{moduleinst}, \text{code } \text{func}\} : \text{functype}}$$

**Host Function Instances**  $\{\text{type } \text{functype}, \text{hostfunc } hf\}$ 

- The function type *functype* must be valid under an empty context.
- Let  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$  be the function type *functype*.
- For every valid store  $S_1$  extending *S* and every sequence *val\** of values whose types coincide with  $t_1^*$ :
  - Executing *hf* in store  $S_1$  with arguments *val\** has a non-empty set of possible outcomes.
  - For every element *R* of this set:
    - \* Either *R* must be  $\perp$  (i.e., divergence).
    - \* Or *R* consists of a valid store  $S_2$  extending  $S_1$  and a result *result* whose type coincides with  $t_2^*$ .
- Then the function instance is valid with function type *functype*.

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \forall S_1, \text{val}^*, \vdash S_1 : \text{ok} \wedge \vdash S \preceq S_1 \wedge S_1 \vdash \text{val}^* : [t_1^*] \implies \\ hf(S_1; \text{val}^*) \supset \emptyset \wedge \\ \forall R \in hf(S_1; \text{val}^*), R = \perp \vee \\ \exists S_2, \text{result}, \vdash S_2 : \text{ok} \wedge \vdash S_1 \preceq S_2 \wedge S_2 \vdash \text{result} : [t_2^*] \wedge R = (S_2; \text{result}) \end{array}}{\begin{array}{c} \vdash [t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*] : \text{ok} \\ S \vdash \{\text{type } [t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*], \text{hostfunc } hf\} : [t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*] \end{array}}$$

**Note**

This rule states that, if appropriate pre-conditions about store and arguments are satisfied, then executing the host function must satisfy appropriate post-conditions about store and results. The post-conditions match the ones in the [execution rule](#) for invoking host functions.

Any store under which the function is invoked is assumed to be an extension of the current store. That way, the function itself is able to make sufficient assumptions about future stores.

**Table Instances**  $\{\text{type } (\text{addrtype limits } t), \text{elem } \text{ref}^*\}$ 

- The table type *addrtype limits t* must be valid under the empty context.
- The length of *ref\** must equal *limits.min*.
- For each reference  $\text{ref}_i$  in the table's elements  $\text{ref}^n$ :

- The reference  $ref_i$  must be valid with some reference type  $t'_i$ .
- The reference type  $t'_i$  must match the reference type  $t$ .
- Then the table instance is valid with table type  $addrtype\ limits\ t$ .

$$\frac{\vdash addrtype\ limits\ t : ok \quad n = limits.min \quad (S \vdash ref : t')^n \quad (\vdash t' \leq t)^n}{S \vdash \{type\ (addrtype\ limits\ t), elem\ ref^n\} : addrtype\ limits\ t}$$

#### Memory Instances $\{type\ (addrtype\ limits), bytes\ b^*\}$

- The memory type  $addrtype\ limits$  must be valid under the empty context.
- The length of  $b^*$  must equal  $limits.min$  multiplied by the page size 64 Ki.
- Then the memory instance is valid with memory type  $addrtype\ limits$ .

$$\frac{\vdash addrtype\ limits : ok \quad n = limits.min \cdot 64\text{ Ki}}{S \vdash \{type\ (addrtype\ limits), bytes\ b^n\} : addrtype\ limits}$$

#### Global Instances $\{type\ mut\ t, value\ val\}$

- The global type  $mut\ t$  must be valid under the empty context.
- The value  $val$  must be valid with some value type  $t'$ .
- The value type  $t'$  must match the value type  $t$ .
- Then the global instance is valid with global type  $mut\ t$ .

$$\frac{\vdash mut\ t : ok \quad S \vdash val : t' \quad \vdash t' \leq t}{S \vdash \{type\ mut\ t, value\ val\} : mut\ t}$$

#### Tag Instances $\{type\ tagtype\}$

- The tag type  $tagtype$  must be valid under the empty context.
- Then the tag instance is valid with tag type  $tagtype$ .

$$\frac{\vdash tagtype : ok}{S \vdash \{type\ tagtype\} : tagtype}$$

#### Element Instances $\{type\ t, elem\ ref^*\}$

- The reference type  $t$  must be valid under the empty context.
- For each reference  $ref_i$  in the elements  $ref^n$ :
  - The reference  $ref_i$  must be valid with some reference type  $t'_i$ .
  - The reference type  $t'_i$  must match the reference type  $t$ .
- Then the element instance is valid with reference type  $t$ .

$$\frac{\vdash t : ok \quad (S \vdash ref : t')^* \quad (\vdash t' \leq t)^*}{S \vdash \{type\ t, elem\ ref^*\} : t}$$

#### Data Instances $\{bytes\ b^*\}$

- The data instance is valid.

$$\overline{S \vdash \{bytes\ b^*\} : ok}$$

**Structure Instances**  $\{\text{type } \textit{deftype}, \text{fields } \textit{fieldval}^*\}$ 

- The defined type  $\textit{deftype}$  must be valid under the empty context.
- The expansion of  $\textit{deftype}$  must be a structure type  $\text{struct } \textit{fieldtype}^*$ .
- The length of the sequence of field values  $\textit{fieldval}^*$  must be the same as the length of the sequence of field types  $\textit{fieldtype}^*$ .
- For each field value  $\textit{fieldval}_i$  in  $\textit{fieldval}^*$  and corresponding field type  $\textit{fieldtype}_i$  in  $\textit{fieldtype}^*$ :
  - Let  $\textit{fieldtype}_i$  be  $\text{mut } \textit{storagetype}_i$ .
  - The field value  $\textit{fieldval}_i$  must be valid with storage type  $\textit{storagetype}_i$ .
- Then the structure instance is valid.

$$\frac{\vdash dt : \text{ok} \quad \text{expand}(dt) = \text{struct } (\text{mut } st)^* \quad (S \vdash fv : st)^*}{S \vdash \{\text{type } dt, \text{fields } fv^*\} : \text{ok}}$$

**Array Instances**  $\{\text{type } \textit{deftype}, \text{fields } \textit{fieldval}^*\}$ 

- The defined type  $\textit{deftype}$  must be valid under the empty context.
- The expansion of  $\textit{deftype}$  must be an array type  $\text{array } \textit{fieldtype}$ .
- Let  $\textit{fieldtype}$  be  $\text{mut } \textit{storagetype}$ .
- For each field value  $\textit{fieldval}_i$  in  $\textit{fieldval}^*$ :
  - The field value  $\textit{fieldval}_i$  must be valid with storage type  $\textit{storagetype}$ .
- Then the array instance is valid.

$$\frac{\vdash dt : \text{ok} \quad \text{expand}(dt) = \text{array } (\text{mut } st) \quad (S \vdash fv : st)^*}{S \vdash \{\text{type } dt, \text{fields } fv^*\} : \text{ok}}$$

**Field Values**  $\textit{fieldval}$ 

- If  $\textit{fieldval}$  is a value  $\textit{val}$ , then:
  - The value  $\textit{val}$  must be valid with value type  $t$ .
  - Then the field value is valid with value type  $t$ .
- Else,  $\textit{fieldval}$  is a packed value  $\textit{packval}$ :
  - Let  $\textit{packtype}.\text{pack } i$  be the field value  $\textit{fieldval}$ .
  - Then the field value is valid with packed type  $\textit{packtype}$ .

$$\overline{S \vdash \textit{pt}.\text{pack } i : \textit{pt}}$$

**Exception Instances**  $\{\text{tag } a, \text{fields } \textit{val}^*\}$ 

- The store entry  $S.\text{tags}[a]$  must exist.
- Let  $[t^*] \rightarrow [t'^*]$  be the tag type  $S.\text{tags}[a].\text{type}$ .
- The result type  $[t'^*]$  must be empty.
- The sequence  $\textit{val}^a st$  of values must have the same length as the sequence  $t^*$  of value types.
- For each value  $\textit{val}_i$  in  $\textit{val}^a st$  and corresponding value type  $t_i$  in  $t^*$ , the value  $\textit{val}_i$  must be valid with type  $t_i$ .
- Then the exception instance is valid.

$$\frac{S.\text{tags}[a] = \{\text{type} = [t^*] \rightarrow []\} \quad (S \vdash \text{val} : t)^*}{S \vdash \{\text{tag } a, \text{fields } \text{val}^*\} : \text{ok}}$$

### Export Instances {name *name*, addr *externaddr*}

- The external address *externaddr* must be valid with some external type *externtype*.
- Then the export instance is valid.

$$\frac{S \vdash \text{externaddr} : \text{externtype}}{S \vdash \{\text{name } \text{name}, \text{addr } \text{externaddr}\} : \text{ok}}$$

### Module Instances *moduleinst*

- Each defined type *deftype<sub>i</sub>* in *moduleinst.types* must be valid under the empty context.
- For each function address *funcaddr<sub>i</sub>* in *moduleinst.funcs*, the external address *func funcaddr<sub>i</sub>* must be valid with some external type *func type<sub>i</sub>*.
- For each table address *tableaddr<sub>i</sub>* in *moduleinst.tables*, the external address *table tableaddr<sub>i</sub>* must be valid with some external type *table type<sub>i</sub>*.
- For each memory address *memaddr<sub>i</sub>* in *moduleinst.mems*, the external address *mem memaddr<sub>i</sub>* must be valid with some external type *mem type<sub>i</sub>*.
- For each global address *globaladdr<sub>i</sub>* in *moduleinst.globals*, the external address *global globaladdr<sub>i</sub>* must be valid with some external type *global type<sub>i</sub>*.
- For each tag address *tagaddr<sub>i</sub>* in *moduleinst.tags*, the external address *tag tagaddr<sub>i</sub>* must be valid with some external type *tag type<sub>i</sub>*.
- For each element address *elemaddr<sub>i</sub>* in *moduleinst.elems*, the element instance *S.elems[elemaddr<sub>i</sub>]* must be valid with some reference type *reftype<sub>i</sub>*.
- For each data address *dataaddr<sub>i</sub>* in *moduleinst.datas*, the data instance *S.datas[dataaddr<sub>i</sub>]* must be valid with *ok<sub>i</sub>*.
- Each export instance *exportinst<sub>i</sub>* in *moduleinst.exports* must be valid.
- For each export instance *exportinst<sub>i</sub>* in *moduleinst.exports*, the name *exportinst<sub>i</sub>.name* must be different from any other name occurring in *moduleinst.exports*.
- Let *deftype\** be the concatenation of all *deftype<sub>i</sub>* in order.
- Let *func type\** be the concatenation of all *func type<sub>i</sub>* in order.
- Let *table type\** be the concatenation of all *table type<sub>i</sub>* in order.
- Let *mem type\** be the concatenation of all *mem type<sub>i</sub>* in order.
- Let *global type\** be the concatenation of all *global type<sub>i</sub>* in order.
- Let *tag type\** be the concatenation of all *tag type<sub>i</sub>* in order.
- Let *reftype\** be the concatenation of all *reftype<sub>i</sub>* in order.
- Let *ok\** be the concatenation of all *ok<sub>i</sub>* in order.
- Let *m* be the length of *moduleinst.funcs*.
- Let *x\** be the sequence of function indices from 0 to *m* − 1.
- Then the module instance is valid with context {types *deftype\**, funcs *func type\**, tables *table type\**, mems *mem type\**, globals *global type\**, CTAGS~tag type^ast, elems *reftype\**, datas *ok\**, refs *x\**}.

$$\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{l}
(\vdash \text{deftype} : \text{ok})^* \\
(S \vdash \text{func } \text{funcaddr} : \text{func } \text{functype})^* \quad (S \vdash \text{table } \text{tableaddr} : \text{table } \text{tabletype})^* \\
(S \vdash \text{mem } \text{memaddr} : \text{mem } \text{memtype})^* \quad (S \vdash \text{global } \text{globaladdr} : \text{global } \text{globaltype})^* \\
(S \vdash \text{tag } \text{tagaddr} : \text{tag } \text{tagtype})^* \\
(S \vdash S.\text{elems}[\text{elemaddr}] : \text{reftype})^* \quad (S \vdash S.\text{datas}[\text{dataaddr}] : \text{ok})^* \\
(S \vdash \text{exportinst} : \text{ok})^* \quad (\text{exportinst.name})^* \text{ disjoint}
\end{array} \\
\hline
S \vdash \{ \text{types } \text{deftype}^*, \\
\text{funcs } \text{funcaddr}^*, \\
\text{tables } \text{tableaddr}^*, \\
\text{mems } \text{memaddr}^*, \\
\text{globals } \text{globaladdr}^*, \\
\text{tags } \text{tagaddr}^*, \\
\text{elems } \text{elemaddr}^*, \\
\text{datas } \text{dataaddr}^*, \\
\text{exports } \text{exportinst}^* \} : \{ \text{types } \text{deftype}^*, \\
\text{funcs } \text{functype}^*, \\
\text{tables } \text{tabletype}^*, \\
\text{mems } \text{memtype}^*, \\
\text{globals } \text{globaltype}^*, \\
\text{tags } \text{tagtype}^*, \\
\text{elems } \text{reftype}^*, \\
\text{datas } \text{ok}^*, \\
\text{refs } 0 \dots (|\text{funcaddr}^*| - 1) \}
\end{array}$$

### 7.4.6 Configuration Validity

To relate the WebAssembly [type system](#) to its [execution semantics](#), the [typing rules](#) for instructions must be extended to [configurations](#)  $S; T$ , which relates the [store](#) to [execution threads](#).

[Configurations](#) and [threads](#) are classified by their [result type](#). In addition to the [store](#)  $S$ , threads are typed under a [return type](#)  $\text{resulttype}^?$ , which controls whether and with which type a [return](#) instruction is allowed. This type is absent ( $\epsilon$ ) except for instruction sequences inside an administrative [frame](#) instruction.

Finally, [frames](#) are classified with [frame contexts](#), which extend the [module contexts](#) of a frame's associated [module instance](#) with the [locals](#) that the frame contains.

#### Configurations $S; T$

- The [store](#)  $S$  must be [valid](#).
- Under no allowed return type, the [thread](#)  $T$  must be [valid](#) with some [result type](#)  $[t^*]$ .
- Then the configuration is valid with the [result type](#)  $[t^*]$ .

$$\frac{\vdash S : \text{ok} \quad S; \epsilon \vdash T : [t^*]}{\vdash S; T : [t^*]}$$

#### Threads $F; \text{instr}^*$

- Let  $\text{resulttype}^?$  be the current allowed return type.
- The [frame](#)  $F$  must be [valid](#) with a [context](#)  $C$ .
- Let  $C'$  be the same [context](#) as  $C$ , but with [return](#) set to  $\text{resulttype}^?$ .
- Under context  $C'$ , the instruction sequence  $\text{instr}^*$  must be [valid](#) with some type  $\square \rightarrow [t^*]$ .
- Then the thread is valid with the [result type](#)  $[t^*]$ .

$$\frac{S \vdash F : C \quad S; C, \text{return } \text{resulttype}^? \vdash \text{instr}^* : \square \rightarrow [t^*]}{S; \text{resulttype}^? \vdash F; \text{instr}^* : [t^*]}$$

**Frames**  $\{\text{locals } val^*, \text{module } moduleinst\}$

- The module instance  $moduleinst$  must be valid with some module context  $C$ .
- Each value  $val_i$  in  $val^*$  must be valid with some value type  $t_i$ .
- Let  $t^*$  be the concatenation of all  $t_i$  in order.
- Let  $C'$  be the same context as  $C$ , but with the value types  $t^*$  prepended to the locals list.
- Then the frame is valid with frame context  $C'$ .

$$\frac{S \vdash moduleinst : C \quad (S \vdash val : t)^*}{S \vdash \{\text{locals } val^*, \text{module } moduleinst\} : (C, \text{locals } t^*)}$$

### 7.4.7 Administrative Instructions

Typing rules for administrative instructions are specified as follows. In addition to the context  $C$ , typing of these instructions is defined under a given store  $S$ .

To that end, all previous typing judgements  $C \vdash prop$  are generalized to include the store, as in  $S; C \vdash prop$ , by implicitly adding  $S$  to all rules –  $S$  is never modified by the pre-existing rules, but it is accessed in the extra rules for administrative instructions given below.

*trap*

- The instruction is valid with any valid instruction type of the form  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash [t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*] : \text{ok}}{S; C \vdash \text{trap} : [t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]}$$

*val*

- The value  $val$  must be valid with value type  $t$ .
- Then it is valid as an instruction with type  $[] \rightarrow [t]$ .

$$\frac{S \vdash val : t}{S; C \vdash val : [] \rightarrow [t]}$$

*invoke funcaddr*

- The external function address  $func \text{ funcaddr}$  must be valid with external function type  $func \text{ funcatype}'$ .
- Let  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$  be the function type  $funcatype$ .
- Then the instruction is valid with type  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$ .

$$\frac{S \vdash func \text{ funcaddr} : func [t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]}{S; C \vdash \text{invoke } funcaddr : [t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]}$$

*label<sub>n</sub>{instr<sub>0</sub><sup>\*</sup>} instr<sup>\*</sup> end*

- The instruction sequence  $instr_0^*$  must be valid with some type  $[t_1^n] \rightarrow_{x^*} [t_2^*]$ .
- Let  $C'$  be the same context as  $C$ , but with the result type  $[t_1^n]$  prepended to the labels list.
- Under context  $C'$ , the instruction sequence  $instr^*$  must be valid with type  $[] \rightarrow_{x'^*} [t_2^*]$ .
- Then the compound instruction is valid with type  $[] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$ .

$$\frac{S; C \vdash instr_0^* : [t_1^n] \rightarrow_{x^*} [t_2^*] \quad S; C, \text{labels } [t_1^n] \vdash instr^* : [] \rightarrow_{x'^*} [t_2^*]}{S; C \vdash \text{label}_n\{instr_0^*\} \text{ instr}^* \text{ end} : [] \rightarrow [t_2^*]}$$

$\text{frame}_n\{F\} \text{ instr}^* \text{ end}$

- Under the valid return type  $[t^n]$ , the thread  $F; \text{instr}^*$  must be valid with result type  $[t^n]$ .
- Then the compound instruction is valid with type  $[] \rightarrow [t^n]$ .

$$\frac{C \vdash [t^n] : \text{ok} \quad S; [t^n] \vdash F; \text{instr}^* : [t^n]}{S; C \vdash \text{frame}_n\{F\} \text{ instr}^* \text{ end} : [] \rightarrow [t^n]}$$

$\text{handler}_n\{\text{catch}^*\} \text{ instr}^* \text{ end}$

- For every catch clause  $\text{catch}_i$  in  $\text{catch}^*$ ,  $\text{catch}_i$  must be valid.
- The instruction sequence  $\text{instr}^*$  must be valid with some type  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$ .
- Then the compound instruction is valid with type  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$ .

$$\frac{(C \vdash \text{catch} : \text{ok})^* \quad S; C \vdash \text{instr}^* : [t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]}{S; C \vdash \text{handler}_n\{\text{catch}^*\} \text{ instr}^* \text{ end} : [t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]}$$

### 7.4.8 Store Extension

Programs can mutate the [store](#) and its contained instances. Any such modification must respect certain invariants, such as not removing allocated instances or changing immutable definitions. While these invariants are inherent to the execution semantics of WebAssembly [instructions](#) and [modules](#), [host functions](#) do not automatically adhere to them. Consequently, the required invariants must be stated as explicit constraints on the [invocation](#) of host functions. Soundness only holds when the [embedder](#) ensures these constraints.

The necessary constraints are codified by the notion of *store extension*: a store state  $S'$  extends state  $S$ , written  $S \preceq S'$ , when the following rules hold.

#### Note

Extension does not imply that the new store is valid, which is defined separately [above](#).

#### Store $S$

- The length of  $S.\text{funcs}$  must not shrink.
- The length of  $S.\text{tables}$  must not shrink.
- The length of  $S.\text{mems}$  must not shrink.
- The length of  $S.\text{globals}$  must not shrink.
- The length of  $S.\text{tags}$  must not shrink.
- The length of  $S.\text{elems}$  must not shrink.
- The length of  $S.\text{datas}$  must not shrink.
- The length of  $S.\text{structs}$  must not shrink.
- The length of  $S.\text{arrays}$  must not shrink.
- The length of  $S.\text{exns}$  must not shrink.
- For each function instance  $\text{funcinst}_i$  in the original  $S.\text{funcs}$ , the new function instance must be an [extension](#) of the old.
- For each table instance  $\text{tableinst}_i$  in the original  $S.\text{tables}$ , the new table instance must be an [extension](#) of the old.
- For each memory instance  $\text{meminst}_i$  in the original  $S.\text{mems}$ , the new memory instance must be an [extension](#) of the old.



- For each **global instance**  $globalinst_i$  in the original  $S.globals$ , the new global instance must be an **extension** of the old.
- For each **tag instance**  $taginst_i$  in the original  $S.tags$ , the new tag instance must be an **extension** of the old.
- For each **element instance**  $eleminst_i$  in the original  $S.ems$ , the new element instance must be an **extension** of the old.
- For each **data instance**  $datainst_i$  in the original  $S.datas$ , the new data instance must be an **extension** of the old.
- For each **structure instance**  $structinst_i$  in the original  $S.structs$ , the new structure instance must be an **extension** of the old.
- For each **array instance**  $arrayinst_i$  in the original  $S.arrays$ , the new array instance must be an **extension** of the old.
- For each **exception instance**  $exninst_i$  in the original  $S.exns$ , the new exception instance must be an **extension** of the old.

$$\begin{array}{lll}
 S_1.funcs = funcinst_1^* & S_2.funcs = funcinst_1'^* funcinst_2^* & (\vdash funcinst_1 \preceq funcinst_1')^* \\
 S_1.tables = tableinst_1^* & S_2.tables = tableinst_1'^* tableinst_2^* & (\vdash tableinst_1 \preceq tableinst_1')^* \\
 S_1.mems = meminst_1^* & S_2.mems = meminst_1'^* meminst_2^* & (\vdash meminst_1 \preceq meminst_1')^* \\
 S_1.globals = globalinst_1^* & S_2.globals = globalinst_1'^* globalinst_2^* & (\vdash globalinst_1 \preceq globalinst_1')^* \\
 S_1.tags = taginst_1^* & S_2.tags = taginst_1'^* taginst_2^* & (\vdash taginst_1 \preceq taginst_1')^* \\
 S_1.ems = eleminst_1^* & S_2.ems = eleminst_1'^* eleminst_2^* & (\vdash eleminst_1 \preceq eleminst_1')^* \\
 S_1.datas = datainst_1^* & S_2.datas = datainst_1'^* datainst_2^* & (\vdash datainst_1 \preceq datainst_1')^* \\
 S_1.structs = structinst_1^* & S_2.structs = structinst_1'^* structinst_2^* & (\vdash structinst_1 \preceq structinst_1')^* \\
 S_1.arrays = arrayinst_1^* & S_2.arrays = arrayinst_1'^* arrayinst_2^* & (\vdash arrayinst_1 \preceq arrayinst_1')^* \\
 S_1.exns = exninst_1^* & S_2.exns = exninst_1'^* exninst_2^* & (\vdash exninst_1 \preceq exninst_1')^* \\
 \hline
 & \vdash S_1 \preceq S_2
 \end{array}$$

### Function Instance $funcinst$

- A function instance must remain unchanged.

$$\vdash funcinst \preceq funcinst$$

### Table Instance $tableinst$

- The table type  $tableinst.type$  must remain unchanged.
- The length of  $tableinst.elem$  must not shrink.

$$\frac{n_1 \leq n_2}{\vdash \{\text{type } tt, \text{elem } (fa_1^?)^{n_1}\} \preceq \{\text{type } tt, \text{elem } (fa_2^?)^{n_2}\}}$$

### Memory Instance $meminst$

- The memory type  $meminst.type$  must remain unchanged.
- The length of  $meminst.bytes$  must not shrink.

$$\frac{n_1 \leq n_2}{\vdash \{\text{type } mt, \text{bytes } b_1^{n_1}\} \preceq \{\text{type } mt, \text{bytes } b_2^{n_2}\}}$$

**Global Instance** *globalinst*

- The global type *globalinst.type* must remain unchanged.
- Let *mut t* be the structure of *globalinst.type*.
- If *mut* is *const*, then the value *globalinst.value* must remain unchanged.

$$\frac{mut = \text{var} \vee val_1 = val_2}{\vdash \{\text{type } (mut\ t), \text{value } val_1\} \preceq \{\text{type } (mut\ t), \text{value } val_2\}}$$

**Tag Instance** *taginst*

- A tag instance must remain unchanged.

$$\vdash taginst \preceq taginst$$

**Element Instance** *eleminst*

- The reference type *eleminst.type* must remain unchanged.
- The list *eleminst.elem* must:
  - either remain unchanged,
  - or shrink to length 0.

$$\vdash \{\text{type } t, \text{elem } a^*\} \preceq \{\text{type } t, \text{elem } a^*\}$$

$$\vdash \{\text{type } t, \text{elem } a^*\} \preceq \{\text{type } t, \text{elem } \epsilon\}$$

**Data Instance** *datainst*

- The list *datainst.bytes* must:
  - either remain unchanged,
  - or shrink to length 0.

$$\vdash \{\text{bytes } b^*\} \preceq \{\text{bytes } b^*\}$$

$$\vdash \{\text{bytes } b^*\} \preceq \{\text{bytes } \epsilon\}$$

**Structure Instance** *structinst*

- The defined type *structinst.type* must remain unchanged.
- Assert: due to store well-formedness, the expansion of *structinst.type* is a structure type.
- Let struct *fieldtype\** be the expansion of *structinst.type*.
- The length of the list *structinst.fields* must remain unchanged.
- Assert: due to store well-formedness, the length of *structinst.fields* is the same as the length of *fieldtype\**.
- For each field value *fieldval<sub>i</sub>* in *structinst.fields* and corresponding field type *fieldtype<sub>i</sub>* in *fieldtype\**:
  - Let *mut<sub>i</sub> st<sub>i</sub>* be the structure of *fieldtype<sub>i</sub>*.
  - If *mut<sub>i</sub>* is *const*, then the field value *fieldval<sub>i</sub>* must remain unchanged.

$$\frac{(mut = \text{var} \vee fieldval_1 = fieldval_2)^*}{\vdash \{\text{type } (mut\ st)^*, \text{fields } fieldval_1^*\} \preceq \{\text{type } (mut\ st)^*, \text{fields } fieldval_2^*\}}$$

**Array Instance** *arrayinst*

- The defined type *arrayinst.type* must remain unchanged.
- Assert: due to store well-formedness, the expansion of *arrayinst.type* is an array type.
- Let *array fieldtype* be the expansion of *arrayinst.type*.
- The length of the list *arrayinst.fields* must remain unchanged.
- Let *mut st* be the structure of *fieldtype*.
- If *mut* is *const*, then the sequence of field values *arrayinst.fields* must remain unchanged.

$$\frac{\text{mut} = \text{var} \vee \text{fieldval}_1^* = \text{fieldval}_2^*}{\vdash \{\text{type}(\text{mut st}), \text{fields } \text{fieldval}_1^*\} \preceq \{\text{type}(\text{mut st}), \text{fields } \text{fieldval}_2^*\}}$$

**Exception Instance** *exninst*

- An exception instance must remain unchanged.

$$\overline{\vdash \text{exninst} \preceq \text{exninst}}$$

**7.4.9 Theorems**

Given the definition of *valid configurations*, the standard soundness theorems hold.<sup>5254</sup>

**Theorem (Preservation).** If a *configuration*  $S;T$  is *valid* with *result type*  $[t^*]$  (i.e.,  $\vdash S;T : [t^*]$ ), and steps to  $S';T'$  (i.e.,  $S;T \hookrightarrow S';T'$ ), then  $S';T'$  is a *valid configuration* with the same *result type* (i.e.,  $\vdash S';T' : [t^*]$ ). Furthermore,  $S'$  is an *extension* of  $S$  (i.e.,  $\vdash S \preceq S'$ ).

A *terminal thread* is one whose sequence of *instructions* is a *result*. A *terminal configuration* is a configuration whose thread is terminal.

**Theorem (Progress).** If a *configuration*  $S;T$  is *valid* (i.e.,  $\vdash S;T : [t^*]$  for some *result type*  $[t^*]$ ), then either it is terminal, or it can step to some configuration  $S';T'$  (i.e.,  $S;T \hookrightarrow S';T'$ ).

From Preservation and Progress the soundness of the WebAssembly type system follows directly.

**Corollary (Soundness).** If a *configuration*  $S;T$  is *valid* (i.e.,  $\vdash S;T : [t^*]$  for some *result type*  $[t^*]$ ), then it either diverges or takes a finite number of steps to reach a terminal configuration  $S';T'$  (i.e.,  $S;T \hookrightarrow^* S';T'$ ) that is *valid* with the same *result type* (i.e.,  $\vdash S';T' : [t^*]$ ) and where  $S'$  is an *extension* of  $S$  (i.e.,  $\vdash S \preceq S'$ ).

In other words, every thread in a *valid configuration* either runs forever, traps, throws an exception, or terminates with a *result* that has the expected type. Consequently, given a *valid store*, no computation defined by *instantiation* or *invocation* of a *valid module* can “crash” or otherwise (mis)behave in ways not covered by the *execution* semantics given in this specification.

**7.5 Type System Properties****7.5.1 Principal Types**

The *type system* of WebAssembly features both *subtyping* and simple forms of *polymorphism* for *instruction types*. That has the effect that every instruction or instruction sequence can be classified with multiple different instruction types.

<sup>52</sup> A machine-verified version of the formalization and soundness proof of the PLDI 2017 paper is described in the following article: Conrad Watt. *Mechanising and Verifying the WebAssembly Specification*<sup>53</sup>. Proceedings of the 7th ACM SIGPLAN Conference on Certified Programs and Proofs (CPP 2018). ACM 2018.

<sup>53</sup> <https://dl.acm.org/citation.cfm?id=3167082>

<sup>54</sup> Machine-verified formalizations and soundness proofs of the semantics from the official specification are described in the following article: Conrad Watt, Xiaojia Rao, Jean Pichon-Pharabod, Martin Bodin, Philippa Gardner. *Two Mechanisations of WebAssembly 1.0*<sup>55</sup>. Proceedings of the 24th International Symposium on Formal Methods (FM 2021). Springer 2021.

<sup>55</sup> [https://link.springer.com/chapter/10.1007/978-3-030-90870-6\\_4](https://link.springer.com/chapter/10.1007/978-3-030-90870-6_4)

However, the typing rules still allow deriving *principal types* for instruction sequences. That is, every valid instruction sequence has one particular type scheme, possibly containing some unconstrained place holder *type variables*, that is a subtype of all its valid instruction types, after substituting its type variables with suitable specific types.

Moreover, when deriving an instruction type in a “forward” manner, i.e., the *input* of the instruction sequence is already fixed to specific types, then it has a principal *output* type expressible without type variables, up to a possibly [polymorphic stack](#) bottom representable with one single variable. In other words, “forward” principal types are effectively *closed*.

#### Note

For example, in isolation, the instruction `ref.as_non_null` has the type  $[(\text{ref } \text{null } ht)] \rightarrow [(\text{ref } ht)]$  for any choice of valid [heap type](#)  $ht$ . Moreover, if the input type  $[(\text{ref } \text{null } ht)]$  is already determined, i.e., a specific  $ht$  is given, then the output type  $[(\text{ref } ht)]$  is fully determined as well.

The implication of the latter property is that a validator for *complete* instruction sequences (as they occur in valid modules) can be implemented with a simple left-to-right [algorithm](#) that does not require the introduction of type variables.

A typing algorithm capable of handling *partial* instruction sequences (as might be considered for program analysis or program manipulation) needs to introduce type variables and perform substitutions, but it does not need to perform backtracking or record any non-syntactic constraints on these type variables.

Technically, the [syntax](#) of [heap](#), [value](#), and [result](#) types can be enriched with type variables as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{null} &::= \text{null}^? \mid \alpha_{\text{null}} \\ \text{heapttype} &::= \dots \mid \alpha_{\text{heapttype}} \\ \text{reftype} &::= \text{ref } \text{null } \text{heapttype} \\ \text{valtype} &::= \dots \mid \alpha_{\text{valtype}} \mid \alpha_{\text{numvectype}} \\ \text{resulttype} &::= [\alpha_{\text{valtype}^*}^? \text{ valtype}^*] \end{aligned}$$

where each  $\alpha_{xyz}$  ranges over a set of type variables for syntactic class  $xyz$ , respectively. The special class *numvectype* is defined as [numtype](#)  $\mid$  [vectype](#)  $\mid$  [bot](#), and is only needed to handle unannotated [select](#) instructions.

A type is *closed* when it does not contain any type variables, and *open* otherwise. A *type substitution*  $\sigma$  is a finite mapping from type variables to closed types of the respective syntactic class. When applied to an open type, it replaces the type variables  $\alpha$  from its domain with the respective  $\sigma(\alpha)$ .

**Theorem (Principal Types).** If an instruction sequence  $\text{instr}^*$  is [valid](#) with some closed [instruction type](#)  $\text{instrtype}$  (i.e.,  $C \vdash \text{instr}^* : \text{instrtype}$ ), then it is also valid with a possibly open instruction type  $\text{instrtype}_{\min}$  (i.e.,  $C \vdash \text{instr}^* : \text{instrtype}_{\min}$ ), such that for *every* closed type  $\text{instrtype}'$  with which  $\text{instr}^*$  is valid (i.e., for all  $C \vdash \text{instr}^* : \text{instrtype}'$ ), there exists a substitution  $\sigma$ , such that  $\sigma(\text{instrtype}_{\min})$  is a subtype of  $\text{instrtype}'$  (i.e.,  $C \vdash \sigma(\text{instrtype}_{\min}) \leq \text{instrtype}'$ ). Furthermore,  $\text{instrtype}_{\min}$  is unique up to the choice of type variables.

**Theorem (Closed Principal Forward Types).** If closed input type  $[t_1^*]$  is given and the instruction sequence  $\text{instr}^*$  is [valid](#) with [instruction type](#)  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x^*} [t_2^*]$  (i.e.,  $C \vdash \text{instr}^* : [t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x^*} [t_2^*]$ ), then it is also valid with instruction type  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x^*} [\alpha_{\text{valtype}^*}^? t^*]$  (i.e.,  $C \vdash \text{instr}^* : [t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x^*} [\alpha_{\text{valtype}^*}^? t^*]$ ), where all  $t^*$  are closed, such that for *every* closed result type  $[t_2'^*]$  with which  $\text{instr}^*$  is valid (i.e., for all  $C \vdash \text{instr}^* : [t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x^*} [t_2'^*]$ ), there exists a substitution  $\sigma$ , such that  $[t_2'^*] = [\sigma(\alpha_{\text{valtype}^*}^?) t^*]$ .

## 7.5.2 Type Lattice

The [Principal Types](#) property depends on the existence of a *greatest lower bound* for any pair of types.

**Theorem (Greatest Lower Bounds for Value Types).** For any two value types  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  that are [valid](#) (i.e.,  $C \vdash t_1 : \text{ok}$  and  $C \vdash t_2 : \text{ok}$ ), there exists a valid value type  $t$  that is a subtype of both  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  (i.e.,  $C \vdash t : \text{ok}$  and  $C \vdash t \leq t_1$  and  $C \vdash t \leq t_2$ ), such that *every* valid value type  $t'$  that also is a subtype of both  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  (i.e., for all  $C \vdash t' : \text{ok}$  and  $C \vdash t' \leq t_1$  and  $C \vdash t' \leq t_2$ ), is a subtype of  $t$  (i.e.,  $C \vdash t' \leq t$ ).

**Note**

The greatest lower bound of two types may be `bot`.

**Theorem (Conditional Least Upper Bounds for Value Types).** Any two value types  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  that are `valid` (i.e.,  $C \vdash t_1 : \text{ok}$  and  $C \vdash t_2 : \text{ok}$ ) either have no common supertype, or there exists a valid value type  $t$  that is a supertype of both  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  (i.e.,  $C \vdash t : \text{ok}$  and  $C \vdash t_1 \leq t$  and  $C \vdash t_2 \leq t$ ), such that every valid value type  $t'$  that also is a supertype of both  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  (i.e., for all  $C \vdash t' : \text{ok}$  and  $C \vdash t_1 \leq t'$  and  $C \vdash t_2 \leq t'$ ), is a supertype of  $t$  (i.e.,  $C \vdash t \leq t'$ ).

**Note**

If a top type was added to the type system, a least upper bound would exist for any two types.

**Corollary (Type Lattice).** Assuming the addition of a provisional top type, `value types` form a lattice with respect to their `subtype` relation.

Finally, value types can be partitioned into multiple disjoint hierarchies that are not related by subtyping, except through `bot`.

**Theorem (Disjoint Subtype Hierarchies).** The greatest lower bound of two `value types` is `bot` or `ref bot` if and only if they do not have a least upper bound.

In other words, types that do not have common supertypes, do not have common subtypes either (other than `bot` or `ref bot`), and vice versa.

**Note**

Types from disjoint hierarchies can safely be represented in mutually incompatible ways in an implementation, because their values can never flow to the same place.

### 7.5.3 Compositionality

`Valid instruction sequences` can be freely *composed*, as long as their types match up.

**Theorem (Composition).** If two instruction sequences  $\text{instr}_1^*$  and  $\text{instr}_2^*$  are valid with types  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x_1^*} [t^*]$  and  $[t^*] \rightarrow_{x_2^*} [t_2^*]$ , respectively (i.e.,  $C \vdash \text{instr}_1^* : [t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x_1^*} [t^*]$  and  $C \vdash \text{instr}_2^* : [t^*] \rightarrow_{x_2^*} [t_2^*]$ ), then the concatenated instruction sequence  $(\text{instr}_1^* \text{ instr}_2^*)$  is valid with type  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x_1^* x_2^*} [t_2^*]$  (i.e.,  $C \vdash \text{instr}_1^* \text{ instr}_2^* : [t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x_1^* x_2^*} [t_2^*]$ ).

**Note**

More generally, instead of a shared type  $[t^*]$ , it suffices if the output type of  $\text{instr}_1^*$  is a `subtype` of the input type of  $\text{instr}_2^*$ , since the subtype can always be weakened to its supertype by subsumption.

Inversely, valid instruction sequences can also freely be *decomposed*, that is, splitting them anywhere produces two instruction sequences that are both `valid`.

**Theorem (Decomposition).** If an instruction sequence  $\text{instr}^*$  that is valid with type  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x^*} [t_2^*]$  (i.e.,  $C \vdash \text{instr}^* : [t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x^*} [t_2^*]$ ) is split into two instruction sequences  $\text{instr}_1^*$  and  $\text{instr}_2^*$  at any point (i.e.,  $\text{instr}^* = \text{instr}_1^* \text{ instr}_2^*$ ), then these are separately valid with some types  $[t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x_1^*} [t^*]$  and  $[t^*] \rightarrow_{x_2^*} [t_2^*]$ , respectively (i.e.,  $C \vdash \text{instr}_1^* : [t_1^*] \rightarrow_{x_1^*} [t^*]$  and  $C \vdash \text{instr}_2^* : [t^*] \rightarrow_{x_2^*} [t_2^*]$ ), where  $x^* = x_1^* x_2^*$ .

**Note**

This property holds because validation is required even for unreachable code. Without that,  $instr_2^*$  might not be valid in isolation.

## 7.6 Validation Algorithm

The specification of WebAssembly [validation](#) is purely *declarative*. It describes the constraints that must be met by a [module](#) or [instruction](#) sequence to be valid.

This section sketches the skeleton of a sound and complete *algorithm* for effectively validating code, i.e., sequences of [instructions](#). (Other aspects of validation are straightforward to implement.)

In fact, the algorithm is expressed over the flat sequence of opcodes as occurring in the [binary format](#), and performs only a single pass over it. Consequently, it can be integrated directly into a decoder.

The algorithm is expressed in typed pseudo code whose semantics is intended to be self-explanatory.

### 7.6.1 Data Structures

#### Types

Value types are representable as sets of enumerations:

```
type num_type = I32 | I64 | F32 | F64
type vec_type = V128
type heap_type =
  Any | Eq | I31 | Struct | Array | None |
  Func | Nofunc | Exn | Noexn | Extern | Noextern | Bot |
  Def(def : def_type)
type ref_type = Ref(heap : heap_type, null : bool)
type val_type = num_type | vec_type | ref_type | Bot

func is_num(t : val_type) : bool =
  return t = I32 || t = I64 || t = F32 || t = F64 || t = Bot

func is_vec(t : val_type) : bool =
  return t = V128 || t = Bot

func is_ref(t : val_type) : bool =
  return not (is_num t || is_vec t) || t = Bot
```

Similarly, defined types `def_type` can be represented:

```
type pack_type = I8 | I16
type field_type = Field(val : val_type | pack_type, mut : bool)

type struct_type = Struct(fields : list(field_type))
type array_type = Array(fields : field_type)
type func_type = Func(params : list(val_type), results : list(val_type))
type comp_type = struct_type | array_type | func_type

type sub_type = Sub(super : list(def_type), body : comp_type, final : bool)
type rec_type = Rec(types : list(sub_type))

type def_type = Def(rec : rec_type, proj : int32)

func unpack_field(t : field_type) : val_type =
  if (it = I8 || t = I16) return I32
  return t
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
func expand_def(t : def_type) : comp_type =
  return t.rec.types[t.proj].body
```

These representations assume that all types have been *closed* by substituting all *type indices* (in *concrete heap types* and in *sub types*) with their respective *defined types*. This includes *recursive* references to enclosing *defined types*, such that type representations form graphs and may be *cyclic* for *recursive types*.

We assume that all types have been *canonicalized*, such that equality on two type representations holds if and only if their *closures* are syntactically equivalent, making it a constant-time check.

### Note

For the purpose of type canonicalization, recursive references from a *heap type* to an enclosing *recursive type* (i.e., forward edges in the graph that form a cycle) need to be distinguished from references to previously defined types. However, this distinction does not otherwise affect validation, so is ignored here. In the graph representation, all recursive types are effectively infinitely *unrolled*.

We further assume that *validation* and *subtyping* checks are defined on value types, as well as a few auxiliary functions on composite types:

```
func validate_val_type(t : val_type)
func validate_ref_type(t : ref_type)

func matches_val(t1 : val_type, t2 : val_type) : bool
func matches_ref(t1 : val_type, t2 : val_type) : bool

func is_func(t : comp_type) : bool
func is_struct(t : comp_type) : bool
func is_array(t : comp_type) : bool
```

Finally, the following function computes the least precise supertype of a given *heap type* (its corresponding top type):

```
func top_heap_type(t : heap_type) : heap_type =
  switch (t)
  case (Any | Eq | I31 | Struct | Array | None)
    return Any
  case (Func | Nofunc)
    return Func
  case (Extern | Noextern)
    return Extern
  case (Def(dt))
    switch (dt.rec.types[dt.proj].body)
    case (Struct(_) | Array(_))
      return Any
    case (Func(_))
      return Func
  case (Bot)
    raise CannotOccurInSource
```

### Context

Validation requires a *context* for checking uses of *indices*. For the purpose of presenting the algorithm, it is maintained in a set of global variables:

```

var return_type : list(val_type)
var types : array(def_type)
var locals : array(val_type)
var locals_init : array(bool)
var globals : array(global_type)
var funcs : array(func_type)
var tables : array(table_type)
var mems : array(mem_type)

```

This assumes suitable representations for the various `types` besides `val_type`, which are omitted here.

For locals, there is an additional array recording the initialization status of each local.

## Stacks

The algorithm uses three separate stacks: the *value stack*, the *control stack*, and the *initialization stack*. The value stack tracks the `types` of operand values on the *stack*. The control stack tracks surrounding *structured control instructions* and their associated *blocks*. The initialization stack records all *locals* that have been initialized since the beginning of the function.

```

type val_stack = stack(val_type)
type init_stack = stack(u32)

type ctrl_stack = stack(ctrl_frame)
type ctrl_frame = {
  opcode : opcode
  start_types : list(val_type)
  end_types : list(val_type)
  val_height : nat
  init_height : nat
  unreachable : bool
}

```

For each entered block, the control stack records a *control frame* with the originating opcode, the types on the top of the operand stack at the start and end of the block (used to check its result as well as branches), the height of the operand stack at the start of the block (used to check that operands do not underflow the current block), the height of the initialization stack at the start of the block (used to reset initialization status at the end of the block), and a flag recording whether the remainder of the block is unreachable (used to handle *stack-polymorphic* typing after branches).

For the purpose of presenting the algorithm, these stacks are simply maintained as global variables:

```

var vals : val_stack
var inits : init_stack
var ctrls : ctrl_stack

```

However, these variables are not manipulated directly by the main checking function, but through a set of auxiliary functions:

```

func push_val(type : val_type) =
  vals.push(type)

func pop_val() : val_type =
  if (vals.size() = ctrls[0].height && ctrls[0].unreachable) return Bot
  error_if(vals.size() = ctrls[0].height)
  return vals.pop()

func pop_val(expect : val_type) : val_type =
  let actual = pop_val()

```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```

error_if(not matches_val(actual, expect))
return actual

func pop_num() : num_type | Bot =
  let actual = pop_val()
  error_if(not is_num(actual))
  return actual

func pop_ref() : ref_type =
  let actual = pop_val()
  error_if(not is_ref(actual))
  if (actual = Bot) return Ref(Bot, false)
  return actual

func push_vals(types : list(val_type)) = foreach (t in types) push_val(t)
func pop_vals(types : list(val_type)) : list(val_type) =
  var popped := []
  foreach (t in reverse(types)) popped.prepend(pop_val(t))
  return popped

```

Pushing an operand value simply pushes the respective type to the value stack.

Popping an operand value checks that the value stack does not underflow the current block and then removes one type. But first, a special case is handled where the block contains no known values, but has been marked as unreachable. That can occur after an unconditional branch, when the stack is typed *polymorphically*. In that case, the Bot type is returned, because that is a *principal* choice trivially satisfying all use constraints.

A second function for popping an operand value takes an expected type, which the actual operand type is checked against. The types may differ by subtyping, including the case where the actual type is Bot, and thereby matches unconditionally. The function returns the actual type popped from the stack.

Finally, there are accumulative functions for pushing or popping multiple operand types.

#### Note

The notation `stack[i]` is meant to index the stack from the top, so that, e.g., `ctrls[0]` accesses the element pushed last.

The initialization stack and the initialization status of locals is manipulated through the following functions:

```

func get_local(idx : u32) =
  error_if(not locals_init[idx])

func set_local(idx : u32) =
  if (not locals_init[idx])
    inits.push(idx)
    locals_init[idx] := true

func reset_locals(height : nat) =
  while (inits.size() > height)
    locals_init[inits.pop()] := false

```

Getting a local verifies that it is known to be initialized. When a local is set that was not set already, then its initialization status is updated and the change is recorded in the initialization stack. Thus, the initialization status of all locals can be reset to a previous state by denoting a specific height in the initialization stack.

The size of the initialization stack is bounded by the number of (non-defaultable) locals in a function, so can be preallocated by an algorithm.

The control stack is likewise manipulated through auxiliary functions:

```
func push_ctrl(opcode : opcode, in : list(val_type), out : list(val_type)) =
  let frame = ctrl_frame(opcode, in, out, vals.size(), inits.size(), false)
  ctrls.push(frame)
  push_vals(in)

func pop_ctrl() : ctrl_frame =
  error_if(ctrls.is_empty())
  let frame = ctrls[0]
  pop_vals(frame.end_types)
  error_if(vals.size() != frame.val_height)
  reset_locals(frame.init_height)
  ctrls.pop()
  return frame

func label_types(frame : ctrl_frame) : list(val_types) =
  return (if (frame.opcode = loop) frame.start_types else frame.end_types)

func unreachable() =
  vals.resize(ctrls[0].height)
  ctrls[0].unreachable := true
```

Pushing a control frame takes the types of the label and result values. It allocates a new frame record recording them along with the current height of the operand stack and marks the block as reachable.

Popping a frame first checks that the control stack is not empty. It then verifies that the operand stack contains the right types of values expected at the end of the exited block and pops them off the operand stack. Afterwards, it checks that the stack has shrunk back to its initial height. Finally, it undoes all changes to the initialization status of locals that happend inside the block.

The type of the [label](#) associated with a control frame is either that of the stack at the start or the end of the frame, determined by the opcode that it originates from.

Finally, the current frame can be marked as unreachable. In that case, all existing operand types are purged from the value stack, in order to allow for the [stack-polymorphism](#) logic in `pop_val` to take effect. Because every function has an implicit outermost label that corresponds to an implicit block frame, it is an invariant of the validation algorithm that there always is at least one frame on the control stack when validating an instruction, and hence, `ctrls[0]` is always defined.

#### Note

Even with the unreachable flag set, consecutive operands are still pushed to and popped from the operand stack. That is necessary to detect invalid [examples](#) like `(unreachable (i32.const) i64.add)`. However, a polymorphic stack cannot underflow, but instead generates Bot types as needed.

## 7.6.2 Validation of Opcode Sequences

The following function shows the validation of a number of representative instructions that manipulate the stack. Other instructions are checked in a similar manner.

```
func validate(opcode) =
  switch (opcode)
  case (i32.add)
    pop_val(I32)
    pop_val(I32)
    push_val(I32)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

case (drop)
  pop_val()

case (select)
  pop_val(I32)
  let t1 = pop_val()
  let t2 = pop_val()
  error_if(not (is_num(t1) && is_num(t2) || is_vec(t1) && is_vec(t2)))
  error_if(t1 != t2 && t1 != Bot && t2 != Bot)
  push_val(if (t1 = Bot) t2 else t1)

case (select t)
  pop_val(I32)
  pop_val(t)
  pop_val(t)
  push_val(t)

case (ref.is_null)
  pop_ref()
  push_val(I32)

case (ref.as_non_null)
  let rt = pop_ref()
  push_val(Ref(rt.heap, false))

case (ref.test rt)
  validate_ref_type(rt)
  pop_val(Ref(top_heap_type(rt), true))
  push_val(I32)

case (local.get x)
  get_local(x)
  push_val(locals[x])

case (local.set x)
  pop_val(locals[x])
  set_local(x)

case (unreachable)
  unreachable()

case (block t1*->t2*)
  pop_vals([t1*])
  push_ctrl(block, [t1*], [t2*])

case (loop t1*->t2*)
  pop_vals([t1*])
  push_ctrl(loop, [t1*], [t2*])

case (if t1*->t2*)
  pop_val(I32)
  pop_vals([t1*])
  push_ctrl(if, [t1*], [t2*])

case (end)
  let frame = pop_ctrl()

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    push_vals(frame.end_types)

  case (else)
    let frame = pop_ctrl()
    error_if(frame.opcode != if)
    push_ctrl(else, frame.start_types, frame.end_types)

  case (br n)
    error_if(ctrls.size() < n)
    pop_vals(label_types(ctrls[n]))
    unreachable()

  case (br_if n)
    error_if(ctrls.size() < n)
    pop_val(I32)
    pop_vals(label_types(ctrls[n]))
    push_vals(label_types(ctrls[n]))

  case (br_table n* m)
    pop_val(I32)
    error_if(ctrls.size() < m)
    let arity = label_types(ctrls[m]).size()
    foreach (n in n*)
      error_if(ctrls.size() < n)
      error_if(label_types(ctrls[n]).size() != arity)
      push_vals(pop_vals(label_types(ctrls[n])))
    pop_vals(label_types(ctrls[m]))
    unreachable()

  case (br_on_null n)
    error_if(ctrls.size() < n)
    let rt = pop_ref()
    pop_vals(label_types(ctrls[n]))
    push_vals(label_types(ctrls[n]))
    push_val(Ref(rt.heap, false))

  case (br_on_cast n rt1 rt2)
    validate_ref_type(rt1)
    validate_ref_type(rt2)
    pop_val(rt1)
    push_val(rt2)
    pop_vals(label_types(ctrls[n]))
    push_vals(label_types(ctrls[n]))
    pop_val(rt2)
    push_val(diff_ref_type(rt2, rt1))

  case (return)
    pop_vals(return_types)
    unreachable()

  case (call_ref x)
    let t = expand_def(types[x])
    error_if(not is_func(t))
    pop_vals(t.params)
    pop_val(Ref(Def(types[x])))
    push_vals(t.results)

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

case (return_call_ref x)
  let t = expand_def(types[x])
  error_if(not is_func(t))
  pop_vals(t.params)
  pop_val(Ref(Def(types[x])))
  error_if(t.results.len() != return_types.len())
  push_vals(t.results)
  pop_vals(return_types)
  unreachable()

case (struct.new x)
  let t = expand_def(types[x])
  error_if(not is_struct(t))
  for (ti in reverse(t.fields))
    pop_val(unpack_field(ti))
  push_val(Ref(Def(types[x])))

case (struct.set x n)
  let t = expand_def(types[x])
  error_if(not is_struct(t) || n >= t.fields.len())
  pop_val(Ref(Def(types[x])))
  pop_val(unpack_field(st.fields[n]))

case (throw x)
  pop_vals(tags[x].type.params)
  unreachable()

case (try_table t1->t2* handler*)
  pop_vals([t1*])
  foreach (handler in handler*)
    error_if(ctrls.size() < handler.label)
    push_ctrl(catch, [], label_types(ctrls[handler.label]))
    switch (handler.clause)
      case (catch x)
        push_vals(tags[x].type.params)
      case (catch_ref x)
        push_vals(tags[x].type.params)
        push_val(Exnref)
      case (catch_all)
        skip
      case (catch_all_ref)
        push_val(Exnref)
    pop_ctrl()
  push_ctrl(try_table, [t1*], [t2*])

```

**Note**

It is an invariant under the current WebAssembly instruction set that an operand of Bot type is never duplicated on the stack. This would change if the language were extended with stack instructions like `dup`. Under such an extension, the above algorithm would need to be refined by replacing the Bot type with proper *type variables* to ensure that all uses are consistent.

## 7.7 Custom Sections and Annotations

This appendix defines dedicated *custom sections* for WebAssembly’s *binary format* and *annotations* for the text format. Such sections or annotations do not contribute to, or otherwise affect, the WebAssembly semantics, and may be ignored by an implementation. However, they provide useful meta data that implementations can make use of to improve user experience or take compilation hints.

### 7.7.1 Name Section

The *name section* is a *custom section* whose name string is itself ‘name’. The name section should appear only once in a module, and only after the *data section*.

The purpose of this section is to attach printable names to definitions in a module, which e.g. can be used by a debugger or when parts of the module are to be rendered in *text form*.

#### Note

All *names* are represented in *Unicode*<sup>56</sup> encoded in UTF-8. Names need not be unique.

#### Subsections

The *data* of a name section consists of a sequence of *subsections*. Each subsection consists of a

- a one-byte subsection *id*,
- the *u32* *size* of the contents, in bytes,
- the actual *contents*, whose structure is dependent on the subsection id.

```

namesec      ::= section0(namedata)
namedata     ::= n:name (if n = ‘name’)
               modulenamessubsec?
               funcnamesubsec?
               localnamesubsec?
               typenamesubsec?
               fieldnamesubsec?
               tagnamesubsec?
namesubsectionN(B) ::= N:byte size:u32 B (if size = ||B||)

```

The following subsection ids are used:

Id	Subsection
0	module name
1	function names
2	local names
4	type names
10	field names
11	tag names

Each subsection may occur at most once, and in order of increasing id.

#### Name Maps

A *name map* assigns *names* to *indices* in a given *index space*. It consists of a *list* of index/name pairs in order of increasing index value. Each index must be unique, but the assigned names need not be.

```

namemap      ::= list(nameassoc)
nameassoc    ::= idx name

```

<sup>56</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/versions/latest/>

An *indirect name map* assigns [names](#) to a two-dimensional [index space](#), where secondary indices are *grouped* by primary indices. It consists of a list of primary index/name map pairs in order of increasing index value, where each name map in turn maps secondary indices to names. Each primary index must be unique, and likewise each secondary index per individual name map.

```
indirectnamemap    ::= list(indirectnameassoc)
indirectnameassoc  ::= idx namemap
```

## Module Names

The *module name subsection* has the id 0. It simply consists of a single [name](#) that is assigned to the module itself.

```
modulenamesubsec  ::= namesubsection0(name)
```

## Function Names

The *function name subsection* has the id 1. It consists of a [name map](#) assigning function names to [function indices](#).

```
funcnamesubsec    ::= namesubsection1(namemap)
```

## Local Names

The *local name subsection* has the id 2. It consists of an [indirect name map](#) assigning local names to [local indices](#) grouped by [function indices](#).

```
localnamesubsec   ::= namesubsection2(indirectnamemap)
```

## Type Names

The *type name subsection* has the id 4. It consists of a [name map](#) assigning type names to [type indices](#).

```
typenamesubsec    ::= namesubsection4(namemap)
```

## Field Names

The *field name subsection* has the id 10. It consists of an [indirect name map](#) assigning field names to [field indices](#) grouped by the [type indices](#) of their respective [structure types](#).

```
fieldnamesubsec   ::= namesubsection10(indirectnamemap)
```

## Tag Names

The *tag name subsection* has the id 11. It consists of a [name map](#) assigning tag names to [tag indices](#).

```
tagnamesubsec     ::= namesubsection11(namemap)
```

## 7.7.2 Name Annotations

*Name annotations* are the textual analogue to the [name section](#) and provide a textual representation for it. Consequently, their id is `@name`.

Analogous to the name section, name annotations are allowed on [modules](#), [functions](#), and [locals](#) (including [parameters](#)). They can be placed where the text format allows binding occurrences of respective [identifiers](#). If both an identifier and a name annotation are given, the annotation is expected *after* the identifier. In that case, the annotation takes precedence over the identifier as a textual representation of the binding's name. At most one name annotation may be given per binding.

All name annotations have the following format:

```
nameannot ::= '(@name' string ')
```

### Note

All name annotations can be arbitrary UTF-8 [strings](#). Names need not be unique.

### Module Names

A *module name annotation* must be placed on a [module](#) definition, directly after the 'module' keyword, or if present, after the following module [identifier](#).

```
modulenameannot ::= nameannot
```

### Function Names

A *function name annotation* must be placed on a [function](#) definition or function [import](#), directly after the 'func' keyword, or if present, after the following function [identifier](#) or.

```
funcnameannot ::= nameannot
```

### Parameter Names

A *parameter name annotation* must be placed on a [parameter](#) declaration, directly after the 'param' keyword, or if present, after the following parameter [identifier](#). It may only be placed on a declaration that declares exactly one parameter.

```
paramnameannot ::= nameannot
```

### Local Names

A *local name annotation* must be placed on a [local](#) declaration, directly after the 'local' keyword, or if present, after the following local [identifier](#). It may only be placed on a declaration that declares exactly one local.

```
localnameannot ::= nameannot
```

### Type Names

A *type name annotation* must be placed on a [type](#) declaration, directly after the 'type' keyword, or if present, after the following type [identifier](#).

```
typenameannot ::= nameannot
```



## Field Names

A *field name annotation* must be placed on the field of a [structure type](#), directly after the ‘field’ keyword, or if present, after the following field [identifier](#). It may only be placed on a declaration that declares exactly one field.

```
fieldnameannot ::= nameannot
```

## Tag Names

A *tag name annotation* must be placed on a [tag declaration](#) or tag [import](#), directly after the ‘tag’ keyword, or if present, after the following tag [identifier](#).

```
tagnameannot ::= nameannot
```

### 7.7.3 Custom Annotations

*Custom annotations* are a generic textual representation for any [custom section](#). Their id is @custom. By generating custom annotations, tools converting between [binary format](#) and [text format](#) can maintain and round-trip the content of custom sections even when they do not recognize them.

Custom annotations must be placed inside a [module](#) definition. They must occur anywhere after the ‘module’ keyword, or if present, after the following module [identifier](#). They must not be nested into other constructs.

```
customannot ::= '(@custom' string customplace? datastring ')'
customplace ::= '(' 'before' 'first' ')'
              | '(' 'before' sec ')'
              | '(' 'after' sec ')'
              | '(' 'after' 'last' ')'
sec          ::= 'type'
              | 'import'
              | 'func'
              | 'table'
              | 'memory'
              | 'global'
              | 'export'
              | 'start'
              | 'elem'
              | 'code'
              | 'data'
              | 'datacount'
```

The first [string](#) in a custom annotation denotes the name of the custom section it represents. The remaining strings collectively represent the section’s payload data, written as a [data string](#), which can be split up into a possibly empty sequence of individual string literals (similar to [data segments](#)).

An arbitrary number of custom annotations (even of the same name) may occur in a module, each defining a separate custom section when converting to [binary format](#). Placement of the sections in the binary can be customized via explicit *placement* directives, that position them either directly before or directly after a known section. That section must exist and be non-empty in the binary encoding of the annotated module. The placements (before first) and (after last) denote virtual sections before the first and after the last known section, respectively. When the placement directive is omitted, it defaults to (after last).

If multiple placement directives appear for the same position, then the sections are all placed there, in order of their appearance in the text. For this purpose, the position after a section is considered different from the position before the consecutive section, and the former occurs before the latter.

**Note**

Future versions of WebAssembly may introduce additional sections between others or at the beginning or end of a module. Using `first` and `last` guarantees that placement will still go before or after any future section, respectively.

If a custom section with a specific section id is given as well as annotations representing the same custom section (e.g., `@name` annotations as well as a `@custom` annotation for a name section), then two sections are assumed to be created. Their relative placement will depend on the placement directive given for the `@custom` annotation as well as the implicit placement requirements of the custom section, which are applied to the other annotation.

**Note**

For example, the following module,

```
(module
  (@custom "A" "aaa")
  (type $t (func))
  (@custom "B" (after func) "bbb")
  (@custom "C" (before func) "ccc")
  (@custom "D" (after last) "ddd")
  (table 10 funcref)
  (func (type $t))
  (@custom "E" (after import) "eee")
  (@custom "F" (before type) "fff")
  (@custom "G" (after data) "ggg")
  (@custom "H" (after code) "hhh")
  (@custom "I" (after func) "iii")
  (@custom "J" (before func) "jjj")
  (@custom "K" (before first) "kkk")
)
```

will result in the following section ordering:

```
custom section "K"
custom section "F"
type section
custom section "E"
custom section "C"
custom section "J"
function section
custom section "B"
custom section "I"
table section
code section
custom section "H"
custom section "G"
custom section "A"
custom section "D"
```

## 7.8 Change History

Since the original release 1.0 of the WebAssembly specification, a number of proposals for extensions have been integrated. The following sections provide an overview of what has changed.

## 7.8.1 Release 2.0

### Sign Extension Instructions

Added new numeric instructions for performing sign extension within integer representations.<sup>57</sup>

- New numeric instructions:
  - `inn.extendN_s`

### Non-trapping Float-to-Int Conversions

Added new conversion instructions that avoid trapping when converting a floating-point number to an integer.<sup>58</sup>

- New numeric instructions:
  - `inn.trunc_sat_fmm_sx`

### Multiple Values

Generalized the result type of blocks and functions to allow for multiple values; in addition, introduced the ability to have block parameters.<sup>59</sup>

- **Function types** allow more than one result
- **Block types** can be arbitrary function types

### Reference Types

Added `funcref` and `externref` as new value types and respective instructions.<sup>60</sup>

- New reference value types:
  - `funcref`
  - `externref`
- New reference instructions:
  - `ref.null`
  - `ref.func`
  - `ref.is_null`
- Extended parametric instruction:
  - `select` with optional type immediate
- New declarative form of `element` segment

### Table Instructions

Added instructions to directly access and modify tables.<sup>60</sup>

- **Table types** allow any **reference type** as element type
- New table instructions:
  - `table.get`
  - `table.set`
  - `table.size`
  - `table.grow`

<sup>57</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/sign-extension-ops/>

<sup>58</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/nontrapping-float-to-int-conversion/>

<sup>59</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/multi-value/>

<sup>60</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/reference-types/>

## Multiple Tables

Added the ability to use multiple tables per module.<sup>Page 303, 60</sup>

- Modules may
  - define multiple tables
  - import multiple tables
  - export multiple tables
- Table instructions take a table index immediate:
  - table.get
  - table.set
  - table.size
  - table.grow
  - call\_indirect
- Element segments take a table index

## Bulk Memory and Table Instructions

Added instructions that modify ranges of memory or table entries.<sup>Page 303, 6061</sup>

- New memory instructions:
  - memory.fill
  - memory.init
  - memory.copy
  - data.drop
- New table instructions:
  - table.fill
  - table.init
  - table.copy
  - elem.drop
- New passive form of data segment
- New passive form of element segment
- New data count section in binary format
- Active data and element segments boundaries are no longer checked at compile time but may trap instead

## Vector Instructions

Added vector type and instructions that manipulate multiple numeric values in parallel (also known as *SIMD*, single instruction multiple data)<sup>62</sup>

- New value type:
  - v128
- New memory instructions:
  - v128.load
  - v128.loadNxm\_sx

---

<sup>61</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/bulk-memory-operations/>

<sup>62</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/simd/>

- `v128.loadN_zero`
- `v128.loadN_splat`
- `v128.loadN_lane`
- `v128.store`
- `v128.storeN_lane`
- New constant **vector instruction**:
  - `v128.const`
- New unary **vector instructions**:
  - `v128.not`
  - `iNxM.abs`
  - `iNxM.neg`
  - `i8x16.popcnt`
  - `fNxM.abs`
  - `fNxM.neg`
  - `fNxM.sqrt`
  - `fNxM.ceil`
  - `fNxM.floor`
  - `fNxM.trunc`
  - `fNxM.nearest`
- New binary **vector instructions**:
  - `v128.and`
  - `v128.andnot`
  - `v128.or`
  - `v128.xor`
  - `iNxM.add`
  - `iNxM.sub`
  - `iNxM.mul`
  - `iNxM.add_sat_sx`
  - `iNxM.sub_sat_sx`
  - `iNxM.min_sx`
  - `iNxM.max_sx`
  - `iNxM.shl`
  - `iNxM.shr_sx`
  - `fNxM.add`
  - `fNxM.sub`
  - `fNxM.mul`
  - `fNxM.div`
  - `i16x8.extadd_pairwise_i8x16_sx`
  - `i32x4.extadd_pairwise_i16x8_sx`

- $iN \times M$ .extmul\_half\_  $iN' \times M'$  \_ $sx$
- i16x8.q15mulr\_sat\_s
- i32x4.dot\_i16x8\_s
- i8x16.avgr\_u
- i16x8.avgr\_u
- $fN \times M$ .min
- $fN \times M$ .max
- $fN \times M$ .pmin
- $fN \times M$ .pmax
- New ternary **vector instruction**:
  - v128.bitselect
- New test **vector instructions**:
  - v128.any\_true
  - $iN \times M$ .all\_true
- New relational **vector instructions**:
  - $iN \times M$ .eq
  - $iN \times M$ .ne
  - $iN \times M$ .lt\_  $sx$
  - $iN \times M$ .gt\_  $sx$
  - $iN \times M$ .le\_  $sx$
  - $iN \times M$ .ge\_  $sx$
  - $fN \times M$ .eq
  - $fN \times M$ .ne
  - $fN \times M$ .lt
  - $fN \times M$ .gt
  - $fN \times M$ .le
  - $fN \times M$ .ge
- New conversion **vector instructions**:
  - i32x4.trunc\_sat\_f32x4\_  $sx$
  - i32x4.trunc\_sat\_f64x2\_  $sx$  \_zero
  - f32x4.convert\_i32x4\_  $sx$
  - f32x4.demote\_f64x2\_zero
  - f64x2.convert\_low\_i32x4\_  $sx$
  - f64x2.promote\_low\_f32x4
- New lane access **vector instructions**:
  - $iN \times M$ .extract\_lane\_  $sx$  ?
  - $iN \times M$ .replace\_lane
  - $fN \times M$ .extract\_lane
  - $fN \times M$ .replace\_lane

- New lane splitting/combining [vector instructions](#):
  - `iNxM.extend_half_iN'M'_sx`
  - `i8x16.narrow_i16x8_sx`
  - `i16x8.narrow_i32x4_sx`
- New byte reordering [vector instructions](#):
  - `i8x16.shuffle`
  - `i8x16.swizzle`
- New injection/projection [vector instructions](#):
  - `iNxM.splat`
  - `fNxM.splat`
  - `iNxM.bitmask`

## 7.8.2 Release 3.0

### Extended Constant Expressions

Allowed basic numeric computations in constant expressions.<sup>63</sup>

- Extended set of [constant instructions](#) with:
  - `inn.add`
  - `inn.sub`
  - `inn.mul`
  - `global.get` for any previously declared immutable `global`

#### Note

The [garbage collection](#) extension added further constant instructions.

### Tail Calls

Added instructions to perform tail calls.<sup>64</sup>

- New [control instructions](#):
  - `return_call`
  - `return_call_indirect`

### Exception Handling

Added tag definitions, imports, and exports, and instructions to throw and catch exceptions<sup>65</sup>

- [Modules](#) may
  - `define` tags
  - `import` tags
  - `export` tags
- New [heap types](#):
  - `exn`

<sup>63</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/extended-const/>

<sup>64</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/tail-call/>

<sup>65</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/exception-handling/>

- noexn
- New [reference type](#) short-hands:
  - exnref
  - nullexnref
- New [control instructions](#):
  - throw
  - throw\_ref
  - try\_table
- New [tag section](#) in binary format.

## Multiple Memories

Added the ability to use multiple memories per module.<sup>66</sup>

- [Modules](#) may
  - [define multiple memories](#)
  - [import multiple memories](#)
  - [export multiple memories](#)
- [Memory instructions](#) take a [memory index](#) immediate:
  - [memory.size](#)
  - [memory.grow](#)
  - [memory.fill](#)
  - [memory.copy](#)
  - [memory.init](#)
  - [t.load](#)
  - [t.store](#)
  - [t.loadN<sub>sx</sub>](#)
  - [t.storeN](#)
  - [v128.loadN<sub>xM<sub>sx</sub></sub>](#)
  - [v128.loadN<sub>zero</sub>](#)
  - [v128.loadN<sub>splat</sub>](#)
  - [v128.loadN<sub>lane</sub>](#)
  - [v128.storeN<sub>lane</sub>](#)
- [Data segments](#) take a [memory index](#)

## 64-bit Address Space

Added the ability to declare an [i64 address type](#) for tables and memories.<sup>67</sup>

- [Address types](#) denote a subset of the integral number types
- [Table types](#) include an [address type](#)
- [Memory types](#) include an [address type](#)

---

<sup>66</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/multi-memory/>

<sup>67</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/memory64/>



- Operand types of `table` and `memory` instructions now depend on the subject's declared address type:
  - `table.get`
  - `table.set`
  - `table.size`
  - `table.grow`
  - `table.fill`
  - `table.copy`
  - `table.init`
  - `memory.size`
  - `memory.grow`
  - `memory.fill`
  - `memory.copy`
  - `memory.init`
  - `t.load`
  - `t.store`
  - `t.loadNxx`
  - `t.storeN`
  - `v128.loadNxMxx`
  - `v128.loadNzero`
  - `v128.loadNsplat`
  - `v128.loadNlane`
  - `v128.storeNlane`

## Typeful References

Added more precise types for references.<sup>68</sup>

- New generalised form of `reference` types:
  - `(ref null? heaptype)`
- New class of `heap` types:
  - `func`
  - `extern`
  - `typeidx`
- Basic subtyping on `reference` and `value` types
- New `reference` instructions:
  - `ref.as_non_null`
  - `br_on_null`
  - `br_on_non_null`
- New `control` instruction:
  - `call_ref`

---

<sup>68</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/function-references/>

- Refined typing of [reference instruction](#):
  - [ref.func](#) with more precise result type
- Refined typing of [local instructions](#) and [instruction sequences](#) to track the [initialization status](#) of [locals](#) with non-defaultable type
- Refined decoding of [active element segments](#) with implicit element type and plain function indices (opcode 0) to produce [non-nullable reference type](#).
- Extended [table definitions](#) with optional initializer expression

## Garbage Collection

Added managed reference types.<sup>69</sup>

- New forms of [heap types](#):
  - [any](#)
  - [eq](#)
  - [i31](#)
  - [struct](#)
  - [array](#)
  - [none](#)
  - [nofunc](#)
  - [noextern](#)
- New [reference type](#) short-hands:
  - [anyref](#)
  - [eqref](#)
  - [i31ref](#)
  - [structref](#)
  - [arrayref](#)
  - [nullref](#)
  - [nullfuncref](#)
  - [nullexternref](#)
- New forms of type definitions:
  - [structure](#)
  - [array types](#)
  - [sub types](#)
  - [recursive types](#)
- Enriched [subtyping](#) based on explicitly declared [sub types](#) and the new heap types
- New generic [reference instructions](#):
  - [ref.eq](#)
  - [ref.test](#)
  - [ref.cast](#)
  - [br\\_on\\_cast](#)

---

<sup>69</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/gc/>

- `br_on_cast_fail`
- New reference instructions for unboxed scalars:
  - `ref.i31`
  - `i31.get_sx`
- New reference instructions for structure types:
  - `struct.new`
  - `struct.new_default`
  - `struct.get_sx?`
  - `struct.set`
- New reference instructions for array types:
  - `array.new`
  - `array.new_default`
  - `array.new_fixed`
  - `array.new_data`
  - `array.new_elem`
  - `array.get_sx?`
  - `array.set`
  - `array.len`
  - `array.fill`
  - `array.copy`
  - `array.init_data`
  - `array.init_elem`
- New reference instructions for converting external types:
  - `any.convert_extern`
  - `extern.convert_any`
- Extended set of constant instructions with:
  - `ref.i31`
  - `struct.new`
  - `struct.new_default`
  - `array.new`
  - `array.new_default`
  - `array.new_fixed`
  - `any.convert_extern`
  - `extern.convert_any`

## Relaxed Vector Instructions

Added new *relaxed* vector instructions, whose behaviour is non-deterministic and implementation-dependent.<sup>70</sup>

- New binary vector instruction:

---

<sup>70</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/relaxed-simd/>

- `fNxM.relaxed_min`
- `fNxM.relaxed_max`
- `i16x8.relaxed_q15mulr_s`
- `i16x8.relaxed_dot_i8x16_i7x16_s`
- New ternary **vector instruction**:
  - `fNxM.relaxed_madd`
  - `fNxM.relaxed_nmadd`
  - `iNxM.relaxed_laneselect`
  - `i32x4.relaxed_dot_i8x16_i7x16_add_s`
- New conversion **vector instructions**:
  - `i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_sx`
  - `i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f64x2_sx_zero`
- New byte reordering **vector instruction**:
  - `i8x16.relaxed_swizzle`

## Profiles

Introduced the concept of **profile** for specifying language subsets.

- A new profile defining a **deterministic** mode of execution.

## Custom Annotations

Added generic syntax for custom annotations in the text format, mirroring the role of custom sections in the binary format.<sup>71</sup>

- **Annotations** of the form ‘(`@id ...`)’ are allowed anywhere in the **text format**
- **Identifiers** can be escaped as ‘`@`’ ... ’’ with arbitrary **names**
- Defined **name annotations** ‘(`@name " ... "`)’ for:
  - **module names**
  - **type names**
  - **function names**
  - **local names**
  - **field names**
- Defined **custom annotation** ‘(`@custom " ... "`)’ to represent arbitrary **custom sections** in the text format

## 7.9 Index of Types

Category	Constructor	Binary Opcode
Type index	<i>x</i>	(positive number as <code>s32</code> or <code>u32</code> )
Number type	<code>i32</code>	<code>0x7F</code> (-1 as <code>s7</code> )
Number type	<code>i64</code>	<code>0x7E</code> (-2 as <code>s7</code> )
Number type	<code>f32</code>	<code>0x7D</code> (-3 as <code>s7</code> )
Number type	<code>f64</code>	<code>0x7C</code> (-4 as <code>s7</code> )
Vector type	<code>v128</code>	<code>0x7B</code> (-5 as <code>s7</code> )

continues on next page

<sup>71</sup> <https://github.com/WebAssembly/spec/tree/main/proposals/annotations/>

Table 1 – continued from previous page

Category	Constructor	Binary Opcode
(reserved)		0x7A .. 0x79
Packed type	i8	0x78 (-8 as <i>s7</i> )
Packed type	i16	0x77 (-9 as <i>s7</i> )
(reserved)		0x78 .. 0x75
Heap type	noexn	0x74 (-14 as <i>s7</i> )
Heap type	nofunc	0x73 (-13 as <i>s7</i> )
Heap type	noextern	0x72 (-14 as <i>s7</i> )
Heap type	none	0x71 (-15 as <i>s7</i> )
Heap type	func	0x70 (-16 as <i>s7</i> )
Heap type	extern	0x6F (-17 as <i>s7</i> )
Heap type	any	0x6E (-18 as <i>s7</i> )
Heap type	eq	0x6D (-19 as <i>s7</i> )
Heap type	i31	0x6C (-20 as <i>s7</i> )
Heap type	struct	0x6B (-21 as <i>s7</i> )
Heap type	array	0x6A (-22 as <i>s7</i> )
Heap type	exn	0x69 (-23 as <i>s7</i> )
(reserved)		0x68 .. 0x65
Reference type	ref	0x64 (-28 as <i>s7</i> )
Reference type	ref null	0x63 (-29 as <i>s7</i> )
(reserved)		0x62 .. 0x61
Composite type	func [ <i>valtype</i> <sup>*</sup> ] → [ <i>valtype</i> <sup>*</sup> ]	0x60 (-32 as <i>s7</i> )
Composite type	struct <i>fieldtype</i> <sup>*</sup>	0x5F (-33 as <i>s7</i> )
Composite type	array <i>fieldtype</i>	0x5E (-34 as <i>s7</i> )
(reserved)		0x5D .. 0x51
Sub type	sub <i>typeid</i> <sup>*</sup> <i>comptype</i>	0x50 (-48 as <i>s7</i> )
Sub type	sub final <i>typeid</i> <sup>*</sup> <i>comptype</i>	0x4F (-49 as <i>s7</i> )
Recursive type	rec <i>subtype</i> <sup>*</sup>	0x4E (-50 as <i>s7</i> )
(reserved)		0x4D .. 0x41
Result type	[ <i>e</i> ]	0x40 (-64 as <i>s7</i> )
Table type	<i>limits reftype</i>	(none)
Memory type	<i>limits</i>	(none)
Global type	<i>mut valtype</i>	(none)
Tag type	<i>functype</i>	(none)

## 7.10 Index of Instructions

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
unreachable	0x00	$[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
nop	0x01	$[] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
block <i>bt</i>	0x02	$[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
loop <i>bt</i>	0x03	$[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
if <i>bt</i>	0x04	$[t_1^* \text{ i32}] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
else	0x05			
(reserved)	0x06			
(reserved)	0x07			
throw <i>x</i>	0x08	$[t_1^* \ t_x^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
(reserved)	0x09			
throw_ref	0x0A	$[t_1^* \text{ exnref}] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
end	0x0B			
br <i>l</i>	0x0C	$[t_1^* \ t^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
br_if <i>l</i>	0x0D	$[t^* \text{ i32}] \rightarrow [t^*]$	validation	execution
br_table <i>l</i> <sup>*</sup> <i>l</i>	0x0E	$[t_1^* \ t^* \text{ i32}] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution

continues on

Table 2 – continued from previous page

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
return	0x0F	$[t_1^* t_2^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
call $x$	0x10	$[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
call_indirect $x y$	0x11	$[t_1^* i_{32}] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
return_call $x$	0x12	$[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
return_call_indirect $x y$	0x13	$[t_1^* i_{32}] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
call_ref $x$	0x14	$[t_1^* (\text{ref null } x)] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
return_call_ref $x$	0x15	$[t_1^* (\text{ref null } x)] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
(reserved)	0x16			
(reserved)	0x17			
(reserved)	0x18			
(reserved)	0x19			
drop	0x1A	$[t] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
select	0x1B	$[t t i_{32}] \rightarrow [t]$	validation	execution
select $t$	0x1C	$[t t i_{32}] \rightarrow [t]$	validation	execution
(reserved)	0x1D			
(reserved)	0x1E			
try_table $bt$	0x1F	$[t_1^*] \rightarrow [t_2^*]$	validation	execution
local.get $x$	0x20	$[] \rightarrow [t]$	validation	execution
local.set $x$	0x21	$[t] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
local.tee $x$	0x22	$[t] \rightarrow [t]$	validation	execution
global.get $x$	0x23	$[] \rightarrow [t]$	validation	execution
global.set $x$	0x24	$[t] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
table.get $x$	0x25	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [t]$	validation	execution
table.set $x$	0x26	$[i_{32} t] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
(reserved)	0x27			
i32.load $x memarg$	0x28	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{32}]$	validation	execution
i64.load $x memarg$	0x29	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{64}]$	validation	execution
f32.load $x memarg$	0x2A	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [f_{32}]$	validation	execution
f64.load $x memarg$	0x2B	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [f_{64}]$	validation	execution
i32.load8_s $x memarg$	0x2C	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{32}]$	validation	execution
i32.load8_u $x memarg$	0x2D	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{32}]$	validation	execution
i32.load16_s $x memarg$	0x2E	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{32}]$	validation	execution
i32.load16_u $x memarg$	0x2F	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{32}]$	validation	execution
i64.load8_s $x memarg$	0x30	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{64}]$	validation	execution
i64.load8_u $x memarg$	0x31	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{64}]$	validation	execution
i64.load16_s $x memarg$	0x32	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{64}]$	validation	execution
i64.load16_u $x memarg$	0x33	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{64}]$	validation	execution
i64.load32_s $x memarg$	0x34	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{64}]$	validation	execution
i64.load32_u $x memarg$	0x35	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{64}]$	validation	execution
i32.store $x memarg$	0x36	$[i_{32} i_{32}] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
i64.store $x memarg$	0x37	$[i_{32} i_{64}] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
f32.store $x memarg$	0x38	$[i_{32} f_{32}] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
f64.store $x memarg$	0x39	$[i_{32} f_{64}] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
i32.store8 $x memarg$	0x3A	$[i_{32} i_{32}] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
i32.store16 $x memarg$	0x3B	$[i_{32} i_{32}] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
i64.store8 $x memarg$	0x3C	$[i_{32} i_{64}] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
i64.store16 $x memarg$	0x3D	$[i_{32} i_{64}] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
i64.store32 $x memarg$	0x3E	$[i_{32} i_{64}] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
memory.size $x$	0x3F	$[] \rightarrow [i_{32}]$	validation	execution
memory.grow $x$	0x40	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{32}]$	validation	execution
i32.const $i_{32}$	0x41	$[] \rightarrow [i_{32}]$	validation	execution
i64.const $i_{64}$	0x42	$[] \rightarrow [i_{64}]$	validation	execution
f32.const $f_{32}$	0x43	$[] \rightarrow [f_{32}]$	validation	execution
f64.const $f_{64}$	0x44	$[] \rightarrow [f_{64}]$	validation	execution
i32.eqz	0x45	$[i_{32}] \rightarrow [i_{32}]$	validation	execution

continues on

Table 2 – continued from previous page

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
i32.eq	0x46	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.ne	0x47	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.lt_s	0x48	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.lt_u	0x49	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.gt_s	0x4A	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.gt_u	0x4B	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.le_s	0x4C	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.le_u	0x4D	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.ge_s	0x4E	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.ge_u	0x4F	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.eqz	0x50	[i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.eq	0x51	[i64 i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.ne	0x52	[i64 i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.lt_s	0x53	[i64 i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.lt_u	0x54	[i64 i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.gt_s	0x55	[i64 i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.gt_u	0x56	[i64 i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.le_s	0x57	[i64 i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.le_u	0x58	[i64 i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.ge_s	0x59	[i64 i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.ge_u	0x5A	[i64 i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
f32.eq	0x5B	[f32 f32] → [i32]	validation	execution
f32.ne	0x5C	[f32 f32] → [i32]	validation	execution
f32.lt	0x5D	[f32 f32] → [i32]	validation	execution
f32.gt	0x5E	[f32 f32] → [i32]	validation	execution
f32.le	0x5F	[f32 f32] → [i32]	validation	execution
f32.ge	0x60	[f32 f32] → [i32]	validation	execution
f64.eq	0x61	[f64 f64] → [i32]	validation	execution
f64.ne	0x62	[f64 f64] → [i32]	validation	execution
f64.lt	0x63	[f64 f64] → [i32]	validation	execution
f64.gt	0x64	[f64 f64] → [i32]	validation	execution
f64.le	0x65	[f64 f64] → [i32]	validation	execution
f64.ge	0x66	[f64 f64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.clz	0x67	[i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.ctz	0x68	[i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.popcnt	0x69	[i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.add	0x6A	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.sub	0x6B	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.mul	0x6C	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.div_s	0x6D	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.div_u	0x6E	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.rem_s	0x6F	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.rem_u	0x70	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.and	0x71	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.or	0x72	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.xor	0x73	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.shl	0x74	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.shr_s	0x75	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.shr_u	0x76	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.rotl	0x77	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.rotr	0x78	[i32 i32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.clz	0x79	[i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.ctz	0x7A	[i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.popcnt	0x7B	[i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.add	0x7C	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution

continues on next page

Table 2 – continued from previous page

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
i64.sub	0x7D	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.mul	0x7E	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.div_s	0x7F	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.div_u	0x80	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.rem_s	0x81	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.rem_u	0x82	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.and	0x83	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.or	0x84	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.xor	0x85	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.shl	0x86	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.shr_s	0x87	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.shr_u	0x88	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.rotl	0x89	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.rotr	0x8A	[i64 i64] → [i64]	validation	execution
f32.abs	0x8B	[f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.neg	0x8C	[f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.ceil	0x8D	[f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.floor	0x8E	[f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.trunc	0x8F	[f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.nearest	0x90	[f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.sqrt	0x91	[f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.add	0x92	[f32 f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.sub	0x93	[f32 f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.mul	0x94	[f32 f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.div	0x95	[f32 f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.min	0x96	[f32 f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.max	0x97	[f32 f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.copysign	0x98	[f32 f32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f64.abs	0x99	[f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.neg	0x9A	[f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.ceil	0x9B	[f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.floor	0x9C	[f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.trunc	0x9D	[f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.nearest	0x9E	[f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.sqrt	0x9F	[f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.add	0xA0	[f64 f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.sub	0xA1	[f64 f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.mul	0xA2	[f64 f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.div	0xA3	[f64 f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.min	0xA4	[f64 f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.max	0xA5	[f64 f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
f64.copysign	0xA6	[f64 f64] → [f64]	validation	execution
i32.wrap_i64	0xA7	[i64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.trunc_f32_s	0xA8	[f32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.trunc_f32_u	0xA9	[f32] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.trunc_f64_s	0xAA	[f64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32.trunc_f64_u	0xAB	[f64] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64.extend_i32_s	0xAC	[i32] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.extend_i32_u	0xAD	[i32] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.trunc_f32_s	0xAE	[f32] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.trunc_f32_u	0xAF	[f32] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.trunc_f64_s	0xB0	[f64] → [i64]	validation	execution
i64.trunc_f64_u	0xB1	[f64] → [i64]	validation	execution
f32.convert_i32_s	0xB2	[i32] → [f32]	validation	execution
f32.convert_i32_u	0xB3	[i32] → [f32]	validation	execution

continues on I



Table 2 – continued from previous page

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
<code>f32.convert_i64_s</code>	0xB4	$[i64] \rightarrow [f32]$	validation	execution
<code>f32.convert_i64_u</code>	0xB5	$[i64] \rightarrow [f32]$	validation	execution
<code>f32.demote_f64</code>	0xB6	$[f64] \rightarrow [f32]$	validation	execution
<code>f64.convert_i32_s</code>	0xB7	$[i32] \rightarrow [f64]$	validation	execution
<code>f64.convert_i32_u</code>	0xB8	$[i32] \rightarrow [f64]$	validation	execution
<code>f64.convert_i64_s</code>	0xB9	$[i64] \rightarrow [f64]$	validation	execution
<code>f64.convert_i64_u</code>	0xBA	$[i64] \rightarrow [f64]$	validation	execution
<code>f64.promote_f32</code>	0xBB	$[f32] \rightarrow [f64]$	validation	execution
<code>i32.reinterpret_f32</code>	0xBC	$[f32] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>i64.reinterpret_f64</code>	0xBD	$[f64] \rightarrow [i64]$	validation	execution
<code>f32.reinterpret_i32</code>	0xBE	$[i32] \rightarrow [f32]$	validation	execution
<code>f64.reinterpret_i64</code>	0xBF	$[i64] \rightarrow [f64]$	validation	execution
<code>i32.extend8_s</code>	0xC0	$[i32] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>i32.extend16_s</code>	0xC1	$[i32] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>i64.extend8_s</code>	0xC2	$[i64] \rightarrow [i64]$	validation	execution
<code>i64.extend16_s</code>	0xC3	$[i64] \rightarrow [i64]$	validation	execution
<code>i64.extend32_s</code>	0xC4	$[i64] \rightarrow [i64]$	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xC5			
(reserved)	0xC6			
(reserved)	0xC7			
(reserved)	0xC8			
(reserved)	0xC9			
(reserved)	0xCA			
(reserved)	0xCB			
(reserved)	0xCC			
(reserved)	0xCD			
(reserved)	0xCE			
(reserved)	0xCF			
<code>ref.null ht</code>	0xD0	$[] \rightarrow [(ref\ null\ ht)]$	validation	execution
<code>ref.is_null</code>	0xD1	$[(ref\ null\ ht)] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>ref.func x</code>	0xD2	$[] \rightarrow [ref\ ht]$	validation	execution
<code>ref.eq</code>	0xD3	$[eqref\ eqref] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>ref.as_non_null</code>	0xD4	$[(ref\ null\ ht)] \rightarrow [(ref\ ht)]$	validation	execution
<code>br_on_null l</code>	0xD5	$[t^* (ref\ null\ ht)] \rightarrow [t^* (ref\ ht)]$	validation	execution
<code>br_on_non_null l</code>	0xD6	$[t^* (ref\ null\ ht)] \rightarrow [t^*]$	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xD7			
(reserved)	0xD8			
(reserved)	0xD9			
(reserved)	0xDA			
(reserved)	0xDB			
(reserved)	0xDC			
(reserved)	0xDD			
(reserved)	0xDE			
(reserved)	0xDF			
(reserved)	0xE0			
(reserved)	0xE1			
(reserved)	0xE2			
(reserved)	0xE3			
(reserved)	0xE4			
(reserved)	0xE5			
(reserved)	0xE6			
(reserved)	0xE7			
(reserved)	0xE8			
(reserved)	0xE9			
(reserved)	0xEA			

continues on next page

Table 2 – continued from previous page

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
(reserved)	0xEB			
(reserved)	0xEC			
(reserved)	0xED			
(reserved)	0xEE			
(reserved)	0xEF			
(reserved)	0xF0			
(reserved)	0xF1			
(reserved)	0xF2			
(reserved)	0xF3			
(reserved)	0xF4			
(reserved)	0xF5			
(reserved)	0xF6			
(reserved)	0xF7			
(reserved)	0xF8			
(reserved)	0xF9			
(reserved)	0xFA			
struct.new $x$	0xFB 0x00	$[t^*] \rightarrow [(\text{ref } x)]$	validation	execution
struct.new_default $x$	0xFB 0x01	$[] \rightarrow [(\text{ref } x)]$	validation	execution
struct.get $x y$	0xFB 0x02	$[(\text{ref null } x)] \rightarrow [t]$	validation	execution
struct.get_s $x y$	0xFB 0x03	$[(\text{ref null } x)] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
struct.get_u $x y$	0xFB 0x04	$[(\text{ref null } x)] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
struct.set $x y$	0xFB 0x05	$[(\text{ref null } x) t] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
array.new $x$	0xFB 0x06	$[t i32] \rightarrow [(\text{ref } x)]$	validation	execution
array.new_default $x$	0xFB 0x07	$[i32] \rightarrow [(\text{ref } x)]$	validation	execution
array.new_fixed $x n$	0xFB 0x08	$[t^n] \rightarrow [(\text{ref } x)]$	validation	execution
array.new_data $x y$	0xFB 0x09	$[i32 i32] \rightarrow [(\text{ref } x)]$	validation	execution
array.new_elem $x y$	0xFB 0x0A	$[i32 i32] \rightarrow [(\text{ref } x)]$	validation	execution
array.get $x$	0xFB 0x0B	$[(\text{ref null } x) i32] \rightarrow [t]$	validation	execution
array.get_s $x$	0xFB 0x0C	$[(\text{ref null } x) i32] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
array.get_u $x$	0xFB 0x0D	$[(\text{ref null } x) i32] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
array.set $x$	0xFB 0x0E	$[(\text{ref null } x) i32 t] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
array.len	0xFB 0x0F	$[(\text{ref null array})] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
array.fill $x$	0xFB 0x10	$[(\text{ref null } x) i32 t i32] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
array.copy $x y$	0xFB 0x11	$[(\text{ref null } x) i32 (\text{ref null } y) i32 i32] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
array.init_data $x y$	0xFB 0x12	$[(\text{ref null } x) i32 i32 i32] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
array.init_elem $x y$	0xFB 0x13	$[(\text{ref null } x) i32 i32 i32] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
ref.test (ref $t$ )	0xFB 0x14	$[(\text{ref } t')] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
ref.test (ref null $t$ )	0xFB 0x15	$[(\text{ref null } t')] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
ref.cast (ref $t$ )	0xFB 0x16	$[(\text{ref } t')] \rightarrow [(\text{ref } t)]$	validation	execution
ref.cast (ref null $t$ )	0xFB 0x17	$[(\text{ref null } t')] \rightarrow [(\text{ref null } t)]$	validation	execution
br_on_cast $t_1 t_2$	0xFB 0x18	$[t_1] \rightarrow [t_1 \setminus t_2]$	validation	execution
br_on_cast_fail $t_1 t_2$	0xFB 0x19	$[t_1] \rightarrow [t_2]$	validation	execution
any.convert_extern	0xFB 0x1A	$[(\text{ref null extern})] \rightarrow [(\text{ref null any})]$	validation	execution
extern.convert_any	0xFB 0x1B	$[(\text{ref null any})] \rightarrow [(\text{ref null extern})]$	validation	execution
ref.i31	0xFB 0x1C	$[i32] \rightarrow [(\text{ref } i31)]$	validation	execution
i31.get_s	0xFB 0x1D	$[i31\text{ref}] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
i31.get_u	0xFB 0x1E	$[i31\text{ref}] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFB 0x1E...			
i32.trunc_sat_f32_s	0xFC 0x00	$[f32] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
i32.trunc_sat_f32_u	0xFC 0x01	$[f32] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
i32.trunc_sat_f64_s	0xFC 0x02	$[f64] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
i32.trunc_sat_f64_u	0xFC 0x03	$[f64] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
i64.trunc_sat_f32_s	0xFC 0x04	$[f32] \rightarrow [i64]$	validation	execution
i64.trunc_sat_f32_u	0xFC 0x05	$[f32] \rightarrow [i64]$	validation	execution
i64.trunc_sat_f64_s	0xFC 0x06	$[f64] \rightarrow [i64]$	validation	execution

continues on

Table 2 – continued from previous page

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
<code>i64.trunc_sat_f64_u</code>	0xFC 0x07	$[f64] \rightarrow [i64]$	validation	execution
<code>memory.init <i>x y</i></code>	0xFC 0x08	$[i32\ i32\ i32] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
<code>data.drop <i>x</i></code>	0xFC 0x09	$[] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
<code>memory.copy <i>x y</i></code>	0xFC 0x0A	$[i32\ i32\ i32] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
<code>memory.fill <i>y</i></code>	0xFC 0x0B	$[i32\ i32\ i32] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
<code>table.init <i>x y</i></code>	0xFC 0x0C	$[i32\ i32\ i32] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
<code>elem.drop <i>x</i></code>	0xFC 0x0D	$[] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
<code>table.copy <i>x y</i></code>	0xFC 0x0E	$[i32\ i32\ i32] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
<code>table.grow <i>x</i></code>	0xFC 0x0F	$[t\ i32] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>table.size <i>x</i></code>	0xFC 0x10	$[] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>table.fill <i>x</i></code>	0xFC 0x11	$[i32\ t\ i32] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFC 0x1E...			
<code>v128.load <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x00	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>v128.load8x8_s <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x01	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>v128.load8x8_u <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x02	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>v128.load16x4_s <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x03	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>v128.load16x4_u <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x04	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>v128.load32x2_s <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x05	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>v128.load32x2_u <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x06	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>v128.load8_splat <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x07	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>v128.load16_splat <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x08	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>v128.load32_splat <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x09	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>v128.load64_splat <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x0A	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>v128.store <i>x memarg</i></code>	0xFD 0x0B	$[i32\ v128] \rightarrow []$	validation	execution
<code>v128.const <i>i128</i></code>	0xFD 0x0C	$[] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.shuffle_laneidx<sup>16</sup></code>	0xFD 0x0D	$[v128\ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.swizzle</code>	0xFD 0x0E	$[v128\ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.splat</code>	0xFD 0x0F	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i16x8.splat</code>	0xFD 0x10	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i32x4.splat</code>	0xFD 0x11	$[i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i64x2.splat</code>	0xFD 0x12	$[i64] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>f32x4.splat</code>	0xFD 0x13	$[f32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>f64x2.splat</code>	0xFD 0x14	$[f64] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.extract_lane_s <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x15	$[v128] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.extract_lane_u <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x16	$[v128] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.replace_lane <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x17	$[v128\ i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i16x8.extract_lane_s <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x18	$[v128] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>i16x8.extract_lane_u <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x19	$[v128] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>i16x8.replace_lane <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x1A	$[v128\ i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i32x4.extract_lane <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x1B	$[v128] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
<code>i32x4.replace_lane <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x1C	$[v128\ i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i64x2.extract_lane <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x1D	$[v128] \rightarrow [i64]$	validation	execution
<code>i64x2.replace_lane <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x1E	$[v128\ i64] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>f32x4.extract_lane <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x1F	$[v128] \rightarrow [f32]$	validation	execution
<code>f32x4.replace_lane <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x20	$[v128\ f32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>f64x2.extract_lane <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x21	$[v128] \rightarrow [f64]$	validation	execution
<code>f64x2.replace_lane <i>laneidx</i></code>	0xFD 0x22	$[v128\ f64] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.eq</code>	0xFD 0x23	$[v128\ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.ne</code>	0xFD 0x24	$[v128\ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.lt_s</code>	0xFD 0x25	$[v128\ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.lt_u</code>	0xFD 0x26	$[v128\ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.gt_s</code>	0xFD 0x27	$[v128\ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.gt_u</code>	0xFD 0x28	$[v128\ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.le_s</code>	0xFD 0x29	$[v128\ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
<code>i8x16.le_u</code>	0xFD 0x2A	$[v128\ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution

continues on

Table 2 – continued from previous page

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
i8x16.ge_s	0xFD 0x2B	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i8x16.ge_u	0xFD 0x2C	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.eq	0xFD 0x2D	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.ne	0xFD 0x2E	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.lt_s	0xFD 0x2F	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.lt_u	0xFD 0x30	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.gt_s	0xFD 0x31	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.gt_u	0xFD 0x32	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.le_s	0xFD 0x33	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.le_u	0xFD 0x34	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.ge_s	0xFD 0x35	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.ge_u	0xFD 0x36	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.eq	0xFD 0x37	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.ne	0xFD 0x38	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.lt_s	0xFD 0x39	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.lt_u	0xFD 0x3A	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.gt_s	0xFD 0x3B	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.gt_u	0xFD 0x3C	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.le_s	0xFD 0x3D	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.le_u	0xFD 0x3E	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.ge_s	0xFD 0x3F	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.ge_u	0xFD 0x40	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.eq	0xFD 0x41	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.ne	0xFD 0x42	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.lt	0xFD 0x43	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.gt	0xFD 0x44	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.le	0xFD 0x45	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.ge	0xFD 0x46	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.eq	0xFD 0x47	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.ne	0xFD 0x48	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.lt	0xFD 0x49	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.gt	0xFD 0x4A	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.le	0xFD 0x4B	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.ge	0xFD 0x4C	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.not	0xFD 0x4D	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.and	0xFD 0x4E	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.andnot	0xFD 0x4F	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.or	0xFD 0x50	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.xor	0xFD 0x51	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.bitselect	0xFD 0x52	[v128 v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.any_true	0xFD 0x53	[v128] → [i32]	validation	execution
v128.load8_lane <i>memarg laneidx</i>	0xFD 0x54	[i32 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.load16_lane <i>memarg laneidx</i>	0xFD 0x55	[i32 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.load32_lane <i>memarg laneidx</i>	0xFD 0x56	[i32 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.load64_lane <i>memarg laneidx</i>	0xFD 0x57	[i32 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.store8_lane <i>memarg laneidx</i>	0xFD 0x58	[i32 v128] → []	validation	execution
v128.store16_lane <i>memarg laneidx</i>	0xFD 0x59	[i32 v128] → []	validation	execution
v128.store32_lane <i>memarg laneidx</i>	0xFD 0x5A	[i32 v128] → []	validation	execution
v128.store64_lane <i>memarg laneidx</i>	0xFD 0x5B	[i32 v128] → []	validation	execution
v128.load32_zero <i>memarg</i>	0xFD 0x5C	[i32] → [v128]	validation	execution
v128.load64_zero <i>memarg</i>	0xFD 0x5D	[i32] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.demote_f64x2_zero	0xFD 0x5E	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.promote_low_f32x4	0xFD 0x5F	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i8x16.abs	0xFD 0x60	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i8x16.neg	0xFD 0x61	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution

continues on I

Table 2 – continued from previous page

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
i8x16.popcnt	0xFD 0x62	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.all_true	0xFD 0x63	$[v128] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
i8x16.bitmask	0xFD 0x64	$[v128] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
i8x16.narrow_i16x8_s	0xFD 0x65	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.narrow_i16x8_u	0xFD 0x66	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
f32x4.ceil	0xFD 0x67	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
f32x4.floor	0xFD 0x68	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
f32x4.trunc	0xFD 0x69	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
f32x4.nearest	0xFD 0x6A	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.shl	0xFD 0x6B	$[v128 \ i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.shr_s	0xFD 0x6C	$[v128 \ i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.shr_u	0xFD 0x6D	$[v128 \ i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.add	0xFD 0x6E	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.add_sat_s	0xFD 0x6F	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.add_sat_u	0xFD 0x70	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.sub	0xFD 0x71	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.sub_sat_s	0xFD 0x72	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.sub_sat_u	0xFD 0x73	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
f64x2.ceil	0xFD 0x74	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
f64x2.floor	0xFD 0x75	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.min_s	0xFD 0x76	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.min_u	0xFD 0x77	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.max_s	0xFD 0x78	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.max_u	0xFD 0x79	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
f64x2.trunc	0xFD 0x7A	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i8x16.avgr_u	0xFD 0x7B	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.extadd_pairwise_i8x16_s	0xFD 0x7C	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.extadd_pairwise_i8x16_u	0xFD 0x7D	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i32x4.extadd_pairwise_i16x8_s	0xFD 0x7E	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i32x4.extadd_pairwise_i16x8_u	0xFD 0x7F	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.abs	0xFD 0x80 0x01	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.neg	0xFD 0x81 0x01	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.q15mulr_sat_s	0xFD 0x82 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.all_true	0xFD 0x83 0x01	$[v128] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
i16x8.bitmask	0xFD 0x84 0x01	$[v128] \rightarrow [i32]$	validation	execution
i16x8.narrow_i32x4_s	0xFD 0x85 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.narrow_i32x4_u	0xFD 0x86 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.extend_low_i8x16_s	0xFD 0x87 0x01	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.extend_high_i8x16_s	0xFD 0x88 0x01	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.extend_low_i8x16_u	0xFD 0x89 0x01	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.extend_high_i8x16_u	0xFD 0x8A 0x01	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.shl	0xFD 0x8B 0x01	$[v128 \ i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.shr_s	0xFD 0x8C 0x01	$[v128 \ i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.shr_u	0xFD 0x8D 0x01	$[v128 \ i32] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.add	0xFD 0x8E 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.add_sat_s	0xFD 0x8F 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.add_sat_u	0xFD 0x90 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.sub	0xFD 0x91 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.sub_sat_s	0xFD 0x92 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.sub_sat_u	0xFD 0x93 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
f64x2.nearest	0xFD 0x94 0x01	$[v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.mul	0xFD 0x95 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.min_s	0xFD 0x96 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.min_u	0xFD 0x97 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution
i16x8.max_s	0xFD 0x98 0x01	$[v128 \ v128] \rightarrow [v128]$	validation	execution

continues on I



Table 2 – continued from previous page

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
i16x8.max_u	0xFD 0x99 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFD 0x9A 0x01			
i16x8.avgr_u	0xFD 0x9B 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.extmul_low_i8x16_s	0xFD 0x9C 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.extmul_high_i8x16_s	0xFD 0x9D 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.extmul_low_i8x16_u	0xFD 0x9E 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i16x8.extmul_high_i8x16_u	0xFD 0x9F 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.abs	0xFD 0xA0 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.neg	0xFD 0xA1 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFD 0xA2 0x01			
i32x4.all_true	0xFD 0xA3 0x01	[v128] → [i32]	validation	execution
i32x4.bitmask	0xFD 0xA4 0x01	[v128] → [i32]	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFD 0xA5 0x01			
(reserved)	0xFD 0xA6 0x01			
i32x4.extend_low_i16x8_s	0xFD 0xA7 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.extend_high_i16x8_s	0xFD 0xA8 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.extend_low_i16x8_u	0xFD 0xA9 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.extend_high_i16x8_u	0xFD 0xAA 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.shl	0xFD 0xAB 0x01	[v128 i32] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.shr_s	0xFD 0xAC 0x01	[v128 i32] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.shr_u	0xFD 0xAD 0x01	[v128 i32] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.add	0xFD 0xAE 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFD 0xAF 0x01			
(reserved)	0xFD 0xB0 0x01			
i32x4.sub	0xFD 0xB1 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFD 0xB2 0x01			
(reserved)	0xFD 0xB3 0x01			
(reserved)	0xFD 0xB4 0x01			
i32x4.mul	0xFD 0xB5 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.min_s	0xFD 0xB6 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.min_u	0xFD 0xB7 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.max_s	0xFD 0xB8 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.max_u	0xFD 0xB9 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.dot_i16x8_s	0xFD 0xBA 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.extmul_low_i16x8_s	0xFD 0xBC 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.extmul_high_i16x8_s	0xFD 0xBD 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.extmul_low_i16x8_u	0xFD 0xBE 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.extmul_high_i16x8_u	0xFD 0xBF 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.abs	0xFD 0xC0 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.neg	0xFD 0xC1 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFD 0xC2 0x01			
i64x2.all_true	0xFD 0xC3 0x01	[v128] → [i32]	validation	execution
i64x2.bitmask	0xFD 0xC4 0x01	[v128] → [i32]	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFD 0xC5 0x01			
(reserved)	0xFD 0xC6 0x01			
i64x2.extend_low_i32x4_s	0xFD 0xC7 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.extend_high_i32x4_s	0xFD 0xC8 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.extend_low_i32x4_u	0xFD 0xC9 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.extend_high_i32x4_u	0xFD 0xCA 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.shl	0xFD 0xCB 0x01	[v128 i32] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.shr_s	0xFD 0xCC 0x01	[v128 i32] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.shr_u	0xFD 0xCD 0x01	[v128 i32] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.add	0xFD 0xCE 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFD 0xCF 0x01			
(reserved)	0xFD 0xD0 0x01			

continues on

Table 2 – continued from previous page

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
i64x2.sub	0xFD 0xD1 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFD 0xD2 0x01			
(reserved)	0xFD 0xD3 0x01			
(reserved)	0xFD 0xD4 0x01			
i64x2.mul	0xFD 0xD5 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.eq	0xFD 0xD6 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.ne	0xFD 0xD7 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.lt_s	0xFD 0xD8 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.gt_s	0xFD 0xD9 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.le_s	0xFD 0xDA 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.ge_s	0xFD 0xDB 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.extmul_low_i32x4_s	0xFD 0xDC 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.extmul_high_i32x4_s	0xFD 0xDD 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.extmul_low_i32x4_u	0xFD 0xDE 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i64x2.extmul_high_i32x4_u	0xFD 0xDF 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.abs	0xFD 0xE0 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.neg	0xFD 0xE1 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFD 0xE2 0x01			
f32x4.sqrt	0xFD 0xE3 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.add	0xFD 0xE4 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.sub	0xFD 0xE5 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.mul	0xFD 0xE6 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.div	0xFD 0xE7 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.min	0xFD 0xE8 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.max	0xFD 0xE9 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.pmin	0xFD 0xEA 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.pmax	0xFD 0xEB 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.abs	0xFD 0xEC 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.neg	0xFD 0xED 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.sqrt	0xFD 0xEE 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.add	0xFD 0xEF 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.sub	0xFD 0xF0 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.mul	0xFD 0xF1 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.div	0xFD 0xF2 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.min	0xFD 0xF3 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.max	0xFD 0xF4 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.pmin	0xFD 0xF5 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.pmax	0xFD 0xF6 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.pmax	0xFD 0xF7 0x01	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.trunc_sat_f32x4_s	0xFD 0xF8 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.trunc_sat_f32x4_u	0xFD 0xF9 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.convert_i32x4_s	0xFD 0xFA 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.convert_i32x4_u	0xFD 0xFB 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.trunc_sat_f64x2_s_zero	0xFD 0xFC 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.trunc_sat_f64x2_u_zero	0xFD 0xFD 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.convert_low_i32x4_s	0xFD 0xFE 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.convert_low_i32x4_u	0xFD 0xFF 0x01	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i8x16.relaxed_swizzle	0xFD 0x80 0x02	[v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_s	0xFD 0x81 0x02	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f32x4_u	0xFD 0x82 0x02	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f64x2_s	0xFD 0x83 0x02	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
i32x4.relaxed_trunc_f64x2_u	0xFD 0x84 0x02	[v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.relaxed_madd	0xFD 0x85 0x02	[v128 v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f32x4.relaxed_nmadd	0xFD 0x86 0x02	[v128 v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.relaxed_madd	0xFD 0x87 0x02	[v128 v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution
f64x2.relaxed_nmadd	0xFD 0x88 0x02	[v128 v128 v128] → [v128]	validation	execution

continues on

Table 2 – continued from previous page

Instruction	Binary Opcode	Type	Validation	Execution
i8x16.relaxed_laneselect	0xFD 0x89 0x02	$[v_{128} \ v_{128} \ v_{128}] \rightarrow [v_{128}]$	validation	execution
i16x8.relaxed_laneselect	0xFD 0x8A 0x02	$[v_{128} \ v_{128} \ v_{128}] \rightarrow [v_{128}]$	validation	execution
i32x4.relaxed_laneselect	0xFD 0x8B 0x02	$[v_{128} \ v_{128} \ v_{128}] \rightarrow [v_{128}]$	validation	execution
i64x2.relaxed_laneselect	0xFD 0x8C 0x02	$[v_{128} \ v_{128} \ v_{128}] \rightarrow [v_{128}]$	validation	execution
f32x4.relaxed_min	0xFD 0x8D 0x02	$[v_{128} \ v_{128}] \rightarrow [v_{128}]$	validation	execution
f32x4.relaxed_max	0xFD 0x8E 0x02	$[v_{128} \ v_{128}] \rightarrow [v_{128}]$	validation	execution
f64x2.relaxed_min	0xFD 0x8F 0x02	$[v_{128} \ v_{128}] \rightarrow [v_{128}]$	validation	execution
f64x2.relaxed_max	0xFD 0x90 0x02	$[v_{128} \ v_{128}] \rightarrow [v_{128}]$	validation	execution
i16x8.relaxed_q15mulr_s	0xFD 0x91 0x02	$[v_{128} \ v_{128}] \rightarrow [v_{128}]$	validation	execution
i16x8.relaxed_dot_i8x16_i7x16_s	0xFD 0x92 0x02	$[v_{128} \ v_{128}] \rightarrow [v_{128}]$	validation	execution
i32x4.relaxed_dot_i8x16_i7x16_add_s	0xFD 0x93 0x02	$[v_{128} \ v_{128} \ v_{128}] \rightarrow [v_{128}]$	validation	execution
(reserved)	0xFD 0x94 0x02...			
(reserved)	0xFE			
(reserved)	0xFF			

**Note**

Multi-byte opcodes are given with the shortest possible encoding in the table. However, what is following the first byte is actually a `u32` with variable-length encoding and consequently has multiple possible representations.

## 7.11 Index of Semantic Rules

### 7.11.1 Well-formedness of Types

Construct	Judgement
Numeric type	$C \vdash \text{numtype} : \text{ok}$
Vector type	$C \vdash \text{vectype} : \text{ok}$
Heap type	$C \vdash \text{heapttype} : \text{ok}$
Reference type	$C \vdash \text{reftype} : \text{ok}$
Value type	$C \vdash \text{valtype} : \text{ok}$
Packed type	$C \vdash \text{packtype} : \text{ok}$
Storage type	$C \vdash \text{storagetype} : \text{ok}$
Field type	$C \vdash \text{fieldtype} : \text{ok}$
Result type	$C \vdash \text{resulttype} : \text{ok}$
Instruction type	$C \vdash \text{instrtype} : \text{ok}$
Function type	$C \vdash \text{functype} : \text{ok}$
Structure type	$C \vdash \text{structtype} : \text{ok}$
Array type	$C \vdash \text{arraytype} : \text{ok}$
Composite type	$C \vdash \text{comptype} : \text{ok}$
Sub type	$C \vdash \text{subtype} : \text{ok}$
Recursive type	$C \vdash \text{rectype} : \text{ok}$
Defined type	$C \vdash \text{deftype} : \text{ok}$
Block type	$C \vdash \text{blocktype} : \text{instrtype}$
Table type	$C \vdash \text{tabletype} : \text{ok}$
Memory type	$C \vdash \text{memtype} : \text{ok}$
Global type	$C \vdash \text{globaltype} : \text{ok}$
Tag type	$C \vdash \text{tagtype} : \text{ok}$
External type	$C \vdash \text{externtype} : \text{ok}$
Type definitions	$C \vdash \text{type}^* : \text{ok}$



### 7.11.2 Typing of Static Constructs

Construct	Judgement
Instruction	$S; C \vdash instr : instrtype$
Instruction sequence	$S; C \vdash instr^* : instrtype$
Catch clause	$C \vdash catch : ok$
Expression	$C \vdash expr : resulttype$
Function	$C \vdash func : functype$
Local	$C \vdash local : localtype$
Table	$C \vdash table : tabletype$
Memory	$C \vdash mem : memtype$
Limits	$C \vdash limits : k$
Global	$C \vdash global : globaltype$
Tag	$C \vdash tag : tagtype$
Element segment	$C \vdash elem : reftype$
Element mode	$C \vdash elemmode : reftype$
Data segment	$C \vdash data : ok$
Data mode	$C \vdash datamode : ok$
Start function	$C \vdash start : ok$
Export	$C \vdash export : externtype$
Export description	$C \vdash exportdesc : externtype$
Import	$C \vdash import : externtype$
Import description	$C \vdash importdesc : externtype$
Module	$\vdash module : externtype^* \rightarrow externtype^*$

### 7.11.3 Typing of Runtime Constructs

Construct	Judgement
Value	$S \vdash val : valtype$
Result	$S \vdash result : resulttype$
Packed value	$S \vdash packval : packtype$
Field value	$S \vdash fieldval : storagetype$
External address	$S \vdash externaddr : externtype$
Function instance	$S \vdash funcinst : functype$
Table instance	$S \vdash tableinst : tabletype$
Memory instance	$S \vdash meminst : memtype$
Global instance	$S \vdash globalinst : globaltype$
Tag instance	$S \vdash taginst : tagtype$
Element instance	$S \vdash eleminst : t$
Data instance	$S \vdash datainst : ok$
Structure instance	$S \vdash structinst : ok$
Array instance	$S \vdash arrayinst : ok$
Export instance	$S \vdash exportinst : ok$
Module instance	$S \vdash moduleinst : C$
Store	$\vdash store : ok$
Configuration	$\vdash config : [t^*]$
Thread	$S; resulttype^? \vdash thread : resulttype$
Frame	$S \vdash frame : C$

### 7.11.4 Constantness

Construct	Judgement
Constant expression	$C \vdash \text{exprconst}$
Constant instruction	$C \vdash \text{instrconst}$

### 7.11.5 Matching

Construct	Judgement
Number type	$C \vdash \text{numtype}_1 \leq \text{numtype}_2$
Vector type	$C \vdash \text{vectype}_1 \leq \text{vectype}_2$
Heap type	$C \vdash \text{heaptypes}_1 \leq \text{heaptypes}_2$
Reference type	$C \vdash \text{reftype}_1 \leq \text{reftype}_2$
Value type	$C \vdash \text{valtype}_1 \leq \text{valtype}_2$
Packed type	$C \vdash \text{packtype}_1 \leq \text{packtype}_2$
Storage type	$C \vdash \text{storagetype}_1 \leq \text{storagetype}_2$
Field type	$C \vdash \text{fieldtype}_1 \leq \text{fieldtype}_2$
Result type	$C \vdash \text{resulttype}_1 \leq \text{resulttype}_2$
Instruction type	$C \vdash \text{instrtype}_1 \leq \text{instrtype}_2$
Function type	$C \vdash \text{functype}_1 \leq \text{functype}_2$
Structure type	$C \vdash \text{structtype}_1 \leq \text{structtype}_2$
Array type	$C \vdash \text{arraytype}_1 \leq \text{arraytype}_2$
Composite type	$C \vdash \text{comptype}_1 \leq \text{comptype}_2$
Defined type	$C \vdash \text{deftype}_1 \leq \text{deftype}_2$
Table type	$C \vdash \text{tabletype}_1 \leq \text{tabletype}_2$
Memory type	$C \vdash \text{memtype}_1 \leq \text{memtype}_2$
Global type	$C \vdash \text{globaltype}_1 \leq \text{globaltype}_2$
Tag type	$C \vdash \text{tagtype}_1 \leq \text{tagtype}_2$
External type	$C \vdash \text{externtype}_1 \leq \text{externtype}_2$
Limits	$C \vdash \text{limits}_1 \leq \text{limits}_2$

### 7.11.6 Store Extension

Construct	Judgement
Function instance	$\vdash \text{funcinst}_1 \preceq \text{funcinst}_2$
Table instance	$\vdash \text{tableinst}_1 \preceq \text{tableinst}_2$
Memory instance	$\vdash \text{meminst}_1 \preceq \text{meminst}_2$
Global instance	$\vdash \text{globalinst}_1 \preceq \text{globalinst}_2$
Tag instance	$\vdash \text{taginst}_1 \preceq \text{taginst}_2$
Element instance	$\vdash \text{eleminst}_1 \preceq \text{eleminst}_2$
Data instance	$\vdash \text{datainst}_1 \preceq \text{datainst}_2$
Structure instance	$\vdash \text{structinst}_1 \preceq \text{structinst}_2$
Array instance	$\vdash \text{arrayinst}_1 \preceq \text{arrayinst}_2$
Store	$\vdash \text{store}_1 \preceq \text{store}_2$

### 7.11.7 Execution

Construct	Judgement
Instruction	$S; F; \text{instr}^* \hookrightarrow S'; F'; \text{instr}'^*$
Expression	$S; F; \text{expr} \hookrightarrow S'; F'; \text{expr}'$

## Symbols

: abstract syntax  
administrative instruction, 91

## A

abbreviations, 230  
abstract syntax, 5, 201, 229, 269, 271  
array address, 86  
array instance, 89  
array type, 11, 37  
block type, 21, 35  
byte, 7  
composite type, 12, 37  
data, 26, 77  
data address, 86  
data index, 23  
data instance, 89  
data type, 13  
defined type, 30, 39, 46  
element, 25, 77  
element address, 86  
element index, 23  
element instance, 89  
element mode, 25  
element type, 13  
exception address, 86  
exception instance, 90  
export, 26, 78  
export instance, 89  
expression, 23, 72, 186  
external address, 87  
external index, 26  
external type, 13, 40  
field index, 23  
field type, 11, 37  
field value, 89  
floating-point number, 7  
frame, 90  
function, 24, 75  
function address, 86  
function index, 23  
function instance, 88  
function type, 11, 36, 37

global, 25, 76  
global address, 86  
global index, 23  
global instance, 88  
global type, 13, 40  
grammar, 5  
handler, 90  
heap type, 9, 29, 35  
host address, 86  
import, 27, 79  
instruction, 14, 15, 18–21, 50, 51, 56, 59–61, 65, 126, 127, 129, 151, 157, 158, 162, 171  
instruction type, 31, 36  
integer, 7  
label, 90  
label index, 23  
limits, 12, 39  
list, 6  
local, 24, 75  
local index, 23  
local type, 32  
memory, 25, 76  
memory address, 86  
memory index, 23  
memory instance, 88  
memory type, 12, 39  
module, 23, 79  
module instance, 87  
mutability, 13  
name, 8  
notation, 5  
number type, 9, 34  
packed type, 11, 37  
packed value, 89  
recursive type, 12, 37  
recursive type index, 29  
reference type, 10, 35  
result, 86  
result type, 11, 36  
signed integer, 7  
start function, 26, 78  
storage type, 11, 37  
store, 86  
structure address, 86

- structure instance, 89
- structure type, 11, 37
- sub type, 12, 29, 37
- table, 25, 76
- table address, 86
- table index, 23
- table instance, 88
- table type, 12, 39
- tag, 25, 31, 77
- tag address, 86
- tag index, 23
- tag instance, 89
- tag type, 39
- type, 9, 74
- type definition, 24
- type index, 23
- uninterpreted integer, 7
- unsigned integer, 7
- value, 7, 85
- value type, 11, 29, 35, 37
- vector, 8
- vector type, 34
- abstract type, 9, 29
- activation, 90
- active, 25, 26
- address, 86, 157, 158, 162, 171, 186
  - array, 86
  - data, 86
  - element, 86
  - exception, 86
  - external, 87
  - function, 86
  - global, 86
  - host, 86
  - memory, 86
  - structure, 86
  - table, 86
  - tag, 86
- address type, 237, 308
  - text format, 237
- administrative instruction, 282, 283
  - : abstract syntax, 91
- administrative instructions, 91
- aggregate type, 12
- aggregate reference, 52
- aggregate type, 11, 24, 37, 45, 205, 237
  - binary format, 205
  - text format, 237
  - validation, 37
- algorithm, 290
- allocation, 86, 186, 262, 273
- annotation, 232, 297, 312
- arithmetic NaN, 7
- array, 85, 121
  - address, 86
  - instance, 89
- array address
  - abstract syntax, 86

- array instance, 86, 89, 121, 277, 280, 286
  - abstract syntax, 89
- array type, 11, 12, 37, 41, 45, 89, 121, 205, 237, 277, 290, 310
  - abstract syntax, 11
  - binary format, 205
  - text format, 237
  - validation, 37
- ASCII, 231, 232, 234

## B

- binary format, 8, 201, 262, 269, 272, 290, 297
  - aggregate type, 205
  - array type, 205
  - block type, 207
  - byte, 202
  - composite type, 205
  - custom section, 224
  - data, 227
  - data count, 227
  - data index, 222
  - element, 225
  - element index, 222
  - export, 225
  - expression, 222
  - external type, 207
  - field index, 222
  - field type, 205
  - floating-point number, 203
  - function, 224, 226
  - function index, 222
  - function type, 205
  - global, 225
  - global index, 222
  - global type, 206
  - grammar, 201
  - heap type, 204
  - import, 224
  - instruction, 207–211, 215
  - integer, 203
  - label index, 222
  - limits, 206
  - list, 202
  - local, 226
  - local index, 222
  - memory, 225
  - memory index, 222
  - memory type, 206
  - module, 227
  - mutability, 206
  - name, 203
  - notation, 201
  - number type, 204
  - packed type, 205
  - recursive type, 206
  - reference type, 205
  - result type, 205
  - section, 223

- signed integer, 203
  - start function, 225
  - storage type, 205
  - structure type, 205
  - sub type, 206
  - table, 225
  - table index, 222
  - table type, 206
  - tag, 227
  - tag index, 222
  - tag type, 206
  - type, 204
  - type index, 222
  - type section, 224
  - uninterpreted integer, 203
  - unsigned integer, 203
  - value, 202
  - value type, 205
  - vector type, 204
  - bit, 94
  - bit width, 7, 9, 11, 92, 162
  - block, 21, 65, 171, 183, 207, 238, 303
    - type, 21
  - block type, 21, 35, 65, 207
    - abstract syntax, 21
    - binary format, 207
    - validation, 35
  - Boolean, 3, 94, 95
  - bottom type, 29, 274
  - branch, 21, 65, 171, 207, 238
  - byte, 7, 8, 26, 77, 88, 89, 95, 187, 201–203, 227, 234, 255, 257, 266, 279
    - abstract syntax, 7
    - binary format, 202
    - text format, 234
- ## C
- call, 90, 91, 184, 307
  - call frame, 90
  - canonical NaN, 7
  - cast, 18
  - caught, 91
  - caught exception, 91
  - changes, 302
  - character, 2, 8, 231, 231, 232, 234, 271, 273
    - text format, 231
  - closed type, 29
  - closure, 88
  - code, 14, 272
    - section, 226
  - code section, 226
  - comment, 231, 232
  - composite type, 12, 12, 37, 205, 206, 237, 290, 310
    - abstract syntax, 12
    - binary format, 205
    - text format, 237
    - validation, 37
  - composite types, 45
  - compositionality, 289
  - concepts, 3
  - concrete type, 9, 29
  - configuration, 84, 92, 282, 287
  - constant, 23, 25, 26, 72, 76, 77, 85, 307
  - context, 32, 49, 59–61, 65, 79, 227, 274, 281–283
  - control frame, 90
  - control instruction, 21
  - control instructions, 65, 171, 207, 238
  - custom annotation, 301
  - custom section, 224, 297, 301, 312
    - binary format, 224
- ## D
- data, 23, 25, 26, 77, 79, 91, 188, 227, 255, 257, 258, 271
    - abstract syntax, 26
    - address, 86
    - binary format, 227
    - index, 23
    - instance, 89
    - section, 227
    - segment, 26, 77, 227, 255, 257
    - text format, 255, 257
    - type, 13
    - validation, 77
  - data address, 87, 188
    - abstract syntax, 86
  - data count, 227
    - binary format, 227
    - section, 227
  - data count section, 227
  - data index, 23, 26, 222, 252
    - abstract syntax, 23
    - binary format, 222
    - text format, 252
  - data instance, 86, 87, 89, 188, 279, 286
    - abstract syntax, 89
  - data section, 227
  - data segment, 88, 89, 227, 304, 308
  - data type, 13
    - abstract syntax, 13
  - declarative, 25
  - decoding, 4
  - default value, 85
  - defaultable, 76
  - defined type, 13, 30, 31, 39, 41, 46, 74, 89, 120, 277, 279, 280, 290
    - abstract syntax, 30, 39, 46
  - design goals, 1
  - determinism, 92, 103, 127, 159, 168, 271, 312
  - deterministic profile, 271
  - dynamic type, 120
- ## E
- element, 12, 13, 23, 25, 25, 77, 79, 91, 188, 225, 227, 254, 257, 258, 265, 271
    - abstract syntax, 25

- address, 86
  - binary format, 225
  - index, 23
  - instance, 89
  - mode, 25
  - section, 225
  - segment, 25, 77, 225, 254, 257
  - text format, 254, 257
  - type, 13
  - validation, 77
  - element address, 87, 158, 188
    - abstract syntax, 86
  - element expression, 89
  - element index, 23, 25, 222, 252
    - abstract syntax, 23
    - binary format, 222
    - text format, 252
  - element instance, 86, 87, 89, 158, 188, 279, 286
    - abstract syntax, 89
  - element mode, 25
    - abstract syntax, 25
  - element section, 225
  - element segment, 88, 89, 303, 304
  - element type, 13, 47
    - abstract syntax, 13
  - embedder, 2, 3, 86, 88, 89, 261
  - embedding, 261
  - evaluation context, 84
  - exception, 21, 86, 90, 91, 183, 184, 193, 198, 267, 276, 307
    - address, 86
    - instance, 90
  - exception address, 86, 267
    - abstract syntax, 86
  - exception handling, 207
  - exception instance, 86, 90, 267, 280, 287
    - abstract syntax, 90
  - exception tag, 31, 39, 77, 89, 126, 184, 206, 227, 256
    - tag, 31
  - exception type, 267
  - execution, 4, 9, 11, 83, 269, 273
    - expression, 186
    - instruction, 126, 127, 129, 151, 157, 158, 162, 171
  - expand, 39
  - expansion, 31
  - exponent, 7, 94
  - export, 23, 26, 78, 79, 89, 189, 198, 225, 227, 254–256, 258, 263, 264, 271, 303, 308
    - abstract syntax, 26
    - binary format, 225
    - instance, 89
    - section, 225
    - text format, 254–256
    - validation, 78
  - export instance, 87, 89, 189, 264, 281
    - abstract syntax, 89
  - export section, 225
  - expression, 23, 24–26, 72, 75–77, 186, 222, 225, 227, 252, 254, 255, 257, 307
    - abstract syntax, 23
    - binary format, 222
    - constant, 23, 72, 222, 252
    - execution, 186
    - text format, 252
    - validation, 72
  - extern type, 283
  - extern value, 283
  - external
    - address, 87
    - type, 13
  - external address, 13, 87, 89, 124, 189, 281
    - abstract syntax, 87
  - external index, 26
    - abstract syntax, 26
  - external reference, 56, 85
  - external type, 13, 40, 48, 124, 189, 207, 269, 281
    - abstract syntax, 13
    - binary format, 207
    - validation, 40
- ## F
- field, 23, 299, 300
    - index, 23
  - field index, 23, 222, 299
    - abstract syntax, 23
    - binary format, 222
  - field type, 11, 37, 45, 46, 205, 237, 279, 280, 286, 290, 310
    - abstract syntax, 11
    - binary format, 205
    - text format, 237
    - validation, 37
  - field value, 89, 279, 280, 286
    - abstract syntax, 89
  - file extension, 201, 229
  - final, 12, 37
  - floating point, 2
  - floating-point, 3, 7, 8, 9, 14, 85, 92, 94, 101, 303
  - floating-point number, 203, 233
    - abstract syntax, 7
    - binary format, 203
    - text format, 233
  - folded instruction, 251
  - frame, 90, 91, 92, 157, 158, 162, 171, 184, 273, 282, 283, 290
    - abstract syntax, 90
  - full profile, 271
  - function, 2, 3, 10, 11, 21, 23, 24, 26, 27, 32, 75, 79, 87, 88, 90, 91, 121, 184, 187, 189, 198, 224, 226, 227, 253, 258, 264, 271–273, 299, 300, 303, 307, 309, 312
    - abstract syntax, 24, 75
    - address, 86
    - binary format, 224, 226

- export, 26
  - import, 27
  - index, 23
  - instance, 88
  - section, 224
  - text format, 253
  - type, 11
  - function address, 87, 88, 91, 124, 187, 189, 198, 264, 265, 278, 283
    - abstract syntax, 86
  - function index, 21, **23**, 24–27, 65, 75, 77, 78, 171, 189, 207, 222, 225, 238, 252, 254, 256, 257, 299
    - abstract syntax, 23
    - binary format, 222
    - text format, 252
  - function instance, 86, 87, **88**, 91, 121, 184, 187, 189, 198, 264, 273, 277, 278, 284, 285
    - abstract syntax, 88
  - function section, **224**
  - function type, 10, **11**, 12, 13, 21, 23, 24, 27, 29, 31, 32, 36, 37, 39–41, 45, 48, 75, 77, 79, 87, 121, 124, 126, 187, 198, 205, 206, 224, 226, 227, 236, 237, 253, 256, 258, 264, 267, 277, 278, 283, 290, 309
    - abstract syntax, 11
    - binary format, 205
    - text format, 236
    - validation, 36
  - function type index, 227
- ## G
- global, 13, 19, 23, **25**, 26, 27, 32, 76, 79, 87, 88, 187, 189, 225, 227, 255, 258, 267, 271
    - abstract syntax, 25
    - address, 86
    - binary format, 225
    - export, 26
    - import, 27
    - index, 23
    - instance, 88
    - mutability, 13
    - section, 225
    - text format, 255
    - type, 13
    - validation, 76
  - global address, 87, 125, 157, 187, 189, 267
    - abstract syntax, 86
  - global index, 19, **23**, 25–27, 59, 78, 157, 189, 210, 222, 225, 240, 252, 255, 256
    - abstract syntax, 23
    - binary format, 222
    - text format, 252
  - global instance, 86, 87, **88**, 157, 187, 189, 267, 273, 277, 279, 284, 285
    - abstract syntax, 88
  - global section, **225**
  - global type, **13**, 13, 25, 27, 29, 32, 40, 47, 48, 76, 79, 125, 187, 206, 224, 225, 238, 253, 255, 267, 277, 279
    - abstract syntax, 13
    - binary format, 206
    - text format, 238
    - validation, 40
  - grammar notation, **5**, 201, 229
  - greatest lower bound, 288
  - grow, 188
- ## H
- handler, **90**, 91, 184, 284, 307
    - abstract syntax, 90
  - heap type, **9**, 10, 18, 29, 35, 41, 204, 235, 254, 274, 276, 309, 310
    - abstract syntax, 9, 29
    - binary format, 204
    - text format, 235
    - validation, 35
  - host, 2, 86, 261
    - address, 86
  - host address, **85**
    - abstract syntax, 86
  - host function, **88**, 185, 264, 278
- ## I
- identifier, 229, 230, 253–256, 258, 273, 312
  - identifier context, **230**, 258
  - identifiers, **235**
    - text format, 235
  - IEEE 754, 2, 3, 7, 9, 94, 101
  - implementation, 261, 271
  - implementation limitations, **271**
  - import, 2, 13, 23–25, **27**, 75, 79, 124, 189, 224, 227, 253–256, 258, 263, 271, 303, 308
    - abstract syntax, 27
    - binary format, 224
    - section, 224
    - text format, 253–256
    - validation, 79
  - import section, **224**
  - index, **23**, 26, 27, 78, 87, 222, 225, 230, 238, 252, 254–256, 298
    - data, 23
    - element, 23
    - field, 23
    - function, 23
    - global, 23
    - label, 23
    - local, 23
    - memory, 23
    - table, 23
    - tag, 23
    - type, 23
  - index space, **23**, 27, 29, 32, 230, 298
  - instance, **87**, 193
    - array, 89



- data, 89
- element, 89
- exception, 90
- export, 89
- function, 88
- global, 88
- memory, 88
- module, 87
- structure, 89
- table, 88
- tag, 89
- instantiation, 4, 9, 26, 27, **193**, 263, 287
- instantiation. module, 29
- instruction, 3, 11, **14**, 23, 31, 49, 71, 88, 90–92, 126, 183, 207, 238, 271, 282, 283, 287, 290, 303, 304, 307–309, 311, 313
  - abstract syntax, 14, 15, 18–21
  - binary format, 207–211, 215
  - execution, 126, 127, 129, 151, 157, 158, 162, 171
  - text format, 238, 240, 241, 243, 246
  - type, 31
  - validation, 50, 51, 56, 59–61, 65
- instruction sequence, 71, 183
- instruction type, **31**, 35, 36, 45, **49**, 87, 287–289, 309
  - abstract syntax, 31
  - validation, 36
- instructions, 304
- integer, 3, **7**, 8, 9, 14, 85, 92, 94, 95, 158, 162, 203, 233, 303
  - abstract syntax, 7
  - binary format, 203
  - signed, 7
  - text format, 233
  - uninterpreted, 7
  - unsigned, 7
- invocation, 4, 88, **198**, 264, 287

## K

- keyword, **231**

## L

- label, **21**, 65, **90**, 91, 171, 184, 207, 238, 273, 283, 290
  - abstract syntax, 90
  - index, 23
- label index, **21**, **23**, 65, 171, 207, 222, 238, 252
  - abstract syntax, 23
  - binary format, 222
  - text format, 238, 252
- lane, 8, 94
- least upper bound, 288
- LEB128, 203, 207
- lexical format, 231
- limits, **12**, 12, 25, 39, 47, 158, 162, 187, 188, 206, 238, 278, 279
  - abstract syntax, 12
  - binary format, 206

- memory, 12
  - table, 12
  - text format, 238
  - validation, 39
- linear memory, 3
- list, **6**, 11, 21, 25, 26, 65, 171, 202, 207, 231, 238
  - abstract syntax, 6
  - binary format, 202
  - text format, 231
- little endian, 20, 95, 203
- local, 19, 23, **24**, 31, 32, 75, 90, 226, 253, 271, 282, 299, 300, 309, 312
  - abstract syntax, 24
  - binary format, 226
  - index, 23
  - text format, 253
  - type, 32
  - validation, 75
- local index, 19, **23**, 24, 31, 32, 59, 75, 157, 210, 222, 240, 252, 299
  - abstract syntax, 23
  - binary format, 222
  - text format, 252
- local type, **32**, 32, 71, 75, 309
  - abstract syntax, 32

## M

- magnitude, 7
- matching, **40**, 189, 309
- memory, 3, 9, 12, 13, 20, 23, **25**, 26, 27, 32, 76, 77, 79, 87, 88, 91, 95, 187–189, 225, 227, 255, 257, 258, 266, 271, 304, 308
  - abstract syntax, 25
  - address, 86
  - binary format, 225
  - data, 26, 77, 227, 255, 257
  - export, 26
  - import, 27
  - index, 23
  - instance, 88
  - limits, 12
  - section, 225
  - text format, 255
  - type, 12
  - validation, 76
- memory address, 87, 125, 162, 187–189, 266
  - abstract syntax, 86
- memory index, 20, **23**, 25–27, 61, 77, 78, 162, 189, 210, 222, 225, 227, 241, 252, 255–257, 308
  - abstract syntax, 23
  - binary format, 222
  - text format, 252
- memory instance, 86, 87, **88**, 91, 162, 187–189, 266, 273, 277, 279, 284, 285
  - abstract syntax, 88
- memory instruction, **20**, 61, 162, 210, 241
- memory section, **225**



memory type, **12**, 12, 13, 25, 27, 29, 32, 39, 40, 47, 48, 76, 79, 88, 125, 187, 206, 224, 225, 238, 253, 255, 266, 277, 279

- abstract syntax, 12
- binary format, 206
- text format, 238
- validation, 39

module, 2, 3, **23**, 32, 79, 86, 88, 189, 193, 198, 201, 227, 258, 262, 264, 271, 272, 287, 290, 299, 300, 312

- abstract syntax, 23
- binary format, 227
- instance, 87
- text format, 258
- validation, 79

module instance, 88, 90, 120, 187, 189, 198, 263, 264, 273, 281, 282

- abstract syntax, 87

module instruction, 92

mutability, **13**, 13, 25, 37, 40, 46, 47, 88, 125, 187, 205, 206, 237, 238, 279, 285

- abstract syntax, 13
- binary format, 206
- global, 13
- text format, 238

## N

name, 2, **8**, 26, 27, 78, 79, 87, 89, 203, 224, 225, 234, 253–256, 271, 281, 298, 299

- abstract syntax, 8
- binary format, 203
- text format, 234

name annotation, **299**

name map, **298**

name section, 258, **298**

NaN, **7**, 92, 103, 127

- arithmetic, 7
- canonical, 7
- payload, 7

non-determinism, 92, 103, 127, 159, 168, 271, 312

notation, 5, 201, 229

- abstract syntax, 5
- binary format, 201
- text format, 229

null, 10, 18

null reference, 121

number, 15, 85

- type, 9

number type, **9**, 11, 34, 35, 41, 44, 85, 204, 205, 235, 236, 290, 308

- abstract syntax, 9
- binary format, 204
- text format, 235
- validation, 34

numeric instruction, **14**, 50, 127, 211, 243

numeric vector, **8**, 15, 94

## O

offset, 23

opcode, **207**, 290, 294

operand, 14

operand stack, 14, 49

## P

packed type, **11**, 37, 46, 94, 205, 237, 280, 290

- abstract syntax, 11
- binary format, 205
- text format, 237
- validation, 37

packed value, **89**, 280

- abstract syntax, 89

page size, 12, 20, 25, **88**, 206, 238, 255

parameter, 11, 23, 271, 300

parametric instruction, **14**, 126, 209, 240

parametric instructions, 50

passive, **25**, 26

payload, 7

phases, 4

polymorphism, **49**, 50, 65, 207, 209, 238, 240, 287

portability, 1

preservation, **287**

principal types, **287**

profile, **269**

- deterministic, 271
- full, 271

profiles, 312

progress, **287**

## R

reachability, 277

recursive type, **12**, 30, 31, 37, 39, 46, 74, 206, 224, 237, 274, 276, 290, 310

- abstract syntax, 12, 37
- binary format, 206
- text format, 237

recursive type index, 12, **29**, 274, 276

- abstract syntax, 29

reduction rules, **84**

reference, 10, 18, 85, 129, 158, 238, 268, 279, 303, 309, 310

- type, 10

reference instruction, **18**, 18, 208, 240

reference instructions, 51, 129

reference type, **10**, 11–13, 18, 35, 39, 43, 44, 51, 76, 85, 158, 205, 206, 236, 238, 254, 268, 274, 290, 303, 307, 309, 310

- abstract syntax, 10
- binary format, 205
- text format, 236
- validation, 35

reftype, 91

result, 11, **86**, 264, 271, 276

- abstract syntax, 86
- type, 11

result type, [11](#), [11](#), [29](#), [31](#), [32](#), [36](#), [44](#), [45](#), [65](#), [72](#),  
[171](#), [205](#), [207](#), [236](#), [238](#), [276](#), [282](#), [283](#), [303](#)  
 abstract syntax, [11](#)  
 binary format, [205](#)  
 validation, [36](#)  
 rewrite rule, [230](#)  
 roll, [12](#)  
 rolling, [29](#), [31](#)  
 rounding, [102](#)  
 runtime, [85](#), [325](#)

## S

S-expression, [229](#), [251](#)  
 scalar reference, [56](#), [121](#)  
 section, [223](#), [227](#), [272](#), [297](#)  
 binary format, [223](#)  
 code, [226](#)  
 custom, [224](#)  
 data, [227](#)  
 data count, [227](#)  
 element, [225](#)  
 export, [225](#)  
 function, [224](#)  
 global, [225](#)  
 import, [224](#)  
 memory, [225](#)  
 name, [258](#)  
 start, [225](#)  
 table, [225](#)  
 tag, [227](#)  
 type, [224](#)  
 security, [2](#)  
 segment, [91](#)  
 shape, [94](#)  
 sign, [95](#)  
 signed integer, [7](#), [95](#), [203](#), [233](#)  
 abstract syntax, [7](#)  
 binary format, [203](#)  
 text format, [233](#)  
 significand, [7](#), [94](#)  
 SIMD, [8](#), [9](#), [15](#), [304](#), [311](#)  
 soundness, [274](#), [287](#)  
 source text, [231](#), [231](#), [273](#)  
 stack, [83](#), [90](#), [198](#), [290](#)  
 stack machine, [14](#)  
 stack type, [21](#)  
 start function, [23](#), [26](#), [78](#), [79](#), [225](#), [227](#), [256](#), [258](#)  
 abstract syntax, [26](#)  
 binary format, [225](#)  
 section, [225](#)  
 text format, [256](#)  
 validation, [78](#)  
 start section, [225](#)  
 state, [92](#)  
 storage type, [11](#), [37](#), [46](#), [205](#), [237](#), [279](#), [280](#), [310](#)  
 abstract syntax, [11](#)  
 binary format, [205](#)  
 text format, [237](#)

validation, [37](#)  
 store, [9](#), [83](#), [86](#), [86](#), [87](#), [90](#), [92](#), [121](#), [124](#), [126](#), [157](#), [158](#),  
[162](#), [171](#), [185](#), [186](#), [193](#), [198](#), [262](#), [264–267](#),  
[277](#), [280](#), [282–284](#)  
 abstract syntax, [86](#)  
 store extension, [284](#)  
 string, [234](#)  
 text format, [234](#)  
 structure, [85](#), [121](#)  
 address, [86](#)  
 instance, [89](#)  
 structure address  
 abstract syntax, [86](#)  
 structure field, [312](#)  
 structure instance, [86](#), [89](#), [121](#), [277](#), [279](#), [286](#)  
 abstract syntax, [89](#)  
 structure type, [11](#), [12](#), [37](#), [41](#), [45](#), [89](#), [121](#), [205](#), [237](#),  
[277](#), [290](#), [300](#), [310](#)  
 abstract syntax, [11](#)  
 binary format, [205](#)  
 text format, [237](#)  
 validation, [37](#)  
 structured control, [21](#), [65](#), [171](#), [207](#), [238](#)  
 structured control instruction, [271](#)  
 sub type, [12](#), [29](#), [31](#), [37](#), [206](#), [237](#), [274](#), [290](#), [310](#)  
 abstract syntax, [12](#), [29](#), [37](#)  
 binary format, [206](#)  
 text format, [237](#)  
 substitution, [30](#)  
 subtyping, [12](#), [29](#), [37](#), [40](#), [269](#), [287–289](#), [309](#)  
 syntax, [287](#)

## T

table, [3](#), [10](#), [12](#), [13](#), [19](#), [21](#), [23](#), [25](#), [25–27](#), [32](#), [76](#), [77](#),  
[79](#), [87](#), [88](#), [91](#), [187–189](#), [225](#), [227](#), [254](#), [258](#),  
[265](#), [271](#), [303](#), [304](#), [308](#), [309](#)  
 abstract syntax, [25](#)  
 address, [86](#)  
 binary format, [225](#)  
 element, [25](#), [77](#), [225](#), [254](#), [257](#)  
 export, [26](#)  
 import, [27](#)  
 index, [23](#)  
 instance, [88](#)  
 limits, [12](#)  
 section, [225](#)  
 text format, [254](#)  
 type, [12](#)  
 validation, [76](#)  
 table address, [87](#), [125](#), [158](#), [171](#), [187–189](#), [265](#)  
 abstract syntax, [86](#)  
 table index, [19](#), [23](#), [25–27](#), [60](#), [77](#), [78](#), [158](#), [189](#), [210](#),  
[222](#), [225](#), [241](#), [252](#), [254](#), [256](#), [257](#), [303](#)  
 abstract syntax, [23](#)  
 binary format, [222](#)  
 text format, [252](#)  
 table instance, [86](#), [87](#), [88](#), [91](#), [158](#), [171](#), [187–189](#),  
[265](#), [273](#), [277](#), [278](#), [284](#), [285](#)

- abstract syntax, 88
- table instruction, 19, 60, 158, 210, 241
- table section, 225
- table type, 12, 12, 13, 25, 27, 29, 32, 39, 40, 47, 48, 76, 79, 88, 125, 187, 206, 224, 225, 238, 253, 254, 265, 277, 278, 303
  - abstract syntax, 12
  - binary format, 206
  - text format, 238
  - validation, 39
- tag, 21, 23, 25, 26, 27, 31, 32, 77, 79, 87, 89–91, 184, 187, 189, 227, 256, 258, 267, 271, 280, 299, 301, 307
  - abstract syntax, 25, 31
  - address, 86
  - binary format, 227
  - exception tag, 31
  - export, 26
  - import, 27
  - index, 23
  - instance, 89
  - section, 227
  - text format, 256
  - type; exception, 31
  - validation, 77
- tag address, 87, 90, 91, 126, 187, 189, 267, 280
  - abstract syntax, 86
- tag index, 23, 26, 27, 65, 78, 189, 207, 222, 225, 238, 252, 256, 299
  - abstract syntax, 23
  - binary format, 222
  - text format, 252
- tag instance, 86, 87, 89, 91, 187, 189, 267, 277, 279, 286
  - abstract syntax, 89
- tag section, 227
- tag type, 13, 21, 23, 25, 27, 29, 31, 32, 39, 48, 77, 79, 89, 126, 187, 206, 224, 227, 253, 256, 267, 277, 279, 307
  - binary format, 206
  - validation, 39
- terminal configuration, 287
- text format, 2, 229, 262, 269, 273, 297, 312
  - address type, 237
  - aggregate type, 237
  - annotation, 232
  - array type, 237
  - byte, 234
  - character, 231
  - comment, 232
  - composite type, 237
  - data, 255, 257
  - data index, 252
  - element, 254, 257
  - element index, 252
  - export, 254–256
  - expression, 252
  - field type, 237
  - floating-point number, 233
  - function, 253
  - function index, 252
  - function type, 236
  - global, 255
  - global index, 252
  - global type, 238
  - grammar, 229
  - heap type, 235
  - identifiers, 235
  - import, 253–256
  - instruction, 238, 240, 241, 243, 246
  - integer, 233
  - label index, 238, 252
  - limits, 238
  - list, 231
  - local, 253
  - local index, 252
  - memory, 255
  - memory index, 252
  - memory type, 238
  - module, 258
  - mutability, 238
  - name, 234
  - notation, 229
  - number type, 235
  - packed type, 237
  - recursive type, 237
  - reference type, 236
  - signed integer, 233
  - start function, 256
  - storage type, 237
  - string, 234
  - structure type, 237
  - sub type, 237
  - table, 254
  - table index, 252
  - table type, 238
  - tag, 256
  - tag index, 252
  - token, 231
  - type, 235
  - type index, 252
  - type use, 252
  - uninterpreted integer, 233
  - unsigned integer, 233
  - value, 233
  - value type, 236
  - vector type, 235
  - white space, 232
- thread, 92, 282, 287
- throw, 276
- throw context, 184, 284
- token, 231, 273
- trap, 3, 19–21, 86, 91, 127, 183, 193, 198, 276, 283, 303
- try block, 21
- two's complement, 3, 7, 14, 95, 203

type, [9](#), [74](#), [120](#), [189](#), [204](#), [235](#), [271](#), [299](#), [300](#), [312](#), [324](#)

- abstract syntax, [9](#), [74](#)
- binary format, [204](#)
- block, [21](#)
- data, [13](#)
- element, [13](#)
- external, [13](#)
- function, [11](#)
- global, [13](#)
- index, [23](#)
- instruction, [31](#)
- local, [32](#)
- memory, [12](#)
- number, [9](#)
- reference, [10](#)
- result, [11](#)
- section, [224](#)
- table, [12](#)
- text format, [235](#)
- value, [11](#)

type closure, [33](#)

type definition, [23](#), [24](#), [79](#), [224](#), [227](#), [258](#)

- abstract syntax, [24](#)

type equivalence, [31](#), [46](#)

type index, [9](#), [21](#), [23](#), [24](#), [25](#), [27](#), [29](#), [35](#), [65](#), [74](#), [75](#), [120](#), [171](#), [207](#), [222](#), [224](#), [226](#), [238](#), [252](#), [253](#), [299](#)

- abstract syntax, [23](#)
- binary format, [222](#)
- text format, [252](#)

type instance, [86](#), [87](#)

type instantiation, [120](#)

type lattice, [288](#)

type section, [224](#)

- binary format, [224](#)

type system, [29](#), [274](#), [287](#)

type use, [9](#), [35](#), [252](#)

- text format, [252](#)

typing rules, [33](#)

## U

unboxed scalar, [9](#), [85](#)

unboxed scalar type, [41](#)

Unicode, [2](#), [8](#), [203](#), [229](#), [231](#), [234](#), [271](#)

unicode, [273](#)

Unicode UTF-8, [298](#), [299](#)

uninterpreted integer, [7](#), [95](#), [203](#), [233](#)

- abstract syntax, [7](#)
- binary format, [203](#)
- text format, [233](#)

unroll, [12](#), [39](#), [46](#)

unrolling, [29](#), [31](#)

unsigned integer, [7](#), [95](#), [203](#), [233](#)

- abstract syntax, [7](#)
- binary format, [203](#)
- text format, [233](#)

unwinding, [21](#)

UTF-8, [2](#), [8](#), [203](#), [229](#), [234](#)

## V

validation, [4](#), [9](#), [29](#), [121](#), [124](#), [126](#), [262](#), [269](#), [273](#), [280](#), [290](#), [324](#)

- aggregate type, [37](#)

- array type, [37](#)

- block type, [35](#)

- composite type, [37](#)

- data, [77](#)

- element, [77](#)

- export, [78](#)

- expression, [72](#)

- external type, [40](#)

- field type, [37](#)

- function type, [36](#)

- global, [76](#)

- global type, [40](#)

- heap type, [35](#)

- import, [79](#)

- instruction, [50](#), [51](#), [56](#), [59–61](#), [65](#)

- instruction type, [36](#)

- limits, [39](#)

- local, [75](#)

- memory, [76](#)

- memory type, [39](#)

- module, [79](#)

- number type, [34](#)

- packed type, [37](#)

- reference type, [35](#)

- result type, [36](#)

- start function, [78](#)

- storage type, [37](#)

- structure type, [37](#)

- table, [76](#)

- table type, [39](#)

- tag, [77](#)

- tag type, [39](#)

- value type, [35](#)

- vector type, [34](#)

validity, [287](#)

value, [3](#), [7](#), [14](#), [15](#), [25](#), [49](#), [85](#), [86](#), [88](#), [90](#), [92](#), [121](#), [126](#), [127](#), [157](#), [158](#), [162](#), [187](#), [198](#), [202](#), [233](#), [264](#), [267](#), [268](#), [273](#), [276](#), [279](#), [282](#), [283](#), [285](#)

- abstract syntax, [7](#), [85](#)

- binary format, [202](#)

- text format, [233](#)

- type, [11](#)

value type, [11](#), [11](#), [13–15](#), [21](#), [24](#), [29](#), [31](#), [32](#), [35–37](#), [40](#), [44](#), [46](#), [47](#), [50](#), [75](#), [85](#), [94](#), [121](#), [125](#), [127](#), [162](#), [187](#), [205–207](#), [209](#), [236–238](#), [240](#), [268](#), [269](#), [274](#), [276](#), [282](#), [283](#), [290](#), [303](#), [304](#), [309](#)

- abstract syntax, [11](#), [29](#)

- binary format, [205](#)

- text format, [236](#)

- validation, [35](#)

variable instruction, [19](#)

variable instructions, [59](#), [157](#), [210](#), [240](#)

vector

- abstract syntax, [8](#)

vector instruction, [15](#), [56](#), [151](#), [215](#), [246](#), [311](#)  
vector number, [85](#)  
vector type, [9](#), [11](#), [34](#), [35](#), [41](#), [85](#), [204](#), [235](#), [236](#), [290](#),  
    [304](#)  
    binary format, [204](#)  
    text format, [235](#)  
    validation, [34](#)  
version, [227](#)

## W

white space, [231](#), [232](#)